This publication has been prepared to provide a compilation of standard requirements, called Specifications, used by the New York State Department of Transportation for construction contracts. These specifications are written to the Contractor. They define the Contractor’s responsibility in meeting each specification, enumerate the Department’s expectations and how they are going to measure and pay, and explain what the Contractor is expected to provide.

When this publication, entitled Standard Specifications (USC) and dated as shown on the Title Page, is incorporated by reference into the Department’s construction contracts, it is made a part of that contract. The requirements stated herein may be revised or amended from time to time by notes or special specifications or documents of any description that would be furnished as part of a construction contract.
STATE OF NEW YORK

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

ENGINEERING DIVISION

Contained herein are:
General Provisions of Contract;
Contract forms of Proposal, Agreement and Bonds;
General Construction Specifications;
Materials of Construction;
Payment Items

Adopted
by

The Commissioner of Transportation
and Short Titled

"STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS" (USC)

Note: While these specifications may be used for general construction work, they have been compiled in US customary units with particular emphasis placed upon their use for highways, parkways, bridges and similar work. Necessary modifications of the contents hereof will be incorporated in the "Contract Documents" covering dissimilar work.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

Contents

Section 700 ......................................................................................................................... 13
MATERIALS and MANUFACTURING .................................................................................... 13

SECTION 701 - HYDRAULIC CEMENTS ................................................................................. 13
701-01 PORTLAND CEMENT .................................................................................................. 13
701-02 MASONRY AND MORTAR CEMENT ....................................................................... 14
701-03 BLENDED PORTLAND CEMENT .............................................................................. 14
701-04 CONCRETE REPAIR MATERIAL ............................................................................... 16
701-05 CONCRETE GROUTING AND ANCHORING MATERIAL ........................................... 17
701-06 SHEAR KEY GROUT ................................................................................................... 18
701-07 ANCHORING MATERIALS - CHEMICALLY CURING ............................................... 19
701-08 VERTICAL AND OVERHEAD REPAIR MATERIAL ................................................ 20
701-09 CONCRETE REPAIR MATERIAL - RAPID HARDENING ......................................... 21
701-10 DUCT GROUTING MATERIAL (STRUCTURES) ......................................................... 22
701-11 ELASTOMERIC CONCRETE ..................................................................................... 24
701-12 CONCRETE REPAIR MATERIAL - HIGH EARLY STRENGTH ................................. 24
701-13 RAPID HARDENING HYDRAULIC CEMENT ............................................................. 26
701-14 CHEMICALLY CURING ADHESIVES FOR PCC PAVEMENT APPLICATIONS ........ 26
701-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 28

SECTION 702 - BITUMINOUS MATERIALS ............................................................................. 28
702-05 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 33
702-07 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 33
702-09 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 33
702-11 THRU 702-16 FOR SITE MANAGER USE .................................................................. 33
702-20 THRU 702-25 FOR SITE MANAGER USE .................................................................. 33
702-30 THRU 702-38 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ................................................................. 33
702-40 THRU 702-48 FOR SITE MANAGER USE .................................................................. 33
702-50 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 33
702-52 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 33
702-58 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 33
702-64 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 33
702-70 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 33
702-71 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 33
702-76 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 33
702-82 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 33
702-90 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 34
702-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................................................... 34

SECTION 703 - AGGREGATES ................................................................................................. 34
703-01 FINE AGGREGATE ...................................................................................................... 34
703-02 COARSE AGGREGATE ............................................................................................... 35
703-03 MORTAR SAND .......................................................................................................... 40
703-04 GROUT SAND ........................................................................................................... 40
703-05 FINE AGGREGATE FOR WHITE PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE ..................... 41
703-06 CUSHION SAND ....................................................................................................... 41
703-07 CONCRETE SAND .................................................................................................... 41
703-08 MINERAL FILLER ....................................................................................................... 42
703-09 (VACANT) .................................................................................................................. 42
TABLE OF CONTENTS

703-10 LIGHTWEIGHT AGGREGATES ................................................................. 42
703-90 FOR SITE MANAGER USE................................................................. 43
703-91 FOR SITE MANAGER USE................................................................. 43
703-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE................................................................. 43

SECTION 704 - MASONRY UNITS ................................................................. 43
704-01 COMMON BRICK .............................................................................. 43
704-02 CONCRETE BRICK .......................................................................... 43
704-03 PRECAST CONCRETE - GENERAL .................................................... 44
704-04 CONCRETE BLOCK (SLOPE PAVING) .............................................. 51
704-05 PRECAST CONCRETE BARRIER ....................................................... 52
704-06 PRECAST CONCRETE WALL UNITS AND PRECAST CONCRETE CRYBBING ...... 54
704-07 DRY CAST CONCRETE WALL UNITS ........................................... 54
704-08 BRICK SIDEWALK AND DRIVEWAY PAVERS .................................. 55
704-09 STONE BLOCKS .............................................................................. 56
704-10 SPLIT-FACED CONCRETE BRICK .................................................... 56
704-11 PRECAST CONCRETE COPING ....................................................... 57
704-12 CONCRETE BLOCK .......................................................................... 58
704-13 PRECAST CONCRETE DRIVEWAY AND SIDEWALK PAVERS .............. 58
704-14 PRECAST CONCRETE PANEL UNITS (Mechanically Stabilized Earth System) 59
704-15 PRECAST CONCRETE PAVEMENT SLAB SYSTEMS ............................ 60
704-16 THRU 704-22 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................... 64
704-23 PRECAST CONCRETE STREET PAVERS .......................................... 64
704-24 PRECAST CONCRETE PANELS ....................................................... 65
704-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE................................................................. 65

SECTION 705 - JOINT MATERIALS ................................................................. 65
705-01 PREFORMED CORK JOINT FILLER .................................................. 65
705-02 HIGHWAY JOINT SEALANTS ......................................................... 66
705-03 PREFORMED RUBBER JOINT SEALANTS ........................................ 66
705-04 ARMORLESS BRIDGE JOINTS .......................................................... 66
705-05 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS FOR PAVEMENTS ............................ 67
705-06 CAULKING COMPOUND FOR STRUCTURES .................................... 67
705-07 PREMOLDED RESILIENT JOINT SEALER ....................................... 67
705-08 PREFORMED, CLOSED-CELL FOAM MATERIAL ............................... 68
705-09 PREFORMED ELASTIC BRIDGE JOINT SEALER ............................. 69
705-10 PREFORMED ELASTIC LONGITUDINAL JOINT SEAL ...................... 70
705-11 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE EXTRUDED SHAPES AND SHEET MATERIAL .... 70
705-12 PREFORMED ELASTIC TRANSVERSE CONTRACTION AND EXPANSION JOINT SEAL ............................................................ 71
705-13 LUBRICANT FOR PREFORMED ELASTIC JOINT SEALER .............. 72
705-14 LONGITUDINAL JOINT TIES ............................................................. 73
705-15 TRANSVERSE JOINT SUPPORTS .................................................... 74
705-16 CONCRETE PIPE JOINT SEALING COMPOUND ............................ 81
705-17 CONCRETE PIPE JOINT ELASTOMERIC GASKETS ....................... 81
705-18 ASPHALTIC PLUG JOINTS FOR BRIDGES ....................................... 81
705-19 ASPHALT PAVEMENT JOINT ADHESIVE ......................................... 82
705-20 FOR SITE MANAGER USE ............................................................... 83
705-21 MASONRY MORTAR ...................................................................... 83
705-22 PORTLAND CEMENT MORTAR BONDING GROUT ......................... 84
705-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE................................................................. 84

SECTION 706 - CONCRETE, CLAY AND PLASTIC PIPE ............................... 84
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>706-01</td>
<td>NON-REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-02</td>
<td>REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE CLASSES II, III, IV, V</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-03</td>
<td>REINFORCED CONCRETE ELLIPTICAL PIPE; CLASSES HE-II, HE-III, HE-IV, VE-IV, VE-V AND VE-VI</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-04</td>
<td>PRECAST CONCRETE DRAINAGE UNITS</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-05</td>
<td>POROUS CONCRETE PIPE UNDERDRAIN</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-06</td>
<td>(VACANT)</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-07</td>
<td>REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE END SECTIONS</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-08</td>
<td>POLYPROPYLENE PIPE</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-09</td>
<td>CURED IN PLACE PIPE (CIPP) LINER</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-10</td>
<td>POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PIPE (relining)</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-11</td>
<td>HIGH DENSITY POLYETHYLENE PIPE (relining)</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-12</td>
<td>SMOOTH INTERIOR CORRUGATED POLYETHYLENE PIPE</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-13</td>
<td>PERFORATED CORRUGATED POLYETHYLENE UNDERDRAIN TUBING</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-14</td>
<td>CORRUGATED INTERIOR POLYETHYLENE PIPE</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-15</td>
<td>PVC PLASTIC DRAIN PIPE SYSTEM</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-16</td>
<td>CELLULAR POLYSTYRENE PROTECTIVE COVER</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-17</td>
<td>PRECAST CONCRETE BOX CULVERTS</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-18</td>
<td>PERFORATED POLYVINYL CHLORIDE UNDERDRAIN PIPE</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-19</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-01</td>
<td>(VACANT)</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-02</td>
<td>CORRUGATED STEEL PIPE</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-03</td>
<td>DUCTILE IRON PIPE (NON-PRESSURE)</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-04</td>
<td>DUCTILE IRON PIPE (PRESSURE)</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-05</td>
<td>TUNNEL LINER PLATE (RELINING)</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-06</td>
<td>THRU 707-08 (VACANT)</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-09</td>
<td>CORRUGATED STRUCTURAL STEEL PLATE FOR PIPE, PIPE ARCHES AND UNDERPASSES</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-10</td>
<td>GALVANIZED STEEL END SECTIONS</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-11</td>
<td>ALUMINUM END SECTIONS</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-12</td>
<td>(VACANT)</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-13</td>
<td>CORRUGATED ALUMINUM PIPE</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-14</td>
<td>CORRUGATED ALUMINUM STRUCTURAL PLATE FOR PIPE AND PIPE ARCHES</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-15</td>
<td>THRU 707-19 (VACANT)</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-20</td>
<td>ANCHOR BOLTS FOR CORRUGATED CULVERTS</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-01</td>
<td>STRUCTURAL STEEL PAINTS CLASS 1</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-02</td>
<td>STRUCTURAL STEEL PAINTS CLASS 2</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-03</td>
<td>(VACANT)</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-04</td>
<td>ZINC CHROMATE PRIMER</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-05</td>
<td>STANDARD PAINT COLORS</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-06</td>
<td>PAINT FOR GALVANIZED SURFACES</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-07</td>
<td>PAINT FOR ALUMINUM SURFACES</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-08</td>
<td>THRU 708-29 (VACANT)</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-30</td>
<td>WOOD PRESERVATIVE – CREOSOTE OIL</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-31</td>
<td>WOOD PRESERVATIVE – WATERBORNE</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-32</td>
<td>WOOD PRESERVATIVE – OIL-BORNE</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECTION 707 - METAL PIPE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>707-01</td>
<td>(VACANT)</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-02</td>
<td>CORRUGATED STEEL PIPE</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-03</td>
<td>DUCTILE IRON PIPE (NON-PRESSURE)</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-04</td>
<td>DUCTILE IRON PIPE (PRESSURE)</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-05</td>
<td>TUNNEL LINER PLATE (RELINING)</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-06</td>
<td>THRU 707-08 (VACANT)</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-09</td>
<td>CORRUGATED STRUCTURAL STEEL PLATE FOR PIPE, PIPE ARCHES AND UNDERPASSES</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-10</td>
<td>GALVANIZED STEEL END SECTIONS</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-11</td>
<td>ALUMINUM END SECTIONS</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-12</td>
<td>(VACANT)</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-13</td>
<td>CORRUGATED ALUMINUM PIPE</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-14</td>
<td>CORRUGATED ALUMINUM STRUCTURAL PLATE FOR PIPE AND PIPE ARCHES</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-15</td>
<td>THRU 707-19 (VACANT)</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-20</td>
<td>ANCHOR BOLTS FOR CORRUGATED CULVERTS</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>707-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECTION 708 - PAINTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>708-01</td>
<td>STRUCTURAL STEEL PAINTS CLASS 1</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-02</td>
<td>STRUCTURAL STEEL PAINTS CLASS 2</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-03</td>
<td>(VACANT)</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-04</td>
<td>ZINC CHROMATE PRIMER</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-05</td>
<td>STANDARD PAINT COLORS</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-06</td>
<td>PAINT FOR GALVANIZED SURFACES</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-07</td>
<td>PAINT FOR ALUMINUM SURFACES</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-08</td>
<td>THRU 708-29 (VACANT)</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-30</td>
<td>WOOD PRESERVATIVE – CREOSOTE OIL</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-31</td>
<td>WOOD PRESERVATIVE – WATERBORNE</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>708-32</td>
<td>WOOD PRESERVATIVE – OIL-BORNE</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

| SECTION 709 - REINFORCING STEEL .......................................................... 116 |
| 709-01 BAR REINFORCEMENT, GRADE 60 ...................................................... 116 |
| 709-02 WIRE FABRIC FOR CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT ................................ 116 |
| 709-03 FOR SITE MANAGER USE .................................................................. 117 |
| 709-04 EPOXY-COATED BAR REINFORCEMENT .............................................. 117 |
| 709-05 STUD SHEAR CONNECTORS ................................................................ 120 |
| 709-06 LOW-RELAXATION PRESTRESSING STEEL, GRADE 270 .................... 120 |
| 709-07 STONE CURB ANCHOR BARS ................................................................ 120 |
| 709-08 EPOXY COATED WIRE FABRIC REINFORCEMENT ................................. 121 |
| 709-09 COLD-DRAWN WIRE FOR CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT ................ 124 |
| 709-10 MECHANICAL CONNECTORS FOR REINFORCING BAR SPLICES ........ 123 |
| 709-11 GALVANIZED BAR REINFORCEMENT .............................................. 124 |
| 709-12 FOR SITE MANAGER USE .................................................................. 125 |
| 709-13 STAINLESS STEEL BAR REINFORCEMENT ........................................ 125 |
| 709-14 BAR REINFORCEMENT, GRADE 75 .................................................... 126 |
| 709-15 GROUTED REINFORCING BAR SPLICE SLEEVES ................................. 126 |
| 709-16 FOR SITE MANAGER USE .................................................................. 127 |
| 709-17 STONE CURB ANCHOR BARS ................................................................ 127 |
| 709-18 GROUTED REINFORCING BAR SPLICE SLEEVES ................................. 129 |
| 709-19 FOR SITE MANAGER USE .................................................................. 129 |

| SECTION 710 - FENCE AND GUIDE RAIL ..................................................... 127 |
| 710-01 ALUMINUM FENCE FABRIC ............................................................... 127 |
| 710-02 GALVANIZED STEEL FENCE FABRIC ............................................... 128 |
| 710-03 VINYL COATED STEEL FENCE FABRIC ........................................... 128 |
| 710-04 ALUMINUM COATED STEEL FENCE FABRIC .................................... 129 |
| 710-05 COATED STEEL FENCE FABRIC, (95% ZINC 5% ALUMINUM - MISCHMETAL ALLOY) ................................................................. 129 |
| 710-06 ROCK SLOPE NET AND WIRE MESH ASSEMBLIES ............................ 129 |
| 710-07 THRU 710-09 (VACANT) .................................................................... 130 |
| 710-10 STEEL AND IRON POSTS, RAILS, BRACES, AND FITTINGS FOR CHAIN LINK FENCE .............................................................................. 130 |
| 710-11 ALUMINUM POSTS, RAILS, BRACES AND FITTINGS FOR CHAIN LINK FENCE .......................................................... 132 |
| 710-12 PLASTIC COATED POSTS, RAILS, BRACES AND FITTINGS FOR CHAIN LINK FENCE .......................................................... 133 |
| 710-13 WOOD AND TIMBER POSTS AND TIMBER BLOCKOUTS .................. 133 |
| 710-14 GALVANIZED STEEL BARRIER POSTS ............................................. 134 |
| 710-15 AND 710-16 (VACANT) ................................................................. 134 |
| 710-17 CORRUGATED BEAM GUIDE RAILING END TERMINAL (ENERGY-ABSORBING) .......................................................... 134 |
| 710-18 HPBO (Mod.) CORRUGATED BEAM GUIDE RAILING END TERMINAL (ENERGY ABSORBING) .......................................................... 135 |
| 710-19 HPBO (Mod.) CORRUGATED BEAM MEDIAN BARRIER END TERMINAL (ENERGY ABSORBING) .......................................................... 136 |
| 710-20 CORRUGATED BEAM GUIDE RAILING AND MEDIAN BARRIER .......... 136 |
| 710-21 BOX BEAM GUIDE RAILING AND MEDIAN BARRIER ....................... 137 |
| 710-22 CABLE GUIDE RAILING ................................................................. 139 |
| 710-23 STEEL BRIDGE RAILING ................................................................. 139 |
| 710-24 BOX BEAM GUIDE RAIL END ASSEMBLY, TYPE III; AND BOX BEAM MEDIAN BARRIER END ASSEMBLY, TYPE C ....................... 141 |
| 710-25 (VACANT) ....................................................................................... 143 |
| 710-26 PLASTIC AND SYNTHETIC BLOCK-OUTS FOR HEAVY POST GUIDERAIL SYSTEMS .......................................................... 143 |
| 710-27 ROCK SLOPE WIRE ROPES .............................................................. 144 |
### TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>710-28</td>
<td>Anchor Bolts for Guide Railings and Median Barrier</td>
<td>145-144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>710-29</td>
<td>(Vacant)</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>710-30</td>
<td>Right-of-Way Fencing</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>710-35</td>
<td>Security Bollards</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>710-99</td>
<td>For Site Manager Use</td>
<td>148-147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION 711</strong></td>
<td>Concrete Curing Materials and Admixtures</td>
<td>147-148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-01</td>
<td>Fibers for Concrete Reinforcement</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-02</td>
<td>Quilted Covers (for Curing)</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-03</td>
<td>Plastic Coated Fiber Blankets (for Curing)</td>
<td>150-151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-04</td>
<td>Polyethylene Curing Cover (White Opaque)</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-05</td>
<td>Membrane Curing Compound</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-06</td>
<td>Burlap</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-07</td>
<td>Form Insulating Materials for Cold Weather Concreting</td>
<td>152-153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-08</td>
<td>Admixtures</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-09</td>
<td>Emulsified Carbon Black</td>
<td>153-154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-10</td>
<td>Fly Ash</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-11</td>
<td>Microsilica</td>
<td>154-155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-12</td>
<td>Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace SLAG</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-13</td>
<td>Calcium Nitrite Based Corrosion Inhibitors</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-14</td>
<td>High Reactivity Pozzolan</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-15</td>
<td>Miscellaneous Supplementary Cementitious Materials</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>711-99</td>
<td>For Site Manager Use</td>
<td>161-173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION 712</strong></td>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td>173-180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-01</td>
<td>Water</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-02</td>
<td>Calcium Chloride</td>
<td>174-175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-03</td>
<td>Sodium Chloride</td>
<td>175-176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-04</td>
<td>Hydrated Lime</td>
<td>176-177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-05</td>
<td>Precast Concrete Right-of-Way Markers</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-06</td>
<td>Expendable Impact Attenuator</td>
<td>177-178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-07</td>
<td>Inertial Barrier Modules</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-08</td>
<td>Vacant</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-09</td>
<td>For Site Manager Use</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-10</td>
<td>Warm Mix Asphalt Technologies</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-11</td>
<td>Asphalt Release Agents</td>
<td>179-180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-12</td>
<td>Asphalt Roofing Felt</td>
<td>180-181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-13</td>
<td>Timber and Lumber</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-14</td>
<td>Stress Graded Timber and Lumber</td>
<td>181-182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-15</td>
<td>Gabions</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-16</td>
<td>Pigment for Colored Synthetic Resin Binder Concrete</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-17</td>
<td>Wood Cross Ties</td>
<td>182-183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-18</td>
<td>Thru 712-23 For Site Manager Use</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-24</td>
<td>Precast Concrete Permanent Survey Markers</td>
<td>183-184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-99</td>
<td>For Site Manager Use</td>
<td>184-185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION 713</strong></td>
<td>Landscape Development Materials</td>
<td>185-192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713-01</td>
<td>Topsoil</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713-02</td>
<td>Limestone</td>
<td>185-186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713-03</td>
<td>Fertilizer</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713-04</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>186-187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713-05</td>
<td>Mulch for Planting</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713-06</td>
<td>Trees, Shrubs and Vines</td>
<td>187-188</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
Section 700 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS (USC) May 1, 2020 VOLUME 4
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

713-07 ROLLED EROSION CONTROL PRODUCTS AND SOIL STABILIZERS .................................................. 182
713-08 MATERIALS FOR PROTECTION OF PLANTS ........................................................................... 184
713-09 MYCORRHIZAL FUNGI ............................................................................................................ 185
713-10 MOISTURE RETENTION ADDITIVE ...................................................................................... 186
713-11 MULCH FOR TURF ESTABLISMENT AND EROSION CONTROL ............................................. 186
713-12 MULCH ANCHORAGE .............................................................................................................. 188
713-13 PESTICIDES .......................................................................................................................... 188
713-14 SOD ........................................................................................................................................ 189
713-15 COMPOST ............................................................................................................................... 189
713-16 (VACANT) ............................................................................................................................. 191
713-17 SULFUR ................................................................................................................................ 191
713-18 WEED CONTROL BARRIERS ............................................................................................... 192
713-19 STRAW .................................................................................................................................. 192
713-20 SEDIMENT FILTER LOGS ...................................................................................................... 192
713-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE .................................................................................................. 193

## SECTION 714 - CURBING AND GUTTER .............................................................. 193

714-01 STONE CURB ......................................................................................................................... 193
714-02 AND 714-03 (VACANT) ......................................................................................................... 195
714-04 PRECAST CONCRETE CURB ............................................................................................... 195
714-05 (VACANT) ............................................................................................................................. 196
714-06 HOT MIX ASPHALT CURB ..................................................................................................... 196
714-07 PRECAST CONCRETE GUTTER ........................................................................................... 197
714-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE .................................................................................................. 197

## SECTION 715 - CASTINGS, FORGINGS AND METALS ........................................ 197

715-01 STRUCTURAL STEEL ............................................................................................................. 197
715-02 STEEL CASTINGS ................................................................................................................. 199
715-03 ALUMINUM CASTINGS ......................................................................................................... 201
715-04 WROUGHT ALUMINUM ........................................................................................................ 201
715-05 IRON CASTINGS .................................................................................................................... 202
715-06 STEEL FORGINGS ................................................................................................................ 202
715-07 PROOF LOADED IRON CASTINGS ....................................................................................... 202
715-08 (VACANT) ............................................................................................................................. 203
715-09 MALLEABLE IRON CASTINGS .............................................................................................. 203
715-10 (VACANT) ............................................................................................................................. 204
715-11 METAL BIN TYPE RETAINING WALL ................................................................................. 204
715-12 (VACANT) ............................................................................................................................. 205
715-13 PREFABRICATED ADJUSTMENT RINGS, FRAMES AND UTILITY VALVE RISERS FOR DRAINAGE UNITS, MANHOLES AND UTILITIES ........................................................................ 205
715-14 HIGH STRENGTH BOLTS, NUTS AND WASHERS ............................................................... 206
715-15 PINS AND ROLLERS .............................................................................................................. 207
715-16 STAINLESS STEEL CONNECTING PRODUCTS ..................................................................... 207
715-17 STEEL SHEETING ................................................................................................................ 208
715-18 SOLDIER PILES ...................................................................................................................... 209
715-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE .................................................................................................. 209

## SECTION 716 - BEARINGS AND EXPANSION PLATES ........................................ 209

716-01 THRU 716-02 (VACANT) ....................................................................................................... 209
716-03 POLYETHER URETHANE STRUCTURAL ELEMENT ............................................................ 209
716-04 POLYTETRAFLUOROETHYLENE SHEET AND STRIP .......................................................... 210
716-05 SELF-LUBRICATING BRONZE PLATES ................................................................................. 211
716-06 DISC-DESIGN STRUCTURAL BRIDGE BEARINGS .............................................................. 212
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>716-07</td>
<td>POT-DESIGN STRUCTURAL BRIDGE BEARINGS</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>716-08</td>
<td>(VACANT)</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>716-09</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>716-10</td>
<td>PLAIN ELASTOMERIC BRIDGE BEARINGS</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>716-11</td>
<td>STEEL LAMINATED ELASTOMERIC BRIDGE BEARINGS</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>716-12</td>
<td>ELASTOMERIC BRIDGE BEARINGS WITH EXTERNAL LOAD PLATES</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>716-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SECTION 717 - CONCRETE PROTECTIVE COATINGS</strong></td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>717-01</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>717-02</td>
<td>WATERPROOFING MEMBRANES</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>717-03</td>
<td>PENETRATING TYPE PROTECTIVE SEALERS</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>717-04</td>
<td>COATING TYPE PROTECTIVE SEALERS</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>717-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SECTION 718 - PRESTRESSED CONCRETE UNITS</strong></td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718-01</td>
<td>PRESTRESSED CONCRETE UNITS (STRUCTURAL)</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718-02</td>
<td>THRU 718-04 (VACANT)</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718-05</td>
<td>PRESTRESSED CONCRETE FORM UNITS</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718-06</td>
<td>HIGH PERFORMANCE CONCRETE FOR PRECAST AND PRESTRESSED BRIDGE</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BEAMS</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718-07</td>
<td>DIAPHRAGMS FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718-08</td>
<td>THRU 718-29 (VACANT)</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718-47</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718-50</td>
<td>THRU 718-53 FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718-61</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718-66</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718-96</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SECTION 719 - METAL COATINGS</strong></td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>719-01</td>
<td>GALVANIZED COATINGS AND REPAIR METHODS</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>719-02</td>
<td>ALUMINUM ANODIC COATINGS</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>719-03</td>
<td>ALUMINUM COATING (HOT DIP)</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>719-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SECTION 720 - PILES</strong></td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-01</td>
<td>UNTREATED TIMBER PILES</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-02</td>
<td>TREATED TIMBER PILES</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-03</td>
<td>CASINGS FOR CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE PILES</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-04</td>
<td>STEEL H-PILES</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-05</td>
<td>PILE SHOES</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-06</td>
<td>MECHANICAL PILE SPLICES</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SECTION 721 - CONCRETE ADHESIVES AND REPAIR MATERIALS</strong></td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>721-01</td>
<td>EPOXY RESIN SYSTEM</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>721-02</td>
<td>(VACANT)</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>721-03</td>
<td>EPOXY POLYSULFIDE GROUT</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>721-04</td>
<td>(VACANT)</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>721-05</td>
<td>EPOXY REPAIR PASTE</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>721-06</td>
<td>THRU 721-19 (VACANT)</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>721-20</td>
<td>RAPID HARDENING POLYMER CONCRETE</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>721-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SECTION 722 - WATER SUPPLY</strong></td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>722-01</td>
<td>Ductile Iron Water Pipe, Fittings and Encasement</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722-02</td>
<td>Steel Water Pipe and Fittings</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722-03</td>
<td>Concrete Water Pipe</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722-04</td>
<td>Water Valves and Hydrants</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722-05</td>
<td>Plastic Water Pipe and Fittings</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722-06</td>
<td>Water Service Pipe, Service Valves and Fittings</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722-07</td>
<td>Wedge Type Mechanical Restraint Glands</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722-08</td>
<td>Insulation for Water Mains</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>722-99</td>
<td>For Site Manager Use</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-01</td>
<td>Aluminum Light Standards and Arms</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-02</td>
<td>High Mast Pole, Head Frame Assembly with Luminaire Ring and Lowering Device</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-03</td>
<td>Portable Power Drive for High Mast Luminaire Lowering System</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-04</td>
<td>Thru 723-09 (Vacant)</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-10</td>
<td>Anchor Base (Aluminum)</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-11</td>
<td>Thru 723-14 (Vacant)</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-15</td>
<td>Breakaway Transformer Base (Aluminum)</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-16</td>
<td>Thru 723-18 (Vacant)</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-19</td>
<td>Rigid Plastic Conduit</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-20</td>
<td>Metal Steel Conduit, Zinc Coated</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-21</td>
<td>And 723-22 (Vacant)</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-23</td>
<td>P.V.C. Coated Galvanized Steel Conduit</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-24</td>
<td>Flexible Liquid-Tight Steel Conduit</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-25</td>
<td>And 723-26 (Vacant)</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-27</td>
<td>High Pressure Sodium Vapor Luminaire (Standard Mount)</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-28</td>
<td>Low Pressure Sodium Vapor Luminaire (Underdeck Mount)</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-29</td>
<td>High Pressure Sodium Vapor Luminaire (Underbridge Mount)</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-30</td>
<td>Mercury Vapor Luminaire (Standard Mount)</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-31</td>
<td>Mercury Vapor Luminaire (Underbridge Mount)</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-32</td>
<td>Thru 723-39 (Vacant)</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-40</td>
<td>Cast-Iron Junction Box</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-41</td>
<td>Thru 723-44 (Vacant)</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-45</td>
<td>Precast Reinforced Concrete Foundations and Pullboxes</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-46</td>
<td>Thru 723-49 (Vacant)</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-50</td>
<td>Photoelectric Control</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-51</td>
<td>Thru 723-59 (Vacant)</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-60</td>
<td>Anchor Bolts</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-61</td>
<td>Thru 723-69 (Vacant)</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-70</td>
<td>Single Conductor Cable</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-71</td>
<td>Single Conductor Direct Burial Cable</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-72</td>
<td>Thru 723-74 (Vacant)</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-75</td>
<td>Ground Wire</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>723-99</td>
<td>For Site Manager Use</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-01</td>
<td>Signal Cable</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-02</td>
<td>Span Wire</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-03</td>
<td>Traffic Signal Poles</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-04</td>
<td>Traffic Signal Heads</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-05</td>
<td>Thru 724-07 (Vacant)</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>724-08</td>
<td>SHIELDED COMMUNICATION CABLE</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-09</td>
<td>SIGNAL CABLE WITH INTEGRAL MESSENGER</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-10</td>
<td>SHIELDED COMMUNICATION CABLE WITH INTEGRAL MESSENGER</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-11</td>
<td>THRU 724-14 (VACANT)</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-15</td>
<td>FIRE PRE-EMPTION TELL-TALE LIGHT</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-16</td>
<td>THRU 724-19 (VACANT)</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-20</td>
<td>INDUCTANCE LOOP WIRE</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-21</td>
<td>SHIELDED LEAD-IN CABLE</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-22</td>
<td>ROADWAY LOOP EMBEDDING SEALER</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-23</td>
<td>PEDESTRIAN PUSH BUTTON AND SIGN</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SECTION 725 - MISCELLANEOUS METALS AND PLASTICS</strong></td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>725-01</td>
<td>COPPER FLASHING</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>725-02</td>
<td>STEPS FOR MANHOLES</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>725-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SECTION 726 - DETECTABLE WARNING UNITS</strong></td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>726-01</td>
<td>SURFACE-APPLIED DETECTABLE WARNING UNITS</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>726-02</td>
<td>EMBEDDED DETECTABLE WARNING UNITS</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SECTION 727 - PAVEMENT MARKING MATERIALS</strong></td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>727-01</td>
<td>EXTRUDED THERMOPLASTIC</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>727-02</td>
<td>REMOVABLE RAISED PAVEMENT MARKERS</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>727-03</td>
<td>EPOXY PAINT</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>727-04</td>
<td>PERMANENT PAVEMENT TAPE</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>727-05</td>
<td>GLASS BEADS FOR PAVEMENT MARKINGS</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>727-06</td>
<td>REMOVABLE PAVEMENT TAPE</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>727-07</td>
<td>REMOVABLE WET-NIGHT REFLECTIVE TAPE</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>727-08</td>
<td>PERMANENT WET-NIGHT REFLECTIVE TAPE</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>727-09</td>
<td>TRAFFIC PAINT</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>727-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SECTION 728 - COMPRESSIVE LOAD TRANSMITTING DEVICES</strong></td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>728-01</td>
<td>RUBBER IMPREGNATED WOVEN COTTON-POLYESTER FABRIC</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>728-02</td>
<td>RUBBER IMPREGNATED RANDOM FIBER PAD</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>728-03</td>
<td>PLAIN RUBBER PAD</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>728-04</td>
<td>SHEET LEAD</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>728-05</td>
<td>(VACANT)</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>728-06</td>
<td>SHEET GASKET (TREATED BOTH SIDES)</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>728-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>SECTION 729 - TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES</strong></td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-01</td>
<td>DRUMS</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-02</td>
<td>CONES</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-03</td>
<td>TEMPORARY TUBULAR MARKERS</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-04</td>
<td>VERTICAL PANELS</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-05</td>
<td>STOP/SLOW PADDLES</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-06</td>
<td>TYPE I CONSTRUCTION BARRICADES</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-07</td>
<td>TYPE II CONSTRUCTION BARRICADES</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-08</td>
<td>TYPE III CONSTRUCTION BARRICADES</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-09</td>
<td>TEMPORARY SIGN SUPPORTS</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-10</td>
<td>TEMPORARY IMPACT ATTENUATORS - REDIRECTIVE</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-11</td>
<td>TEMPORARY IMPACT ATTENUATORS - GATING</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-12</td>
<td>TRUCK-MOUNTED AND TRAILER MOUNTED IMPACT ATTENUATORS</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>729-13</td>
<td>TEMPORARY SAND BARRELS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-14</td>
<td>VEHICLE-ARRESTING SYSTEMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-15</td>
<td>ARROW PANELS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-16</td>
<td>PORTABLE VARIABLE MESSAGE SIGNS (PVMS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-17</td>
<td>TEMPORARY GLARE SCREENS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-18</td>
<td>WARNING LIGHTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-19</td>
<td>AUTOMATED FLAGGER ASSISTANCE DEVICES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-20</td>
<td>PORTABLE TRAFFIC SIGNALS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-21</td>
<td>TEMPORARY OVERLAY MARKERS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>729-22</td>
<td>TRUCK MOUNTED VARIABLE-MESSAGE SIGNS (TMVMS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION 730 - SIGNS AND DELINEATORS</strong></td>
<td>337-336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-01</td>
<td>ALUMINUM SIGN PANELS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-02</td>
<td>TEMPORARY PLYWOOD SIGN PANELS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-03</td>
<td>TEMPORARY RIGID LIGHTWEIGHT SIGN PANELS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-04</td>
<td>(VACANT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-05</td>
<td>REFLECTIVE SHEETING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-06</td>
<td>THRU 730-08 (VACANT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-09</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-10</td>
<td>ACRYLIC PLASTIC REFLEX REFLECTORS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-11</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-12</td>
<td>REFLECTORIZED SHEETING SIGN CHARACTERS (TYPE IV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-13</td>
<td>REFLECTORIZED SHEETING SIGN CHARACTERS (TYPE V)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-14</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-15</td>
<td>THRU 730-18 (VACANT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-19</td>
<td>TEMPORARY WOODEN SIGN POSTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-20</td>
<td>DELINEATOR, REFERENCE MARKER AND SNOWPLOWING MARKER POSTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-21</td>
<td>FLEXIBLE DELINEATOR POSTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-22</td>
<td>STIFFENERS, OVERHEAD BRACKETS AND MISCELLANEOUS HARDWARE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-23</td>
<td>FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC SIGN PANELS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-24</td>
<td>TYPE A SIGN SUPPORTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-25</td>
<td>TYPE B SIGN POSTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-26</td>
<td>BREAKAWAY BASES AND HINGE ASSEMBLIES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-27</td>
<td>PERMANENT VARIABLE MESSAGE SIGNS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION 731 - SUBSURFACE TENSILE ELEMENTS</strong></td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>731-01</td>
<td>SOIL NAIL TENDON ASSEMBLY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>731-02</td>
<td>GROUTED TIEBACK ASSEMBLY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>731-03</td>
<td>ROCK BOLT ASSEMBLY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>731-15</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION 732 - DRILLING</strong></td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-01</td>
<td>DRILL RIGS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-02</td>
<td>DRIVE PIPE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-03</td>
<td>CASING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-04</td>
<td>SAMPLERS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-05</td>
<td>THIN WALL SAMPLE TUBES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-06</td>
<td>CORING BITS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-07</td>
<td>SAMPLE STORAGE BAGS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-08</td>
<td>SAMPLE JARS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-09</td>
<td>JAR CARTONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-10</td>
<td>BOULDER AND ROCK CORE BOXES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

Section 700

STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS (USC) May 1, 2020

VOLUME 4
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>732-11</td>
<td>OPEN WELL PIEZOMETER</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-12</td>
<td>GROUT</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-13</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-99</td>
<td>FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>732-99</td>
<td>SECTION 733 - EARTHWORK MATERIAL</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-01</td>
<td>FLOWABLE FILM</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-02</td>
<td>MECHANICALLY STABILIZED EARTH SYSTEM BACKFILL MATERIAL</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-03</td>
<td>GEOSYNTHETICALLY REINFORCED SOIL SYSTEM SLOPE BACKFILL MATERIAL</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-04</td>
<td>SUBBASE COURSE</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-05</td>
<td>GLASS BACKFILL</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-06</td>
<td>RECLAIMED ASPHALT PAVEMENT FOR EARTHWORK AND SUBBASE</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-07</td>
<td>RECYCLED PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE AGGREGATE</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-08</td>
<td>EMBANKMENT IN PLACE</td>
<td>370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-09</td>
<td>SELECT BORROW</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-10</td>
<td>SELECT FILL</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-11</td>
<td>SELECT GRANULAR FILL</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-12</td>
<td>SELECT GRANULAR FILL SLOPE PROTECTION</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-13</td>
<td>SELECT GRANULAR SUBGRADE</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-14</td>
<td>SELECT STRUCTURE FILL</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-15</td>
<td>SAND BACKFILL</td>
<td>376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-16</td>
<td>WINTER EARTHWORK</td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-17</td>
<td>SURFACE SETTLEMENT GAUGE</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-18</td>
<td>SETTLEMENT ROD</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-19</td>
<td>RECYCLED MATERIALS APPROVED FOR USE AS EARTHWORK MATERIAL</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-20</td>
<td>UNDERDRAIN FILTER MATERIAL</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-21</td>
<td>STONE FILLING</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-22</td>
<td>RIP-RAP</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>733-23</td>
<td>BEDDING MATERIAL</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>734-01</td>
<td>SECTION 734 - CONCRETE SLAB OVERLAYS</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>735-01</td>
<td>SECTION 735 - CONCRETE CYLINDER CURING BOX</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>736-01</td>
<td>SECTION 736 - PERMANENT CORRUGATED METAL FORMS FOR BRIDGE SLABS</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>737-01</td>
<td>SECTION 737 - GEOSYNTHE TOXICANTS</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>737-02</td>
<td>GEOMEMBRANES</td>
<td>390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>737-03</td>
<td>PREFABRICATED VERTICAL DRAINS</td>
<td>395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>737-04</td>
<td>PREFABRICATED COMPOSITE STRUCTURAL DRAINS</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>737-05</td>
<td>PREFABRICATED COMPOSITE INTEGRAL ABUTMENT DRAINS</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>737-06</td>
<td>PREFABRICATED COMPOSITE EDGE DRAINS</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>737-07</td>
<td>GEOGRIDS</td>
<td>399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>737-08</td>
<td>GEOCELLS</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>737-09</td>
<td>GEOSYNTHETIC FIBERS</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>738-THRU</td>
<td>SECTIONS 738 THRU 739 (VACANT)</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>740-</td>
<td>SECTION 740 – FOR SITE MANAGER USE</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE OF CONTENTS

740-01 THRU 740-04 FOR SITE MANAGER USE .......................................................... 401
SECTION 741 – FOR SITE MANAGER USE ........................................................... 401
741-01 THRU 740-04 FOR SITE MANAGER USE .................................................... 401
SECTIONS 742 THRU 794 (VACANT) ...................................................................... 402
SECTION 795 – FOR SITE MANAGER USE ....................................................... 402
Section 700
MATERIALS and MANUFACTURING

SECTION 701 - HYDRAULIC CEMENTS

701-01 PORTLAND CEMENT

SCOPE. This specification covers non-air entrained cements defined by AASHTO M 85.

For uniformity with recognized industry terminology, Types I, II, II(MH) III, IV, V and VI may also be designated as Types 1, 2, 2(MH), 3, 4, 5 and 6 respectively. Any cement designated with a combined classification, such as Type I/II, must meet the requirements of both types being offered. The type of cement to be used will be as shown in the plans or specifications for each contract. When specified in the contract documents, Type VI cement shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M 85-Type I cement, and the cement color shall be white.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. All types of cement shall conform to the chemical and physical requirements of those respective types as contained in AASHTO M 85 with the following:

Any cement possessing equivalent alkali contents ($Na_2O + 0.658 K_2O$) in excess of 0.70% will be considered “high alkali” cement, and will be restricted for use as per the requirements of Section 501. The Department reserves the right to impose the “Optional Chemical and Physical Requirements” of AASHTO M 85 such as Equivalent Alkalies (AASHTO T-105) and False Set (AASHTO T-186). The temperature of the cement, measured immediately prior to entering the mixing unit at a batching facility, shall not exceed 170°F.

MANUFACTURER. The manufacturer shall declare the commercial name of the additions used and the amount thereof in writing to the Materials Bureau.

STORAGE. The cement shall be stored at its source of supply in approved weather-tight silos. Facilities shall be provided for maintaining such silos under Department seal control when and as directed by the Materials Bureau. All silos shall be completely empty and clean before cement is deposited therein unless the silo contains Department approved cement of the same type.

Cement remaining in bulk storage at the mill and/or distribution terminal for a period greater than one year after completion of tests shall be re-sampled and retested before shipment. However, cement which has been in bulk storage at mills and/or distribution terminals more than two years from the time of original manufacture shall not be used. No cement stored by the Contractor over the winter shall be used until retested by the Materials Bureau. Bagged cement shall not be stored at mill or terminal locations for a period longer 2 calendar years from the date of manufacture when preparing an order for shipment.

SHIPMENT. All shipments of cement shall be made in accordance with Materials Method (MM) 10 or other procedural directives issued by the Materials Bureau. Conveyances for bulk cement shipment shall be of a type approved by the Department. The compartments of all such conveyances shall be completely empty and clean before any cement is loaded therein. Cement may be shipped in paper bags which
conform to industry standards which have the manufacturer’s brand name, type of cement, and the date of manufacture clearly printed on the outside of the package.

INSPECTION AND TESTING. All inspection and testing shall be in accordance with MM 10 or other procedural directives issued by the Materials Bureau. When required by the Materials Bureau, cement shall be sampled by means of an automatic sampling device constructed so as to obtain continuous samples across the full stream of cement and deliver such samples into a sealed container approved by the Materials Bureau. Tests for chemical and physical properties shall be in accordance with test methods stipulated by AASHTO M 85.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Portland cement will be considered for acceptance at mill or terminal locations in accordance with MM 10 or other procedural directives issued by the Materials Bureau.

701-02 MASONRY AND MORTAR CEMENT

SCOPE. Masonry and mortar cement, used to make masonry mortar.

MATERIALS

Masonry Cement ASTM C91
Mortar Cement ASTM C1329

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Engineer will base acceptance on each package being labeled to show ASTM conformance and its contents being in good condition.

701-03 BLENDED PORTLAND CEMENT

SCOPE. This specification covers non-air entrained Blended Portland cement for use in Portland cement concrete using Portland cement, Fly ash, Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag (GGBFS), Microsilica (Silica Fume), High Reactivity Pozzolan (HRP) or Limestone.

GENERAL. Blended Portland cements shall meet the chemical and physical requirements of AASHTO M 240, unless otherwise noted herein, or as modified in the project plans or specifications. The composition of the blended cement, including the percent of each constituent, shall be clearly stated on the product certification. Any blended cement proposed for use shall be appropriately proportioned with the desired constituents to meet the applicable cementitious requirements of the specified concrete mix design.

Portland-Pozzolan Cement, TYPE IP. A product meeting the requirements of AASHTO M 240 Type IP where the pozzolan portion of the blend is comprised of Fly Ash (§711-10) meeting AASHTO M 295, Microsilica (§711-11) meeting AASHTO M 307, or HRP (§711-14) meeting AASHTO M 321. Typical Type IP blended cements specified for use are:

TYPE IP (21). Whereas the pozzolan portion of the blended product is comprised of 21% (by weight) of either of the following: Class C, F or N Pozzolan meeting the requirements of AASHTO M 295.

TYPE IP (8). Whereas the pozzolan portion of the blended product is comprised of 8% (by weight) of either of the following: Microsilica (§711-11), or HRP (§711-14).

Portland-Blast Furnace Slag Cement, TYPE IS. A product meeting the requirements of AASHTO M 240 Type IS, where the pozzolan portion of the blend is comprised of Ground Granulated Blast
Furnace Slag (GGBFS) meeting the requirements of AASHTO M 302 (§711-12). The amount of GGBFS is limited to 25% of the total weight of blended product.

**Portland-Limestone Cement, TYPE IL.** A product meeting the requirements of AASHTO M 240 Type IL, where the Portland cement is blended with Limestone meeting the requirements of AASHTO M 240.

**Ternary Blend Cement, TYPE IT.** A product meeting the requirements of AASHTO M 240 Type IT, where Portland cement is blended with two pozzolans or blended with a combination of pozzolan and Limestone. Such blends may consist of a combination of Portland-Blast Furnace Slag cement, (meeting the requirements of AASHTO M 240 Type IS), and a third pozzolan, meeting the requirements of either; Fly Ash (§711-10), Microsilica (§711-11), HRP (§711-14) or Limestone (AASHTO M 240).

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The individual constituents shall meet the following:

- **Portland Cement** 701-01 *Type II or Type II (MH) only*
- **Fly Ash** 711-10
- **Microsilica (Silica Fume)** 711-11
- **Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag** 711-12
- **High Reactivity Pozzolan (HRP)** 711-14
- **Limestone** AASHTO M 240

The manufacturer shall supply supporting documentation as noted in AASHTO M 240. Blended cement possessing equivalent alkali contents (Na$_2$O + 0.658 K$_2$O) in excess of 0.70% will be considered “high alkali” cement, and will be restricted for use as per the requirements of § 501. The blended cement shall remain uniform throughout the blending, shipping and storage process until it is incorporated into the concrete mixture.

**STORAGE.** The blended cement shall be stored at its source of supply in approved weather-tight silos. Provisions for maintaining the designated silos under Department seal control will be required when directed by the Materials Bureau. All silos shall be completely empty and clean before blended cement is deposited therein unless the silo contains Department approved blended cement of the same type. Blended cement remaining in bulk storage at the mill, blending facility and/or distribution terminal for a period greater than one year after completion of laboratory testing must be re-sampled and tested before shipment. Blended cement that has been in storage at the mill, blending facility or distribution terminal for a period of two years from the original date of cement manufacture may not be used. Blended cement that has been stored by the supplier or batching facility over the winter must be tested by the Materials Bureau. Bagged blended cements shall not be stored at mill or terminal locations for a period longer than two calendar years from the date of blending when preparing an order for shipment.

**SHIPMENT.** All shipments of blended cements shall be in accordance with Materials Method (MM) 10 or other procedural directives issued by the Materials Bureau. Conveyances for bulk shipment must be of a type approved by the Department. The compartments of all such conveyances must be completely empty and clean before any blended cement is loaded therein. Blended cement may be shipped in paper bags which conform to industry standards which have the manufacturer’s brand name, type of cement, and the date of manufacture plainly printed on the outside of the package.

**INSPECTION AND TESTING.** All inspection and testing shall be in accordance with MM 10 or other procedural directives issued by the Materials Bureau. When required by the Materials Bureau, blended cement shall be sampled by means of an automatic sampling device, constructed to obtain continuous...
samples across the full stream of blended cement, and deliver such samples into a sealed container approved by the Materials Bureau. Testing of chemical and physical properties shall be in accordance with the methods referenced in the appropriate AASHTO standards. Samples which are obtained for Department testing shall be retained for a period of one calendar year after the date of completion of testing.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Blended cement will be considered for acceptance at mill or terminal locations in accordance with MM 10 or other procedural directives issued by the Department.

**701-04 CONCRETE REPAIR MATERIAL**

**SCOPE.** The material covered in this specification is generally used for shallow repairs of portland cement concrete, including repair of precast concrete products, such as pipe, cribbing, manholes, etc…

**GENERAL.** The use of this material is limited to repair areas smaller than 5 ft² and not deeper than 2 in. This material is meant to be applied and finished with a trowel in a horizontal position. The Department will test the material in accordance with Test Method NY 701-13P,C following the manufacturer's proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package. Material meeting the requirements of this specification will be placed on the Approved List. For field use, follow the manufacturers mixing and curing recommendations.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The material shall be a prepackaged dry component: to which water or emulsified compound is added, used for concrete repair, containing no metallic expansion aides, to which no aggregate may be added, meeting the requirements of Table 701-04. When being used for aesthetic purposes the material’s color shall be within the Munsell Neutral Scale range stated in Table 701-04.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 701-04 CONCRETE REPAIR MATERIAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TEST REQUIREMENT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Set (minutes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expansion (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contraction (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Day Compressive Strength (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Day Compressive Strength (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 Day Compressive Strength (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Day Bond Strength (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freeze/Thaw Loss % (25 cycles)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Chloride Content (% by weight)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Sulfate Content (% by weight)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color, Munsell Neutral Scale</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Application for material approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer. The application shall be accompanied by a labeled 50 lb production sample of the
product; however the Materials Bureau will approve other packaging quantities on a case-by-case basis. The Department will test the material according to Test Method NY 701-13P,C following the manufacturer's proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package. Upon approval, the product brand name, manufacturing location and shelf life will be placed on the Approved List. The Department must receive a letter from the manufacturer annually certifying that no changes have been made in the formulation, manufacturing process, or manufacturing location. In the event that a letter is not received, the product may be removed from the Approved List. Furthermore, the material may be removed from the Approved List at any time if the Department is not notified in writing of any material changes as stated above. The Department reserves the right to sample and test the material at any time.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Products will be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location appearing on the Approved List. Such products will then be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location printed on the sealed, non-reusable container along with the month and year (i.e. 05/2011) of when the material was manufactured. The manufacturer is required to print the shelf life on the container if it is less than 12 months. The expiration date of acceptance for this material shall be one calendar year from the date of manufacture or as stated in the Approved List, whichever is less.

**701-05 CONCRETE GROUTING AND ANCHORING MATERIAL**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the requirements for grouting material used to grout anchor bolts, dowels and other items in portland cement concrete. This material can also be used for forming mortar pads under bridge rail supports.

**GENERAL.** This material should not be used in layers thicker than 2 in. The Department will test the material according to Test Method NY 701-11P,C following the manufacturer's proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package. Material meeting the requirements of this specification will be placed on the Approved List. For field use, follow the manufacturers mixing and curing recommendations.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The material shall be a prepackaged, dry component: to which water or emulsified compound is added, used for concrete repair, containing no metallic expansion aides, to which no aggregate may be added, meeting the requirements of Table 701-05.

| TABLE 701-05 CONCRETE GROUTING AND ANCHORING MATERIAL |
|---------------------------------|-----|-----|
| TEST REQUIREMENT               | Min. | Max. |
| Initial Set (minutes)          | 30   | -    |
| Expansion (%)                  | -    | 0.4  |
| Contraction (%)                | -    | 0.0  |
| 1 Day Compressive Strength (psi)| 3000 | -    |
| 7 Day Compressive Strength (psi)| 6000 | -    |
| Pullout Strength (lbs)         | 10000| -    |
| Freeze-Thaw Loss % (25 cycles) | -    | 1.0  |
| Total Chloride Content (% by weight)| - | 0.05 |
| Total Sulfate Content (% by weight)| - | 5.0  |
**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Application for material approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer. The application shall be accompanied by a labeled 50 lb production sample of the product; however the Materials Bureau will approve other packaging quantities on a case-by-case basis. The Department will test the material according to Test Method NY 701-11P,C following the manufacturer's proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package. Upon approval, the product brand name, manufacturing location and shelf life will be placed on the Approved List. The Department must receive a letter from the manufacturer annually certifying that no changes have been made in the formulation, manufacturing process, or manufacturing location. In the event that a letter is not received, the product may be removed from the Approved List. Furthermore, the material may be removed from the Approved List at any time if the Department is not notified in writing of any material changes as stated above. The Department reserves the right to sample and test the material at any time.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Products will be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location appearing on the Approved List. Such products will then be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location printed on the sealed, non reusable container along with the month and year (i.e. 05/2011) of when the material was manufactured. The manufacturer is required to print the shelf life on the container if it is less than 12 months. The expiration date of acceptance for this material shall be one calendar year from the date of manufacture or as stated in the Approved List, whichever is less.

**701-06 SHEAR KEY GROUT**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the requirements for grout to be placed in shear keys between precast concrete structural units.

**GENERAL.** The material must be flowable to fill the shear key with no voids. The Department will test the material in accordance with Test Method NY 701-12P,C following the manufacturer's proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package. Material meeting the requirements of this specification will be placed on the Approved List. The Approved List titled: Shear Key Grout will state the precise water-grout ratio by weight. This ratio shall not be altered. For field use, follow the manufacturers mixing and curing recommendations.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The material shall be a prepackaged dry component: to which water or emulsified compound is added, used for concrete repair, containing no metallic expansion aides, to which no aggregate may be added. The material must meet the shear key pourability test as per Test Method NY 701-12P,C and the requirements of Table 701-06.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 701-06 SHEAR KEY GROUT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TEST REQUIREMENT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Set (minutes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expansion (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contraction (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Day Compressive Strength (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freeze-Thaw Loss % (25 cycles)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Chloride Content (% by weight)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BASIS OF APPROVAL. Application for material approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer. The application shall be accompanied by a labeled 50 lb production sample of the product; however the Materials Bureau will approve other packaging quantities on a case-by-case basis. The Department will test the material according to Test Method NY 701-12P,C following the manufacturer's proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package. Upon approval, the product brand name, manufacturing location and shelf life will be placed on the Approved List. The Department must receive a letter from the manufacturer annually certifying that no changes have been made in the formulation, manufacturing process, or manufacturing location. In the event that a letter is not received, the product may be removed from the Approved List. Furthermore, the material may be removed from the Approved List at any time if the Department is not notified in writing of any material changes as stated above. The Department reserves the right to sample and test the material at any time.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Products will be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location appearing on the Approved List. Such products will then be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location printed on the sealed, non reusable container along with the month and year (i.e. 05/2011) of when the material was manufactured. The manufacturer is required to print the shelf life on the container if it is less than 12 months. The expiration date of acceptance for this material shall be one calendar year from the date of manufacture or as stated in the Approved List, whichever is less.

701-07 ANCHORING MATERIALS - CHEMICALLY CURING

SCOPE. This specification covers polymer anchoring materials for installing anchor bolts and other miscellaneous items in concrete.

GENERAL. The material shall be a non-metallic, non-shrink polymer resin supplied in prepackaged and/or premeasured containers. It shall contain no rust or corrosion promoting agents and shall be moisture insensitive. Packaged stability of each component in original unopened containers stored in temperatures between 40°F and 90°F shall be a minimum of six months. The mixing instructions, setting time and expiration date of the material shall appear on each container.

CHEMICAL RESISTANCE. Cured sealer shall be resistant to most chemicals and solvents. The manufacturer shall certify that the sealant meets the following chemical resistances when tested in accordance with ASTM D471 (70°F for 24 hours):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical</th>
<th>Resistance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gasoline</td>
<td>Slight Swell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic Brake Fluid</td>
<td>No Effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motor Oil</td>
<td>No Effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium Chloride (5%)</td>
<td>No Effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium Chloride (5%)</td>
<td>No Effect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Manufacturers must supply test results performed in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau, using 1 inch diameter fully threaded rods embedded 10 inches deep in unreinforced concrete. Results from testing using lesser embedment depths will be accepted provided they achieve the pullout strength required for the 10 inch embedment. Testing must be performed by an independent testing agency and approved by the Materials Bureau. A minimum of three tests shall be performed and each test result must meet the minimum required pullout value.
Concrete with a compressive strength greater than 4000 psi is recommended. The minimum required pullout values for various concrete strengths are shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concrete Strength (psi)</th>
<th>≤ 4000</th>
<th>4500</th>
<th>5000</th>
<th>5500</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Pullout Load (lb)</td>
<td>51,120</td>
<td>54,225</td>
<td>57,150</td>
<td>59,940</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Materials Bureau will inform the Manufacturer when the test results are accepted. The Manufacturer shall then supply six 5/8 inch diameter fully threaded rods, a minimum of 7 inches long, and sufficient material for testing by the Materials Bureau. Tensile pullout testing will be performed on the 5/8 inch diameter rods embedded 4 inches deep in unreinforced concrete. Two sets of three tests shall be performed and each test shall meet the minimum required load. The minimum required pullout values for various concrete strengths are shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concrete Strength (psi)</th>
<th>4000</th>
<th>4500</th>
<th>5000</th>
<th>5500</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Pullout Load (lb)</td>
<td>8,593</td>
<td>9,113</td>
<td>9,630</td>
<td>10,080</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Copies of Procedural Directives may be obtained from the Materials Bureau upon request.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Application for approval of Anchoring Materials - Chemically Curing shall be made by the manufacturer or supplier to the Materials Bureau and shall include the material safety data sheets and independent test data. The manufacturer or supplier shall prepare and submit the appropriate material in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau and the requirements of this specification. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the name of the product will be placed on the Approved List. Such product will then be accepted on the basis of the brand name labeled on the container.

### 701-08 VERTICAL AND OVERHEAD REPAIR MATERIAL

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the requirements for Vertical and Overhead Repair Material for placement in structural concrete repairs.

**GENERAL.** The use of this material is limited to repair areas smaller than 4 ft² and not deeper than 2 in, and is meant to be applied and finished with a trowel. The Materials Bureau will consider other application techniques on a case by case basis. The Department will test the material in accordance with Test Method NY 701-17P,C following the manufacturer's proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package. Material meeting the requirements of this specification will be placed on the Approved List. For field use, follow the manufacturers mixing and curing recommendations.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The material shall be a prepackaged dry component: to which water or emulsified compound is added, used for concrete repair, containing no metallic expansion aides, to which no aggregate may be added. The material shall be able to be placed in layers of at least 1 inch on overhead applications without the use of formwork or anchoring devices. When being used for aesthetic purposes the material’s color shall be within the Munsell Neutral Scale range stated in Table 701-08.

| TABLE 701-08 VERTICAL AND OVERHEAD REPAIR MATERIAL |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------|--------|
| TEST REQUIREMENT                              | Min.    | Max.   |
| Initial Set (minutes)                         | 15       | -      |
| Expansion (%)                                 | -        | 0.4    |
### BASIS OF APPROVAL

Application for material approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer. The application shall be accompanied by a labeled 50 lb production sample of the product; however, the Materials Bureau will approve other packaging quantities on a case-by-case basis. The Department will test the material according to Test Method NY 701-17P,C following the manufacturer’s proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package. Upon approval, the product brand name, manufacturing location and shelf life will be placed on the Approved List. The Department must receive a letter from the manufacturer annually certifying that no changes have been made in the formulation, manufacturing process, or manufacturing location. In the event that a letter is not received, the product may be removed from the Approved List. Furthermore, the material may be removed from the Approved List at any time if the Department is not notified in writing of any material changes as stated above. The Department reserves the right to sample and test the material at any time.

### BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE

Products will be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location appearing on the Approved List. Such products will then be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location printed on the sealed, non-reusable container along with the month and year (i.e. 05/2011) of when the material was manufactured. The manufacturer is required to print the shelf life on the container if it is less than 12 months. The expiration date of acceptance for this material shall be one calendar year from the date of manufacture or as stated in the Approved List, whichever is less.

### 701-09 CONCRETE REPAIR MATERIAL - RAPID HARDENING

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the requirements for material to repair portland cement concrete where rapid strength gain is required.

**GENERAL.** Its use is limited to areas no larger than 10 ft² or 5 ft³ in volume for a single patch. This material is intended for partial or full depth repairs. This material may be extended with dried Department approved CA1 coarse aggregate. This product must provide the ability to accept traffic loads within 1 hour of placement. The Department will test the material neat except where noted in Table 701-09 to test neat and extended according to Test Method NY 701-21P,C following the manufacturer’s proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package. Material meeting the requirements of this specification when tested (Neat and Extended), will be placed on the Approved List.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** This material shall be a prepackaged, multi-component powdered material, containing no metallic expansion aides, and must remain workable when a minimum of 60% extended by weight with Department approved CA1 coarse aggregate and meets the requirements of Table 701-09. When being used for aesthetic purposes the material’s color shall be within the Munsell Neutral Scale range stated in Table 701-09.

#### Requirements Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirement</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contraction (%)</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Day Compressive Strength (psi)</td>
<td>4000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 Day Compressive Strength (psi)</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Day Bond Strength (psi)</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freeze-Thaw Loss % (25 cycles)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Chloride Content (% by weight)</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Sulfate Content (% by weight)</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color, Munsell Neutral Scale</td>
<td>4.0 - 8.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 701-09 CONCRETE REPAIR MATERIAL - RAPID HARDENING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TEST REQUIREMENT</th>
<th>Min.</th>
<th>Max.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Set (minutes)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expansion (%)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contraction (%)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Hour Compressive Strength (psi) **</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Hour Compressive Strength (psi) **</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Day Compressive Strength (psi)</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Day Bond Strength (psi)</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freeze-Thaw Loss % (25 cycles) **</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Chloride Content (% by weight)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Sulfate Content (% by weight)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color, Munsell Neutral Scale</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

** Neat and Extended

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Application for material approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer. The application shall be accompanied by a labeled 50 lb production sample of the product; however, the Materials Bureau will approve other packaging quantities on a case-by-case basis. The Department will test the material according to Test Method NY 701-21P,C following the manufacturer’s proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package. Upon approval, the product brand name, manufacturing location and shelf life will be placed on the Approved List. The Department must receive a letter from the manufacturer annually certifying that no changes have been made in the formulation, manufacturing process, or manufacturing location. In the event that a letter is not received, the product may be removed from the Approved List. Furthermore, the material may be removed from the Approved List at any time if the Department is not notified in writing of any material changes as stated above. The Department reserves the right to sample and test the material at any time.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Products will be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location appearing on the Approved List. Such products will then be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location printed on the sealed, non reusable container along with the month and year (i.e. 05/2011) of when the material was manufactured. The manufacturer is required to print the shelf life on the container if it is less than 12 months. The expiration date of acceptance for this material shall be one calendar year from the date of manufacture or as stated in the Approved List, whichever is less.

**701-10 DUCT GROUTING MATERIAL (STRUCTURES)**

**SCOPE.** Requirements for grout used to fill the post-tensioning ducts in concrete bridge elements.

**GENERAL.** For field use, follow the manufacturer’s mixing and curing recommendations. Material meeting the requirements of this specification when tested will be placed on the Approved List.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Prepackaged, cementitious material containing no metallic expansion aides that, when mixed with water at manufacturer's stated water/cement material ratio (w/c ≤ 0.40), and meets the requirements of Table 701-10. The Department will test the material according to NYSDOT Test Method 701-18 P,C, following the manufacturer's proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 701-10 DUCT GROUTING MATERIAL (STRUCTURES)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TEST REQUIREMENT</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Set (hours)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expansion (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contraction (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 Hour Compressive Strength (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Day Compressive Strength (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 Day Compressive Strength (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bleed Water (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permeability (coulombs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluidity efflux time, seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Chloride Content (% by weight)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Sulfate Content (% by weight)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THIXOTROPIC GROUTS. If used, modify the fluidity test as follows:
A) Fluidity efflux time - 5 to 30 seconds for a 0.264 gallon (34 fl oz.) discharge of grout.
B) Allow the grout to idle for 30 minutes; then remix it for 30 seconds. Efflux time immediately after remixing ≤ 30 seconds.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Application for material approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer. The application shall be accompanied by a labeled 50 lb production sample of the product; however the Materials Bureau will approve other packaging quantities on a case-by-case basis. The Department will test the material according to Test Method NY 701-18P,C following the manufacturer's proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package. Upon approval, the product brand name, manufacturing location and shelf life will be placed on the Approved List. The Department must receive a letter from the manufacturer annually certifying that no changes have been made in the formulation, manufacturing process, or manufacturing location. In the event that a letter is not received, the product may be removed from the Approved List. Furthermore, the material may be removed from the Approved List at any time if the Department is not notified in writing of any material changes as stated above. The Department reserves the right to sample and test the material at any time.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Products will be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location appearing on the Approved List. Such products will then be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location printed on the sealed, non reusable container along with the month and year (i.e. 05/2011) of when the material was manufactured. The manufacturer is required to print the shelf life on the container if it is less than 12 months. The expiration date of acceptance for
this material shall be one calendar year from the date of manufacture or as stated in the Approved List, whichever is less.

701-11 ELASTOMERIC CONCRETE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for elastomeric concrete.

GENERAL. Supply elastomeric concrete components and primer materials in prepackaged and/or premeasured containers with the product name, manufacturer, VOC content, and mixing instructions clearly marked on each container.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

Physical Test Requirements. Elastomeric concrete will conform to the following physical test requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TESTS</th>
<th>PROCEDURE</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resilience</td>
<td>ASTM C579-01</td>
<td>70%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-Hr. Compressive Strength</td>
<td>ASTM C579-01 (modified)</td>
<td>500 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24-Hr. Compressive Strength</td>
<td>ASTM C579-01 (modified)</td>
<td>2000 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-Day Tensile</td>
<td>ASTM D638</td>
<td>150 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7- Day Tear</td>
<td>ASTM D624</td>
<td>40 lb/in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pot Life</td>
<td>Gardco GT-S Gel Timer</td>
<td>5 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Materials Details. The manufacturer will submit Material Detail Sheets to the Materials Bureau for approval. Upon approval, the manufacturer, product name, and the Material Detail Number will be placed on the Department’s Approved List.

Field Evaluation. To maintain Approved List status, the elastomeric concrete will be evaluated by the Materials Bureau or a designated representative at six-month intervals for a period of two years from the date of installation. If the material is performing as designed at the end of the two-year evaluation approved status will continue.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer=s name appearing on the Department=s Approved List for Materials and Equipment. The supplier shall provide two copies of the Approved Material Detail Sheets and Material Safety Data Sheets through the Contractor to the Engineer as part of the evidence of acceptability for the material at least 14 days prior to shipment of the product to the job site.

701-12 CONCRETE REPAIR MATERIAL - HIGH EARLY STRENGTH

SCOPE. This specification covers a high early strength repair material, consisting of a dry component made up of cementing medium and fine aggregate to which water or an emulsified compound is added. The resulting mixture is generally used in repair of portland cement concrete pavement.

GENERAL. This material is intended for partial or full depth repairs, has the ability to be extended with Department approved CA1 aggregate, and provide at least 30 minutes of working time. This product must provide the ability to accept traffic loads within 3 hours of placement. For field use, follow the
manufacturer’s mixing and curing recommendations. Material meeting the requirements of this specification when tested (neat and extended), will be placed on the Approved List.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The material shall be a prepackaged, multi-component powdered material, used for concrete repair, containing no metallic expansion aides. The product must remain workable when extended with up to 60% by weight with coarse aggregate, and meet the requirements of Table 701-12. When being used for aesthetic purposes the material’s color shall be within the Munsell Neutral Scale range stated in Table 701-12.

**TABLE 701-12**
**CONCRETE REPAIR MATERIAL - HIGH EARLY STRENGTH**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TEST REQUIREMENT</th>
<th>Min.</th>
<th>Max.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Set (minutes)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expansion (%)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contraction (%)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Hour Compressive Strength (psi) **</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Day Compressive Strength (psi) **</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Day Bond Strength (psi)</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freeze-Thaw Loss % (25 cycles)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Chloride Content (% by weight)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Sulfate Content (% by weight)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color, Munsell Neutral Scale</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Application for material approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer. The application shall be accompanied by a labeled 50 lb production sample of the product; however the Materials Bureau will approve other packaging quantities on a case-by-case basis. The Department will test the material according to Test Method NY 701-21P.C following the manufacturer's proportioning and mixing instructions printed on the package. Upon approval, the product brand name, manufacturing location and shelf life will be placed on the Approved List. The Department must receive a letter from the manufacturer annually certifying that no changes have been made in the formulation, manufacturing process, or manufacturing location. In the event that a letter is not received, the product may be removed from the Approved List. Furthermore, the material may be removed from the Approved List at any time if the Department is not notified in writing of any material changes as stated above. The Department reserves the right to sample and test the material at any time.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Products will be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location appearing on the Approved List. Such products will then be accepted on the basis of the brand name and manufacturing location printed on the sealed, non reusable container along with the month and year (i.e. 05/2011) of when the material was manufactured. The manufacturer is required to print the shelf life on the container if it is less than 12 months. The expiration date of acceptance for this material shall be one calendar year from the date of manufacture or as stated in the Approved List, whichever is less.
701-13 RAPID HARDENING HYDRAULIC CEMENT

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for Rapid Hardening Hydraulic Cement for use in concrete placements where the required accelerated strength cannot be achieved using ordinary Portland Cement mixtures.

GENERAL. Supply the Rapid Hardening Hydraulic Cement in bulk form as a dry powder. When necessary for testing purposes, or in special placement situations, the product may be supplied in bags or barrels. Any Rapid Hardening Hydraulic Cement which contains air entraining or other additives or admixtures will be subject to use limitations as directed by the Materials Bureau.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. For approved list consideration, submit documentation showing conformance to ASTM C1600 “Standard Specification for Rapid Hardening Hydraulic Cement”. The chemical composition and declaration of additives must be furnished when requested by the Department.

MONITOR SAMPLING. For monitor sampling of previously approved materials, follow the same procedures as directed in Materials Method 10 for High Reactivity Pozzolans. The Department will monitor the product for conformity with the physical and chemical requirements at its discretion.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have products considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall submit one 5 gallon sample of the cement for each manufacturing or supply location to the Materials Bureau. Provide a Facility Report for each manufacturing or supply location. The report will be required prior to Departments evaluation of the product. Details of the Facility Report outline plan are available by contacting the Materials Bureau. If the material will be manufactured or supplied from multiple locations, submit a separate sample and Facility Report for each location. Submit laboratory test results from a testing laboratory that is accepted by the Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) indicating conformance to this specification. For each sample submitted for approved list evaluation, provide a certification declaring conformance to this specification, the production lot number, the date of manufacture, the date tested, a manufacturer’s label clearly stating the product and manufacturer’s name and a Material Safety Data Sheet. The Department will test the submitted sample in accordance with these specifications and Department instructions. Test procedures are available from the Materials Bureau upon request. Upon approval, the name of the manufacturer and the product will be placed on the Approved List. Any use limitations assigned to the product will be designated on the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Each shipment will be considered for acceptance where it will be incorporated into the concrete. Acceptance will be based on the product name appearing on the Approved List, and a material certification indicating conformance to this specification. The Department reserves the right to monitor the performance of any previously approved cementitious material from actual concrete production. If the monitor test results indicate that the sampled product does not meet this specification, the concrete incorporating the product represented by the sample may be rejected.

701-14 CHEMICALLY CURING ADHESIVES FOR PCC PAVEMENT APPLICATIONS

SCOPE. This specification covers polymer anchoring materials for use in non-tension or non-continuous loading applications, specifically, the installation of dowel bars and longitudinal tie bars in Portland Cement Concrete (PCC) pavements.

GENERAL. The material shall be a non-metallic, non-shrink polymer resin supplied in prepackaged and/or premeasured containers. It shall contain no rust or corrosion promoting agents and shall be moisture insensitive. Packaged stability of each component in original unopened containers stored in temperatures
between 40°F and 90°F shall be a minimum of six months. The mixing instructions, setting time and expiration date of the material shall appear on each container.

**CHEMICAL RESISTANCE.** Cured adhesive shall be resistant to most chemical reagents. The manufacturer shall certify that the adhesive meets the following chemical resistances when tested in accordance with ASTM D543 Method A:

- Gasoline
- Hydraulic Brake Fluid
- Motor Oil
- Sodium Chloride (5%)
- Calcium Chloride (5%)

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Manufacturers shall supply independent test results meeting the following criteria:

**Pullout Testing:**
Use unreinforced concrete with a recommended compressive strength greater than 4000 psi. Test rods shall be 1 inch diameter and 5/8-inch diameter, fully threaded steel.

A minimum of three tests for each diameter or test rod shall be performed and each test result must meet the minimum required pullout values. The minimum required pullout values for various concrete strengths are shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 701-1 1 INCH DIAM. THREADED ROD WITH 10 INCH EMBEDMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Concrete Strength (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Pullout Load (lb)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 701-2 5/8 INCH DIAM. THREADED ROD WITH 4 INCH EMBEDMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Concrete Strength (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Pullout Load (lb)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Results from testing using lesser embedment depths will be accepted provided they achieve the minimum pullout strength required for the embedment depths noted in the tables above.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.**

Application for approval of 701-14 Chemically Curing Adhesives for PCC Pavement Applications shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the Manufacturer accompanied by the products latest data sheets, MSDS sheets and independent test data conforming to the requirements of this specification. Additional laboratory analysis may be carried out by the Materials Bureau. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.**

Chemically curing adhesives for PCC pavement applications will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product supplied is the same material that appears on the Approved List, and that it conforms to this specification.
SECTION 702 - BITUMINOUS MATERIALS  
(Last Revised September, 2016)

SCOPE. These specifications cover the material requirements and testing methods of bituminous materials:
1. Performance-Graded (PG) Binders for Paving.
2. Miscellaneous Asphalt Cements.
3. Synthetic Resins.
5. Polymer-Modified Asphalt Emulsions.
8. Asphalt Recycling Agent.

GENERAL. The bituminous material volume shall be measured at 60°F. The specific gravity at 60°F shall be included with each shipment of bituminous material to a plant or project site.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Bituminous materials shall meet the following requirements.

1. Performance-Graded (PG) Binders for Paving. The PG binder shall be manufactured by refining crude petroleum and blending with a modifier, if necessary, to meet the required performance grade specified in the contract documents. PG binders shall meet the requirements of Table 702-1 Performance-Graded Binders for Paving. The PG binder supplier shall:
   - Certify that the PG binder meets NYSDOT requirements.
   - Include type of modification and any special handling instructions in the certification if the PG binder is modified.
   - Provide the design mixing and compaction temperatures on their bill of lading.
   - Provide AASHTO M 332 test data and all necessary shipping documents in accordance with the Department’s Materials Method 702-1 Quality Assurance Procedure for Performance-Graded (PG) Asphalt Binders.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 702-1 PERFORMANCE-GRADED BINDERS FOR PAVING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATERIAL DESIGNATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERFORMANCE-GRADE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test Requirements</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   Any PG binder previously approved that has been stored in the mixing plant tank over the winter shall be re-sampled and accepted by the Department before it is used.

2. Miscellaneous Asphalt Cements. Asphalt cements shall meet the requirements in Table 702-2 Miscellaneous Asphalt Cements. The asphalt cement shall be homogeneous, free from water, and shall not foam when heated to 350°F. The supplier shall provide material test results and shipping documents that state the volume of material certified.
### TABLE 702-2 MISCELLANEOUS ASPHALT CEMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL DESIGNATION</th>
<th>702-0700</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Test Requirements</td>
<td>Minimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penetration, 77°F (25°C), 100 g, 5 second (AASHTO T 49)</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Point, COC, °F (AASHTO T 48)</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solubility in trichloroethylene, % (AASHTO T 44)</td>
<td>99.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Softening Point, °F (AASHTO T 53)</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss on Heating, 325°F (163°C), 5 hour, % (AASHTO T 47)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penetration of Residue, % of Original (AASHTO T 49)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ductility, 77°F (25°C), 5 cm/minute, cm (AASHTO T 51)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Synthetic Resins.** The synthetic resins covered under these specifications are two types: synthetic resin binder and rapid curing synthetic resin liquid. The synthetic resin binder is a light insensitive liquid used in colored synthetic resin binder concrete. The rapid curing synthetic resin liquid is a tack coat for the resin binder concrete and shall be light colored and compatible with the resin binder concrete placed over it. The synthetic resin shall be homogeneous and shall meet the requirements in Table 702-3 Synthetic Resins.

### TABLE 702-3 SYNTHETIC RESINS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>MATERIAL DESIGNATION</th>
<th>702-7000</th>
<th>702-7100</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Test Requirements</td>
<td>Min.</td>
<td>Max.</td>
<td>Min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penetration, 77°F (25°C), 100 g, 5 second</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity, 140°F (60°C), m²/s (x 10⁻⁶)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Point, COC, °F</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solubility in trichloroethylene, %</td>
<td>99.5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>99.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of Heating, 325°F (163°C), 5 hr., %</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water, %</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color, (30% binder/70% toluene)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gardner Standard Color Scale, (ASTM D 1544)</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test on Residue from Thin Film Oven Test, (AASHTO T 179)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residue from Evaporation, 221°F (105°C), 3 hr., (ASTM D 1644), %</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggested Spraying Temperature, °F</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typical Uses</td>
<td>Hot Plant Mix</td>
<td>Tack Coat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Anionic and Cationic Asphalt Emulsions.** The emulsion shall be homogeneous and show no separation of asphalt, after thoroughly mixing, within 30 days after delivery. The asphalt emulsion shall be agitated or circulated to ensure a homogeneous emulsion prior to sampling or application of material. Material that has separated due to freezing is unacceptable at any time.

Asphalt emulsions shall meet the requirements shown in Table 702-4 Anionic Asphalt Emulsions, or Table 702-5 Cationic Asphalt Emulsions. Test data and shipping documents shall be provided by the
supplier in accordance with the Department's Materials Method 702-2 Asphalt Emulsion – Quality Assurance.

### TABLE 702-4 ANIONIC ASPHALT EMULSIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL DESIGNATION</th>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>RAPID SETTING</th>
<th>MEDIUM SETTING</th>
<th>SLOW SETTING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emulsion&lt;sup&gt;1,2&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity, Saybolt Furol, 77°F (25°C), second</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity, Saybolt Furol, 122°F (50°C), second</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Stability Test, 1 Day (Difference in % Residue)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demulsibility, 35 mL, 0.02 N CaCl₂, %</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cement Mixing Test&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;, %</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residue by Distillation, %</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil Distillate, Volume Total Emulsion, %</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. All tests performed per AASHTO T 59 unless otherwise noted.
2. The Cement Mixing test is waived if the emulsion will be used for soil stabilization.
3. Float Test AASHTO T 50, except that the residue from distillation shall be poured immediately into the float collar at 500°F (260°C)

### TABLE 702-5 CATIONIC ASPHALT EMULSIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL DESIGNATION</th>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>RAPID SETTING</th>
<th>MEDIUM SETTING</th>
<th>SLOW SETTING</th>
<th>QUICK SETTING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emulsion&lt;sup&gt;1,2&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity, Saybolt Furol, 77°F (25°C), second</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity, Saybolt Furol, 122°F (50°C), second</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Stability Test, 1 Day (Difference in % Residue)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classification Test Passes</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particle Charge Test&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt; Positive</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sieve Test, %</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cement Mixing Test&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;, %</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residue by Distillation, %</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil Distillate, Volume Total Emulsion, %</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residue from Distillation Test&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. All tests performed per AASHTO T 59 unless otherwise noted.
2. If the Particle Charge test is inconclusive, material having a maximum pH value of 6.7 will be accepted.
3. The Cement Mixing test is waived if the emulsion will be used for soil stabilization.

5. Polymer-Modified Asphalt Emulsions. Polymer-modified asphalt emulsions shall meet the requirements of Table 702-4 and 702-5 except as modified in Table 702-6 Polymer Modified Asphalt Emulsions.

The polymer modifier shall be milled or blended into the base asphalt or emulsifying agent prior to the emulsification process.

### TABLE 702-6 POLYMER MODIFIED ASPHALT EMULSIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL DESIGNATION</th>
<th>702-XXXXP&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. All tests performed per AASHTO T 59 unless otherwise noted.
2. If the Particle Charge test is inconclusive, material having a maximum pH value of 6.7 will be accepted.
3. The Cement Mixing test is waived if the emulsion will be used for soil stabilization.
4. Polymer-modified asphalt emulsion designation.
1. XXXX shall be the four digit code matching the appropriate emulsion grade listed in table 702-4 & 702-5
2. Elastic Recovery procedure: Use ASTM D 6084 Testing Procedure “A.” Samples will be tested at 50°F (10°C).
3. Recover emulsion’s asphalt residue according to ASTM D 6997 except as modified herein, when the lower temperature reaches approximately 275°F (135°C), move the ring burner approximately level with the bottom of the still. Increase the temperature to a maximum 350°F +/- 10°F (177°C +/- 5°C), maintaining this temperature for 15 minutes.
4. According to AASHTO T 53

6. Asphalt Emulsion – Diluted Tack Coat. Diluted tack coat emulsion shall be agitated or circulated to ensure a homogeneous emulsion prior to sampling or application of material. The consistency of the diluted tack coat shall be appropriate for pumping and uniform application.

Only the grades of emulsions meeting the requirements of Table 702-7 Diluted Tack Coat shall be allowed. These diluted tack coats may be produced by diluting the base asphalt emulsion grade with an emulsifier and/or water and thoroughly mixing into a homogeneous liquid.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL DESIGNATION</th>
<th>702-XXXXT(1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emulsion Grades</td>
<td>Test Requirements(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>702-3401</td>
<td>Sieve Test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>702-3601</td>
<td>Residue by Distillation, %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>702-4501</td>
<td>Oil Distillate, Volume of Total Emulsion, %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Test on Residue from Distillation:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Penetration, 77°F (25°C), 100 g, 5 seconds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. XXXX = 3401, 3601 or 4501
2. All tests performed per AASTHO T59

7. Asphalt Emulsion – Straight Tack Coat. Straight tack coat emulsion shall be agitated or circulated to ensure a homogeneous emulsion prior to sampling or application of material. The consistency of the straight tack coat shall be appropriate for pumping and uniform application.

Only the grades of emulsions meeting the requirements of Table 702-8 Straight Tack Coat shall be allowed in straight tack coat applications. These tack coats shall not be further diluted with water.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL DESIGNATION</th>
<th>702-XXXXT(1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emulsion Grades</td>
<td>Test Requirements(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>702-3002</td>
<td>Sieve Test, %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>702-4002</td>
<td>Residue by Distillation – Grade 702-3002, %</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Residue by Distillation – Grade 702-4002, % 60 -
Oil Distillate, Volume of Total Emulsion, % - 2

**Test on Residue from Distillation:**

Penetration, 77°F (25°C), 100 g, 5 seconds 40 90

1. XXXX = 3002 or 4002
2. All tests performed per AASTHO T59

8. **Asphalt Recycling Agent** – Asphalt Recycling agents are used for heater scarification or hot in-place recycling projects.

Use ASTM D 4552, *Standard Practice for Classifying Hot-Mix Recycling Agents*, grades RA25 and RA75 petroleum-based recycling agents specifically designed as a rejuvenator meeting the requirements in Table 702-9 *Recycling Agent*. Use *Emulsified Recycling Agents*, grades ERA25 (an emulsified RA25) and ERA75 (an emulsified RA75) petroleum-based recycling agents specifically designed as a rejuvenator meeting the requirements in Table 702-10 *Emulsified Recycling Agent*.

### TABLE 702-9 RECYCLING AGENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL DESIGNATION (GRADE)</th>
<th>702-5030 (RA25)</th>
<th>702-5050 (RA75)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Test Requirements</td>
<td>Test Method</td>
<td>Min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests on Residue from Distillation:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity, 140°F (60°C), cSt</td>
<td>T 201</td>
<td>901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Point, CSC, °F</td>
<td>T 48</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test on Residue from RTFO, 325°F (163°C):</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity Ratio</td>
<td>T 240</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight Change, ±, %</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific Gravity</td>
<td>T 228</td>
<td>Report</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 702-10 EMULSIFIED RECYCLING AGENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL DESIGNATION (GRADE)</th>
<th>702-5031 (ERA25)</th>
<th>702-5051 (ERA75)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Test Requirements</td>
<td>Test Method</td>
<td>Min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests on Residue from Distillation:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity, 140°F (60°C), cSt</td>
<td>T 201</td>
<td>901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Point, CSC, °F</td>
<td>T 48</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test on Residue from RTFO, 325°F (163°C):</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity Ratio</td>
<td>T 240</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight Change, ±, %</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific Gravity</td>
<td>T 228</td>
<td>Report</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BASIS OF APPROVAL. The procedural directives for sampling, testing, and certifying the bituminous material, and for achieving and maintaining Approved List status, are available from the Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. PG binder will be accepted based on the Primary Source appearing on the approved list and the source’s certification and satisfactory test results from samples taken where the material is incorporated into the work.

Miscellaneous asphalt cements and synthetic resins will be accepted based on the manufacturer’s certification.

Asphalt Emulsions, including Tack Coat, will be accepted based on the Primary Source appearing on the approved list, the source’s certification, and satisfactory test results from samples taken where the material is incorporated into the work.

Asphalt Rejuvenating Agent will be accepted based on the manufacturer’s certification. The use of any other grade of recycling agent requires prior approval from the Director, Materials Bureau.
SECTION 703 - AGGREGATES
(Last Revised September, 2016)

703-01 FINE AGGREGATE

SCOPE. The specification covers the material details, quality requirements and methods for sampling and testing fine aggregate generally used in portland cement concrete and bituminous concrete.

SAMPLING. Samples of fine aggregates shall be obtained by and submitted to the Materials Bureau by a representative of the Department under the following conditions:

A. Sampling Approved Operating Sources. All approved operating sources shall be sampled when:
   - The latest test for a source is two (2) years old.
   - A change in the character of processed fine aggregate occurs.
   - The location of the course of raw material is shifted, or a change in the character of raw material occurs.
   - Considered necessary by the Department.

B. Sampling Non-approved or Rejected Operating Sources. Non-approved or rejected operating sources, equipped with adequate processing facilities, may be sampled upon favorable recommendation by a Regional Director and approved by the Director, Materials Bureau. Approval action on such sources may be conditioned on the results obtained by periodic sampling and testing as prescribed by the Materials Bureau.

C. Sampling Proposed Unopened Sources of Material. Proposed unopened sources of material may be sampled upon the favorable recommendation of a Regional Director and approved by the Director, Materials Bureau. The results of tests on such samples shall be for information only and shall be indicative of the potential quality of the source. Action in regard to acceptance or rejection of a source will be taken only after processing facilities have been installed and approved.

Stripping. All sources of fine aggregate shall be thoroughly stripped of all inferior and objectionable material before processing operations are started and shall be kept stripped far enough from the working face to insure against undesirable material becoming mixed with the output. If undesirable material is furnished from accepted sources through faulty operations or any other cause whatsoever, the source and any objectionable material therefrom may be rejected by the Regional Director.

Annual Reports. As part of the acceptance requirements, the following information shall be submitted to the Department annually for each operating source:

A. Geologic Source Report. A geologic source report that describes the characteristics of the material to be processed during the coming year.

B. Plant Flow Information. Plant flow information describing the processing equipment and the products to be furnished for Departmental use.
   The details of these requirements may be obtained from the Materials Bureau. These annual reports shall be received and approved by the Department before the start of the year's operations.
Approval of the reports by the Department does not relieve the supplier of its responsibility to provide a uniform and acceptable product.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Fine aggregate shall consist of natural sand or manufactured sand, conforming to the requirements of these specifications. All fine aggregate shall consist of hard, strong, durable particles which are free from a coating or any injurious material and injurious amounts of clay, loam, or other deleterious substances. In addition, the fine aggregate shall not contain substances, which, when mixed in portland cement concrete, produce an unacceptable level of chloride ions in the final product. Substances that produce chloride ions shall be considered deleterious material. Any fine aggregate may be rejected if it is determined by the Department to contain sufficient amounts of unsound or deleterious material to be harmful.

Fine aggregates from more than one source or of more than one type of material may be blended. Blending procedures shall be approved by the Department.

Fine aggregates meeting the requirements of Table 703-1, “Fine Aggregate Requirements (Testing)” shall be accepted unless service records indicate that it is unsound, or that the material is otherwise determined to be unsatisfactory by the Director, Materials Bureau.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 703-1 FINE AGGREGATE REQUIREMENTS (TESTING)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Test Method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium Sulfates (NYSDOT 207)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. percent loss by weight at 5 cycles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organic Impurities (NYSDOT 202, AASHTO T-21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organic Plate, Lighter Than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gardner Color, Lighter Than</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fine aggregate not meeting the requirement of Table 703-1 may be further evaluated by additional testing, petrographic examination, geologic studies, review of performance history and plant flow information. If the results of the evaluation indicate that the aggregate should perform satisfactorily, the source may be accepted by the Director, Materials Bureau.

If fine aggregate is found unsatisfactory when examined for organic impurities, it shall be rejected unless it passes the mortar strength test for compression. Fine aggregates so tested shall achieve a compressive strength of at least one hundred percent when tested according to methods prescribed by the Material Bureau (NYSDOT 204).

**TESTS.** The details of all test methods for fine aggregates may be obtained from the Materials Bureau.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of the source is determined on the basis of tests performed by the Materials Bureau on samples representing the sources; review of Geologic Source Reports and Plant Flow Information; petrographic examination and other geologic studies; and performance histories where applicable. The material is incorporated into the work on the basis that it is from an approved source conforming to procedural directives of the Department and the aggregate shall meet the gradation requirement at the point of use.

Aggregate for use in the manufacture of precast concrete units may be accepted on the basis of stockpile approval at a location acceptable to the Department on a per job basis. Requests for stockpile approval shall be made in writing to the Materials Bureau. The manufacturer shall allow at least ninety (90) days for the testing and evaluation of the aggregate.

**703-02 COARSE AGGREGATE**
SCOPE. This specification covers the material details, requirements and methods for sampling and testing coarse aggregate generally used in portland cement concrete, bituminous concrete and surface treatments.

SAMPLING. Samples of coarse aggregates shall be obtained by and submitted to the Materials Bureau by a representative of the Department under the following conditions:

A. Sampling Approved Operating Sources. All approved operating sources shall be sampled when:
- The latest test for a source is two (2) years old.
- A change in the character of processed coarse aggregate occurs.
- The location of the source of raw material is shifted or a change in the character of raw material occurs.
- Considered necessary by the Department.

B. Sampling Non-approved or Rejected Operating Sources. Non-approved or rejected operating sources, equipped with adequate processing facilities, may be sampled upon favorable recommendation by a Regional Director and approval by the Director, Materials Bureau. Approval action on such sources may be conditioned on the results obtained by periodic sampling and testing as prescribed by the Materials Bureau.

C. Sampling Proposed Unopened Sources of Material. Proposed unopened sources of material may be sampled upon the favorable recommendation of a Regional Director and approval by the Director, Materials Bureau. The results of tests on such samples shall be for information only and shall be interpreted as indicative of the potential quality of the source. Action in regard to acceptance or rejection of a source will be taken only after processing facilities have been installed and approved.

Stripping. All sources of coarse aggregate shall be thoroughly stripped of all inferior and objectionable material before processing operations are started and shall be kept stripped far enough from the working face to insure against undesirable material becoming mixed with the output. If undesirable material is furnished from accepted sources through faulty operation or any other cause whatsoever, the source and any objectionable material therefrom may be rejected by the Regional Director.

Annual Reports. As part of the acceptance requirements, the following information shall be submitted to the Department annually for each operating source:

A. Gravel Operations
1. A Geologic Source Report that describes the characteristics of the material to be processed during the coming year.
2. Plant Flow Information describing the processing equipment and the products to be furnished for Departmental use.

B. Quarry Operations. A Quarry Report describing the characteristics and uniformity of rock to be quarried during the coming year.

All details of these report requirements may be obtained from the Materials Bureau. The annual reports shall be received and approved by the Department before the start of the year's operations. The approval of a report does not relieve the supplier of its responsibility to provide a uniform and acceptable product.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Coarse aggregates shall consist of crushed stone, crushed gravel, screened gravel or crushed air-cooled blast furnace slag, conforming to the requirements of these specifications. All coarse aggregates shall meet the requirements for these materials as outlined in Tables 703-2, “Physical Requirements (Testing),” 703-3, “Physical Requirements (Deleterious Materials),” and 703-4, “Size of Stone, Gravel and Slag.”

A coarse aggregate meeting the requirements of Tables 703-2, and 703-3 shall be accepted unless service records indicate that it is unsound or that the material is otherwise determined to be unsatisfactory by the Director, Materials Bureau. Coarse aggregate not meeting the requirements of these tables may be further evaluated by additional testing, petrographic examination, geologic studies, review of Plant Flow Information and performance history. If the results of the evaluation indicate that the aggregate should perform satisfactorily, the source may be accepted by the Director, Materials Bureau.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material Designation</th>
<th>Crushed Stone 703-0201</th>
<th>Crushed Gravel 703-0202</th>
<th>Screened Gravel 703-0203</th>
<th>Crushed Slag 703-0204</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium Sulfate Test (703-07 P,G)</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. percent loss by weight at 10 cycles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freezing and Thawing Test (703-08 P,G)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. percent loss by weight at 25 cycles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Los Angeles Abrasion Test (703-11 P,G)</td>
<td>35(4)</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. percent loss by weight (Grading A or B)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat Particles, Elongated Particles, or Flat and Elongated Particles (ASTM D4791)</td>
<td>10(6)</td>
<td>10(6)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum percent by weight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat and Elongated to the Degree of 5:1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crushed Particles in any primary size(ASTM D5821)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum percent by weight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larger than 1/2 inch (1 fractured face)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>75(7)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smaller than 1/2 inch (2 fractured faces)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>85(7)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum unit weight (703-10 P,G) lbs/cu. ft.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. To determine its conformance to specification limits, processed coarse aggregate may be tested at any point after completion of processing. The manufactured material shall be separated into the primary sizes indicated in Table 703-5, “Primary Size.” Each size fraction shall conform to the requirements of §703-02 Coarse Aggregate.

2. Loss applies to No. 2 size fraction.

3. The freeze-thaw requirement applies only to aggregate used in Portland cement concrete. The loss applies to the No. 2 size fraction.

4. Loss applies to all materials excepting marble, granite, and other similar materials.

5. Loss applies to marble, granite, and other similar materials.

6. Requirement applies to coarse aggregate for use in hot mix asphalt with design ESALs of 0.3 million or greater.

7. Gravel which has not been processed through a crusher shall not be combined with crushed gravel.

A. Crushed Stone. Crushed stone shall be Material Designation 703-0201 and shall consist of clean, durable, sharp-angled fragments of rock of uniform quality. The crushed stone used as coarse aggregate for all items shall be obtained from sources conforming to the requirements of the Department as to sampling, testing methods, Quarry Reports and any other required procedures.
**B. Crushed Gravel.** Crushed Gravel shall be Material Designation 703-0202 and shall consist of clean, durable, sharp-angled fragments of gravel free from coatings. A crushed particle shall be defined as one in which the total area of face fracture exceeds 25% of the maximum cross-sectional area of the particle. When two fractured faces are designated, the total area of each fractured face shall exceed 25% of the maximum cross-sectional area of the particle. A naturally fractured face shall be acceptable providing that the sharp angular portion of the particle consists of sound material and is free from unsound or injurious coatings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material Designation</th>
<th>Crushed Stone 703-0201</th>
<th>Crushed Gravel 703-0202</th>
<th>Screened Gravel 703-0203</th>
<th>Crushed Slag 703-0204</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shale and shale-like materials</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coal/Lignite/Sulfides</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clay lumps or Wood</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal Ore</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Deleterious Materials</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Deleterious Materials</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Coarse aggregates containing more than the specified maximum amounts of deleterious materials may be washed or otherwise processed until such specifications are satisfied.

(2) Shale, slate, phyllite, argillite, schist, and similar shale-like fissile rocks that have been identified by performance or by test to be unsound and deleterious. Such shale-like fissile rocks may be tested separately from the rest of the aggregate by freezing and thawing according to NYSDOT Test Method 703-08 P.G. If the loss is 20% or greater, that material will be designated as deleterious shale or shale-like material.

(3) Pyrite, marcasite, pyrhhotite, bog iron, and similar material.

(4) Magnetite, ilmenite, etc. Percentages above 3.0% may be accepted by the Director, Materials Bureau, when appropriate adjustments to yield have been made.

(5) Cemented clusters, weathered particles, and similar material.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Screen Sizes</th>
<th>Size Designation</th>
<th>4 in</th>
<th>3 in</th>
<th>2 1/2 in</th>
<th>2 in</th>
<th>1 1/2 in</th>
<th>1 in</th>
<th>1/2 in</th>
<th>1/4 in</th>
<th>1/8 in</th>
<th># 80</th>
<th>#200(3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Screenings</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0-1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1B</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>0-15</td>
<td>0-1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1A</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>0-15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0-1.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1ST</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0-15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0-1.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>0-15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0-1.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>0-15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0-1.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3A</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>0-15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0-0.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>0-15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0-0.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4A</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0-0.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0-15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0-0.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>0-15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0-0.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Percentage by weight passing the following square openings.
(2) Screenings shall include all of the fine material passing a 1/4 in. screen.
The minus No. 200 material requirements apply only to aggregate for use in portland cement concrete, chip seal, cold mix bituminous pavements and underdrain filter material. The test (NYSDOT 201) will be performed on the entire sample of the designated size aggregate. Primary size does not apply in the determination of the minus No. 200 material.

### TABLE 703-5(1) SIZES OF CRUSHED GRAVEL, STONE, AND SLAG FOR SLURRY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Screen Sizes</th>
<th>3/8 in</th>
<th>No. 4</th>
<th>No. 8</th>
<th>No. 16</th>
<th>No. 30</th>
<th>No. 50</th>
<th>No. 100</th>
<th>No. 200(2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2MS</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>65-90</td>
<td>45-70</td>
<td>30-50</td>
<td>18-30</td>
<td>10-21</td>
<td>5-20.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3MS</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>70-90</td>
<td>45-70</td>
<td>28-50</td>
<td>19-34</td>
<td>12-25</td>
<td>7-20</td>
<td>5-20.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1)Percentage by weight passing the following square openings.
(2)Determine percent passing No. 200 sieve according to AASHTO T 11, Materials Finer than No. 200 Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing.

The crushed gravel used as coarse aggregate for all items shall be obtained from sources conforming to the requirements of the Department as to sampling, testing methods, Geologic Source Reports, Plant Flow Information, and any other required procedures.

C. Screened Gravel. Screened gravel shall be Material Designation 703-0203 and shall consist of clean, durable gravel free from coatings. Screened gravel may consist of all uncrushed particles and shall be obtained from sources conforming to the requirements for crushed gravel.

### TABLE 703-6 PRIMARY SIZES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size Designation</th>
<th>Primary Screen Sizes</th>
<th>Size Designation</th>
<th>Primary Screen Sizes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Passing Retained</td>
<td></td>
<td>Passing Retained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1B</td>
<td>1/8 in No. 80</td>
<td>3A</td>
<td>1 1/2 in 1 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1A</td>
<td>1/4 in 1/8 in</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2 in 1 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1ST</td>
<td>1/2 in 1/4 in</td>
<td>4A</td>
<td>2 1/2 in 1 1/2 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2 in 1/4 in</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3 in 2 in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 in 1/2 in</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4 in 3 in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. Crushed Slag. Crushed slag particles shall be Material Designation 703-0204 and shall consist of hard, durable, angular fragments which are reasonably uniform in density and quality; free from injurious amounts of sulphur; and reasonably free from thin, elongated pieces, dirt, or other objectional matter. All crushed slag shall be obtained from approved sources conforming to the requirements of the Department as to sampling, test methods and any other required procedures.

Gradation. The sizes of all stone, gravel or slag used under these specifications shall conform to the gradation requirements for the various sizes tabulated in Table 703-4. All crushing plants shall be fitted with tailing chutes so that no aggregate will reach the bins other than that which passes through the proper screens.

Primary Size. For the purposes of this specification, the term “Primary Size” shall be defined for each size designation as all of the material passing and retained on the screens specified in Table 703-5 “Primary Sizes.”

TESTS. The details of test methods for coarse aggregate may be obtained from the Materials Bureau.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of the source is determined on the basis of tests performed by the Materials Bureau on samples representing the source; review of Quarry Reports; Geologic Source Reports and Plant Flow Information; petrographic examination and other geologic studies; and performance history where applicable. The material is incorporated into the work on the basis that it is from an approved source conforming to procedural requirements of Department and that the aggregate shall meet gradation at the point of use.

Aggregate for use in the manufacture of precast concrete units may be accepted on the basis of stockpile approval at a location acceptable to the Department on a per job basis. Requests for stockpile approval shall be made in writing to the Materials Bureau. The manufacturer shall allow at least ninety (90) days for the testing and evaluation of the aggregate.

703-03 MORTAR SAND

SCOPE. This specification contains the requirements for sand used in mortar.

GENERAL. 703-01, Fine Aggregate shall apply except as modified herein.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. When dry, mortar sand shall meet the following gradation requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>No. 4</th>
<th>No. 8</th>
<th>No. 50</th>
<th>No. 100</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Percent Passing by Weight</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>95-100</td>
<td>10-40</td>
<td>0-15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Concrete sand, 703-07, will be permitted as an alternative to mortar sand.

TEST. Test methods may be obtained from the Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The provisions of ’703-01, Fine Aggregate, shall apply.

703-04 GROUT SAND

SCOPE. This specification contains the requirements for sand used in grout.

GENERAL. 703-01, Fine Aggregate, shall apply except as modified herein.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. When dry, the grout sand shall meet the following gradation requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>Percent Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. 16</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 100</td>
<td>0-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sand may be determined to be unacceptable for grout sand if it contains more than 6 percent by volume of loam and silt.

TEST. Test methods may be obtained from the Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The provisions of ’703-01, Fine Aggregate, shall apply.
703-05 FINE AGGREGATE FOR WHITE PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE

SCOPE. This specification contains the requirements for white fine aggregate used in the white portland cement concrete.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENT. Material Specification 703-01, Fine Aggregate, shall apply except as modified herein. The aggregate shall be white, having a Munsell color with a value of 8 or greater and a chroma saturation of 2 or less, when compared to a set of standard color chips. Gradation shall conform to the specification requirement under '703-07, Concrete Sand.

TEST. The details of the test methods may be obtained from the Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The provisions of '703-01 Fine Aggregate, shall apply except that the color will be accepted on a per stockpile basis by the Director, Materials Bureau.

703-06 CUSHION SAND

SCOPE. This specification contains the requirements for cushion sand used for concrete block slope paving.

GENERAL. Material for cushion sand shall meet the requirements specified herein.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Cushion sand shall consist of clean, hard, durable, uncoated particles, free from lumps of clay and all deleterious substances.

When dry, the cushion sand shall meet the following gradation requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>Percent Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/4 in</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 50</td>
<td>0-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 100</td>
<td>0-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sand may be determined to be unacceptable for cushion sand if it contains more than 10 percent by volume of loam or silt.

TEST. Test methods may be obtained from the Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The cushion sand is accepted on the basis of gradation tests and visual inspection, unless otherwise specified, at the point of use.

703-07 CONCRETE SAND

SCOPE. This specification contains the requirements for sand used in portland cement concrete.

GENERAL. 703-01, Fine Aggregate, shall apply except as modified herein.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. When dry, the fine aggregate for portland cement concrete shall conform to the following gradation requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>Percent Passing By Weight Minimum</th>
<th>Maximum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3/8 in</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 4</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TEST
Test methods may be obtained from the Materials Bureau.

### BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE
The provision of 703-01, Fine Aggregates, shall apply.

### 703-08 MINERAL FILLER

#### SCOPE
This specification contains the requirements for mineral filler used in bituminous concrete mixtures.

#### MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS
Mineral filler shall conform to the requirements of the standard specification for Mineral Filler for Bituminous Paving Mixture, ASTM D242.

When dry, the mineral filler shall meet the following gradation requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>No. 30</th>
<th>No. 50</th>
<th>No. 200</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. 8</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 16</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 30</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 50</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 100</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200 (Wet)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE
Acceptance of this material will be based on the producer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

### 703-09 (VACANT)

### 703-10 LIGHTWEIGHT AGGREGATES

#### SCOPE
This specification covers the material details and quality requirements for lightweight aggregates generally used in structural portland cement concrete.

#### GENERAL
The provisions of Sampling, Stripping and Annual Reports under '703-02 Coarse Aggregate shall apply, except that in addition under 2. Quarry Operations, plant flow information describing the processing equipment shall be provided.

#### MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS
The lightweight aggregates shall be prepared by expanding or sintering materials such as shale, slate, clay, fly ash or blast furnace slag. The requirements of ASTM C330 shall apply except as modified in these specifications. In addition to ASTM C330, the lightweight aggregates shall meet the requirements given in Table 703-10, Lightweight Aggregate Requirements (Testing). The Durability Factor of concrete made from lightweight aggregates shall not be less than 80 percent.

A lightweight aggregate meeting the requirements of this specification shall be accepted unless service records indicate that the aggregate is unsound or that the material is otherwise determined to be unsatisfactory by the Director, Materials Bureau. Lightweight aggregates not meeting these requirements may be further evaluated by additional testing, petrographic examination, geologic studies, a review of the lightweight aggregate processing and the performance history. If the results of the evaluation indicate that the lightweight aggregate should perform satisfactorily, the material may be accepted by the Director, Materials Bureau.
Test. Sampling procedure instructions and test methods may be obtained from the Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of lightweight aggregates is determined by the Director, Materials Bureau on the basis of tests performed by the Materials Bureau on representative samples of the materials; review of Quarry Reports and Plant Flow Information; petrographic examination and other geologic studies; and performance histories where applicable. The material is incorporated into the work on the basis that it is accepted and conforms to procedural directives of the Department and the aggregate shall meet the gradation requirement at the point of use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 703-10 LIGHTWEIGHT AGGREGATE REQUIREMENTS (TESTING)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Test Method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium Sulfate (NYSDOT 207). Loss by Weight 5 cycles, % Max.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Los Angeles Abrasion Test (ASTM C131). Loss by Weight (Grading B or C), % Max.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

703-90 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

703-91 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

703-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

SECTION 704 - MASONRY UNITS

704-01 COMMON BRICK

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for common brick, made from clay or shale, used in the construction of drainage structures and manholes.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Brick shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C32, Grade MS, including the requirement for saturation coefficient. Common brick may be furnished in any of the designated standard sizes that will produce the required dimensions in the completed structure, and the bricks shall be solid.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. Samples, when requested by the Department, shall be randomly selected from production-run material. A minimum of 10 full-size bricks of the same size and style will be required. Samples will be tested for the physical properties identified in ASTM C32. Tests will be performed in accordance with ASTM 67.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Common brick will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

704-02 CONCRETE BRICK

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for concrete brick produced in accordance with the current Materials Procedure for Concrete Masonry QC/QA titled “Procedures for Achieving and Maintaining Concrete Masonry Units Approved List Status”. Item 704-02 can be used in brick masonry construction, altering drainage structures, leaching-basins and manholes (section 604).
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Concrete brick shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C936, except as noted herein. Certain aggregates appear in the Approved List of Sources of Fine and Coarse Aggregates that have use limitations with high alkali Portland Cement. Materials used in the manufacture of concrete brick shall meet the requirements of the following subsections:

Portland Cement 701-01
Coarse Aggregate 703-02
Mortar Sand 703-03
Grout Sand 703-04
Concrete Sand 703-07
Fly Ash 711-10
Ground, Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag 711-12
Water 712-01

Fly ash or ground, granulated blast-furnace slag may be substituted up to a maximum of 20% by weight of the total amount of cement plus pozzolan in the mix. Pigments used for integral coloring shall meet the requirements of ASTM C979. Other materials may be used in the manufacture as approved by the Director, Materials Bureau. The nominal dimensions of the brick shall be 8 inches long, 4 inches wide, and 2⅔ inches in height.

Physical Properties. Concrete brick shall meet the compressive strength and absorption requirements in ASTM C936. In addition, the maximum acceptable average freeze/thaw loss of five paver samples, subjected to 25 freeze/thaw cycles in a 10% NaCl solution, is 1.0%, with no individual sample exceeding 1.5%.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. When samples are requested by the Department, they will be randomly selected from production-run material. A total of 15 concrete bricks of the same size and style will be required. Five samples will be tested for compressive strength and five for absorption, in accordance with ASTM C140. Five samples will be tested for freeze/thaw durability in accordance with NYSDOT test methods.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Concrete brick will be accepted on the job site based on the following:

• The manufacturer’s name must appear on the Department’s Approved List for the item being supplied.
• A manufacturer’s certification.

An acceptable product evaluation made by the Engineer.

704-03 PRECAST CONCRETE - GENERAL

SCOPE. This specification covers the general material and quality requirements for precast concrete items produced in accordance with the current Materials Procedure for precast concrete QC/QA titled “Procedures For Achieving And Maintaining Precast Concrete Manufacturer’s Approved List Status”. It is intended for use in conjunction with the individual item specifications.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The Portland Cement Concrete shall meet the requirements in §501, Portland Cement Concrete - General; §501-2.02, §501-2.03 and §501-3.02 except as noted herein.

Type 1, 2 or 3 cement may be used. The manufacturer may substitute pozzolans up to a maximum of 20% by weight of the total amount of cement plus pozzolan in the mix. Certain aggregates appear in the Approved List of Sources of Fine & Coarse Aggregates that have use limitations with a high alkali
Portland cement. When requested, the Materials Bureau may approve this combination when 15-20% by weight of the cement in the mix is replaced with fly ash.

The concrete shall have an air content of 5.0 to 9.0%. Unless noted otherwise in the contract documents, approved fabrication drawings or item specification, the minimum compressive strength of concrete used in precast units shall be 3000 psi @ 28 days.

Threaded inserts used to connect reinforcing steel to precast concrete shall be non-corrosive and shall have a tensile capacity of at least 50% of the yield strength of the reinforcing steel.

The use of galvanized reinforcing in place of specified epoxy coated reinforcing is allowed. If galvanized reinforcing is used, all reinforcing in the unit must be galvanized. The use of galvanized dowels to attach secondary pours, requires all reinforcing in secondary pours to be galvanized. When galvanized wire fabric for concrete reinforcement is used, it shall be galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123. Fabrication, including bending of fabric, shall be performed prior to galvanizing.

Additional materials, listed below, shall meet the requirements of the following subsections:

Concrete Repair Material 701-04
Concrete Repair Material - High Early Strength 701-12
Bar Reinforcement, Grade 60 709-01
Wire Fabric For Concrete Reinforcement 709-02
Epoxy Coated Bar Reinforcement, Grade 60 709-04
Epoxy Coated Wire Fabric Reinforcement 709-08
Cold-Drawn Wire For Concrete Reinforcement 709-09
Mechanical Connectors for Reinforcing Bar Splices (Epoxy Coated) 709-10
Galvanized Bar Reinforcement 709-11
Quilted Covers (for curing) 711-02
Plastic Coated Fiber Blankets (for curing) 711-03
Polyethylene Curing Covers (White Opaque) 711-04
Membrane Curing Compound (Clear w/Fugitive Dye) 711-05
Burlap 711-06
Corrosion Inhibitor 711-13

DRAWINGS. Precast concrete units shall be fabricated to conform to the details contained in the plans and contract documents. Fabrication Drawings shall be one of the following:

A. Contract Plan Sheets. When the contract plans contain enough detail to properly fabricate and inspect the precast element they may be used as the fabrication drawings. The Materials Bureau will determine whether or not the contract plans contain enough detail.

B. Department Standard Sheets. When Department Standard Sheets are referenced in, and are in compliance with the contract plans, the Standard Sheet shall be used as the fabrication drawing.

C. Fabricator Working Drawings. When the contract plans do not contain enough detail to be used as fabrication drawings and there is no Department Standard Sheet for the precast element or the Standard Sheet is not in compliance with the contract plans, Fabricator Working Drawings shall be used as the fabrication drawings.

D. Fabricator Standard Drawing. Fabricator Standard Drawings, previously approved by the Director, Materials Bureau, which meet the requirements of the contract plans, may be used as the fabrication drawings in place of Contract Plan Sheets, Department Standard Sheets or Fabricator Working Drawings.

Fabrication Drawings shall be prepared and processed in accordance with the current Materials Procedure for Preparing And Processing Fabrication Drawings For Precast Concrete Products.
FABRICATION. The manufacturer shall produce precast units that conform to the details of the approved fabrication drawings. The precast units shall be uniform in appearance. All concrete surfaces which will be exposed to view after installation shall be flat and smooth, free from irregularities and uniform in color and texture. The Department, and its representatives, shall have free access to the manufacturing facility and all products produced for the Department.

Formwork. Concrete shall be cast in rigidly constructed forms which will maintain the units within specified tolerances to the shapes, lines and dimensions shown on the approved fabrication drawings. Forms shall be constructed from flat, smooth, non-absorbent material and shall be sufficiently tight to prevent the leakage of mortar. When wood forms are used all faces in contact with the concrete shall be laminated with a non-absorbent material. All worn or damaged forms which cause irregularities on the concrete surface or damage to the concrete during form removal shall be repaired or replaced before being reused. Form coatings, appearing on the Department's Approved List, shall be applied to all forms.

Lifting Devices. Lifting devices shall be a recessed type designed for use in precast concrete. The precast manufacturer shall ensure that the lifting devices selected for use have an adequate capacity to safely handle the precast product. Reinforcing steel shall not be used as a lifting device. Lifting devices that are used for turning or rotating a unit at the precast facility but are not necessary for further handling or installation shall be filled with concrete repair material before the unit is shipped. All other lifting devices shall be filled with concrete repair material after the unit is installed.

Reinforcing. Shall meet the requirements in §556, Reinforcing Steel for Concrete Structures; §556-3.01B and C, §§556-3.02A and §556-3.03A through §556-3.03C. Unless noted otherwise in approved fabrication drawings or item specification, the minimum concrete cover over reinforcing steel shall be 1 1/2 inch. Reinforcing steel shall be tied and supported to keep it in position during the concrete placement. The ends of chairs or spacers, used to support or locate reinforcing steel, that bear on the faces of forms, shall be made of, or coated with, non-corrosive material so that no discoloration will show on the face of the units. Chairs, tie wires and other devices used to support, position or fasten epoxy coated or galvanized reinforcement shall be made of or coated with a dielectric material. Tack welding or any other welding of specified steel reinforcement will not be allowed. Welding for cage stability will be permitted provided that redundant steel is added in each direction and tied to the cage. The redundant steel shall be thirty (30) bar diameters, minimum, in length and shall be positioned so that the midpoint is located at the weld.

Corrosion Inhibitor. When allowed by the individual item specification, corrosion inhibitor may be used in lieu of epoxy coated reinforcing. When corrosion inhibitor is selected for use it shall be clearly noted on the fabricator working drawing or in the fabrication request when standard sheets, contract plan sheets, etc are used as the fabrication drawings. When selected for use, corrosion inhibitor shall be used in all units produced to the referenced fabrication drawings. The corrosion inhibitor shall be added to the concrete as an aqueous solution at a dosage rate of 4 gal/cy. The calcium nitrite, which acts as an accelerator, may be used in conjunction with compatible retarding admixtures to control setting time and workability of the concrete, however the use of a formulation of calcium nitrite solution which includes a set control ingredient may be used if setting times and increased water demands are of concern, consult the manufacturer of the product. The corrosion inhibitor must be added to the mix immediately after air entraining and retarding admixtures have been introduced into the batch.

When a batching problem exists or is perceived the Department reserves the right to test the hardened concrete at any time to verify the quantity of calcium nitrite present. Units with less than the specified amount of calcium nitrite shall be subject to rejection. If hardened concrete is tested, 4 inches diameter cores shall be drilled by the manufacturer under the supervision of a Department representative. Cores
shall be a minimum of 4 inches in length unless otherwise approved by the Materials Bureau. Core holes shall be plugged and repaired in accordance with the requirements of repair indicated below.

**Concrete Placement And Consolidation.** Suitable means shall be used for placing concrete to prevent segregation. The concrete shall be thoroughly consolidated by external or internal vibrators or a combination of both, unless otherwise approved by the Materials Bureau. Vibrators shall not be used to move concrete within the forms. Concrete shall be placed and consolidated in a way that minimizes the presence of surface voids or bug holes on the formed surfaces.

**Cold Weather.** When concrete is cast in ambient temperatures less than 50°F the following requirements shall apply:

A. Immediately before concrete placement the minimum temperature inside the forms shall be 40°F.
B. Immediately following completion of the placement the requirements of the chosen curing method shall be followed.
C. Concrete temperatures required by the chosen curing method shall be maintained by means of an external indirect heat supply or by utilizing the heat of hydration. Curing temperatures shall not exceed 85°F unless units are steam cured in accordance with this specification. When an external heat supply is used the enclosure shall be properly vented to prevent surface disintegration of the fresh concrete due to an accumulation of carbon dioxide gas.
D. The plastic concrete shall not be exposed to freezing temperatures after it has been placed into the forms or during the curing period.

**Dimensional Tolerances.** The following tolerances shall apply, unless noted otherwise in the contract documents, approved fabrication drawings or item specification:

- Unit dimensions ±1/2 inch
- Variations in required spacing of reinforcing steel, not cumulative. ±2 inches
- Concrete cover over reinforcing steel +5/8 inch -1/4 inch
- All reinforcing steel fabrication tolerances shall conform to ACI 117 sec 2.1.
- All reinforcing steel embedded and lap length tolerances shall conform to ACI 117 sec 2.2.8.

The application of fabrication tolerances shall not impact the proper fit, alignment or function of the assembled precast item, nor shall it negatively impact the appearance of precast items which are exposed to view after installation.

**Architectural Treatments**

**A. Architectural Patterned And Textured Precast Concrete.** The architectural pattern or textured effect called for in the contract plans shall be obtained by using form liners, stamping equipment or other texturing tools recommended by the manufacturer. Details of the architectural pattern or texture and the fabrication method used shall be shown on the fabrication drawings for the precast item. Concrete surfaces treated with form liners or by stamping shall have a repeatable, seamless pattern such that when installed the units will form a continuous, natural looking, matching and repeatable pattern. Surfaces treated with texturing tools shall be uniform in appearance. When form liners are used, a high quality release agent compatible with the form liner material shall be used. Form liners which are worn or damaged resulting in a non-uniform appearance or damage to the concrete during form removal shall be replaced. Fabrication drawings shall clearly show the design thickness of the precast element and the thickness being added by the architectural pattern or texturing. The
architectural pattern or texturing shall not penetrate into the required concrete cover over the reinforcing steel at any point.

**B. Exposed Aggregate Precast Concrete.** Coarse aggregate shall meet the color and size requirements in the plans. When no size is specified a Type CA1 gradation, or equal approved by the Director, Materials Bureau, shall be used. A set retarder designed for use in exposed aggregate applications shall be used. Surfaces requiring an exposed aggregate finish shall be uniform in appearance with the surface completely covered with exposed aggregate. A set retarder shall be applied, in accordance with the manufacturers recommendations, to the surfaces receiving the exposed aggregate finish. Alternate methods of obtaining the exposed aggregate finish require prior approval of the Director, Materials Bureau. Unless otherwise shown in the contract plans, the depth of exposure shall be 30% of the primary size of the coarse aggregate. The depth of exposure shall be measured by laying a straight edge across the plane of the concrete face and measuring back to the concrete matrix.

**C. Integral Coloring.** Integally colored concrete shall be produced by use of a pigment coloring system meeting the requirements of ASTM C979. For each color used the pigment shall be from the same batch or lot unless otherwise approved by the Director, Materials Bureau. Pigment will be approved based on a manufacturers certification of compliance with these requirements. Type 6 white cement, meeting the requirements of §701-01, may be used to achieve the desired color. Coloring pigment shall be added to the concrete mix per manufacturer’s recommendations, at a dosage rate to achieve the desired color as specified in the contract documents. The manufacturer’s recommended maximum dosage rate shall not be exceeded.

**D. Visual Standards.** The Contractor shall construct visual samples that are the same general size and shape as the production units they represent. The samples must be submitted to the Regional Landscape Architect for written approval. Each of the patterns, textures and colors identified in the plans shall be represented by the samples. Only one pattern or texture shall be used per sample face. When multiple patterns or textures are called for, additional samples will be required. Materials and fabrication techniques used in the samples, including curing, concrete pigment and sealers, shall be the actual materials and techniques to be used in the construction of the final product. If the samples are rejected by the Landscape Architect, the Contractor shall construct additional samples as required to obtain the Landscape Architect’s approval. The approved samples shall be made available at the precast plant, for use by the inspector as visual standards, throughout production of the units. When surface coatings are to be field applied additional samples, without the surface coatings, shall be prepared and retained at the precast plant for use as visual standards. The fabrication of precast concrete units shall not begin until written approval of the visual standards has been received from the Department.

**E. Visual Evaluation.** When comparing production units against the visual standards there shall be minimal color and texture variations, from the standard, when viewed in good typical lighting at a 20 foot distance. When viewed alone, production units shall show no obvious imperfections or evidence of repairs other than minimal color and texture variations when viewed in good typical lighting at a 20 foot distance.

**Curing.** All precast concrete units shall be subjected to curing by any one of the methods described in the following paragraphs. The manufacturer shall provide minimum/maximum temperature thermometers to monitor curing temperatures unless otherwise specified. If, at any time, curing temperatures fall below the specified minimum for the chosen curing procedure, the curing period shall be increased accordingly.
Except as noted under D. Moisture Retention Curing, no unit shall be subjected to freezing temperatures until the following two conditions are met:

- The chosen curing cycle has been completed.
- The specified 28 day compressive strength or 3000 psi, whichever is less, has been reached.

Cylinders shall be cured in the same manner and maintained in the same temperature and environmental conditions as the units they represent until being tested.

**A. Steam Curing.** The units shall be cured in a suitable enclosure. The enclosure shall be designed to minimize the loss of heat and moisture while allowing for the uniform circulation of steam around the entire unit. The interior surfaces of the enclosure and the surface of the unit shall be moist at all times. Steps shall be taken to prevent localized "hot spots" caused by the steam lines. The enclosure shall be free from outside drafts.

Steam curing shall not begin until a preset period has been completed. The preset period begins when the last concrete has been placed and continues until the concrete obtains initial set. Prior written approval from the Director, Materials Bureau is required when preset periods of less than two hours are to be used. During the preset period, moderate heat may be applied to the enclosure to maintain the initial temperature of the concrete. The maximum temperature inside the enclosure during the preset period shall be the initial temperature of the concrete +10°F.

After the preset period is complete, steam shall be injected into the curing enclosure. The temperature inside the enclosure shall not be increased at a rate greater than 40°F per hour. A moist atmosphere shall be maintained at a temperature between 105°F and 185°F for a period of not less than 12 hours. The temperature inside the enclosure shall then be decreased at a rate not exceeding 40°F per hour until the ambient temperature outside the enclosure is reached. The manufacturer shall provide automatic temperature recorders to continuously record the curing temperature inside the enclosure.

**B. Water Spray Curing.** Curing shall begin as soon as the concrete has hardened sufficiently to prevent surface damage from the water spray but not more than 2 hours after the completion of finishing. All exposed surfaces of the precast unit shall be kept wet with a continuous fine spray of water in an enclosure maintained at a temperature of not less than 70°F for a period of not less than 72 hours. Additional curing time may be necessary to meet the 28 day strength requirements.

**C. Saturated Cover Curing.** The saturated covers used under this method shall be burlap. Curing shall begin as soon as the concrete has hardened sufficiently to prevent surface damage from the saturated burlap but not more than 2 hours after the completion of finishing. All exposed concrete surfaces on the precast unit shall be covered with burlap, saturated with water before applying. The burlap shall be kept saturated and the units kept at a temperature of not less than 70°F for a period of not less than 72 hours. Additional curing time may be necessary to meet the 28 day strength requirements.

**D. Moisture Retention Curing.** Units cured in accordance with these methods shall be maintained at a temperature of not less than 45°F for a period of not less than 7 days except as noted below. Additional curing time may be necessary to meet the 28 day strength requirements. When the specified 28 day compressive strength or 3000 psi, whichever is less, has been reached the unit may be exposed to freezing temperatures however the membrane curing compound or curing covers must still be maintained for a minimum of 7 days.

1. **Membrane Curing Compound.** The membrane curing compounds used under this method must appear on the Department’s current Approved List of Membrane Curing Compounds under
B. Clear (with fugitive dye). The compound shall be properly agitated immediately before each use. A minimum coverage rate of one gallon per 150 square feet shall be used.

The membrane curing compound shall be applied to the concrete surface after finishing as soon as the free water on the surface has disappeared and no water sheen is visible, but not so late that the liquid curing compound will be absorbed into the concrete. When curing compound cannot be applied within the above requirements, the manufacturer shall instead immediately begin curing the unit in accordance with one of the other curing methods contained in this specification, until curing compound can be applied.

If the forms are left on for a minimum of 7 days, curing compound is not required on any formed surfaces. When the forms are removed prior to 7 days, the exposed concrete surfaces shall be wet with water within one half hour of form removal and shall be kept moist until the curing compound is applied. Before application, the concrete shall be allowed to reach a uniformly damp appearance with no free water on the surface and then the compound shall be applied immediately.

This method of curing shall not be used on any concrete surface which is to have plastic concrete, grout or mortar bonded to it or on any concrete surface that will have a penetrating or coating type treatment such as a sealer or stain applied to it. Another approved method of curing shall be used when this condition exists.

2. Curing Covers. The curing covers used under this method shall be either Plastic Coated Fiber Blankets, §711-03, appearing on the Department's Approved List or Polyethylene Curing Covers meeting the requirements of §711-04. Curing covers shall be placed immediately following the finishing operation or form removal, whichever is applicable. Care shall be taken not to damage any exposed concrete surfaces during cover placement. Curing covers shall be placed and secured and be of such condition as to minimize the loss of moisture and temperature. When it is necessary to use more than one curing cover the edges shall be lapped a minimum of 12 inches.

E. Other Methods. Other Methods of curing are subject to approval by the Director, Materials Bureau.

Repair. Precast concrete units that contain minor defects caused by manufacture or mishandling shall be repaired at the manufacturing site. In addition, units that contain minor defects caused by mishandling during shipment or installation shall be repaired at the project site. When repairs are made to a unit that has been sprayed with curing compound, the compound must be removed from the repair area before making the repair as it will act as a bond breaker between the precast concrete and the repair material. Major defects and non repairable defects in a unit will be cause for rejection of the unit. Defects are defined as follows:

A. Surface Defects. Surface voids or bugholes which are less than 5/8 inch in diameter and less than 1/4 inch deep are acceptable, except as noted under D. of this section. Surface defects need not be repaired.

B. Minor Defects. Minor defects are defined as: spalls, honeycombing and surface voids which have no dimension greater than 12 inches, when measured along a straight line, and do not expose the reinforcing steel. Minor defects shall be repaired by removing all unsound concrete from the defect, square cutting the edges of the defect to prevent feather edging of the repair and then filling the void with concrete repair material meeting the requirements of §701-04 or §701-12. Concrete repair material shall have a color similar to that of the precast unit. The repair shall be finished to the proper shape and cured in accordance with the repair material manufacturer's recommendations. It shall withstand a moderate blow with a 16 oz hammer. The blow shall produce a sharp ring indicating proper bonding of the repair.
C. Major Defects. Major defects are defined as: spalls, honeycombing and surface voids which have any dimension greater than 12 inches, when measured along a straight line, or expose the reinforcing steel. Cracks which go through the section or are greater than 0.01 inch in width are also major defects.

No major defect shall be repaired without prior approval of the Department. Requests to repair major defects shall be made in accordance with the requirements contained in the current Materials Procedure for precast concrete.

D. Non Repairable Defects. Non repairable defects are defined as: cracks in a concrete surface, which will be exposed to view after installation, that are visible when viewed in good typical lighting with the naked eye at a 10 foot distance; minor defects which in total make up more than 5% of the surface area of the unit and excessive surface defects on more than 5% of the surface area which will be exposed to view after installation.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. Sampling and testing shall be done by the precast manufacturer in accordance with Materials Bureau requirements contained in the current Materials Procedure for precast concrete.

MARKING. All precast units shall be clearly marked with permanent waterproof paint. Unless noted otherwise in the item specification, units shall be marked on an inside or back surface which will not be exposed to view after installation. The following information shall be included:

Name or trademark of the manufacturer.
Date of manufacture.
Unique piece identification number.
NYSDOT Contract number.

FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION. A final production inspection shall be performed by the precast manufacturer on every precast unit produced for the Department. An inspection will be considered satisfactory when it verifies that the precast unit is in compliance with the appropriate Department specifications. The specific requirements and procedures for the inspection are contained in the precast manufacturer’s Department approved Quality Control Plan.

SHIPPING. Upon completion of a satisfactory final production inspection the precast unit may be shipped from the manufacturing location except that units produced between the dates of October 31st and April 1st shall not be shipped for a minimum of 72 hours following the completion of casting.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Precast units will be accepted at the job site based on the following:
The manufacturer’s name must appear on the Department’s Approved List for the item being supplied.
A manufacturer’s certification.
An acceptable product evaluation made by the Engineer.

704-04 CONCRETE BLOCK (SLOPE PAVING)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material details and quality requirements for concrete block for use in concrete block slope paving and produced in accordance with the current Materials Procedure for Concrete Masonry QC/QA titled “Procedures for Achieving and Maintaining Concrete Masonry Units Approved List Status”.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Certain aggregates appear in the Approved List of Sources of Fine and Coarse Aggregates that have use limitations with high alkali Portland Cement. Materials used in the manufacture of concrete block shall meet the requirements of the following subsections:

- Portland Cement 701-01
- Coarse Aggregate 703-02
- Mortar Sand 703-03
- Grout Sand 703-04
- Concrete Sand 703-07
- Fly Ash 711-10
- Ground, Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag 711-12
- Water 712-01

Fly ash or ground granulated blast furnace slag may be substituted for up to a maximum of 20% by weight of the total amount of cement plus pozzolan in the mix. Pigments used for integral coloring shall meet the requirements of ASTM C979. Other materials may be used in the manufacture as approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.

Physical Properties. The minimum acceptable average compressive strength of five-block samples is 6000 psi, with no individual block less than 5500 psi. The maximum acceptable average freeze/thaw loss of five-block samples, subjected to 42 freeze/thaw cycles in a 3% NaCl solution, shall not exceed 1.0%, with no individual sample exceeding 1.5%.

Block dimensions shall be as required in the contract documents. Dimensions shall not vary by more than ¼ inch from those specified. Blocks shall be sound and free from cracks or other defects that would interfere with their proper placement or performance.

Sampling and Testing. When samples are requested by the Department, they will be randomly selected from production-run material. A minimum of five samples, prepared by the manufacturer in accordance with ASTM C1262, will be required for freeze/thaw testing.

Samples will be tested for compressive strength in accordance with ASTM C140. Samples will be tested for freeze/thaw durability in accordance with ASTM C1262.

Basis of Acceptance. Concrete block will be accepted on the job site based on the following:

- The manufacturer's name must appear on the Department’s Approved List for the item being supplied.
- A manufacturer’s certification.

An acceptable product evaluation made by the Engineer.

704-05 PRECAST CONCRETE BARRIER

Scope. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for precast concrete barrier used in highway applications, precast concrete barrier for structures, and precast temporary concrete barrier.

Material Requirements. The Material Requirements contained in 704-03 Precast Concrete - General shall apply except as noted herein.

Concrete mixtures used under this specification shall have a maximum cement content of 750 lbs per cubic yard. Unless noted otherwise in the contract documents or approved fabrication drawings, the compressive strength of concrete used in precast concrete barrier shall be as follows:

- Concrete Barrier 3,000 psi (minimum) @ 28 days
- Concrete Barrier for Structures 5,000 psi (minimum) @ 28 days
Temporary Concrete Barrier 3,000 psi (minimum) @ 28 days

All reinforcing steel for Concrete Barrier and Concrete Barrier For Structures shall be epoxy coated meeting the requirements of 709-04 Epoxy Coated Bar Reinforcement, Grade 60. All reinforcing steel for Temporary Concrete Barrier shall meet the requirements of 709-01 Bar Reinforcement, Grade 60.

DRAWINGS. The drawing requirements contained in 704-03 Precast Concrete - General shall apply except as noted herein.

Concrete Barrier and Temporary Concrete Barrier shall use dimensions as shown on the Standard Sheets. Concrete Barrier for Structures shall use dimensions as shown on the Bridge Design (BD) Sheets.

FABRICATION. The fabrication requirements contained in 704-03 Precast Concrete - General, as well as the following shall apply.

- Cross-sectional dimensions shall not vary from the dimensions shown by more than 1/4 inch.
- Barrier shall not be out of plumb by more than 1/4 inch.
- Longitudinal dimensions shall not vary from the dimensions shown by more than 1/4 inch per 10 feet of barrier.
- When checked with a 10 foot straight edge, irregularities shall not exceed 1/4 inch.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. The Sampling and Testing requirements contained in 704-03 Precast Concrete - General shall apply.

MARKING. The Marking requirements contained in 704-03 Precast Concrete - General shall apply except as noted herein.

Concrete Barrier and Concrete Barrier For Structures shall be marked on one end of each barrier segment such that they will not be exposed to view after installation.

Temporary Concrete Barrier shall be marked with “NYSDOT” in place of a Department contract number. In addition, each Temporary Concrete Barrier segment shall be permanently marked with a manufacturer’s identification and a date of manufacture in a manner that will remain legible throughout its service life. The date, at a minimum, shall contain the month and year. Permanent markings shall be placed in a consistent location on the top, bottom, or one end of each segment. Imprinting the required information a minimum of 1/4 inch into the concrete surface will be considered an acceptable permanent marking. Paint will not be considered a permanent marking. If permanent markings are located on the bottom of the segment, paint markings matching the permanent markings shall be placed on one end of each segment to facilitate field inspection.

FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION. The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in 704-03 Precast Concrete - General shall apply.

SHIPPING. The Shipping requirements in 704-03 Precast Concrete - General shall apply.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Designs for permanent, standard Concrete Barrier other than those shown on the Standard Sheets will not be approved.

Concrete Barrier for Structures designs may be proposed, and if found acceptable, will be placed on the Approved List. Evidence shall be provided that the proposed anchorage system has been successfully tested in accordance with the procedural directives issued by the DCES.

Temporary Concrete Barrier designs other than those shown on the Standard Sheets may be proposed, and if found acceptable, will be placed on the appropriate Approved List based on their deflection and fixity (pinned or unpinned). Evidence shall be provided that the temporary concrete barrier, with the
proposed joint system and anchorage, is MASH compliant. Additionally, the submitted design must include details of a barrier segment that can connect between the proposed system and NYSDOT’s generic Temporary Concrete Barrier. **BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Concrete Barrier designs other than those shown on the Standard Sheets will not be approved.

— Concrete Barrier For Structures designs may be proposed, and if found acceptable, they will be placed on the approved list. Evidence shall be provided that the proposed anchorage system has been successfully tested in accordance with the procedural directives issued by the DCES.

— Temporary Concrete Barrier designs other than those shown on the Standard Sheets may be proposed, and if found acceptable, they will be placed on the approved list. Evidence shall be provided that the temporary concrete barrier, with the proposed joint system, is NCHRP 350 approved.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Basis of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03 Precast Concrete - General shall apply.

**704-06 PRECAST CONCRETE WALL UNITS AND PRECAST CONCRETE CRIBBING**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements of precast concrete wall units and precast concrete cribbing for prefabricated wall systems.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The Material Requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**DRAWINGS.** The Drawing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**FABRICATION.** The Fabrication requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**SAMPLING AND TESTING.** The Sampling And Testing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**MARKING.** The Marking requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION.** The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**SHIPPING.** The Shipping requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Basis Of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**704-07 DRY CAST CONCRETE WALL UNITS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material details and quality requirements for dry cast concrete wall units produced in accordance with the current Materials Procedure for Concrete Masonry QC/QA titled “Procedures for Achieving and Maintaining Concrete Masonry Units Approved List Status”.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Provide dry cast concrete wall units meeting the style and color requirements in the contract documents. Certain aggregates appear in the Approved List of Sources of Fine and Coarse Aggregates that have use limitations with high alkali Portland cement. Use materials, meeting the following requirements, in the manufacture of dry cast concrete wall units:

- Portland Cement 701-01
- Coarse Aggregate 703-02
- Mortar Sand 703-03
Grout Sand 703-04
Concrete Sand 703-07
Fly Ash 711-10
Ground, Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag 711-12
Water 712-01

Fly ash or ground, granulated blast-furnace slag may be substituted for up to a maximum of 20% by weight of the total amount of cement plus pozzolan in the mix. Use integral coloring pigments, when required, meeting the requirements of ASTM C979. Other materials may be used in the manufacture as approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.

Physical Properties. The minimum acceptable average compressive strength of five-block samples is 6000 psi, with no individual block sample less than 5500 psi. The maximum acceptable average freeze/thaw loss of five-block samples, subjected to 42 freeze/thaw cycles in a 3% NaCl solution, is 1.0%, with no individual sample exceeding 1.5%.

The formed dimensions of dry cast concrete wall units will not differ more than ¼ inch from the nominal dimensions shown on the approved Materials Detail Drawing. Provide sound blocks, free from cracks or other defects that would interfere with the proper placing, performance, or appearance of the blocks.

Materials Details. At the time of application to the Approved List, submit Materials Details Drawings to the Director, Materials Bureau for approval. Prepare and submit drawings in accordance with Departmental procedural directives. Submit a unique drawing(s) for each block style under consideration.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. When samples are requested by the Department, they will be randomly selected from production-run material. A minimum of 5 samples, prepared by the manufacturer in accordance with ASTM C140, will be required for compression testing. A minimum of five samples, prepared by the manufacturer in accordance with ASTM C1262, will be required for freeze/thaw testing.

Samples will be tested for compressive strength in accordance with ASTM C140. Samples will be tested for freeze/thaw durability in accordance with ASTM C1262.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Dry cast concrete wall units will be accepted on the job site based on the following:
- The manufacturer’s name and block style must appear on the Department’s Approved List for the item being supplied.
- A manufacturer’s certification.
- Conformance to the approved material detail drawing(s).

An acceptable product evaluation made by the Engineer.

704-08 BRICK SIDEWALK AND DRIVEWAY PAVERS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for brick pavers made from extruded fire clay or shale for use in brick paving.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Brick pavers shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C902, Class SX, Type I. Brick pavers shall be the shape, size, and color shown in the contract documents.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. Samples, when requested by the Department, shall be randomly selected from production-run material. A minimum of 10 full-size bricks of the same size and style will be required. Samples will be tested for the physical properties identified in ASTM C902. Tests will be performed in accordance with ASTM C67.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Brick sidewalk and driveway pavers will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

704-09 STONE BLOCKS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for stone blocks for use in Grouted Stone Block Paved Sidewalks and Driveways.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Stone blocks shall be new or used granite or other stone as specified. The blocks shall be sound and durable, reasonably uniform in quality and texture throughout, free from shale, excess mica, seams, scaling or evidence of disintegration. Color shall be as specified. Samples of stone blocks shall be submitted to and be approved by the Engineer prior to beginning of work.

The blocks shall be rectangular in shape, with the following approximate dimensions: 8 - 12 inches in length, 3 - 5 inches in depth, unless otherwise specified or approved, and so dressed that they may be laid with a maximum of 1 1/4 inch joints or as specified. All blocks shall have one reasonably smooth split face with no projections or depressions over 1/4 inch. Cutting of blocks to meet the pattern requirements will be permitted subject to the approval of the Engineer.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Stone blocks shall be inspected, by the Engineer, for dimensional and color compliance upon arrival at the project location. Blocks not in compliance with the contract documents may be rejected by the Engineer.

704-10 SPLIT-FACED CONCRETE BRICK

SCOPE. This specification covers the material details and quality requirements for split faced concrete brick for use in facing structural walls and produced in accordance with the current Materials Procedure for Concrete Masonry QC/QA titled “Procedures for Achieving and Maintaining Concrete Masonry Units Approved List Status”.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Split-faced concrete brick shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C90, except as noted herein. The shape, size, and color of split-faced concrete brick shall be as shown in the contract documents. The splitting operation shall leave relatively sharp, straight and parallel edges. Certain aggregates appear in the Approved List of Sources of Fine and Coarse Aggregates that have use limitations with high alkali Portland Cement. Materials used in the manufacture of split-faced concrete brick shall meet the requirements of the following subsections:

Portland Cement 701-01
Coarse Aggregate 703-02
Mortar Sand 703-03
Grout Sand 703-04
Concrete Sand 703-07
Fly Ash 711-10
Ground, Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag 711-12
Water 712-01

Fly ash or ground, granulated blast-furnace slag may be substituted for up to a maximum of 20% by weight of the total amount of cement plus pozzolan in the mix. Pigments used for integral coloring shall meet the requirements of ASTM C979. Other materials may be used in the manufacture as approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.
**SAMPLING AND TESTING.** When samples are requested by the Department, they will be randomly selected from production-run material. A minimum of 10 full-size, split-faced bricks of the same size and style will be required. Five samples will be tested for compressive strength and five for absorption, in accordance with ASTM C140.

The manufacturer shall be responsible for having brick tested for linear drying shrinkage in accordance with ASTM C90. A copy of the test report shall be included with the samples submitted to the Department for compression and absorption testing.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Split-faced concrete brick will be accepted on the job site based on the following:

- The manufacturer's name must appear on the Department’s Approved List for the item being supplied.
- A manufacturer’s certification.

An acceptable product evaluation made by the Engineer.

**704-11 PRECAST CONCRETE COPING**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for precast concrete coping.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The Material Requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**DRAWINGS.** The Drawing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**FABRICATION.** The Fabrication requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply except as noted herein.

Coping shall be produced with a dense, smooth, uniform finished surface without rubbing or additional treatment. Corners shall have a maximum radius of 1/8 inch and grinding will not be allowed. Coping shall be removed from the forms and handled in a manner that will prevent chipping of the edges and faces of the concrete.

**Repair.** Surface defects, regardless of size, shall be repaired by wetting the surface to achieve a damp condition with no standing water in the holes and then filling the holes with a mortar composed of an appropriate proportion of sand and cement having the same color and physical characteristics of the original mix. The mortar shall be allowed to partially harden and then be rubbed until a clean, uniform appearance, with no visible coating of mortar on the concrete, is obtained. The mortar repair shall be cured in the same manner as the coping unit.

**SAMPLING AND TESTING.** The Sampling and Testing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**MARKING.** The Marking requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply except as noted herein.

Markings shall be placed on one end of each unit such that they won’t be exposed to view after installation.

**FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION.** The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**SHIPPING.** The Shipping requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Basis Of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.
704-12 CONCRETE BLOCK

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for concrete block for use in structural walls and produced in accordance with the current Materials Procedure for Concrete Masonry QC/QA titled “Procedures for Achieving and Maintaining Concrete Masonry Units Approved List Status”.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Concrete block shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C90 except as noted herein. The shape, size, and color of concrete block shall be as shown in the contract documents. Certain aggregates appear in the Approved List of Sources of Fine and Coarse Aggregates that have use limitations with high alkali Portland Cement. Materials used in the manufacture of concrete block shall meet the requirements of the following subsections:

- Portland Cement 701-01
- Coarse Aggregate 703-02
- Mortar Sand 703-03
- Grout Sand 703-04
- Concrete Sand 703-07
- Fly Ash 711-10
- Ground, Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag 711-12
- Water 712-01

Fly ash or ground, granulated blast-furnace slag may be substituted for up to a maximum of 20% by weight of the total amount of cement plus pozzolan in the mix. Pigments used for integral coloring shall meet the requirements of ASTM C979. Other materials may be used in the manufacture as approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. When samples are requested by the Department, they will be randomly selected from production-run material. A minimum of 10 full-size concrete blocks of the same size and style will be required. Five samples will be tested for compressive strength and five for absorption, in accordance with ASTM C140.

The manufacturer shall be responsible for having block tested for linear drying shrinkage in accordance with ASTM C90. A copy of the test report shall be included with the samples submitted to the Department for compression and absorption testing.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Concrete block will be accepted on the job site based on the following:

- The manufacturer’s name must appear on the Department’s Approved List for the item being supplied.
- A manufacturer’s certification.
- An acceptable product evaluation made by the Engineer.

704-13 PRECAST CONCRETE DRIVEWAY AND SIDEWALK PAVERS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material details and quality requirements for precast concrete pavers used for driveway and sidewalk paving and produced in accordance with the current Materials Procedure for Concrete Masonry QC/QA titled “Procedures for Achieving and Maintaining Concrete Masonry Units Approved List Status”.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Precast concrete pavers shall meet the requirements of ASTM C936 except as noted herein. The shape, size, and color of precast concrete pavers shall be as shown in the
Contract documents. Certain aggregates appear in the Approved List of Sources of Fine and Coarse Aggregates that have use limitations with high alkali Portland Cement. Materials used in the manufacture of precast concrete pavers shall meet the requirements of the following subsections:

Portland Cement 701-01
Coarse Aggregate 703-02
Mortar Sand 703-03
Grout Sand 703-04
Concrete Sand 703-07
Fly Ash 711-10
Ground, Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag 711-12
Water 712-01

Fly ash or ground, granulated blast-furnace slag may be substituted for up to a maximum of 20% by weight of the total amount of cement plus pozzolan in the mix. Pigments used for integral coloring shall meet the requirements of ASTM C979. Other materials may be used in the manufacture as approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.

Physical Properties. Precast concrete pavers shall meet the compressive strength and absorption requirements of ASTM C936. In addition, the maximum acceptable average freeze/thaw loss of five paver samples, subjected to 25 freeze/thaw cycles in a 10% NaCl solution, is 1.0%, with no individual sample exceeding 1.5%.

Sampling and Testing. When samples are requested by the Department, they will be randomly selected from production-run material. A total of 15 precast concrete pavers of the same size and style will be required. Five samples will be tested for compressive strength and five for absorption, in accordance with ASTM C140. Five samples will be tested for freeze/thaw durability in accordance with NYSDOT test methods.

Basis of Acceptance. Precast concrete driveway and sidewalk pavers will be accepted on the job site based on the following:

- The manufacturer's name must appear on the Department’s Approved List for the item being supplied.
- A manufacturer’s certification.

An acceptable product evaluation made by the Engineer.

704-14 Precast Concrete Panel Units (Mechanically Stabilized Earth System)

Scope. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for precast concrete panel units used to construct a mechanically stabilized earth system.

Material Requirements. The Material Requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply except as noted herein.

- Unless noted otherwise in the contract documents or approved fabrication drawings the concrete used to fabricate panel units shall have a minimum compressive strength of 5000 psi @ 28 days.
- Reinforcing steel shall be epoxy coated meeting the requirements of §709-04 or §709-08.
- Embedded items shall be as detailed on the fabrication drawings. Acceptance of embedded items will be based on manufacturer’s certification, unless otherwise directed by the Materials Bureau. When steel embedments are required, they shall be galvanized to §719-01.

Drawings. The drawing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.
FACTORABLE. The Fabrication requirements contained in §704-03, along with the following, shall apply.

A. Corrosion Inhibitor. When required in the contract plans the concrete used shall contain a corrosion inhibitor. The use of corrosion inhibitor does not replace the requirement for epoxy coated reinforcing.

B. Dimensional Tolerances

- Panel dimensions (edge-to-edge of concrete). ±1/4 inch
- Panel thickness. ±1/4 inch
- Length difference between two diagonals (squareness). ±3/8 inch
- Distance between the centerline of dowel and dowel sleeve. ±1/4 inch
- Dimension from the face of panel to centerline of dowel and dowel sleeve, and to centerline of reinforcing steel. ±1/4 inch
- Warping of the exposed panel face 1/4 inch in 5 feet
- Location of tie strips. ±1 inch
- Location of coil embeds. ±1/4 inch
- Location of connection slots. ±1 inch
- Contact surfaces of each fabricated embedment assembly. ±1/8 inch from a straight line.
- Miscellaneous tolerances. as detailed on the fabrication drawings.

C. Coating of Concrete Units. When required in the contract plans, panel units shall be coated on all surfaces with a penetrating sealer meeting the requirements of §717-03 Penetrating Type Protective Sealers. Surfaces to be coated must be prepared by blast cleaning, removing all laitance, loose particles, etc. The surface shall be allowed to dry for 24 hours after wetting for any reason. All surface preparation work shall be completed before sealer application can commence. The coating of units shall take place prior to shipping unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

Sealer materials shall not be applied during wet weather conditions. Any unit exposed to wetting within 12 hours of being sealed shall be recoated. Ambient and surface temperatures shall be a minimum of 40°F during application and until the sealed concrete is dry to the touch. Application by spray methods shall not be used during windy conditions.

The sealer shall be used as supplied by the manufacturer without thinning or alterations, unless specifically required in the manufacturer’s instructions. Thorough mixing of the sealer before and during use shall be accomplished as recommended by the manufacturer. Equipment for sealer application shall be clean of foreign materials. A minimum of two coats of sealer shall be applied. The total quantity of sealer applied by each coat shall be equal to the quantity required at the application rate specified in the Approved List. Each coat shall be allowed to dry before the next coat is applied. On sloping and vertical surfaces, sealer application shall progress from the bottom to the top. Care shall be taken to ensure that the entire surface of the concrete is covered and all pores filled.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. The Sampling and Testing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

MARKING. The Marking requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION. The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.
SHIPPING. The Shipping requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Basis Of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

704-15 PRECAST CONCRETE PAVEMENT SLAB SYSTEMS

SCOPE. This specification covers material and fabrication requirements for precast concrete pavement slab systems. Approved systems can be supplied by any manufacturer appearing on the Department’s Approved List entitled “Precast Concrete Manufacturers Approved for QC/QA Production – Groups 1 & 6,” provided they obtain approval from the system designer.

SYSTEM APPROVAL. For Approved List consideration, the system designer must submit the following information to the Materials Bureau. After the Materials Bureau reviews the submitted information, the system designer will be required to perform a trial installation as detailed herein.

A. Fabricator Standard Drawings. Apply §704-03, Precast Concrete – General. Include the following details:

- Transverse joint support type, locations, spacing, and the mechanism used to transfer loads across transverse joints after slabs are placed.
- Longitudinal joint tie type, locations, spacing and the mechanism used to tie adjacent slabs together.
- Lifting insert type, location, positioning, and capping or backfill method.
- Grout port type, location, positioning, and capping or backfill method.

B. Installation Instructions. Provide installation instructions, including any special equipment, to address the following.

2. Slab Installation. Instructions for lifting, moving, protecting, lowering, and adjusting the slabs into position.
3. Bed and Level Slabs. Instructions to ensure slabs are fully supported by underlying layers at the correct line, grade, and cross slope while meeting contract smoothness requirements. Slabs may be either:

- Placed on a precisely graded bedding layer and grouted in-place to fill any small, isolated voids between the slabs and bedding layer (grade-supported).
- Placed or held near final position and jacked into place (grout-supported).
- Placed by other methods approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.

For grade-supported slabs, include all pertinent bedding and leveling instructions, including:

- Bedding material composition and gradation.
- Bedding grout mix design and anticipated strength gain. Bedding grouts must develop a minimum compressive strength of 600 psi in 12 hours.
- Method used to place the bedding material and grout beneath the slab.
- Method used to ensure complete bedding when placed.

For grout-supported slabs, include all pertinent bedding and leveling instructions, including:

- Material properties, composition, mix design, and anticipated strength gain of any slab-jacking material.
- Method used to place the slab-jacking material beneath the slab.
• Method used to ensure complete slab contact with jacking material when placed.

4. Backfilling Pavement Hardware. Instructions to completely encase load transfer devices, longitudinal joint ties, lifting inserts, and grout ports. Include all pertinent information, including:
   • Material properties, composition, mix design, and anticipated strength gain of any backfill material that is not named in Backfill Material for Pavement Hardware, or, revised instructions for those materials if the manufacturer’s instructions are not followed.
   • Method used to place backfill material.
   • Method used to ensure complete hardware encasement.

Subsequent to system approval, any change to approved installation instructions must be submitted to, and approved by, the Director, Materials Bureau, to maintain Approved List status. The Department reserves the right to require additional trial installations if the changes are deemed significant.

C. Trial Installation. Perform a trial installation at a facility agreeable to the Regional Materials Engineer that is within a 1-hour drive of a Regional Materials Laboratory. Ensure Materials Bureau and Regional Materials personnel are present. Place 4 (minimum) 12 x 12 foot slabs simulating 2 lanes of traffic. Provide a drill rig, with operator, capable of retrieving 4 inch diameter cores through any portion of the slab, and a technician capable of fabricating test specimens in accordance with Test Method NY 701-13P, C, Concrete Repair Material. As a minimum, the following will be evaluated:

3. Backfill Material Properties and Completeness of Placement. If a material identified in this specification as Backfill Material for Pavement Hardware (under Material Requirements) is used in accordance with the manufacturer’s written instructions, no further material testing is required. If a different material is used (or if a material is not used in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions), fabricate a sufficient amount of test specimens to determine the properties identified in Table 704-15-1, Backfill Material Requirements, when tested in accordance with Test Method NY 701-13P, C, Concrete Repair Material.
4. Dimensions and Tolerances. Slabs must conform to the Fabricator Standard Drawings and be capable of being placed in an essentially true plane.
5. Instruction Completeness. Manufacturer’s instructions must accurately reflect the processes used in the trial installation.
6. Load Transfer Efficiency (LTE). The Department reserves the right to conduct falling weight deflectometer testing to determine LTE at the joints. Poor LTE (≤ 70 %) is cause for rejection.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Apply §704-03, Precast Concrete – General, except as noted herein.

A. Concrete. Use concrete having a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4500 psi unless noted otherwise in the contract documents or approved fabrication drawings. Use aggregate meeting the friction requirements of Sections 501, Portland Cement Concrete – General, and 502, Portland Cement Concrete Pavement, for precast slabs that will remain concrete surfaced. Friction aggregate type is identified in the contract documents by pay item.

B. Reinforcement. Use bars meeting §709-04, Epoxy-Coated Bar Reinforcement, Grade 60. As a minimum, fabricate slabs with single-mat reinforcement located in the bottom third of the slab. Provide 2 inch (minimum) concrete cover between the mat and the slab bottom. Fabricate mats
using a size and spacing of steel (in both directions) that results in a steel area to cross-sectional area ratio of 0.0018 (minimum). Maximum bar spacing is 18 inches.

The manufacturer may provide additional reinforcement based on jobsite loading conditions. (A typical example is when slabs must be loaded before a bedding grout is placed.)

C. Backfill Material for Pavement Hardware. If the precast slab system requires a backfill material around pavement hardware, use DBR Retrofit Mortar, HD-50, Five Star Highway Patch, or an alternate prepackaged material submitted as an approved equal. If the brands named above are mixed in accordance with the manufacturer’s written instruction, no further testing is required. If the manufacturer’s written instructions are not followed, or if an alternate material is proposed for use, the material must meet Table 704-15-1, Backfill Material Requirements, when tested in accordance with Test Method NY 701-13P,C, Concrete Repair Material. Material submission instructions can be found at the Department’s web site, www.nysdot.gov, under Approved List of Materials and Equipment Submission Instructions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Minimum</th>
<th>Maximum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compressive Strength, Opening to Traffic</td>
<td>2500 psi</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compressive Strength, 28 Day</td>
<td>4000 psi</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expansion</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.40 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contraction</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.05 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freeze - Thaw Loss (25 cycles at 10% NaCl)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1.0 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bond Strength (to dry PCC)</td>
<td>300 psi</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Set Time</td>
<td>15 minutes</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloride Content</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.05 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfate Content</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5.0 %</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DRAWINGS. Apply §704-03 Precast Concrete – General, except as noted herein. Provide job-specific Fabricator Working Drawings, from the system designer, for each contract. Use these drawings, in conjunction with approved Fabricator Standard Drawings, to manufacture the pavement slabs. Copies of approved working drawings will be returned to the system designer. If the manufacturer is not the system designer, include the manufacturer’s name, address, and telephone number on the drawings.

FABRICATION. Apply §704-03, Precast Concrete – General, except as noted herein.

Texture. Apply §502-3.10, Texturing, to the top surface of the slab.

Curing. When membrane curing compound is the selected curing method and the slabs are exposed to sunlight while curing, use a white pigmented membrane curing compound from the Department’s Approved List instead of a clear compound with fugitive dye.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. Apply §704-03, Precast Concrete - General.

MARKING. Apply §704-03, Precast Concrete - General.

FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION. Apply §704-03, Precast Concrete - General.

SHIPPING. Apply §704-03, Precast Concrete - General.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Apply §704-03, Precast Concrete – General, and the following:

- The system must appear on the Department’s Approved List entitled “Precast Concrete Pavement Slabs Systems (§704-15).”
- Written approval from the system designer to use the approved system if the manufacturer is not the system designer.

704-16 THRU 704-22 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

704-23 PRECAST CONCRETE STREET PAVERS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for precast concrete pavers used for street paving and produced in accordance with the current Materials Procedure for Concrete Masonry QC/QA titled “Procedures for Achieving and Maintaining Concrete Masonry Units Approved List Status”.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Precast concrete pavers shall meet the requirements of ASTM C936 except as noted herein. The shape, size, and color of precast concrete pavers shall be as shown in the contract documents. Minimum thickness for precast concrete street pavers shall be 3 1/8 inches. Certain aggregates appear in the Approved List of Sources of Fine and Coarse Aggregates that have use limitations with high alkali Portland cement. Materials used in the manufacturing of precast concrete pavers shall meet the requirements of the following subsections:

Portland Cement 701-01
Coarse Aggregate* 703-02
Mortar Sand* 703-03
Grout Sand* 703-04
Concrete Sand* 703-07
Fly Ash 711-10
Ground, Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag 711-12
Water 712-01

* Aggregates. For precast concrete pavers or equivalent products placed in concrete highway wearing surfaces, use aggregate from a source or sources on the “Approved List of Sources of Fine and Coarse Aggregate.” All aggregate must be approved for use in concrete. Fine aggregate, natural or manufactured sand, must meet the requirements of §703-01, Fine Aggregate.

Crushed stone, crushed gravel, or crushed slag from a coarse aggregate source must meet the requirements of §703-02, Coarse Aggregate.

Aggregate friction requirements: Sample and test aggregate for friction characteristics according to the procedures of Materials Method 28 “Friction Aggregate Control and Test Procedures”, PCC Sand. The Engineer will identify pavement areas, if any, represented by failing samples according to the procedures of Materials Method 28 “Friction Aggregate Control and Test Procedures.”

Aggregate must contain at least 25.0% acid-insoluble residue in the plus No. 30 size fraction and in the minus No. 30, plus No. 200 size fraction. If more than one source of aggregate is used, aggregate from each source must meet the acid-insoluble residue requirements.

Fly ash or ground, granulated blast-furnace slag may be substituted up to a maximum of 20% by weight of the total amount of cement plus pozzolan in the mix. Pigments used for integral coloring shall meet the requirements of ASTM C979. Other materials may be used in the manufacture as approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.
Physical Properties. Precast concrete pavers shall meet the compressive strength and absorption requirements of ASTM C936. In addition, the maximum acceptable average freeze/thaw loss of five paver samples, subjected to 25 freeze/thaw cycles in a 10% NaCl solution, is 1.0%, with no individual sample exceeding 1.5%.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. When samples are requested by the Department, they will be randomly selected from production-run material. A total of 15 precast concrete pavers of the same size and style will be required. Five samples will be tested for compressive strength and five for absorption, in accordance with ASTM C140. Five samples will be tested for freeze/thaw durability in accordance with NYSDOT test methods.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Precast Concrete Street pavers will be accepted on the job site based on the following:
- The manufacturer's name must appear on the Department’s Approved List for the item being supplied.
- A manufacturer’s certification.
An acceptable product evaluation made by the Engineer.

704-24 PRECAST CONCRETE PANELS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for precast concrete panels.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The Material Requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

DRAWINGS. The Drawing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

FABRICATION. The Fabrication requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. The Sampling And Testing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

MARKING. The Marking requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION. The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

SHIPPING. The Shipping requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Basis Of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

704-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

SECTION 705 - JOINT MATERIALS
(Last Revised January, 2020)

705-01 PREFORMED CORK JOINT FILLER

SCOPE. This specification contains the material requirements pertaining to preformed cork joint filler.

GENERAL. The Joint Filler shall be of the dimensions shown on the plans or listed in the specifications. Each piece shall be plainly marked with the manufacturer's name.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Preformed Cork Joint Filler shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D1752, Type III (Self-expanding Cork).

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

705-02 HIGHWAY JOINT SEALANTS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for highway joint sealants. Highway joint sealants are hot-applied joint and crack sealants for use in sealing joints and cracks in Portland Cement Concrete (PCC) and Asphalt (HMA) pavements.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Highway joint sealants must meet the following requirements:

1. The material shall be tested by the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP) for joint and crack sealants for PCC and HMA pavements in accordance with their procedures.
2. ASTM D6690, Type II or Type IV.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. The approval of highway joint sealants shall be based upon satisfactory test results from the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP). Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the joint sealant’s brand, supplier’s name and location will be placed on the Approved List. Resubmittal to NTPEP for product testing of a previously approved product is required every three years. The field testing of the product will not be required for resubmittal samples to NTPEP.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The highway joint sealant will be accepted based on the product appearing on the Approved List for the appropriate sealant class and the manufacturer’s certification.

705-03 PREFORMED RUBBER JOINT FILLER

SCOPE. This specification contains the material requirements pertaining to preformed rubber joint filler.

GENERAL. The joint filler shall be of the dimensions shown on the plans or in the specifications.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Preformed Rubber Joint Filler shall conform to the requirements of the Standard Specifications for ASTM D1752, Type (Sponge Rubber), except that the use of reclaimed rubber or factice will be permitted.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

705-04 ARMORLESS BRIDGE JOINTS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for armorless bridge joint systems.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The materials used to construct the armorless bridge joint system will appear as approved materials on the Department’s Approved List for Materials and Equipment for use on NYSDOT Projects.
**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer’s name and system appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a Manufacturer’s certification of conformance of the system to the approved Materials Detail Sheet (MDS.) The supplier will provide two copies of the approved Materials Details through the Contractor to the Engineer as part of the evidence of acceptability for the material at least 10 days prior to shipment of the product to the job site.

**705-05 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS FOR PAVEMENTS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for silicone joint sealants for pavements.

**GENERAL.** Use equipment meeting §502-2.04 J, Joint Sealing (Silicone). Install the sealant in accordance with the manufacturer’s written instructions.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Silicone Joint Sealant shall conform to the following requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Test Method</th>
<th>Specification ASTM D5893</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tack-Free Time, min.</td>
<td>ASTM C679</td>
<td>5 hrs. ± 10 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accelerated Weathering</td>
<td>ASTM C793</td>
<td>Satisfactory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow</td>
<td>ASTM C639</td>
<td>No Flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modulus of Elongation</td>
<td>ASTM D412</td>
<td>600% (Minimum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bond, Non-Immersed</td>
<td>ASTM D5329</td>
<td>Satisfactory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer's name appearing on the Approved List for Joint Materials, Pavement for Silicone Joint Sealants (705-05).

**705-06 CAULKING COMPOUND FOR STRUCTURES**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for caulking compound for structures.

**GENERAL.** Caulking compound shall be applied with either a pneumatic or ratchet hand gun.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Caulking compound shall be a material which complies with Federal Specification TT-S-230 Sealing Compound, Synthetic-Rubber Base, Single Component, Chemically Curing. The color of the compound shall be cement mortar grey when tested in the manner described in TT-S-230 and compared against a color standard in possession of the Materials Bureau. This standard will be made available upon written request.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

**705-07 PREMOLDED RESILIENT JOINT FILLER**

**SCOPE.** This specification contains the material requirements for premolded resilient joint filler.

**GENERAL.** The joint filler shall be of the dimensions shown on the plans or listed in the specifications. When the material is delivered cut to dimension, it shall be banded in bundles of convenient size.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The premoled resilient joint filler shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D1751. The asphalt content requirement may be waived if the material meets other requirements of D1751 based on supplementary testing performed by the Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Application for approval of premoled resilient joint filler shall be submitted to the Director, Materials Bureau. Upon approval, the product name and its manufacturer will be placed on the Department's Approved List. Each lift or bundle of joint filler shall be tagged by the manufacturer; the product will be accepted at the work site on the basis of the name and manufacturer of the product appearing on the tag and the Approved List. The Department reserves the right to sample and test the material after delivery at the project site.

705-08 PREFORMED, CLOSED-CELL FOAM MATERIAL

SCOPE. This specification covers the requirements for preformed, closed-cell foam material.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

General. Closed-cell foam material is used primarily as the joint seal in structural expansion joint systems. The joint material shall remain unaffected by road salts and petroleum products. The material shall also be capable of maintaining a waterproof joint within the range of 50% compression and 25% tension. The joint material shall have grooves along the entire length of the bond surfaces for enhanced bonding performance. The grooves shall be 1/8 inch deep × 1/8 inch wide and spaced from 1/4 inch to 1/2 inch apart.

Installation. Install the preformed, closed-cell foam material according to the manufacturer’s recommended procedure. If a bonding agent is required, it shall be one which is recommended by the manufacturer.

Physical Properties. The joint material shall be a closed-cell, cross linked, expanded polyethylene. Material will meet the properties of Table 705-1.

<p>| TABLE 705-1 |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Test Method</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extrusion</td>
<td>ASTM D545 @ 50% Compression 3 Sides Restrained</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression Deflection</td>
<td>ASTM D3575, Suffix D 50% Deflection @ 80°F</td>
<td>10 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density</td>
<td>ASTM D3575, Suffix W, Method A</td>
<td>2 pcf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Absorption</td>
<td>ASTM D545</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression Set</td>
<td>ASTM D1056, 50% Deflection for 22 hrs. @ 70 ± 5°F</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DIMENSIONS. The joint material shall be of the thickness and width described in the contract documents within a tolerance of +10% and -2%. Joint material shall be heat welded to the proper dimensions by the manufacturer. No glue or chemical agents shall be used to join pieces together. No laminations in width shall be allowed.
**Basis of Acceptance.** Acceptance of this material will be based on the product name appearing on the Department’s Approved List for Preformed Closed-Cell Foam Material.

**705-09 Preformed Elastic Bridge Joint Sealer**

**Scope.** This specification covers the material requirements for preformed elastic bridge joint sealer for use in bridge joints.

**Material Requirements.** The preformed elastic joint sealer material shall be vulcanized elastomeric compound using polymerized chloroprene as the only basic elastomer.

**Flexibility.** The sealer shape shall be capable of withstanding compression, rotation, or other joint movements without change in the position of the point of foldability, misalignment, or other conditions felt detrimental by the Director, Materials Bureau. The sealer shall exhibit sufficient sealing pressures throughout its expected compression range to assure that no deleterious materials enter the joint.

The joint sealer material shall be tested in accordance with AASHTO M297 except that Compression Deflection properties shall be determined in accordance with Department written instructions. Compression Deflection Properties, LC min and LC max, shall comply to that specified in Table 705-2. Test specimens shall be cut and/or buffed from joint seal samples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal Seal Size (in.)</th>
<th>LC Min.%</th>
<th>LC Max.%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 or less</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1/2</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dimensions.** The measured width and depth of joint seal material shall meet the minimum and maximum allowable dimensions as determined from the original drawings and the applied tolerances.

**Dimensional Tolerances.** The nominal height of the uncompressed sealer shall be greater than or equal to the nominal uncompressed width.

The measured width and height of joint material shall satisfy the minimum and maximum allowable dimensions as determined from the nominal dimensions shown on the approved drawings and the following dimensional tolerances.

A dimensional tolerance of ±5% of the nominal dimensions shall be applied to seals less than 4 inches in width. A dimensional tolerance of ±1/4 inch shall be applied to the nominal dimensions for seals greater than or equal to 4 inches in width.

**Serviceability**

**Installation and Performance Requirements.** Each lot of joint sealer submitted for Department approval shall demonstrate that it possesses the properties necessary for satisfactory field installation.

The sealer shall not exhibit any twisting, rolling, misalignment of opposite top edges, tendencies to trap incompressibles or any other qualities which shall be deemed detrimental by the Department to the sealer’s proper installation and performance.
**Joint Wall Contact with Sealer.** The top edges of the vertical walls shall remain in contact with the joint sealer faces throughout the compression range to which the sealer will be subjected in use.

**Lubricant.** The lubricant used to install the sealer shall conform to the requirements of '705-13, Lubricant for Preformed Elastic Joint Sealer, unless otherwise specified in the proposal.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Preformed elastic bridge joint sealer will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's name and location appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

### 705-10 PREFORMED ELASTIC LONGITUDINAL JOINT SEAL

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for preformed elastic joint seal for use in longitudinal concrete pavement joints.

**GENERAL.** The preformed elastic material shall be a vulcanized elastomeric compound using polymerized chloroprene as the only basic elastomer. The shape of any joint seal shall be approved by the Director of the Materials Bureau prior to the submission of any individual production lot for approval.

Such approval shall be requested in writing and be accompanied by a detailed drawing of the shape and a 1.5 foot length of the proposed seal. The lubricant used to install the joint seal shall conform to 705-13, Lubricant for Preformed Elastic Joint Sealer, unless otherwise specified.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

**Physical Requirements.** The joint seal material shall be tested in accordance with AASHTO M220 and meet the physical requirements therein. The requirements for compression-deflection, ozone resistance, and low-temperature recovery @ 14°F are waived.

The minimum percentage requirements for low-temperature recovery at -20°F, and for high temperature recovery at 212°F, shall be modified to 75%. Measurements for recovery may be made using an electronic caliper in addition to methods specified. The following exceptions shall be made to the recovery test when the seal shape has lips (a small protrusion on the top longitudinal edge). The seal shall be compressed to 50% of the nominal width of the seal. The denominator for the percent recovery calculation, however, shall be the width between the outer edges of the lips provided on the manufacturer's drawing. The numerator or recovered width shall be measured between the outer edges of the lips.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Preformed elastic longitudinal joint sealer will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

### 705-11 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE EXTRUDED SHAPES AND SHEET MATERIAL

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the quality requirements for polyvinyl chloride extruded shapes and sheet material for use in expansion, contraction, construction joints and drainage troughs.

**GENERAL.** The PVC material from which the shapes shall be extruded shall not contain any reclaimed, reground or reworked material whatsoever, but shall be compounded from virgin PVC resins, plasticizers, stabilizers and such materials that when compounded it shall meet the physical requirements contained in this specification.

Material shall be extruded in such a manner that all cross sections shall be dense, homogeneous and free from porosity or other imperfections.

The dimensional tolerances shall be as shown on the plans.
All splices shall be heat welded as approved by the Engineer. Each extrusion shall be plainly marked at 5 foot intervals with the manufacturer's name, lot number, and type.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The material for the extruded shapes shall meet the following performance requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>ASTM Test Method</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tensile strength, psi</td>
<td>D412, Die C</td>
<td>1400 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimate elongation, percent</td>
<td>D412, Die C</td>
<td>250 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardness, Type A durometer</td>
<td>D2240 *</td>
<td>65-88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance to alkali</td>
<td>D543 **</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight change, percent</td>
<td></td>
<td>-0.10 to +0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardness, Type A durometer points change</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile strength, percent change</td>
<td></td>
<td>-15 max.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water absorption, 48 hours percent</td>
<td>D570</td>
<td>0.5 max.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify gravity</td>
<td>D792</td>
<td>1.42 max</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The hardness test shall be performed in accordance with D2240 except that the material is pressed to the durometer by thumb.
** Resistance to alkali. A specimen, weighing about 2.65 oz, will be cut from the sample. The specimen will be washed in tap water, rinsed with distilled water, wiped with a clean cloth, and allowed to dry in laboratory air for approximately 1 hour. The weight of each specimen, to the nearest 0.000035 oz, will be recorded. The durometer reading will be taken as noted above. The specimens will be completely immersed in a freshly made solution containing 0.18 oz of chemically pure potassium hydroxide and 0.18 oz of chemically pure sodium hydroxide in one quart of distilled water, kept at 21E to 24EC. At the end of seven days the specimens will be removed, rinsed with distilled water, the surfaces wiped with a clean cloth, and allowed to dry in laboratory air for approximately 1 hour. The weight and durometer hardness will be measured and recorded. Tensile strength shall be determined as noted above. The weight and tensile strength change shall be reported as a percentage of the original readings. The hardness change will be reported as the change relative to the original reading.

**Cold Bend Test.** A cold bend test shall be made by subjecting a 1/2 inch by 6 inch by 1/8 inch strip of extrusion material to a temperature of -20°F for 2 hours. The strip shall immediately thereafter be bent 180 degrees around a rod of 1/4 inch diameter by applying sufficient force to hold the sample in intimate contact with the rod. The sample shall then be examined for evidence of cracking. There shall be no cracking of the samples.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Polyvinyl chloride extruded shapes and sheet material will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's name and location appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

**705-12 PREFORMED ELASTIC TRANSVERSE CONTRACTION AND EXPANSION JOINT SEAL**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for preformed elastic joint seal for use in transverse contraction joints and transverse expansion joints in concrete pavement.

**GENERAL.** The preformed elastic material shall be a vulcanized elastomeric compound using polymerized chloroprene as the only basic elastomer. The shape of any joint seal, from any manufacturer, shall be approved by the Director of the Materials Bureau prior to the submission of any individual production lot for approval. Such approval shall be requested in writing and be accompanied by a detailed drawing of the shape and a 15 foot length of the proposed seal. The lubricant used to install the joint seal shall conform to 705-13, Lubricant for Preformed Elastic Joint Sealer, unless otherwise specified.
MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS

Geometric Requirements. Joint seals shall meet the geometric requirements in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROPERTY OR REQ. AT SPECIFIED WIDTH</th>
<th>TYPE OF SEAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21/32 inch Transverse Contraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall width, min.</td>
<td>21/32 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Dimension, min.</td>
<td>21/32 in. @ 5/8 in. width</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall depth, max.</td>
<td>2 in. @ 1/2 in. width</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Physical Requirements. For all properties except compression-deflection, low-temperature recovery @ 14°F, and ozone resistance, the joint seal material shall be tested in accordance with AASHTO M220 and meet the physical requirements therein. The requirements for compression-deflection, low-temperature recovery @ 14°F and ozone resistance are waived. Measurements for recovery may be made using an electronic caliper in addition to methods specified.

The following exceptions shall be made to the recovery test when the seal shape has a lip (a small protrusion at the top longitudinal edge). The seal shall be compressed to 50% of the nominal width of the seal. The denominator for the percent recovery calculation, however, shall be the width between the outer edges of the lips on the manufacturer's drawing. The numerator or recovered width shall be measured between the outer edges of the lips.

Force-Deflection Requirements. Force-Deflection properties shall be determined in accordance with the force-deflection test established by the Materials Bureau. A description of this test is available on request from the Materials Bureau.

The preformed elastic transverse joint seal shall conform to the following force-deflection requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROPERTY OR REQ. AT SPECIFIED WIDTH</th>
<th>TYPE OF SEAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21/32 inch Transverse Contraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min. Resisting Force (lb/in)</td>
<td>2.85 @ 5/8 in. width</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. Resisting Force (lb/in)</td>
<td>10.9 @ 1/2 in. width</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The seal shall not creep more than 1/4 inch horizontally during force-deflection testing, nor shall there be any loss of contact between the top edges of the seal and the compression plates.

All test sections used in the above procedures shall be cut and/or buffed from the joint seal specimens.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Preformed elastic transverse contraction expansion joint sealers will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

705-13 LUBRICANT FOR PREFORMED ELASTIC JOINT SEALER

SCOPE. This specification covers the lubricant used for the installation of preformed elastic joint sealers.

GENERAL. The lubricant shall be a one-component polychloroprene compound containing only soluble phenolic resins blended together with anti-oxidants and acid acceptors in an aromatic hydrocarbon solvent mixture.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The lubricant shall meet the following physical requirements:
For use with concrete pavement sealers the lubricant shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D2835.
For use with bridge sealers the lubricant shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D4070.

PACKAGING. Each lot of the lubricant shall be delivered in containers plainly marked with the manufacturer's name or trademark, lot number and date of manufacture.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The basis of acceptance for the lubricant shall be the manufacturer's certification as to compliance with this specification which shall accompany the material delivered to the job site. Any lubricant not used within 270 days of its manufacture shall be unacceptable.

The Department reserves the right to sample and test this material subsequent to delivery at the project site.

705-14 LONGITUDINAL JOINT TIES

SCOPE. This specification details the requirements for longitudinal joint ties (LJTs) and their support assemblies used at longitudinal joints in portland cement concrete (PCC) pavement.

GENERAL. LJTs are either one-piece deformed bar reinforcement or multiple-piece systems consisting of deformed bar reinforcement with 1 or 2 threaded ends and a coupler. For longitudinal joints between lanes placed simultaneously, one-piece LJTs must be supported by an assembly that secures them in position when the assembly is affixed to the underlying pavement layer. For longitudinal joints between lanes placed separately, the LJTs are either:

- Loose, one-piece, deformed bars drilled and anchored into the vertical placement edge.
- Loose, multiple-piece systems.

In the latter case, the first piece is bolted to the paving forms in the initial concrete placement and the second piece threaded into the first piece after form removal from the initial placement. Refer to Section 502, PCC Pavement, to identify which method is used.

All LJTs not referenced on the Department’s Approved List entitled “Longitudinal Joint Ties (705-14),” under “Joint Materials, Pavement,” will be subject to approval testing before their use is allowed on Department contracts. Submit approval applications to the Director, Materials Bureau, at least 120 days before their intended use. Approved LJTs and their support assemblies will be placed on the Approved List and referenced by the drawing number and approval date. Any change to a previously approved LJT requires approval by the Director, Materials Bureau, before its use.
In case of conflict between the requirements of this specification and specifications referenced herein, the requirements of this specification or the instructions of the Director, Materials Bureau, will apply.

The Department may perform supplementary sampling and testing of the LJTs that arrive at Department contracts.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Deformed Bar Reinforcement. Obtain deformed bar reinforcement from a manufacturer appearing on the Department’s Approved List entitled “Reinforcing Bars (709-01),” under “Reinforcing, Steel.” Use number 6 deformed bars made of Grade 60 steel. Materials other than steel may be proposed, but their use is subject to the approval of the Director, Materials Bureau.

Use one-piece LJTs having lengths as required by Section 502, PCC Pavement, and the associated 502 Standard Sheets for PCC Pavement, i.e.:

- 36 inches between travel lanes placed simultaneously (in support assemblies).
- 28 inches between travel lanes placed separately (drill and anchor method).
- 20 inches between a travel lane and PCC shoulder placed simultaneously (in support assemblies).
- 18 inches between a travel lane and PCC shoulder placed separately (drill and anchor method).

Use multiple-piece LJTs having lengths of 36 inches between travel lanes placed separately and 20 inches between a travel lane and a PCC shoulder placed separately. The length of a multiple-piece LJT includes only the deformed bar segment lengths, not the thread lengths nor the coupling length. When assembled, the coupler must cover all threads in the threaded ends.

B. Coatings. All LJT components must be epoxy-coated steel except for threaded connections. Coatings other than epoxy (and their applicators) may be proposed, but their use is subject to the approval of the Director, Materials Bureau. Use an epoxy coating appearing on one of the following Approved Lists under, “Reinforcing, Epoxy and Coating:”

- Epoxy Coatings for Steel Reinforcing Bars (709-04).
- Epoxy Coatings for Longitudinal Joint Ties (705-14).

Apply the epoxy coating in accordance with “Coating Application” in §709-04, Epoxy Coated Bar Reinforcement, by an epoxy coating applicator appearing on one of the following Approved Lists under “Reinforcing, Epoxy and Coating:”

- Applicators for Steel Reinforcing Bars (709-04).
- Epoxy Coatings for Longitudinal Joint Ties (705-14).

Coatings must be continuous over the bar length, including couplers for multiple-piece ties, and 8 - 12 mils thick. Coatings must be within 1/4 inch of threaded ends in multiple-piece ties. The cross-sectional ends of the bars may be uncoated.

Damaged coatings may be repaired at the epoxy coating applicator’s facility or at the fabricator’s facility in accordance with “Repair of Coated Bars” in §709-04, Epoxy Coated Bar Reinforcement. Field repair of damaged coating is allowed, provided the damage is less than 1 inch long in any direction and more than 4 inches from the center of the bar or the threaded ends. Use a patching material supplied by the epoxy coating manufacturer that is compatible with the epoxy coating and inert in concrete.

Follow the manufacturer’s written recommendations regarding surface preparation and application.
Provide those recommendations to the Engineer before field repairs are made. Apply the patching material to the damaged area only. Dipping the bar into the patching material, or liberally coating undamaged areas, is not allowed. Epoxy-coated bars with perforations, cracks, other damage, or improperly applied coatings will be rejected.

C. LJT Support Assemblies. Support one-piece LJTs in longitudinal joints between lanes placed simultaneously in assemblies or “baskets” that securely hold more than 1 LJT in position as detailed in Geometric Requirements below. Fabricate the assemblies using steel wire as depicted in the approved Materials Details. Affix 1 or both ends of each LTD to the assembly by welding or mechanical fixation within 2 inches of the end of the LJT.

D. Corrosion Inhibitors for Threaded Connections (Multiple-piece LJTs Only). Use one of the following:

- Medium setting asphalt emulsion meeting Table 702-4 or Table 702-5.
- Thread-sealing compound approved by the Materials Bureau.

Apply the corrosion inhibitor to all threaded connections before the LJTs are assembled such that all surfaces of the assembled LJT are covered with an unbroken seal of epoxy coating or corrosion inhibitor. Do not apply corrosion inhibitors to bolts that hold multiple-piece LJTs to forms.

GEOMETRIC REQUIREMENTS. Unless otherwise indicated in the contract documents, fabricate the support assemblies or bolt multiple-piece LJTs to forms such that the:

- Assembly holds at least 2 LJTs.
- Entire longitudinal axis of each bar is located at the middepth of the pavement slab (\( \pm 1 \) inch).
- Longitudinal axes of the bars are aligned perpendicular to the pavement centerline and parallel with the pavement surface such that the maximum misalignment of 1 bar end relative to the other is \( \pm 1 \) inch.
- Midpoint of the longitudinal axis of each bar is at the center of the joint (\( \pm 1 \) inch).
- Longitudinal axes of adjacent bars do not exceed the maximum spacing identified in the contract documents.
- Bars are 3 inches (minimum) away from other LJTs or transverse joint supports.

TESTS

A. Materials Details – LJT Support Assemblies. The LJT manufacturer must submit 3 Materials Details (shop drawings) to the Director, Materials Bureau, for review and approval before any other testing begins. The Materials Details must depict the following minimum information:

- Manufacturer’s name, address, telephone number, fax number, and e-mail address.
- Drawing number.
- Support assembly dimensions and tolerances.
- LJT positioning within the joint support assembly.
- LJT ASTM steel grade designation.
- A cross section showing the relative positioning of LJTs to their support legs.
- Method used to affix LJTs to the support assembly and the locations of points of fixation.
- Methods used to affix wires together in the support assembly and the locations of points of fixation.
- Diameter of wires used in joint support assembly fabrication including wires used as assembly frames, LJT support legs, stakes, and spacer wires, if any.
A detail of wire legs that hold LJTs to the support assembly.

A detail of the stakes used to hold the supports to the underlying pavement layers during construction.

The positioning and number of stakes required to hold the supports to the underlying pavement layers during construction. The minimum number of stakes must equal the number of LJTs in the assembly.

B. Materials Details – Multiple-Piece LJTs. The LJT manufacturer must submit 3 Materials Details (shop drawings) to the Director, Materials Bureau, for review and approval before any other testing begins. The Materials Details must depict the following minimum information:

- Manufacturer’s name, address, telephone number, fax number, and e-mail address.
- Drawing number.
- Length of threaded ends.
- Thread size designations.
- LJT ASTM steel grade designation.
- Coupler dimensions and tolerances.
- Method used to affix LJTs to forms.

C. Joint Support Assemblies. Submit 2 complete LJT support assemblies and 6 loose, epoxy-coated LJTs to the Director, Materials Bureau, for conformance verification with the submitted Materials Details and this specification.

D. One-Piece LJTs. In addition to meeting Grade 60 yield strength requirements of the ASTM designation indicated on the Materials Details, epoxy-coated deformed bars must meet the Chemical Resistance, Cathodic Disbondment, Salt Spray Resistance, Coating Flexibility, Relative Bond Strength in Concrete, and Impact Test requirements of AASHTO M284 (ASTM A775), Epoxy Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars.

E. Multiple-Piece LJTs. Submit 12 multiple-piece LJTs to the Director, Materials Bureau, for conformance verification with the submitted Materials Details and this specification. When assembled, the multiple-piece ties shall have minimum yield strengths of 60 ksi. Also, multiple-piece LJTs must meet the Chemical Resistance, Cathodic Disbondment, Salt Spray Resistance, Coating Flexibility, Relative Bond Strength in Concrete, and Impact Test requirements of AASHTO M284 (ASTM A775), Epoxy Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Longitudinal Joint Ties will be accepted at the contract based on the Manufacturer’s appearance on the Department's Approved List entitled “Longitudinal Joint Ties (705-14),” under “Joint Materials, Pavement.” The contractor shall provide 2 copies of each of the following to the Engineer:

- Approved Materials Details identified by drawing number and approval date as shown on the Approved List.
- Manufacturer’s certification that the LJTs were manufactured in accordance with this specification and the submitted Materials Details.
- The name, address, telephone number, and e-mail address of the rolling mill that manufactured the LJTs and the mill’s certification as to the type, grade, and ASTM designation of steel used in the LJTs.
- The brand name of the epoxy coating used on the LJTs and the name, address, telephone number, and e-mail address of the manufacturer.
• The name, address, telephone number, and e-mail address of the epoxy coating applicator and the applicator’s certification that the coatings were applied in conformance to this specification.
• The brand name of the corrosion inhibitor for threaded coatings used on multiple-piece LJT s and the name, address, telephone number, and e-mail address of the manufacturer.

705-15 TRANSVERSE JOINT SUPPORTS

SCOPE. This specification details the requirements for load transfer devices (LTDs) and their support assemblies used at transverse joints in portland cement concrete (PCC) pavement.

GENERAL. All Transverse Joint Supports not referenced on the Department’s Approved List entitled “Transverse Joint Supports (705-15),” under “Joint Materials, Pavement,” will be subject to approval testing before their use is allowed on Department contracts. Submit approval applications to the Director, Materials Bureau, at least 120 days before their intended use. Approved supports will be placed on the Approved List and referenced by the drawing number and approval date. Any change to a previously approved transverse joint support requires approval by the Director, Materials Bureau before its use.

In case of conflict between the requirements of this specification and specifications referenced herein, the requirements of this specification or the instructions of the Director, Materials Bureau, will apply.

The Department may perform supplementary sampling and testing of the joint supports assemblies that arrive at Department contracts.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Dowels. Dowels are the LTD component of transverse contraction and expansion joint support assemblies. They are also used at transverse construction joints. Obtain dowels from a manufacturer appearing on the Department’s Approved List entitled “Reinforcing Bars (709-01),” under “Reinforcing, Steel.”

Use 18 inch long dowels made of plain, Grade 60 steel bar reinforcement having uniform circular cross sections for their entire lengths. Saw cut dowel ends such that they are free of burrs or projections. Materials other than steel may be proposed, but their use is subject to the approval of the Director, Materials Bureau. Dowel diameters vary with pavement thickness as detailed in the Section 502 Standard Sheets. Coating thickness is not included in the dowel diameter.

B. Deformed Bar Reinforcement. Deformed bar reinforcement is the LTD component of transverse hinge joint support assemblies. Obtain bars from a manufacturer appearing on the Department’s Approved List entitled “Reinforcing Bars (709-01),” under “Reinforcing, Steel.” Use number 6 deformed bars, 24 inches long, made of Grade 60 steel. Materials other than steel may be proposed, but their use is subject to the approval of the Director, Materials Bureau.

C. Coatings. Steel LTDs (dowels and deformed bars) must be epoxy coated. Coatings other than epoxy (and their applicators) may be proposed, but their use is subject to the approval of the Director, Materials Bureau. Use an epoxy coating appearing on one of the following Approved Lists under, “Reinforcing, Epoxy and Coating:”

• Epoxy Coatings for Steel Reinforcing Bars (709-04).
• Epoxy Coatings for Longitudinal Joint Ties (705-14).
Apply the epoxy coating in accordance with “Coating Application” in §709-04, Epoxy Coated Bar Reinforcement, by an epoxy coating applicator appearing on one of the following Approved Lists under “Reinforcing, Epoxy and Coating:”

- Applicators for Steel Reinforcing Bars (709-04).
- Epoxy Coatings for Longitudinal Joint Ties (705-14).
- Epoxy Coatings for Dowel Bars for Transverse Joint Supports (705-15).

Coatings must be continuous over the length of the LTD and 10 - 18 mils thick, except for the cross-sectional ends, which may be uncoated. Field repair of damaged coatings is not allowed. Plant or facility repairs are not allowed unless the damage results from welding or mechanical fixation to the support assembly and is within 1 inch of the weld or fixation point. Such damage must be repaired before visible rust occurs. Use a patching material supplied by the epoxy coating manufacturer that is compatible with the epoxy coating and inert in concrete. Apply the patching material to the damaged area only. Dipping the LTD into the patching material, or liberally coating undamaged areas, is not allowed. Supports containing LTDs with perforated, cracked, otherwise damaged, or improperly applied coatings will be rejected.

Completely coat each dowel with a bond breaker applied at the epoxy coating applicator facility or the joint support assembly facility. The bond breaker is subject to approval by the Materials Bureau. Do not apply a bond breaker to deformed bar reinforcement.


E. Joint Support Assemblies. Support LTDs in assemblies or “baskets” that securely hold them in position as detailed in Geometric Requirements below. Fabricate the assemblies using steel wire as depicted in the approved Materials Details. Affix 1 end of each LTD to the assembly by welding or mechanical fixation. Affix alternating ends of adjacent LTDs to the assembly such that the point of fixation is within 2 inches of the end of the LTD.

GEOMETRIC REQUIREMENTS

A. Transverse Contraction Joints. Unless otherwise indicated in the contract documents, fabricate the support assemblies such that the:

- Entire longitudinal axis of each dowel is located at the middepth of the pavement (± 1/4 inch).
- Longitudinal axes of the dowels are aligned parallel with the pavement centerline and pavement surface such that the maximum misalignment of one dowel end relative to the other is 1/8 inch.
- Midpoint of the longitudinal axis of each dowel is at the center of the joint (± 1 inch).
- Longitudinal axes of the two end dowels are 4 - 8 inches from the longitudinal joints.
- Longitudinal axes of the dowels are spaced 4 - 12 inches apart.

B. Transverse Expansion Joints. Fabricate the support assemblies such that the dowels are positioned in accordance with paragraph A, Transverse Contraction Joints. Include a one-piece premolded resilient joint filler in the assembly that extends completely across the slab width. The joint filler must either equal the full depth of the slab, or extend from the bottom of the slab to within 1 1/2 - 2 inches of the top of the slab with a finishing cap that extends to the top of the slab.
Vertically support the filler at the longitudinal midpoints of the dowels and perpendicular to the longitudinal axes of the dowels. Depict support mechanisms in the Materials Details. Do not weld the dowels to filler supports.

Place plastic expansion caps on the free ends of the dowels (the ends opposite the fixed ends). Use expansion caps with essentially the same inner diameter as the outer diameter of the dowel plus coating thickness (+ 40 mils).

C. Transverse Hinge Joints. Unless otherwise indicated in the contract documents, fabricate the support assemblies such that the:

- Entire longitudinal axis of each deformed bar is located at the middepth of the pavement slab (± 1 inch).
- Longitudinal axes of the deformed bars are aligned parallel with the pavement centerline and pavement surface such that the maximum misalignment of one bar end relative to the other is 1 inch.
- Midpoint of the longitudinal axis of each bar is at the center of the joint (± 1 inch).
- Longitudinal axes of the two end bars are 4 - 12 inches from the longitudinal joints.
- Longitudinal axes of the bars are spaced 4 - 18 inches apart.

TESTS

A. Materials Details. The transverse joint support manufacturer must submit 3 Materials Details (shop drawings) to the Director, Materials Bureau, for review and approval before any other testing begins. Depict only one type of joint on each detail submitted for approval. The Materials Details must depict the following minimum information:

- Manufacturer’s name, address, telephone number, fax number, and e-mail address.
- Type of support (contraction, expansion, or hinge joint).
- Drawing number.
- Joint support assembly dimensions and tolerances.
- LTD length, spacing, and positioning within the joint support assembly.
- LTD ASTM steel grade designation.
- Bond breaker brand name and manufacturer.
- A cross section showing the relative positioning of LTDs to their support legs.
- Method used to affix LTDs to the support assembly and the locations of points of fixation.
- Methods used to affix wires together in the joint support assembly and the locations of points of fixation.
- Diameter of wires used in joint support assembly fabrication including wires used as assembly frames, LTD support legs, premolded resilient joint filler supports (expansion joints only), stakes, and spacer wires that hold cages in place during transport.
- A detail of wire legs that hold LTDs to the support assembly.
- A detail of the stakes used to hold the supports to the underlying pavement layers during construction.
- The positioning and number of stakes required to hold the supports to the underlying pavement layers during construction.
- Methods used to support premolded resilient joint fillers (expansion joints only).
- Expansion cap material and dimensions (expansion joints only).
B. Joint Support Assemblies. Submit 2 complete joint support assemblies and 6 loose, epoxy-coated LTDs to the Director, Materials Bureau, for conformance verification with the submitted Materials Details and this specification.

C. Epoxy-Coated Dowels. In addition to meeting the Grade 60 yield strength requirements of the ASTM designation indicated on the Materials Details, epoxy-coated dowels must meet the Load-Deflection, Pull-out, Abrasion, Corrosion, Chemical Resistance, Cathodic Disbonding, Coating Hardness, and Coating Impact Resistance requirements of AASHTO M254, Corrosion-Resistant Coated Dowel Bars, when tested in accordance with AASHTO T253, Coated Dowel Bars.

D. Epoxy-Coated Deformed Bar Reinforcement. In addition to meeting Grade 60 yield strength requirements of the ASTM designation indicated on the Materials Details, epoxy-coated deformed bars must meet the Chemical Resistance, Cathodic Disbondment, Salt Spray Resistance, Coating Flexibility, Relative Bond Strength in Concrete, and Impact Test requirements of AASHTO M284 (ASTM A775), Epoxy Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars.

E. Field Test. Only joint support assemblies meeting the above test requirements will be considered for trial installation in a field test. The supplier or manufacturer is responsible for coordinating the field test. The field test location may be:

- Part of a Department contract.
- Part of a contract under the jurisdiction of an agency other than the Department.
- A test site arranged by the supplier or manufacturer.

If the field test is outside New York State, the location must meet the approval of the Director, Materials Bureau.

If the field test is part of a Department contract, the Contractor must obtain the Engineer’s approval before any support assemblies are installed. If the field test is at a test site arranged by the supplier/manufacturer, install the joint support assemblies in a 150 foot long (minimum) pavement constructed in accordance with Section 502, Portland Cement Concrete Pavement. In any case, a minimum of 10 joints must be constructed using the joint supports.

Conduct field tests in the presence of Materials Bureau personnel. Specific attention will be given to handling, coating integrity, damage, alignment before and after paving, fixation failure, securing to underlying layers, contraction joint formation, and general specification conformance. Failing assemblies, and the pavement they are constructed into if part of a Department contract, will be rejected and removed and replaced at no cost to the State.

The Director, Materials Bureau, may waive field tests for hinge and expansion joint assemblies or from manufacturers who have an established history of successful contraction joint assembly installations with the Department.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Transverse joint supports will be accepted at the contract based on the Manufacturer’s appearance on the Department's Approved List entitled “Transverse Joint Supports (705-15),” under “Joint Materials, Pavement.” The contractor shall provide 2 copies of each of the following to the Engineer:

- Approved Materials Details identified by drawing number and approval date as shown on the Approved List.
- Manufacturer’s certification that the joint supports were manufactured in accordance with this specification and the submitted Materials Details.
- The name, address, telephone number, and e-mail address of the rolling mill that manufactured the
LTDs and the mill’s certification as to the type, grade, and ASTM designation of steel used in the LTD.

- The brand name of the epoxy coating used on the LTDs and the name, address, telephone number, and e-mail address of the manufacturer.
- The name, address, telephone number, and e-mail address of the epoxy coating applicator and the applicator’s certification that the coatings were applied in conformance to this specification.
- The brand name of the bond breaker used on the dowels and the name, address, telephone number, and e-mail address of the manufacturer.

705-16 CONCRETE PIPE JOINT SEALING COMPOUND

**SCOPE.** This specification covers a flexible/rubber sealer used for joints in elliptical pipe, cattle pass and drainage units.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Concrete pipe joint sealing compound shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C990.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Label stating conformance to ASTM C990. Labels shall be either attached directly to the sealing compound or to the packaging in which the compound arrives at the project site.

705-17 CONCRETE PIPE JOINT ELASTOMERIC GASKETS

**SCOPE.** This specification covers elastomeric gaskets used for joints in round pipe.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Concrete pipe joint elastomeric gaskets shall conform to the requirements of either ASTM C443 or ASTM C361.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Label stating conformance to either ASTM C443 or ASTM C361. Label shall be either stenciled on the elastomeric gaskets, attached directly to the gaskets or attached to the packaging in which the gaskets arrive at the project site.

705-18 ASPHALTIC PLUG JOINTS FOR BRIDGES

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for asphaltic plug bridge joint systems.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The materials used to construct the asphaltic plug bridge joint system must conform to the requirements of ASTM D6297 with the following exception:

- No aluminum plate will be allowed at this time.
- No sampling required.

Each manufacturer shall provide Materials Detail Sheets as part of the acceptance procedure to the Department. The installers/contractors shall adhere to approved manufacturer’s Materials Details for preparation, construction, and curing.

The Materials Details shall provide the following:

1. **Product Information:**
   - Identify Components
   - Packing, storage and handling requirements
2. Surface Preparation:
   - Weather limitations and surface conditions
   - Preconditioning (removal) of existing joint system
   - Surface preparation and level of cleanliness
   - Address any structural repairs needed and method of repair to include compatible materials needed.

3. Application Procedures:
   - Describe all procedures to be followed in preparation, heating, mixing and installation of system.

4. Curing:
   - Describe curing procedure and anticipated cure times vs. temperature (Table recommended)
   - Describe test(s) performed for quality assurance

PACKAGING. All components shall be shipped in appropriate containers, bearing the manufacturer’s label specifying date of manufacture, batch number, brand name, quantity, and date of expiration or shelf life.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Each system supplier/manufacturer must prove to the Department through acceptable field performance of this item prior to approval and acceptance to the Department’s Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer’s name and system appearing on the Department’s Approved List which will be accompanied by the Department’s approved Materials Detail Sheet (MDS).

705-19 ASPHALT PAVEMENT JOINT ADHESIVE

SCOPE: The joint adhesive materials must be on the Department’s Approved list. This standard specification covers the material requirements and the approval process of joint adhesive material applied during the construction of HMA joints.

GENERAL: The Joint Adhesive is a hot-applied modified asphalt product used to adhere and seal all pavement joints during the placement of HMA. It is supplied as a ready to use solid which is removed from the container, heated to application temperature and then applied to the face of construction joints prior to placing the adjacent mat.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

The Joint Adhesive shall conform to the requirements of the following tests:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Specification Limits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cone Penetration, 77°F (25°C) (ASTM D 5329)</td>
<td>60-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow, 140°F (60°C) (ASTM D 5329)</td>
<td>1/5 inch maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resilience, 77°F (25°C) (ASTM D 5329)</td>
<td>30% minimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ductility, 77°F (25°C) (ASTM D 113)</td>
<td>1 foot minimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Adhesion, 1 in. thick Specimen, 24 hour dry blocks (ASTM D 5329)</td>
<td>500% minimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexibility, 0°F (-18°C) (ASTM D3111 modified)</td>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Softening Point (ASTM D 36)</td>
<td>170°F minimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asphalt Compatibility (ASTM D 5329)</td>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. All components shall be shipped in appropriate containers, bearing the manufacturer's label specifying date of manufacture, batch number, brand name, quantity, MSDS and date of expiration or shelf life.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Suppliers must submit the test results, manufacturer’s literature, and samples of the joint adhesive materials to the Director, Materials Bureau prior to installation. The Department will test provided samples of the joint adhesive. If the results are satisfactory, the joint adhesive will be placed on the Department’s Approved list with hyperlink to manufacturer's literature.

705-20 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

705-21 MASONRY MORTAR

SCOPE. Requirements for the 3 common types of masonry mortar (N, S and M - increasing in strength, respectively). Use these mortars to bind masonry units together to construct masonry structures, repair masonry structures (tuck pointing), or bed and bond masonry or concrete units together. For historic masonry structures made with soft hydrated lime mortars, use a specially designed lime mortar as shown in the Contract Documents or as approved by the Engineer.

Type N Masonry Mortar- for tuck pointing repair of structures made with fired clay bricks
Type S Masonry Mortar- for new structures made with all types of masonry, including brick
Type S Masonry Mortar- for tuck pointing repair of structures made with masonry other than clay brick
Type M Masonry Mortar- for new and tuck pointing repair of rigid masonry riding surfaces, such as bridge decks, pavements, sidewalks, and other roadway areas subject to severe weathering and abrasion conditions

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Portland Cement, Type II or VI</th>
<th>Masonry or Mortar Cement, Type N, S or M</th>
<th>Blended Portland Cement</th>
<th>Mortar Sand</th>
<th>Concrete Sand</th>
<th>Water</th>
<th>701-01</th>
<th>701-02</th>
<th>701-03</th>
<th>703-03</th>
<th>703-07</th>
<th>712-01</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Proportion the N, S or M mortar type by loose volume parts as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PORTLAND OR BLENDED PORTLAND CEMENT</th>
<th>MASONRY OR MORTAR CEMENT</th>
<th>SAND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type N Mortar (make with Type N Masonry or Mortar Cement)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1 (Type N)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type S Mortar (make with Type S or N Masonry or Mortar Cement)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1 (Type N)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type M Mortar (make with Type M or N Masonry or Mortar Cement)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1 (Type M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 (Type N)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After adding all ingredients (including water) to a mechanical mixer, mix for 3 to 5 minutes to entrain air and produce a workable and uniform consistency. Discard all unused mortar 2 1/2 hours after initial
mixing. Mortar that has stiffened may be re-tempered up to 2 1/2 hours after initial mixing by adding water to restore the original workable consistency.

Use a uniform layer of mortar, 1/4 to 3/4 inch thick, for joints between uniform masonry units. For a tuck pointing (raking out and repointing) mortar, add the minimum water to the dry ingredients to produce a mortar that retains its form when hand squeezed and released. Allow this mortar to stand covered (prehydrate) for 1 to 1 1/2 hours to greatly reduce shrinkage. Then mix with sufficient water to produce a stiff, but workable consistency, and use within 2 1/2 hours of initial mixing.

Avoid re-tempering the mortar when tuck pointing, matching a color, or to avoid color variations between batches (mix smaller quantities, if needed).

No admixtures, except for mortar coloring agents made from light-fast, durable, alkali-resistant minerals, will be permitted without written permission of the Director, Materials Bureau. If colored mortar is specified, submit samples of hardened mortar to the Engineer. Upon approval, use the same, uniform, mortar color throughout the work.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Inspection and approval by the Engineer.

**705-22 PORTLAND CEMENT MORTAR BONDING GROUT**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for portland cement mortar grout used for bonding fresh concrete to hardened concrete in both vertical and horizontal planes.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The ingredients for the portland cement mortar grout shall comply with the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portland Cement, Type 1 or Type 2</td>
<td>701-01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortar Sand</td>
<td>703-03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete Sand</td>
<td>703-07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>712-01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Proportioning.** The mortar grout shall have the cement and mortar or concrete sand proportioned 1:1 in separate volumetric containers. The sand shall be deposited into an approved mechanical grout mixer prior to the cement. Both the sand and cement shall be dry mixed for one (1) minute. After dry mixing, water shall be added in sufficient quantity to result in a workable consistency. An additional three (3) minutes of mixing is required after adding desired water. Workable consistency is defined as a grout that will not run on vertical faces or puddle in low spots. Any grout that has dried or become unworkable, as determined by the Engineer, shall not be incorporated in the work. Hand mixing of the mortar may be permitted only for small quantities as approved by the Engineer.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The mortar grout shall be accepted on the basis of inspection and approval by the Engineer.

**705-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**SECTION 706 - CONCRETE, CLAY AND PLASTIC PIPE**

*(Last Revised January, 2019)*

**706-01 NON-REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for non-reinforced concrete pipe 24 inches and smaller used for culverts.
GENERAL. The provisions of §706-02, Reinforced Concrete Pipe, shall apply except that all references to reinforcing steel shall be deleted. In addition, physical and dimensional requirements of concrete pipe under 12 inches in diameter shall be as stated in Table 1, Class 1, of ASTM C14. Plain concrete pipe 12 to 24 inches in diameter shall conform to Table 1, Class 2, of ASTM C14.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The Material Requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply except that all references to reinforcing steel shall be deleted.

FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS. The Fabrication Requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply except as noted herein.

Marking. No pipe class or wall designation shall be marked on the pipe.

PHYSICAL REQUIREMENTS. The Physical Requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply except as noted herein.

Strength. The strength requirements for the respective diameter pipe sizes shall be as stated in Table 1 of ASTM C14. Details of the three-edge bearing test shall comply with ASTM C14.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. The Sampling And Testing requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply.

FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION. The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply.

SHIPPING. The Shipping requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Basis Of Acceptance requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply.

706-02 REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE CLASSES II, III, IV, V

SCOPE. This specification covers the material, fabrication, and physical requirements of reinforced concrete pipe and cattle pass.

GENERAL. Apply the requirements of AASHTO M 170, Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain and Sewer Pipe, Classes II, III, IV, and V, except as modified by this specification. Produce reinforced concrete pipe by either machine made or wet cast methods in accordance with working drawings approved by the Department and in full compliance with the details of this specification. Pipe manufactured for a specific class will be acceptable for any class having a lower design strength.

Methods of manufacture include the following:

A. Wet Cast Pipe And Cattle Pass. Wet cast units are those made from concrete placed and consolidated by conventional equipment. These units develop resistance to freeze-thaw damage through the use of entrained air in the concrete. Air content in wet cast concrete shall range between 5.0% and 9.0%.

Manufacture wet cast pipe, for Department acceptance, in accordance with this specification and the current Materials Procedure for precast concrete titled “Procedures For Achieving And Maintaining Precast Concrete Manufacturer’s Approved List Status”.
B. Machine Made Pipe.  Machine made units use very low slump concrete and methods of consolidation which produce a dense product with low permeability and good resistance to freeze-thaw damage.

Manufacture machine made pipe, for Department acceptance, in accordance with this specification and the current Materials Method titled “Quality Assurance Procedure For Concrete Pipe Items”.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Materials

Portland Cement (Type 1, Type 2 or Type 3)  701-01
Concrete Repair Material  701-04
Concrete Repair Material - High Early Strength  701-12
Coarse Aggregate  703-02
Concrete Sand  703-07
Bar Reinforcement, Grade 60 (Reinforcement & Stirrups)  709-01
Wire Fabric for Concrete Reinforcement  709-02
Bar Reinforcement, Grade 40  709-03
Cold Drawn Wire for Concrete Reinforcement  709-09
Admixtures  711-08
Water  712-01
Concrete Pipe Joint Sealing Compound  705-16
Concrete Pipe Joint Elastomeric Gaskets  705-17
Fly Ash  711-10
Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag  711-12

B. Cementitious Content.  Use a minimum combined cementitious content of 565 lb/cy.  This includes the Portland Cement and pozzolan (fly ash and/or ground granulated blast furnace slag).  The maximum allowable total chloride content in concrete shall not exceed 0.10 percent by weight of cementitious material tested in accordance with written procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

C. Pozzolans.  Fly ash and/or ground granulated blast furnace slag may, in total, be substituted for cement up to a maximum of 20% by weight of the total amount of cement plus pozzolan in the mix.

D. Admixtures.  Calcium Chloride is not allowed in concrete.  Admixtures, other than an approved Air Entraining agent for wet cast pipe, are not allowed unless otherwise approved by the Materials Bureau.

E. Reinforcement.  Sample the reinforcement in accordance with the written directives of the Materials Bureau.  Accept stirrups based on the manufacturer’s certification, unless otherwise directed by the Materials Bureau.

F. Pipe Joint Materials

1. Elastomeric Gaskets.  The gaskets used in the installation of round pipe shall meet the specification requirements of §705-17 and only those types and sizes designated by the pipe manufacturer on the approved drawings of the particular pipe.

2. Sealing Compounds.  Concrete pipe joint sealing compound, meeting the specification requirements of §705-16, shall be used only on elliptical pipe and reinforced cattle pass.
FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS

Drawings. Submit detailed working drawings conforming to the Materials Bureau concrete pipe templates. All diameter sizes of a particular geometric shape can be included on one drawing. Separate drawings are required for cattle pass, jacking pipe and special designs.

Full approval of the working drawings is required prior to the manufacture of any concrete pipe.

Design, Reinforcement and Dimensions

A. General. Apply the Design, Reinforcement and Permissible Variations requirements of AASHTO M 170 for Class II, III, IV and V pipe, walls B & C. The AASHTO tables show minimum reinforcement. The manufacturer may submit drawings detailing alternatives to the specified reinforcement and/or wall thickness for Materials Bureau consideration. To gain full approval of alternate designs, manufacture and test pipe samples in accordance with the written procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

B. Reinforced Concrete Cattle Pass. Apply the requirements of applicable Standard Sheet with the following modification. A minimum length of 48 inches is required for each section. The maximum allowable variation in laying lengths of two opposite sides of a cattle pass section is 1/8 inch per 12 inches of diameter, not to exceed 5/8 inch in any length of cattle pass, except where beveled or curved cattle pass lengths have been specified.

Concrete Batch Placement

A. Machine Made Pipe. Clean and properly assemble the forms prior to placing any concrete. Transport and place the concrete mixture such that no segregation of the concrete materials or displacement of the reinforcing steel occurs within the form.

B. Wet Cast Pipe And Cattle Pass. Apply the Concrete Placement And Consolidation requirements contained in §704-03.

Curing. Include the type of curing, curing time and any temperature requirements on the drawing.

A. Machine Made Pipe. Cure the pipe in accordance with AASHTO M 170. Other methods of curing are subject to approval by the Director, Materials Bureau.

B. Wet Cast Pipe And Cattle Pass. Apply the Curing requirements contained in §704-03.

Joints. Use either bell and spigot or tongue and groove design. Design the joints so as to permit effective jointing to reduce leakage and infiltration and to permit placement without irregularities.

Marking. The pipe markings must be identified on the inside barrel for pipe diameters of 1 1/2 feet and greater. If the diameter is less than 1 1/2 feet the markings may be stenciled on the outside of the pipe. Mark each piece of pipe with the following information, as applicable.

1. Name or trademark of manufacturer.
2. Date of manufacture.
3. Pipe class.
4. Wall designation.
5. Pipe diameter.
6. NYSDOT lot number (“NYSDOT”) (Machine made pipe only.)
7. Indelibly mark the word “TOP” on the inside and outside of the barrel at the appropriate location on each pipe length with elliptical or quadrant reinforcing.

Repair

A. Machine Made Pipe. Pipe may be repaired at the plant or in the field using 701-04 Concrete Repair Material or §701-12 Concrete Repair Material - High Early Strength. Repairs to more than 10% of a lot will not be permitted. Repairs will be acceptable if, in the opinion of the Department, the repairs are sound, properly finished and cured, and the repaired pipe conforms to the requirements of these Specifications and the written procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

B. Wet Cast Pipe And Cattle Pass. Apply the Repair requirements contained in §704-03.

PHYSICAL REQUIREMENTS

Strength. Apply the requirements of AASHTO M 170 except that the compressive strength requirements do not apply except for cattle pass. Conduct such number and type of three edge bearing tests as the Materials Bureau deems necessary to establish the quality of pipe.

Reinforced concrete cattle pass will not require a three-edge bearing test. The minimum 28 day compressive strength for cattle pass, as determined by concrete cylinders, is 3000 psi.

Absorption Requirements For Machine Made Pipe. The maximum average absorption for all pipe is 8.0% by weight for the last three specimens tested.

Freeze-Thaw Requirements. The Materials Bureau reserves the right to test the pipe for durability by freeze-thaw testing. The test will be run in accordance with written procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. It is required that each manufacturer have a testing machine, of a type approved by the Materials Bureau, to carry out three edge bearing tests. Employ a commercial testing agency to calibrate the testing machine according to ASTM E4 at a minimum of once a year. Upon request of the Materials Bureau, furnish a record of this calibration. Sample and test reinforced concrete pipe and cattle pass units, manufactured under the requirements of this specification, as follows.

A. Machine Made Pipe. Separate machine made reinforced concrete pipe into specific and identifiable production lots. Follow the written procedural directives of the Materials Bureau to determine the maximum number and type of units in a lot and the number of samples to be taken per lot. Test each lot of machine made reinforced concrete pipe as follows:

1. Three Edge Bearing Test. Follow the requirements for strength testing indicated above using the test procedure identified in the procedural directives issued by the Materials Bureau. Perform tests in the presence of a representative of the Department.

2. Absorption Test. Cores from each lot, drilled by the manufacturer in the presence of a representative of the Department, will be used for this test. The cores will be tested by the Materials Bureau in accordance with the test method specified in ASTM C497 except that under “absorption test” the drying period will be 48 hours at a temperature of 230°F.

Plug the holes when cores are taken. Ensure that plugs are sound, properly finished and cured according to the requirements of “Pipe Repair.”
In addition to the above tests, pipe will be subject to inspection at any time prior to placing, and rejection may be made through failure to comply with the criteria shown in the written procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

**B. Wet Cast Pipe And Cattle Pass.** Sample and test wet cast reinforced concrete pipe and cattle pass in accordance with Materials Bureau requirements contained in the current Materials Procedure for precast concrete, titled “Procedures For Achieving And Maintaining Precast Concrete Manufacturer’s Approved List Status”.

**FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION.** For wet cast units only, follow the Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03.

**SHIPPING**

**A. Machine Made Pipe.** No units will be considered for shipment unless the units are free from defects as noted under Pipe Repair in this specification and according to the written procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

**B. Wet Cast Pipe And Cattle Pass.** Follow the Shipping requirements contained in §704-03.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE**

**A. Machine Made Pipe.** Units will be accepted in stock lot quantities at the manufacturing location in accordance with the current version of Materials Method 1 titled “Quality Assurance Procedure For Concrete Pipe Items”.

**B. Wet Cast Pipe And Cattle Pass.** Follow the Basis Of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03.

**706-03 REINFORCED CONCRETE ELLIPTICAL PIPE; CLASSES HE-II, HE-III, HE-IV, VE-IV, VE-V AND VE-VI**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for both horizontal and vertical elliptical reinforced concrete pipe of the classes noted above for use as culvert pipe. Pipe designed for placement with the major axis horizontal is designated as horizontal elliptical pipe. Pipe designed for placement with the major axis vertical is designated as vertical elliptical pipe.

**GENERAL.** The provisions of §706-02, Reinforced Concrete Pipe Classes II, III, IV, V shall apply except as noted herein.

All references to AASHTO M 170, contained in §706-02, shall be replaced with AASHTO M 207. All reference to Classes II, III, IV and V, contained in §706-02, shall be deemed to include all classes of elliptical pipe.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The Material Requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply except that the pipe joint material shall be a sealing compound meeting the requirements of §705-16.

**FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS.** The Fabrication Requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply except as noted herein.

**Design, Reinforcement and Dimensions.** In the case of elliptical pipe, the working drawings indicate the equivalent round pipe diameter, rise, span and class. A tolerance of plus or minus 2% from the
nominal rise and span of the pipe, as shown on the approved working drawing, will be permitted.

Variations in laying lengths of two opposite sides of a pipe section shall not be more than 1/8 inch per foot of equivalent diameter, with a maximum of 5/8 inch in any length of pipe, except where beveled or curved lengths have been specified.

**Marking.** No wall designation shall be marked on the pipe. An equivalent round pipe diameter shall be used for markings.

**PHYSICAL REQUIREMENTS.** The Physical Requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply.

**SAMPLING AND TESTING.** The Sampling And Testing requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply.

**FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION.** The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply.

**SHIPPING.** The Shipping requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Basis Of Acceptance requirements contained in §706-02 shall apply.

**706-04 PRECAST CONCRETE DRAINAGE UNITS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for precast concrete drainage units including transverse drainage interceptors.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The Material Requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply except as noted herein.

The concrete used to fabricate round precast concrete drainage units shall have a minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi @ 28 days. The concrete used to produce machine made units shall have a maximum absorption of 8.0% by weight and is not required to be air entrained.

Additional materials listed below shall meet the requirements of the following subsections:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frames And Grates</td>
<td>655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete Grouting Material</td>
<td>701-05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete Pipe Joint Sealing Compound</td>
<td>705-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete Pipe Joint Elastomeric Gaskets</td>
<td>705-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortar For Concrete Masonry</td>
<td>705-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steps For Manholes</td>
<td>725-02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DRAWINGS.** The Drawing requirements contained in §704-03 along with the following shall apply.

Fabricator Working Drawings are required for all round drainage structures. Cut sheets, showing structure heights, the size and location of pipe openings and step locations are required for all drainage structures.

**FABRICATION.** The Fabrication requirements contained in 704-03, along with the following shall apply.

**Manufacturing Process.** Precast concrete drainage units shall be wet cast or machine made.

**A. Wet Cast.** Wet cast units are manufactured from concrete, placed and consolidated by conventional equipment, containing entrained air to develop resistance to freeze-thaw damage.
**B. Machine Made.** Machine made units are manufactured with very low slump concrete, consolidated to produce a dense product with low permeability and good resistance to freeze-thaw damage. Machine made units are those made by the following methods:

- Packerhead
- Roller suspension
- Centrifugal
- Machine tamped
- Machine vibrated
- Other methods as approved by the Materials Bureau

**Reinforcing.** Reinforcing bar splices shall be lapped a minimum of 30 bar diameters and tied securely. Wire fabric splices shall be secured by one of the following methods:

**A. Tying.** Under this method the ends shall lap to a length of not less than 30 diameters of the reinforcement and the lap shall contain a longitudinal member. A sufficient number of laps shall be tied to maintain continuity of the cage through the period of placement and curing of the concrete.

**B. Welding.** Each circular member shall be lapped a minimum of 2 inches and welded. The weld shall develop a minimum of 50 percent of the specified strength of the wire.

**Round Units.** Precast bases, floors, risers, conical top sections, grade rings and flat slab tops shall conform to the design, dimension and reinforcement requirements of ASTM C478. The C478 requirements for splices, laps and welds shall not apply.

**Transverse Drainage Interceptors.** Bar reinforcement shall be epoxy coated meeting the requirements of §709-04.

**Joints.** Joints between precast riser sections shall be formed with male and female ends so that when the sections are assembled they will make a continuous and uniform unit.

**Joint Sealant Materials.** Joints between precast sections are to be sealed with flexible watertight Elastomeric Gaskets, Pipe Joint Sealing Compounds, Mortar for Concrete Masonry, Concrete Grouting Material or Concrete Repair Material meeting the requirements of the Standard Specifications. If elastomeric Gasket Sealers are used the shape, size and placement shall be recommended by the precast manufacturer.

**Steps for Drainage Units.** Steps for drainage units shall conform to §725-02, Steps for Manholes. Steps in risers and conical top sections shall be aligned to form a continuous ladder with rungs equally spaced vertically in the completed unit at a maximum spacing of 16 inches. All steps in a completed drainage unit shall be the same size. Steps shall be embedded into the walls of the section a minimum of 3 inches. The rung shall project a minimum clear distance of 4 inches from the walls of the section measured from the point of embedment. If the steps are grouted, the grouting material shall conform to §701-04 Concrete Repair Materials or §701-05 Concrete Grouting Material, or §701-12 Concrete Repair Material - High Early Strength. If plastic inserts are used for installing steps, they shall be approved by the Materials Bureau. Steps which are damaged during installation or handling shall be replaced.

**Frames for Grates.** Frames cast into the top slab or top of the uppermost riser shall be secured and held in place by a minimum of 4 stirrups or studs per frame, welded to the frame near the corners. Parallel bar frames shall contain shear stud anchors, for the purpose of transferring loads, as required and detailed
on the standard sheet for parallel bar grates and frames. Shear stud anchors, when required, shall replace the frame securing stirrups or studs.

**Dimensional Tolerances.**

**A. Drainage Units (Rectangular / Square).**

- Internal dimensions: +5/8 inch, -1/2 inch
- Wall thickness:
  - 6 inches: +3/4 inch, -1/4 inch
  - ≥8 inches: +3/4 inch, -1/2 inch
- Reinforcing steel cover:
  - Walls (inside face): 2 inches (min), 4 inches (max)
  - Base (inside face): 2 inches (min), 3 1/4 inches (max)
  - Roof (all faces): +5/8 inch, -1/4 inch
  - Pipe openings (2 inches): ±1 inch
- Step spacing and alignment: ±3/4 inch

**B. Drainage Units (Round).**

- Internal diameter:
  - ≤60 inches: ±5/8 inch, -
  - >60 inches & ≤ 96 inches: ±3/4 inch
  - >96 inches: ±1 1/2 inches
- Wall thickness:
  - Internal diameter ≤60 inches: +5/8 inch, -1/4 inch
  - Internal diameter >60 inches & ≤ 96 inches: +3/4 inch, -1/2 inch
  - Internal diameter >96 inches: +1 inch, -5/8 inch,
  - Reinforcing steel cover:
  - Base, Roof and Walls: +5/8 inch, -1/4 inch
  - Pipe openings (2 inches): ±1 inch
- Step spacing and alignment: ±3/4 inch

**SAMPLING AND TESTING.** The sampling and testing requirements contained in 704-03 shall apply except as noted herein.

**A. Machine Made Units.** Testing for air content is not required. Cores shall be taken from the hardened concrete and tested for absorption. A minimum of 3 cores per 5 batches of a single mix with a minimum of three cores per day per mix shall be used to measure absorption. The average absorption of the 3 cores shall not exceed the maximum absorption specified herein. Testing shall be in accordance with ASTM C497 except that the drying period shall be 48 hours at a temperature of 230°F.

**MARKING.** The Marking requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply except as noted herein.

Markings shall be placed on the inside face of all precast pieces. Each flat slab top that doesn't have an integral frame or a design that readily indicates the top surface shall have the words “INSTALL THIS SIDE UP” placed on its top surface.

The markings on rectangular drainage units, including base slabs, bases and risers, shall include the maximum placement depth in feet (“MPD...feet”). The maximum placement depth is based on wall thickness and reinforcement and shall be in accordance with the Department’s Standard Sheets or the contract plans.

Instead of marking the contract number on each unit they may be marked with “NYSDOT”.

NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

Section 700

STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS (USC) May 1, 2020

VOLUME 4
FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION. The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

SHIPPING. The Shipping requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Basis Of Acceptance requirements contained in 704-03 shall apply.

706-05 POROUS CONCRETE PIPE UNDERDRAIN

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for porous concrete pipe and extra strength concrete porous concrete pipe underdrains.

GENERAL. Porous concrete pipe and extra strength porous concrete pipe shall be manufactured in accordance with approved working drawings and in compliance with details set forth below.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. All materials shall comply with the requirements of ’706-02, Reinforced Concrete Pipe, except that reinforcement shall not be used.

Drawings. Drawings shall be furnished in accordance with the provisions of ’706-02.

FABRICATION. Porous concrete pipe and extra strength porous concrete pipe shall conform in size and shape to the details shown on the standard sheet for porous concrete pipe underdrain and the approved working drawing.

The inside surface of the pipe shall be straight and true to dimensions with a permissible variation from the true form of not more than 1 1/2 percent. A tolerance of 5% will be permitted in the diameter of the pipe. The wall thickness of the pipe may be greater than shown on the standard sheet, but it shall not be less than 95% of the stipulated wall thickness.

High early strength cement, calcium chloride or any other additive shall not be used unless otherwise approved by the Materials Bureau.

Concrete mix proportions will be such that will produce a concrete mix of such quality that the pipe will conform to the test and design requirements of these specifications.

Each length of pipe shall be clearly marked on the outside with the name or trademark of the manufacturer. Extra strength porous concrete pipe underdrain shall be clearly marked, "Extra Strength".

Curing. All pipe shall be cured in accordance with the provisions of 706-02.

Strength Requirements. The minimum ultimate strength for the size of the pipe being tested shall be as specified on the standard sheet. Requirements of 706-02 shall apply except that no determination of a 0.01 inch crack will be required and the ultimate strength values as determined on full length specimens shall be as specified on the standard sheet.

Infiltration Requirements. Pipe shall be tested for rate of infiltration in accordance with the method of test outlined in AASHTO Designation M176. The minimum rate of infiltration shall not be less than 1 gallon per minute per inch of internal diameter per foot of pipe for all sizes.

All tests shall be performed by the manufacturer at their plant and shall be witnessed by a representative of the Department. The number of samples for test shall be as directed by the Materials Bureau.

Other Requirements. In addition to the above tests, the pipe shall be subject to inspection at all times prior to placing and rejection will be made through failure to comply with any of the following conditions:
A. **Dimensions.** The pipe shall not vary in any dimensions more than permitted by this specification.

B. **Fractures or Cracks.** The pipe shall have no fractures or cracks passing through the shell or socket of the pipe, except that a single crack not exceeding 2 inches in length at either end of a pipe shall not be considered cause for rejection unless the defect exists in more than 5% of the lot offered for sampling and testing.

C. **Quality.** There shall be no defects that indicate imperfect mixing and molding.

D. **Strength.** There shall be no cracks that are sufficient to impair the strength, durability or serviceability of the pipe.

E. **Shape.** The shape of the pipe shall be such that there shall be no variation in alignment of more than 1/8 inch per linear foot.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The material will be considered for acceptance in stock lot quantities at the manufacturing location in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

In addition, the manufacturer shall furnish the Department representative at the plant a certification for each lot manufactured certifying that all pipe in the lot was manufactured in accordance with the terms of this specification and that the pipe details conform to drawings previously approved by the Department. Pipe shall be considered ready for acceptance when a lot conforms to the indicated test requirements. The manufacturer shall be permitted to retest to determine specification compliance.

Pipe not used within two years after its original acceptance shall be retested by the Department before it can be used.

706-06 (VACANT)

706-07 REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE END SECTIONS

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for reinforced concrete pipe end sections.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The Material Requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**DRAWINGS.** The Drawing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**FABRICATION.** The Fabrication requirements contained in §704-03, along with the following, shall apply.

The barrel portion of the end section shall meet the Design, Reinforcement and Permissible Variations requirements of AASHTO M 170 for Class III Pipe, Wall Designation B.

**SAMPLING AND TESTING.** The Sampling and Testing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply, unless otherwise approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.

**MARKING.** The Marking requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION.** The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply, unless otherwise approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.
SHIPPING. The Shipping requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply, unless otherwise approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Basis Of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply, unless otherwise approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.

706-08 POLYPROPYLENE PIPE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for polypropylene pipe (PP) and fittings.

GENERAL. The corrugated polypropylene pipe covered by this specification is classified as follows:

1. Type S- This pipe shall have a full circular cross section, with an outer corrugated pipe wall and a smooth inner liner. Corrugations shall be annular.
2. Type D- This pipe shall consist of an essentially smooth waterway braced circumferentially or spirally with projections or ribs joined to an essentially smooth outer wall. Both walls shall be fused to, or continuous with, the internal supports.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The polypropylene material for the pipe and fittings shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M330, Type S or Type D, and be in accordance with “Materials Method 30”. When checked with a 12 inch straight edge the smoothness of the interior liner shall not deviate more than ¼ inch.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer, accompanied by independent lab test results in accordance to this specification or in conjunction with the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP), and certification that the product conforms to this specification. Approval and continued residence on the Approved List will also be subject to the requirements of “Materials Method 30”.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Polypropylene pipe will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s name and location appearing on the Department’s Approved List. The approved Materials Details will be posted on the Department’s Approved List.

706-09 CURED IN PLACE PIPE (CIPP) LINER

(SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for cured in place pipe liners, or a resin and hardener system, used in rehabilitation of culverts and storm drains.

GENERAL. The flexible liner will be fabricated from one or more layers of polyester felt, or from an alternate material approved by the Director of the Materials Bureau. An impermeable material will be bonded to one or both sides of the liner. A styrene or a non styrene based thermoset resin and catalyst or an epoxy resin and hardener system, compatible with the proposed process or other system and/or process approved by the Materials Bureau must be used. If indicated in the contract documents, a resin (or other material approved by the Materials Bureau) containing less than five percent volatile organic compounds (VOCs) with less than 0.1 percent hazardous air pollutants (HAPs) and less than 0.1 percent of water quality pollutants as listed in 6 NYCRR Parts 700-705 shall be supplied. The proposed resin must be compatible with the inversion process or other Materials Bureau approved installation process.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Supply a system material as described above, conforming to the following minimum values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Required*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Stress, psi</td>
<td>ASTM D638</td>
<td>2,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexural Stress, psi</td>
<td>ASTM D790</td>
<td>4,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexural Modulus, psi</td>
<td>ASTM D790</td>
<td>250,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* If the submitted design calculations indicate that higher values for the above listed material properties have been assumed, then the above listed values will become the minimum values for these liner material properties.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the Manufacturer or installer. This application will be accompanied by independent lab test results in accordance with this specification or in conjunction with the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP), and certification that the product conforms to this specification. Approval and continued residence on the Approved list will also be subject to the requirements of the Materials Procedure “Approval Process for Cured In Place Pipe (CIPP) Liner (706-09)”

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer’s / installer’s name appearing on the Approved List for Rehabilitation of Culverts and Storm Drains. Application for approval and entering into the aforementioned list shall be in accordance with the Materials Procedure, “Approval Process for Cured In Place Pipe (CIPP) Liner (706-09)”.

706-10 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PIPE (relining)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for polyvinyl chloride pipe when used in rehabilitation applications of culverts and storm drains.

General. The polyvinyl material from which the pipe and fittings are extruded or molded will not contain any reclaimed, reground or reworked material and will be comprised of virgin polyvinyl resins only. The resins used will meet the requirements contained in this specification. The pipe and fittings will be manufactured in such a manner so that all cross sections will be dense, homogeneous, and free from any imperfections.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS. The Polyvinyl Chloride pipe materials must conform to ASTM F1803 (Profile Wall), ASTM F949 (Corrugated), ASTM F679, or ASTM D3034. All materials supplied will be clearly marked with the appropriate ASTM as certified.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer’s name appearing on the Approved List for Rehabilitation of Culverts and Storm Drains.

706-11 HIGH DENSITY POLYETHYLENE PIPE (relining)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for high density polyethylene pipe when used in rehabilitation applications of culverts and storm drains.

GENERAL. The high density polyethylene material from which the pipe and fittings are extruded will not
contain any reclaimed, reground or reworked material and will be comprised of virgin high density polyethylene resins only. The resins used will meet the requirements contained in this specification. The pipe and fittings will be manufactured in such a manner so that all cross sections will be dense, homogeneous, and free from any imperfections.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The high density polyethylene pipe and its material must conform to ASTM F894 (Profile Wall) or ASTM F714 (Smooth Wall). All materials supplied will be clearly marked with the appropriate ASTM as certified. Sizes other than those listed within the tables of the ASTM specification will be allowed subject the approval of the director of the Materials Bureau.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer’s name appearing on the Approved List for rehabilitation of Culverts and Storm Drains.

**706-12 SMOOTH INTERIOR CORRUGATED POLYETHYLENE PIPE**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for smooth interior corrugated polyethylene pipe and fittings.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The polyethylene material for the pipe and fittings shall meet the requirements of ASTM F894, Type S or Type SP. In addition, when checked with a 12 inches straight edge the smoothness of the interior liner shall not deviate more than 1/4 inch.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Smooth interior, corrugated polyethylene pipe will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's name and location appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

The supplier shall provide two copies of the approved Materials Details through the Contractor to the Engineer as part of the evidence of acceptability for the material at least 10 days prior to shipment of the product to the job site.

**706-13 PERFORATED CORRUGATED POLYETHYLENE UNDERDRAIN TUBING**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for corrugated polyethylene tubing and fittings.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The corrugated polyethylene tubing and fittings 4 thru 10 inches in diameter shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M294, Type S or Type SP. In addition, when checked with a 12 inches straight edge the smoothness of the interior liner shall not deviate more than 1/4 inch.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Perforated corrugated polyethylene underdrain tubing will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's name and location appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

**706-14 CORRUGATED INTERIOR POLYETHYLENE PIPE**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for corrugated interior polyethylene pipe and fittings.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The polyethylene material for the pipe and fittings shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M294, Type C.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Corrugated interior polyethylene pipe will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's name and location appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

706-15 PVC PLASTIC DRAIN PIPE SYSTEM

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for poly (vinyl chloride) plastic drain pipe, fittings and solvent cement when used as a drain pipe system.

GENERAL. The PVC material from which the pipe and fittings shall be extruded or molded shall not contain any reclaimed, reground or reworked material whatsoever, but shall be compounded from virgin PVC resins, plasticizers, stabilizers, and such materials that when compounded, it shall meet the requirements contained in this specification.

The pipe and fittings shall be extruded or molded in such a manner that all cross sections shall be dense, homogeneous, and free from porosity or other imperfections.

The solvent cement shall be a solution of unplasticized PVC tetrahydrofuran and cyclohexanone.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The PVC material for the pipe and fittings shall meet the requirements of ASTM D1784 for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Compounds, Class 12444-B.

The molded or extruded pipe shall conform to ASTM D1785 for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedule 80, PVC 1120.

The molded or extruded fittings shall conform to ASTM D2467 for Socket-Type Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80, PVC 1.

The solvent cement shall meet the requirements of ASTM D2564 for Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal Size</th>
<th>Outside Diameter (Inches)</th>
<th>Inside Diameter (Inches)</th>
<th>Wall Thickness Schedule 80 (Inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4.500</td>
<td>3.826</td>
<td>0.337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5.563</td>
<td>4.813</td>
<td>0.375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>6.625</td>
<td>5.761</td>
<td>0.432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>8.625</td>
<td>7.625</td>
<td>0.500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>10.750</td>
<td>9.564</td>
<td>0.593</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DIMENSIONS. The dimensions and tolerances of the pipe and fittings shall conform to ASTM D1785 and D2467 respectively.

MARKING. All material furnished shall be plainly marked in accordance with ASTM D1785, D2467, and D2564 for the pipe, fittings and solvent cement, respectively.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. All pipe, fittings and solvent cement shall be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s certification that the material conforms to this specification.

706-16 CELLULAR POLYSTYRENE PROTECTIVE COVER
**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for cellular polystyrene when used as protective cover for pipes.

**GENERAL.** The protective cover shall be fabricated from rigid extruded cellular polystyrene such that it shall meet the requirements contained in this specification.

The polystyrene shall be extruded in such manner that all cross sections shall be uniform and free from imperfections.

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS.** The fabricated cellular polystyrene protective cover shall meet the following requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>ASTM Test Procedure</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Density, pcf</td>
<td>D1622</td>
<td>2.0 ± 0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compressive Strength, psi</td>
<td>D1621</td>
<td>30 ± 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flammability</td>
<td>D635</td>
<td>Self-Extinguishing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DIMENSIONS.** The protective cover shall be fabricated in cylindrical half-sections of any convenient length for application to straight pipe and half-sections of suitable shape and length to protect any non-linear portions of the pipe or fittings.

The thickness of the protective cover shall be maintained within ± 1/16 inch of the thickness shown on the plans.

The protective cover shall be fabricated such that it mates with the pipe without leaving gaps at the seams. It shall have the following maximum clearance between outside diameter of nominal pipe and inside diameter of protective cover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal Pipe Size, Inches</th>
<th>Maximum Clearance, Inches</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/8 to 1 1/2 incl.</td>
<td>1/64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 to 4 incl.</td>
<td>2/64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 to 11 incl.</td>
<td>5/64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 and over</td>
<td>6/64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** All protective cover furnished shall be marked with the following information: manufacturer's name, type of material, and nominal size.

All protective cover shall be accepted on the basis of the Manufacturer's certification that the material conforms to this specification.

**706-17 PRECAST CONCRETE BOX CULVERTS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for precast concrete box culverts.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The Material Requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply except as noted herein.

The concrete used to fabricate precast concrete box culverts shall have a minimum compressive strength of 5000 psi @ 28 days. Joint gasket material shall meet the requirements of ASTM D1056, Grade # 2A1 or # 2A2.

**DESIGN.** When the contract plans contain complete design details for the culvert, alternate designs will not be considered. When the contract plans do not contain complete design details for the culvert the
Contractor shall be responsible for providing them. Precast concrete box culvert designs shall meet the requirements of Highway Design Manual Section 19.5 “Design Guidelines for Reinforced Concrete Culverts”. Design details for bridge size culverts shall also include load rating information. The Load Rating shall be determined in accordance with the current AASHTO "Manual for Bridge Evaluation," with all interim provisions in effect. The contractor shall show which method (allowable stress or load factor) was used in load rating computations. Load ratings shall also be computed by the Load and Resistance Factor Rating (LRFR) method. The contractor shall include all load rating computations in the design calculation submittal. Design calculations shall be stamped by a Professional Engineer. The transmittal, processing and approval of box culvert designs will be in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

**DRAWINGS.** The Drawing requirements contained in §704-03, along with the following shall apply.

All fabrication drawings for Contractor provided designs shall be stamped by a Professional Engineer licensed, and registered, to practice in New York State. Fabrication drawings for bridge size culverts shall include load rating information. Reproducible drawings are required for bridge size culverts only.

**FABRICATION.** The Fabrication requirements contained in §704-03, along with the following shall apply.

**Reinforcing.** Unless noted otherwise in the contract plans or approved fabrication drawings the concrete cover over reinforcing steel shall be 1 inch minimum on the walls, floor slab and roof slab of culverts and 1 1/2 inches minimum on wingwalls. When fill heights over the box culvert are less than 24 inches the concrete cover on the outside face of the roof slab shall be 2 inches minimum and all reinforcing steel in the top mat of the roof slab shall be epoxy coated or the concrete shall contain corrosion inhibitor. Fill heights shall be measured from the top of pavement to the top of the culvert roof slab. All reinforcing steel in the wall section of wingwalls shall be epoxy coated or the concrete shall contain corrosion inhibitor.

**Joints.** Precast concrete box culvert sections shall be fabricated with a female joint on the upstream end and male joint on the downstream end. Joint depth shall be a minimum of 2 inches and a maximum of 4 inches. The ends of longitudinal reinforcing steel shall have 1/2 inch minimum concrete cover at the mating surface of the joint. The circumferential reinforcing steel shall have 1 inch minimum concrete cover, as measured to the outermost bars, at the mating surface of the joint. When interferences occur which prevent this, the concrete cover shall be increased accordingly as shown on the approved fabrication drawings. Joints shall be fabricated such that when box culvert sections are fully drawn together the gap between adjacent culvert sections is 3/4 inch maximum. The outside mating surface of the joint shall have a continuous 1 x 1 inch gasket installed at the precast plant.

**Corrosion Inhibitor.** Corrosion inhibitor may be used in lieu of epoxy coated reinforcing.

**Dimensional Tolerances**

- **Internal Dimensions**
  - < 48 inches: ±1/2 inch
  - ≥ 48 inches & ≤ 96 inches: ±3/4 inch
  - > 96 inches: ±1 inch
- **Wall & Slab Thickness**
  - < 10 inches: +5/8 inch, -1/4 inch
  - ≥ 10 inches: +3/4 inch, -1/4 inch
- **Design Laying Length**
  - +1 inch, -1/2 inch
- **Variation in Laying Length of Opposite Faces**
Span / Rise ≤ 84 inches: ±5/8 inch
Span / Rise > 84 inches: ±3/4 inch
- Surface Irregularities on Mating Surface of Joint ±1/4 inch (when checked with a 3 foot straight edge)

**Repair.** Minor defects in the mating surface of the joint, that do not come in contact with the joint gasket material and are 1/4 inch or less in depth, do not require repair.

**SAMPLING AND TESTING.** The Sampling and Testing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**MARKING.** The Marking requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply except as noted herein.
Markings shall be placed on the inside face of one wall of each culvert barrel section.

**FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION.** The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**SHIPPING.** The Shipping requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Basis of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**706-18 PERFORATED POLYVINYL CHLORIDE UNDERDRAIN PIPE**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for smooth-wall perforated polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe, couplings and fittings intended for use in underdrains.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Perforated polyvinyl chloride underdrain pipe and fittings shall conform to AASHTO M278 Class PS46.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of the perforated polyvinyl chloride underdrain pipe will be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specifications.

**706-19 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**706-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**SECTION 707 - METAL PIPE**

(Last Revised May, 2019)

**707-01 (VACANT)**

**707-02 CORRUGATED STEEL PIPE**

**SCOPE.** The material requirements of corrugated steel pipe with metallic, bituminous, portland cement concrete/or polymer coating intended for use in construction of culverts and drainage systems.

**GENERAL.** The corrugated steel pipe covered by this specification is classified as follows:

1. Type I. A full circular cross-section, with a single thickness of corrugated sheet.
2. Type IR. A full circular cross-section, with a single thickness of smooth sheet, fabricated with helical ribs projecting outwardly.
3. Type II. A Type I pipe which has been reformed into a pipe-arch, having an approximately flat bottom.
4. Type IIR. A Type IR pipe which has been reformed into a pipe-arch having an approximately flat bottom.
5. Type III. A Type I pipe which has been perforated to permit the in-flow or out-flow of water.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Apply the requirements of AASHTO M 36 Types I, IR, II, IIR, and III except as modified herein for all metallic coated corrugated steel pipe. Apply the requirements of AASHTO M190 except as modified herein for all bituminous coated corrugated steel pipe. Apply the requirements of AASHTO M 245 Types I and II except as modified herein for all polymer coated steel pipe.

When Type IR or Type IIR corrugated steel pipe (spiral rib) is specified, the nominal dimension of the ribs shall be 3/4 x 3/4 inch at 7 1/2 inch pitch.

A. Coatings. Coat pipe with one of the following:

1. Metallic. The steel sheet will have a protective coating of zinc galvanizing (AASHTO M 218) or of Aluminum-Coated (Type 2) (AASHTO M 274).

2. Fully bituminous coated and paved invert (AASHTO M 190, Type C). In addition to one of the metallic coatings, the pipe will be fully bituminous coated and have a bituminous paved invert.

3. Fully bituminous coated and 100 percent paved (AASHTO M 190, Type D). In addition to one of the metallic coatings, the pipe will be fully bituminous coated and have a fully paved, smooth bituminous interior.

4. Polymer coated. The steel sheet will have a protective coating of zinc (galvanizing). In addition, the pipe will have a minimum interior polymer coating thickness of 0.01 inch and an optional exterior polymer coating. If an exterior polymer coating is applied, it will have a minimum thickness of 0.003 inch.

5. Polymer coated with a bituminous paved invert. In addition to the zinc and polymer coatings, the pipe will have a bituminous paved invert.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manufacturer's Standard Gage #</th>
<th>Thickness Equivalent(*) Inches</th>
<th>Manufacturer's Standard Gage #</th>
<th>Thickness Equivalent(*) Inches</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.067</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0.060</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>0.054</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.224</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>0.048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>0.042</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.036</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>0.033</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.164</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>0.030</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0.150</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0.027</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.134</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>0.024</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. **Portland Cement Concrete Lined.** The steel sheet will be covered with dense, homogeneous, nonsegregating concrete lining. The concrete will be a minimum thickness of 1/2 inch over the crest of the corrugations of the carrier pipe. In no case will the amount of portland cement, blended cement, or portland cement plus flyash be less than 17 pcf. Flyash in the mix may not exceed 20% by weight of the cementitious material. When type IP cement is used, no flyash will be added in batching. All concrete will have a water-cement ratio not exceeding 0.50 by weight. Cure the concrete lining prior to installation as per manufactures instructions.

The bituminous material for coating and/or paving will be homogeneous and have the following properties in addition to those specified by AASHTO M 190:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Penetration at 77°F, 100g, 5 seconds</th>
<th>AASHTO T49</th>
<th>25-50</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Penetration Ratio (40°F/77°F x 100)</td>
<td>AASHTO T49</td>
<td>80-90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Softening Point °F(Ball &amp; Ring)</td>
<td>AASHTO T53</td>
<td>88-110</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Apply the requirements of AASHTO M 246 for polymer material. Polymer coating materials must appear on the Department's Approved List.

Apply the material requirements of 501-2.02 Materials for portland cement concrete liner material.

**B. Gauge.** The nominal metal thickness corresponding to any gauge is shown in Table 707-2-1.

**C. End Finish.** To facilitate field joining, reroll the ends of all helical corrugated steel pipe with diameters of 12 inches or greater to form a minimum of two annular corrugations of no less than 2 2/3 inch pitch by 1/2 inch depth. Reroll the ends of Type IR and IIR pipe to form only two corrugations.

**D. Coupling Bands.** Supply annular corrugated steel coupling bands for all round pipe sections (Types I, IR, and III) 12 inches or greater in diameter. The band corrugations will have the same dimensions as the pipe ends. Mesh the band with at least one full corrugation and lap it equally on each pipe end. The band width will be a minimum of 7 inches for pipe diameters up to and including 32 inches. The band width will be a minimum of 10 1/2 inches for pipe diameters greater than 32 inches. The thickness of the band cannot be less than 2 nominal sheet thicknesses thinner than the pipe and in no case thinner than 0.05 inch.

Pipe arches (Type II and IIR) may be joined by the annular corrugated bands described above or by special projection type coupling bands. The special projection bands will consist of two rows of projections at 3 inches center-to-center that will mesh with at least one full corrugation and will lap equally on each pipe end. The thickness of the special projection bands will not be less than 2 nominal sheet thicknesses thinner than the pipe and in no case thinner than 0.06 inch.

Regular projection type coupling bands (dimpled bands) will not be acceptable for 1 foot in diameter pipe and larger. Dimpled bands may be used on pipe diameters smaller than 1 foot, all sizes of perforated underdrain pipe (Type III), and for connecting pipe extensions to existing helical corrugated metal pipe without rerolled ends, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Coupling bands may be one or two piece. Use two piece coupling bands on pipe 48 inches or greater in diameter.

*NOTE: Minimum thickness shall conform to the appropriate AASHTO specifications.*
Use one of the following coupling band connectors:

- Galvanized steel angles, 2 x 2 x 3/16 inches
- Lug connectors
- Bar and strap connectors

Rivet, bolt, or weld these connectors to the coupling bands. Any evidence of loose bolts or rivets, bearing failure, or weld or band tearing are cause for rejection and replacement of that coupling band. As an alternate to the coupling band connectors stated above, a corrugated angle which conforms to an approved Materials Detail may be used.

Coat the steel sheet used for coupling bands with a polymer or metallic coating. If polymer or metallic coated corrugated steel pipe is being joined, the bands must have the same coating as the pipe.

Joints for concrete lined pipe will meet the requirements of ’603-3.06 Joints.

**E. Coating Repair.** Repair damaged metallic, bituminous, portland cement concrete and/or polymer coating.

Metallic coating field repairs will be allowed only when the total damaged area on each piece is less than 2 sf of coated surface, excluding aluminum coated rerolled ends. Any piece having damaged areas totaling more than 2 sf, excluding aluminum coated rerolled ends, will be rejected.

Repair metallic coatings as follows:

- Power disk sand or mechanically wire brush areas of damaged coating to bright metal
- Remove oil, grease, and corrosion products from repair areas
- Spray or brush a zinc-rich paint on clean, dry repair areas. The paint brand must appear on the Department's Approved List, Materials for Use in Repairing Galvanized Surfaces 719-01. The dry film paint thickness shall be at least 0.005 inch. Do not apply paint below 40°F.

Repair aluminum coatings damaged during rerolling at the manufacturing location. The rerolled ends may be either spot repaired or completely painted to repair small areas of damaged coating. Make repairs to the rerolled ends of aluminum coated pipe as referenced above. These rerolled end repairs, when properly completed, will not be counted toward the 2 sf of allowable damaged coating described above.

Repair damaged interior bituminous coatings using the original material or a Corrugated Metal Pipe Bituminous Coating Repair Material appearing in the Department's Approved List. Exterior damage to a bituminous coated pipe requires repair to the metallic coating only.

Repair damaged interior polymer coatings using Polymer Repair Materials for Steel Sheet used for Corrugated Pipe appearing in the Department's Approved List. Exterior damage to a polymer coated pipe requires repair to the metallic coating only.

Repair damaged portland cement concrete linings with Item 701-08, vertical and overhead patching material. The lining will be free of cracks exceeding 0.04 inch in width or the pipe will be rejected.

**F. Marking.** Mark or tag each length of corrugated steel pipe over the coating as approved by the Department to properly cross-reference the supplier’s certification.

**G. Additional Defects.** In addition to coating damage and other criteria established in Materials Bureau procedural directives, the following additional defects along with those listed in AASHTO will be cause for rejecting the pipe when inspected at the project:

- Variation from a straight centerline of more than 3/4 inch in 20 feet.
- Any dents greater than 3 inches in diameter
- Any punctures
- Loosely formed or cracked lock seams
- Cracks through the metal
- Sharp bends in pipe arches that are less than the specified minimum corner radius for that size.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Corrugated steel pipe will be accepted on the basis of certified documentation issued by a supplier appearing on the Department's Approved List. Certification will accompany all shipments arriving at the project in accordance with Materials Bureau procedural directives. Shipments arriving without certification, or with improper certification will be rejected.

The Engineer will measure gauge and coating thicknesses at the project. The pipe will be rejected if the metal and/or coating thickness is less than required or certified. The Contractor will supply equipment required to measure metal and coating thicknesses as detailed in *603-3.02H, Thickness Measuring Equipment.*

Acceptance requirements including thickness measurements, visual inspection instructions, certification format, and fabrication shop approval will be in accordance with Materials Bureau procedural directives. At the option of the Department, this material may be subjected to shop inspection. Polymer coatings, coating applicator facilities, and application methods are subject to Materials Bureau approval. Samples are required for laboratory and field testing. Field testing will be a minimum of two years duration. Upon approval, the brand of polymer coating and applicator will be placed on the Department's Approved List. Certifications for polymer coated pipe received at the project will include the brand and applicator of polymer coating, which must appear on the Department's Approved List. Corrugated connecting angles will be accepted provided an approved Materials Detail appears on the Department's Approved List from that supplier.

**707-03 DUCTILE IRON PIPE (NON-PRESSURE)**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for 14 to 54 inches Ductile Iron Culvert Pipe.

**GENERAL.** Ductile Iron Pipe. (Non-Pressure) shall be a centrifugally cast iron pipe conforming to the requirements of ASTM A716, Ductile Iron Culvert Pipe.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Ductile Iron Pipe (Non-Pressure) shall be accepted on the basis of the Manufacturer's certification that the material conforms to this specification. The certification shall accompany the material delivered to the job site.

The Department reserves the right to sample and test this material subsequent to delivery at the project site.

**707-04 DUCTILE IRON PIPE (PRESSURE)**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material, and quality requirements for 3 to 54 inches Ductile Iron Pipe (Pressure).

**GENERAL.** Ductile Iron Pipe (Pressure) shall be a centrifugally cast iron pipe conforming to the requirements of ANSI A21.51., Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast In Metal Molds or Sandline Molds, for Water or Other Liquids.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Ductile Iron Pipe (Pressure) shall be accepted on the basis of the Manufacturer's certification that the material conforms to this specification. The certification shall accompany the material delivered to the job site.
The Department reserves the right to sample and test this material subsequent to delivery at the project site.

707-05 TUNNEL LINER PLATE (RELINING)

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for tunnel liner plate.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Tunnel liner plate steel must conform to ASTM A1011. Tunnel liner plate aluminum must conform to AASHTO M219 (ASTM B746). Before cold forming into tunnel liner plate the plates must conform to the following mechanical requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>STEEL (0.125-0.15 in.)</th>
<th>ALUMINUM (0.173-0.25 in.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Strength, psi</td>
<td>42,000 min.</td>
<td>35,000 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yield Point, psi</td>
<td>28,000 min.</td>
<td>24,000 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elongation in 2 inch, percent</td>
<td>30 min.</td>
<td>6 min.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prepare test specimens in accordance with ASTM A1011 for steel sheets or ASTM A283 for steel plates and ASTM B209M for aluminum plates. Deliver the Mill test reports, for each heat and thickness to the Engineer with each shipment of liner plates.

**Galvanizing.** Galvanize steel plates in accordance with AASHTO M167 M. Galvanize after the plates are formed, punched and curved. Hot dip galvanize all bolts and nuts, when used with galvanized tunnel liner plate in accordance with ASTM A153.

**Liner Plate.** Punch all plate for bolting on both the longitudinal and circumferential seams or joints and fabricate so as to permit complete erection from the inside of the tunnel liner plate structure. The minimum edge distance from the center of a bolt hole to the edge of a plate will be in accordance with the manufacturer=s standard spacing. Provide a sufficient number of plates with 2 inches, or larger, grouting holes with pipe plugs, and spaced so that when the plates are installed there will be one line of holes at the crown of the pipe and one line on each side at approximately the midpoint. The holes in each line will not be more than 6 feet apart, and they will be staggered along the tunnel length.

**Tunnel Liner Plate (Two-Flange).** The minimum moment of inertia in inches\(^4\) per inch of plate width, based on the average of one ring of plates is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STEEL</th>
<th>ALUMINUM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uncoated Plate Thickness</td>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(in.)</td>
<td>(in.^4/in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.135</td>
<td>0.064</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.164</td>
<td>0.079</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.180</td>
<td>0.087</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.210</td>
<td>0.103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.240</td>
<td>0.118</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The longitudinal seams will be of the lap type. The depth of the offset will be equal to the thickness of the metal for the full width of plate, including flanges. Fabricate the lap to allow the cross section of the plates to be continuous through the seam. The lapped longitudinal joints will contain at least five (5) bolts per 18 inch plate width, with bolts in ridges and valleys staggered. Circumferential bolt spacing will be in accordance with the manufacturer=s standard spacing and will be a multiple of the plate length so
that the plates having the same curvature are interchangeable. Bolts and nuts for liner plate assemblies will not be less than 0.63 inch in diameter. Circumferential (flange) seams will conform to ASTM A307, with chemical and mechanical requirements conforming to Grade A and dimensions conforming to Grade B. Bolts and nuts for longitudinal seams will have square heads with a square shoulder to engage the plate. Longitudinal seams of plates 0.078 to 0.177 inches thick, inclusive will conform to ASTM A307, with chemical and mechanical requirements conforming to Grade A. Bolts for longitudinal seams of plates 0.2 to 0.25 inches or thicker will conform to the chemical and mechanical requirements of ASTM A449. Nuts, for use on ASTM A449 bolts, will conform to ASTM A307, with chemical and mechanical requirements conforming to Grade A, and dimensions conforming to Grade B.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer’s name appearing on the Approved List.

**707-06 THRU 707-08 (VACANT)**

**707-09 CORRUGATED STRUCTURAL STEEL PLATE FOR PIPE, PIPE ARCHES AND UNDERPASSES**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers corrugated structural steel plates intended for use in the construction of pipe, pipe arches and underpasses.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Structural steel plate, nuts and bolts shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M167 except as herein specified, and shall be of the thickness and shape shown of the plans. When a gauge number is specified in the contract documents it shall conform to Table 707-2-1. Plates shall have approximately a 2 inch lip beyond each end crest, which will result in the actual length of a given structure being approximately 4 inches longer than the nominal length, except where skewed or beveled.

If directed by the Engineer, the Contractor shall, at its own expense, repair damaged spelter on plate items as directed under 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods. This repair method shall be allowed only when it is in the best interest of the Department. All repairs shall be made at no cost to the State.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** This material will be accepted on the basis of certified documentation issued by a fabrication shop appearing on the Department's Approved List. Certification format and fabrication shop approval shall be in accordance with procedural directives issued by the Materials Bureau. At the option of the Department, this material may be subjected to shop inspection.

**707-10 GALVANIZED STEEL END SECTIONS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers galvanized steel end sections to be attached to the inlet and outlet ends of corrugated steel pipe.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Galvanized steel end sections shall be manufactured from material meeting the requirements of AASHTO M218. The units shall conform to the shape, dimensions, and thickness shown on the applicable standard sheet and/or contract plans. The nominal metal thickness corresponding to any gauge shall be as shown in Table 707-2-1. Marking and coating repair shall meet the requirements of 707-02, Corrugated Steel Pipe.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** End sections will be accepted on the basis of certified documentation issued by a fabrication shop appearing on the Department's Approved List. All shipments shall arrive at
the project with certification prepared in accordance with Materials Bureau procedural directives. Shipments arriving without certification, or with improper certification, will be rejected.

Metal and coating thicknesses will be measured at the project by project inspectors. If the metal and/or coating thickness is less than required or certified, the material shall be rejected. Equipment required to measure metal and coating thickness shall be supplied by the contractor as detailed in ‘603-3.02G, Thickness Measuring Equipment.

Acceptance requirements including thickness measurements, visual inspection instructions, certification format, and fabrication shop approval shall be in accordance with Materials Bureau procedural directives. At the option of the Department, this material may be subjected to shop inspection.

707-11 ALUMINUM END SECTIONS

SCOPE. This specification covers aluminum end sections to be attached to the inlet and outlet ends of corrugated aluminum pipe.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Aluminum end sections shall be manufactured from material meeting the requirements of AASHTO M197. The units shall conform to the shape, dimensions, and thickness shown on the standard sheet for galvanized steel end sections and/or contract plans. The nominal metal thickness corresponding to any gauge shall be as shown in Table 707-2-1. Marking shall meet the requirements of 707-13, Corrugated Aluminum Pipe.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. End sections will be accepted on the basis of certified documentation issued by a fabrication shop appearing on the Department’s Approved List. All shipments shall arrive at the project with a certification prepared in accordance with Materials Bureau procedural directives. Shipments arriving without certification, or with improper certification, will be rejected.

Metal thickness will be measured at the project by project inspectors. If the metal thickness is less than required or certified, the material shall be rejected. Equipment required to measure thickness shall be supplied by the contractor as detailed in 603-3.02H, Thickness Measuring Equipment.

Acceptance requirements including thickness measurements, visual inspection instructions, certification format, and fabrication shop approval shall be in accordance with Materials Bureau procedural directives. At the option of the Department, this material may be subjected to shop inspection.

707-12 (VACANT)

707-13 CORRUGATED ALUMINUM PIPE

SCOPE. This specification covers corrugated aluminum pipe intended for use in the construction of culverts and drainage systems. The corrugated aluminum pipe covered by this specification is classified as follows:

Type I. This pipe shall have a full circular cross-section with a single thickness of corrugated sheet fabricated with annular (circumferential) or helical corrugations.

Type IA. This pipe shall have a full circular cross-section with an outer shell of corrugated sheet fabricated with helical corrugations and an inner liner of smooth (uncorrugated) sheet attached to the shell at helical lock seams.

Type IR. This pipe shall have a full circular cross-section with a single thickness of smooth sheet fabricated with helical ribs projecting outwardly.
Type II. This pipe shall be a Type I pipe which has been reformed into a pipe-arch having an approximately flat bottom.

Type IIR. This pipe shall be a Type IR pipe which has been reformed into a pipe-arch having an approximately flat bottom.

Type III. This pipe, intended for use as underdrains or for underground disposal of water, shall be a Type I pipe which has been perforated to permit the in-flow or out-flow of water.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Corrugated aluminum pipe shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M196 Types I, IA, IR, II, IIR, and III except as modified herein. When Type IR and Type IIR corrugated aluminum pipe (spiral rib) is specified, the nominal dimension of the ribs shall be 3/4 x 3/4 inch at 7 1/2 inches spacing.

Gauge. The nominal metal thickness corresponding to any gauge shall be as shown in Table 707-2-1.

End Finish. To facilitate field joining, the ends of all helical corrugated aluminum pipe with 12 inches or greater diameters shall be rerolled to form a minimum of two annular corrugations of no less than 2 2/3 inch pitch by 1/2 inch depth. When the ends of Type IR or Type IIR pipe are rerolled, there shall be only two such corrugations. Rerolled pipe ends shall be uniquely and indelibly labeled so the pipe may be assembled in the field in the same order it was manufactured.

Coupling Bands. All round pipe sections (Types I, IA, IR, and III) 12 inches or greater in diameter shall be field joined with aluminum coupling bands. Helical corrugated pipe without rerolled ends may be joined with helical corrugated bands. Pipe with rerolled ends or annular corrugations shall be joined with annular corrugated coupling bands.

All bands shall have corrugations with the same dimensions as the pipe ends. Annular corrugated bands shall mesh with at least one full corrugation and shall lap equally on each pipe end. The band widths shall be a minimum of 7 inches for pipe diameters up to and including 32 inches. The band widths shall be a minimum of 10 1/2 inches for pipe diameters greater than 32 inches.

The bands shall not be more than 2 nominal sheet thicknesses thinner than the pipe and in no case thinner than 0.05 inch.

Pipe arches (Type II and Type IIR) may be joined by the annular corrugated bands described above or by special projection type coupling bands. The special projection bands shall consist of two rows of projections at 3 inches center-to-center that will mesh with at least one full corrugation and will lap equally on each pipe end. The special projection bands shall not be more than 2 nominal sheet thicknesses thinner than the pipe and in no case thinner than 0.063 inch.

Regular projection type coupling bands (dimpled bands) will not be acceptable for pipe 12 inches in diameter and larger. Dimpled bands may be used on pipe smaller than 12 inches in diameter, all sizes of perforated underdrain pipe, and for connecting pipe extensions to existing helical corrugated pipe without rerolled ends, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Coupling bands may be one or two piece. Two piece coupling bands shall be used on pipe 48 inches or greater in diameter.

Coupling band connectors shall be one of the following types:

- Aluminum angles, 2 x 2 x 3/16 inches
- Aluminum lug connectors
- Aluminum bar and strap connectors.

These connectors shall be riveted, bolted, or welded to the coupling bands. Evidence of loose bolts or rivets, bearing failure, or weld or band tearing shall be cause for rejection and replacement of that
coupling band. As an alternate to the coupling band connectors stated above, an aluminum corrugated angle which conforms to an approved Materials Detail may be used.

**MARKING.** Each length of corrugated aluminum pipe shall be marked or tagged as approved by the Department to properly cross-reference the supplier's certification.

**Additional Defects.** In addition to criteria established in Materials Bureau procedural directives and defects listed in AASHTO, the following defects will be cause for rejecting the pipe when inspected at the project:

- Variation from a straight centerline of more than 3/4 inch in 20 feet.
- Any dents greater than 3 inches in diameter
- Any punctures
- Loosely formed or cracked lock seams
- Cracks through the metal
- Sharp bends in pipe arches that are less than the specified minimum corner radius for that size.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Corrugated aluminum pipe will be accepted on the basis of certified documentation issued by a supplier appearing on the Department's Approved List. All shipments shall arrive at the project with certification prepared in accordance with Materials Bureau procedural directives. Shipments arriving without certification, or with improper certification, shall be rejected.

  *Gauge* shall be measured at the project by project inspectors. If the gauge is less than required, the pipe shall be rejected. Equipment required to measure gauge shall be supplied by the contractor as detailed in **603-3.02H, Thickness Measuring Equipment.**

  Acceptance requirements including thickness measurements, visual inspection instructions, certification format, and fabrication shop approval shall be in accordance with Materials Bureau procedural directives. At the option of the Department, this material may be subjected to shop inspection. Corrugated connecting angles will be accepted provided an approved Materials Detail appears on the Department's Approved List from that supplier.

**707-14 CORRUGATED ALUMINUM STRUCTURAL PLATE FOR PIPE AND PIPE ARCHES**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers corrugated aluminum structural plates for use in the construction of pipe and pipe arches.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Structural plate, nuts and bolts shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M219 except as herein specified, and shall be of the thickness and shape shown on the plans. When a gauge number is specified in the contract documents, it shall conform to Table 707-2-1.

  The corrugations shall run at right angles to the longitudinal axis of the structure. Plates shall have approximately a 1 3/4 inch lip beyond each end crest, which will result in the actual length of a given structure being approximately 3 1/2 inches longer than the nominal length, except where skewed or beveled.

  All sections which are damaged from any cause, including handling, or where any dimension varies from that specified, shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense in a manner approved by the Engineer.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** This material will be accepted on the basis of certification by the fabricator. Each fabricator shall furnish upon request by the Materials Bureau a certified analysis and guarantee executed by the manufacturer of the base metal as described in AASHTO M219.

  At the option of the Department, structural plates may be subjected to shop inspection or may be shipped to the project site accompanied by certified documentation executed in a form prescribed by the Department.
707-15 THRU 707-19 (VACANT)

707-20 ANCHOR BOLTS FOR CORRUGATED CULVERTS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material details and quality requirements for the anchorage system securing the ends of corrugated metal pipe, arch pipe, and structural plate to reinforced or plain concrete headwalls.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Anchor bolts shall be 3/4 inch diameter heavy hex bolts, ASTM A307. Grip shall be 5 1/2 inches threaded over at least the first 2 1/2 inches. The bolts shall be fitted with two nuts, ASTM A563 heavy hex. Nuts shall be chamfered on at least one face using a 1 inch spherical radii. The nuts and bolts shall be so assembled that in the final assembly, the bolt and one of the nuts is embedded in concrete, that the chamfered faces of the nuts face each other, and secure the pipe between them. Nuts and bolts shall be galvanized as per ASTM A153 after all machining operations are completed. Following galvanization, threads shall be cleaned to produce a free running fit.

When 19 inch hook bolts are used as anchor bolts they shall be detailed on the plans and shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A36.

Anchor bolts shall be spaced around the periphery of the pipe at intervals not exceeding 18 inches. At least two anchor bolts shall be provided.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Anchor bolts and nuts for corrugated metal pipes, pipe arches, and structural plate pipe will be accepted on the Manufacturer's Certification that they conform with these specifications.

707-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

SECTION 708 - PAINTS

708-01 STRUCTURAL STEEL PAINTS CLASS 1

SCOPE: This specification defines the requirements for materials appearing on the Department’s Approved List, “Structural Steel Paints, Class 1.”

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS: The system shall be able to be applied as a shop or a field-applied coating over an SSPC SP-10 cleaned surface.

The paint shall be a 3-coat system whose primer is an organic zinc-rich epoxy with pigment primarily consisting of zinc dust.

The paint shall have undergone National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP) testing and meet NEPCOAT Qualified Products List B approval criterion and the requirements of Materials Method NY 6. The coating manufacturer shall submit NTPEP results, field histories of the coating, Material Safety Data Sheets, and Technical Data Sheets to the Materials Bureau. Any formulation or technical data sheet change may affect approval status, and shall be reported to the Materials Bureau. Failure to notify the Materials Bureau shall result in the removal of the system from the Approved list.

The system’s Technical Data Sheets shall contain the following information;

- Temperature Range for Storage
- Profile Range
- Temperature for Application
- Cure to Handle/Overcoat Schedule
Humidity and Dew Point Restrictions
Mixing Recommendations
Thinners allowed and resulting VOC levels
Recoat Window
Paint Film Thickness Range, Wet and Dry-Film Values
Surface preparation requirements
Application Requirements

If the data sheet does not have all of the above information, the manufacturer will be required to submit a letter to the Engineer with the above information. The letter will be considered an addendum to the technical data sheet. The manufacturer’s data sheet, and addendum if applicable, will be posted on the Department’s Approved List, Structural Steel Paints, Class 1, as the official reference for New York State.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE:** Contract acceptance will be based on the appearance of the product on the Approved List.

**708-02 STRUCTURAL STEEL PAINTS CLASS 2**

**SCOPE:** This specification defines the requirements for materials appearing on the Department’s Approved List, “Structural Steel Paints, Class 2.”

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS:** The system shall be able to be applied in the field over an SSPC SP-10 blasted or an SSPC SP-11 power tool cleaned surface, or a properly prepared, previously painted surface.

The paint shall have undergone National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP) testing, and meet NEPCOAT Qualified Products List B approval criterion and the requirements of Materials Method NY 6. The coating manufacturers shall submit NTPEP results, field histories of the coating, Material Safety Data Sheets, and Technical Data Sheets to the Materials Bureau.

Any formulation or technical data sheet change may affect approval status and shall be reported to the Materials Bureau. Failure to notify the Materials Bureau shall result in the removal of the system from the Approved list.

The system’s Technical Data Sheets shall contain the following information:

- Temperature Range for Storage
- Profile Range
- Temperature for Application
- Cure to Handle/Overcoat Schedule
- Humidity and Dew Point Restrictions
- Mixing Recommendations
- Thinners Allowed and Resulting VOC Levels
- Recoat Window
- Paint Film Thickness Range
- Surface Preparation Requirements
- Application Requirements

If the data sheet does not have all of the above information, the manufacturer will be required to submit a letter to the Engineer with the above information. The letter will be considered an addendum to the technical data sheet. The manufacturer’s data sheet, and addendum if applicable, will be posted on the...
Department’s Approved List, Structural Steel Paints, Class 2, as the official reference for New York State.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE:** Contract acceptance will be based on the appearance of the product on the Approved List.

708-03 (VACANT)

708-04 ZINC CHROMATE PRIMER

**SCOPE.** This paint is used as a prime coat on aluminum in contact with fresh concrete to reduce the effect of alkali attack.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The composition of this paint shall be as shown in the following table using ingredients conforming to the requirements of the applicable specifications indicated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Lbs. Per 100 Gal.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zinc Yellow</td>
<td>(TT-P-465)</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titanium Dioxide, Rutile, Chalk Resistant</td>
<td>(ASTM D79)</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc Oxide (American Process Type)</td>
<td>(ASTM D765)</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sienna, Raw</td>
<td>(ASTM D605)</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium Silicate</td>
<td>(MIL-A-15206A)</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminum Stearate</td>
<td>(TT-R-266C, Type I)</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resin, alkyd Solution</td>
<td>(TT-D-376)</td>
<td>22.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petroleum Spirits</td>
<td>(TT-T-291, Type I, Grade A)</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead Napthenate</td>
<td>(ASTM D600, Class B)</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cobalt Napthenate</td>
<td>(ASTM D600, Class B)</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium Napthenate</td>
<td>(ASTM D600, Class B)</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The quantitative requirements of zinc chromate primer shall be as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirement</th>
<th>Min.</th>
<th>Max.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pigment</td>
<td>45.0%</td>
<td>49.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle</td>
<td>51.0%</td>
<td>55.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volatile by weight of paint</td>
<td>29.5%</td>
<td>33.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight (lb/gal)</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>11.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coarse particles &amp; skins (total residue retained on 45 um sieve based on paint)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fineness of Grind (North Standard)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity at 25°C (Stormer-Krebs Units)</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc oxide (ZnO), by weight of pigment</td>
<td>34.0%</td>
<td>39.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titanium Dioxide (TiO2), by weight of pigment</td>
<td>12.0%</td>
<td>14.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium Trioxide (CrO3), by weight of pigment</td>
<td>20.0%</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phthalic Anhydride, by weight of non-volatile vehicle</td>
<td>23.0%</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Point</td>
<td>86°F</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The percentages noted relate to mixture by weight. The paint shall dry set to touch within two hours and dry hard within 6 hours. No resin and resin derivatives shall be present in the paint. The paint shall show no evidence of cracking when subjected to a 1/8 inch “mandrel flexibility test.”

708-05 STANDARD PAINT COLORS

SCOPE: This specification defines commonly used colors.

DEFINITIONS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color Reference Standard</th>
<th>Paint Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sage Green Paint</td>
<td>Munsell 7.5 GY 5/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Gray Paint</td>
<td>Munsell 10B 6/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue Paint</td>
<td>Federal Color Standard 595, # 35177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown Paint</td>
<td>Federal Color Standard 595, # 30111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown-Gray Paint</td>
<td>Federal Color Standard 595, # 36306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dark Blue Paint</td>
<td>Federal Color Standard 595, # 15090</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Textured Concrete Finish Paint</td>
<td>Federal Color Standard 595, # 36440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weathered Brown Guide Rail Paint</td>
<td>Federal Color Standard 595, # 20059</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assistance in providing definitions for other colors is offered by the Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE: The Engineer may require manufacturer’s certification that the color provided meets the requirements of this specification.

708-06 PAINT FOR GALVANIZED SURFACES

SCOPE. This specification covers the materials requirements for paints to be applied over galvanized surfaces.

PAINT. Paint shall be a two-coat system with an polyamide epoxy primer and an aliphatic urethane, suitable for exterior use. The paints shall have a VOC level below 340 g/L or 2.8 lb/gal, shall be produced by the same manufacturer, and the prime and top coat shall be compatible. The primer shall be specifically formulated for use over galvanized surfaces.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The material shall be accepted with the submission of the technical data sheets and the manufacturer’s certification ensuring compliance with this specification.

708-07 PAINT FOR ALUMINUM SURFACES

SCOPE. This specification covers the materials requirements for paints to be applied over aluminum surfaces not in contact with concrete.

PAINT. Paint shall be a two-coat system with an epoxy primer and an aliphatic urethane, suitable for exterior use. The paints shall have a VOC level below 340 g/L or 2.8 lb/gal, shall be produced by the same manufacturer, and the prime and top coat shall be compatible. The primer shall be specifically formulated for use over aluminum surfaces.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The material shall be accepted with the submission of the technical data sheets and the manufacturer’s certification ensuring compliance with this specification.
708-08 THRU 708-29 (VACANT)

708-30 WOOD PRESERVATIVE – CREOSOTE OIL

SCOPE. These specifications cover creosote used in the treatment of wood used for railroads and for utility poles.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Creosote used in the treatment of wood used by railroads and for utility poles shall conform to the requirements of AWPA’s User Categories UC3, UC4 and UC5 and the following P Standards:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Preservative</th>
<th>AWPA Standard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Creosote</td>
<td>P1/P13 - Creosote Preservative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creosote Solution</td>
<td>P2 - Creosote Solution</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method of application shall be in conformance with the AWPA’s T1 Processing and Treatment Standard. Minimum net retention shall be as required for material in contact with soil.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Creosote will be accepted on the basis of a material certification ensuring compliance with this specification and with AASHTO Standard Specification M-133 Preservatives and Pressure Treatment Processes for Timber.

708-31 WOOD PRESERVATIVE – WATERBORNE

SCOPE. These specifications cover waterborne wood preservatives used in the treatment of piles, timber, and lumber.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Waterborne preservative used in the treatment of piles, timber and lumber shall conform to the requirements of AWPA’s User Categories UC1, UC2, UC3, UC4 and UC5 and with the P5 Standard. The method of application shall be in accordance with the T1 Processing and Treatment Standard. Minimum net retention shall be as required for material in contact with soil.


Treatment of wood materials with Chromated Copper Arsenate is limited according to the September 2008 Reregistration Eligibility Decision for Chromated Arsenicals, issued by the US Environmental Protection Agency.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Waterborne wood preservatives will be accepted on the basis of a material certification ensuring compliance with this specification and with AASHTO Standard Specification M-133 Preservatives and Pressure Treatment Processes for Timber.

708-32 WOOD PRESERVATIVE – OIL-BORNE

SCOPE. These specifications cover oil-borne wood preservatives used in the treatment of timber and lumber.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Pentachlorophenol Solvent A, Copper Naphthenate, and Bis (Tri-n-Butyltin) Oxide shall conform to American Wood Protection Association Standards P8 and P9 (Standards for Solvents and Formulations for Organic Preservatives Systems).
Oil-borne wood preservatives shall be applied in conformance with the Use Category Designations UC3, UC4, or UC5 of the U1 User Specification for Treated Wood Standard of the American Wood Protection Association. The method of application shall be in accordance with the T1 Processing and Treatment Standard. Minimum net retention shall be as required for material in contact with soil. Treatment of wood materials with Chromated Copper Arsenate is limited according to the September 2008 Reregistration Eligibility Decision for Chromated Arsenicals, issued by the US Environmental Protection Agency.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Oil-borne wood preservatives will be accepted on the basis of a material certification ensuring compliance with this specification and with AASHTO Standard Specification M-133 *Preservatives and Pressure Treatment Processes for Timber*.

**SECTION 709 - REINFORCING STEEL**

(Last Revised May, 2019)

**709-01 BAR REINFORCEMENT, GRADE 60**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for deformed billet steel and deformed rail steel reinforcing bars used in portland cement concrete. Plain and deformed steel for the fabrication of spirals is included.

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS**

_A. Deformed Bar Reinforcement._ Steel reinforcing bars shall be deformed billet steel bars meeting the requirements of ASTM A615, Grade 60, or deformed rail steel bars meeting the requirements of ASTM A996/996M, Grade 60.

_B. Spirals._ Spirals shall be plain wire meeting the requirements of ASTM A1064, or plain or deformed bars in coils or cut lengths, meeting the requirements of ASTM A615, Grade 60. When specified the spirals shall be epoxy coated in accordance with the applicable requirements of 709-04 or 709-08.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Bar reinforcement and spirals will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's name and location appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification. _Buy America requirements apply._

**709-02 WIRE FABRIC FOR CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for wire fabric reinforcement used in portland cement concrete pavement, precast concrete products and other concrete construction.

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS.** Wire fabric reinforcement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A1064, exclusive of the portions pertaining to rejection, retests and rehearing, except as indicated on the plans, in the proposal or as modified herein. The weld shear test will not be required for acceptance of wire fabric for concrete pipe.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Welded wire fabric for concrete reinforcement will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's name and location appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification. _Buy America requirements apply._
709-04 EPOXY-COATED BAR REINFORCEMENT

SCOPE. This specification covers bar reinforcement with protective epoxy coatings applied by the electrostatic spray method.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Bar Reinforcement. Steel reinforcing bars shall conform to the requirements of §709-01, Bar Reinforcement, Grade 60 or §709-14, Bar Reinforcement, Grade 75.

B. Epoxy Coating Material. The epoxy coating material shall be an organic, powdered-epoxy resin that is applied by electrostatic methods.

   Epoxy coating material shall be approved by the Materials Bureau. Detailed requirements and procedures for the acceptance of epoxy coating materials are available from the Materials Bureau. Upon approval of the product, the epoxy coating will be placed on a Department "Approved List" of materials. The epoxy coating manufacturer shall supply written certification to the coating applicator that the coating material is the same as that approved by the Materials Bureau.

C. Patching Material. Patching or repair materials shall be supplied by the epoxy coating manufacturer. The patching material shall be compatible with the epoxy coating, inert in concrete, and suitable for use in making shop or field repairs.

Coating Application

A. Coating Applicator. The coating applicator's facilities shall be approved by the Materials Bureau. Applications for approval of facilities shall be made to the Materials Bureau by the coating applicator. Upon approval, the name and address of the coating applicator will be placed on the Department's list of "Approved Applicators."

B. Surface Preparation

1. The surface of bars to be coated shall be blast cleaned in accordance with the Steel Structures Painting Council - Surface Preparation Specification No. 10 (SSPC-SP10), Near White Blast Cleaning. After blasting, the cleaned surface of the bar shall be defined by SSPC-Vis 1-89, Pictorial Standards A SP 10, B SP 10, or C SP 10, as applicable.

2. A suitable anchor pattern shall be produced by the cleaning media. A target profile of approximately (1/3) the coating thickness shall be considered suitable as an anchor pattern. Measurements shall be taken using a surface profile gage, or replica tape, approved by the Materials Bureau.

3. The powdered epoxy resin coating shall be applied to the cleaned surface as soon as possible after cleaning and before visible oxidation occurs. In no case shall more than 8 hours elapse between cleaning and coating.

C. Coating Application. The powdered epoxy resin coating shall be electrostatically applied to preheated bars, and cured in accordance with the recommendations of the coating manufacturer. The epoxy coating may be applied before or after fabrication (bending) of the reinforcement bars.

D. Coating Thickness
1. The epoxy coating shall be applied as a uniform, smooth coat. After curing, the coating thickness shall be 10 ± 2 mils.
2. Coating thickness shall be determined by taking measurements on a minimum of five coated bars from each production lot. Five spot measurements shall be obtained from evenly spaced locations along each side of the test bar (a minimum of 10 spot measurements per bar). A spot measurement is defined as the average of three individual readings obtained from three adjacent areas on the body, or on the deformations of the bar.
3. For acceptance purposes at least ninety (90) percent of all spot thickness measurements shall be 8 to 12 mils after cure, and no spot measurement of coating thickness shall be less than 8 mils or greater than 15 mils.
4. Coating thickness shall be measured by the method outlined in ASTM G12, except that the number and location of thickness measurements shall be in accordance with this specification. All magnetic gages shall be approved by the Materials Bureau.

E. Continuity of Coating

1. The coating shall be checked visually after cure for continuity. It shall be free from holes, voids, contamination, cracks and damaged areas.
2. The coating shall have not more than two holidays (pinholes not visible to the naked eye) in any 1 foot length of the coated bar. A 67.5 volt, 80,000 ohm, d-c holiday detector shall be used in-line to check the coating for holidays at all times during the application of epoxy protective coating. Bar reinforcement that is coated when the in-line detector is inoperable shall be automatically rejected.

F. Coating Cure. The coating applicator shall check each production lot to determine that the entire production lot of coated bars is in a fully-cured condition.

G. Adhesion of Coating

1. The adhesion of the coating shall be evaluated on a minimum of two bars from each production lot. The coated bar shall be bent 120 degrees (after rebound) around a mandrel of specified size as designated in Table 709-4. The bend shall be done at a uniformly slow rate and may take up to 45 seconds to complete. The bend test specimen shall be positioned so that the two longitudinal deformations are in a plane perpendicular to the mandrel radius. The test specimens shall be between 68°F and 86°F at the time of testing.
2. No cracking, disbondment, or other coating defect shall be visible to the naked eye on the outside, or on the inside radius of the bent bar.
3. If both test specimens show evidence of cracking or disbondment, the production lot represented by the samples shall be rejected. If only one of the two test specimens shows evidence of cracking or disbondment of coating, two additional random samples shall be tested. If the test results from both retests show no defects, the production lot represented by the samples shall be accepted. If the test results of either retest fails, the production lot represented by the samples will be rejected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bar Number</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>18</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mandrel Diam. (in.)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: Bar Numbers are bar sizes marked in eighths of inches

SAMPLING AND TESTING
A. Lot Size. For test purposes a production lot is the smallest number of reinforcement bars of the same type, heat and size as determined by the following requirements:

1. A lot shall not exceed a single order.
2. A lot shall consist of the number of bars as defined by the coating applicator, except that it shall not exceed the number of reinforcement bars coated within a single working shift.

B. Quality Control. The coating applicator shall be responsible for performing quality control and test. This will include inspection for compliance with the requirements of Coating Thickness, Continuity of Coating, and Coating Cure, and the testing required under Adhesion of Coating.

C. Plant Inspection

1. The Department reserves the right to have its authorized representative observe the preparation, coating, and testing of the reinforcement bars. The representative shall have free access to the plant. Any work done when access has been denied shall be automatically rejected.
2. If the representative elects, lengths of coated bars may be taken from the production run, on a random basis, for test, evaluation and check purposes by the Materials Bureau.

Repair of Coated Bars

A. Repairs at the Coating Applicator's Facility

1. Repairs will not be allowed on epoxy-coated reinforcement bars that do not meet the requirements for Coating Thickness, Continuity of Coating, Coating Cure, or Adhesion of Coating. Reinforcement bars exhibiting any one of these defects shall be replaced, or stripped of epoxy coating, re-cleaned, and recoated in accordance with this specification.
2. All other damage that occurs from handling, or for other reasons, at the coating applicator's facility shall be repaired with patching material. All repairs shall be performed as soon as possible and before visible rust (oxidation) appears on the steel surface. All repairs shall be performed in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer of the patching material.
3. The coating applicator shall be responsible for repair to the coating due to damage at the coating applicator's facility.

B. Repair at the Fabrication Facility

1. The fabricator shall be responsible for repair to the coating due to damage during fabrication and handling at the fabricator's facility.
2. All coating damage due to fabrication, or handling, or for other reasons that occurs at the fabricator's facility shall be repaired with patching material.
3. Wherever bond loss or damaged areas of coating exist, they shall be cleaned and repaired. The cleaning shall remove loose or deleterious material, or both. In cases where rust is present it shall be removed by blast cleaning prior to repairs. The requirements of Surface Preparation, part 2a., shall apply.
4. Visible cracks, including hairline cracks without bond loss that occur due to fabrication of the bars, shall be repaired with patching material.
5. When coated bars are sheared, saw-cut, or cut by other means during the fabrication process, the exposed ends shall be coated with patching material.
6. All repairs shall be performed as soon as possible and before visible rust (oxidation) appears on the steel surface.
HANDLING AND STORAGE. All systems for handling coated bars shall have padded contact areas for the bars. All bundling bands shall be padded and all bundles shall be lifted with a strong back, multiple supports or a platform bridge so as to prevent bar to bar abrasion from sags in the bar bundle. The bars or bundles shall not be dropped or dragged.

Epoxy-coated bar reinforcement shall be stored above the ground on wooden or padded supports. Epoxy-coated bar reinforcement shall not be stored unprotected outdoors. All coated bars that are stored outdoors shall be protected from sunlight and moisture, using opaque waterproof covers. The covers shall be placed in a manner that will permit constant air circulation so as to minimize the formation of condensation on the epoxy-coated bar surface.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Epoxy-coated bar reinforcement, grade 60 or grade 75, will be accepted on the basis of the names and locations of the reinforcing bar manufacturer and the epoxy reinforcing bar applicator appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification from the epoxy reinforcing bar applicator that specifies the product conforms to this specification. In addition, fabricated, epoxy-coated bar reinforcement will be supplied by a fabricator appearing on the Department’s Approved List, Fabricators for Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars. Buy America requirements apply.

709-05 STUD SHEAR CONNECTORS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for stud shear connectors used in bridge structures.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS. Steel used for the manufacture of stud shear connectors shall conform to the Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Cold Finished, Standard Quality, ASTM A108, UNS Designation G10100 thru G10200, either Semi-Killed, or Killed Deoxidation.

Stud shear connectors shall be furnished in the dimension shown on the Contract Plans.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

ASTM quality control tests shall have been made not more than six months prior to the date of manufacture of the studs.

709-06 LOW-RELAXATION PRESTRESSING STEEL, GRADE 270

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for low-relaxation prestressing steel used in the fabrication of prestressed concrete units.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Low-relaxation prestressing steel shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A416M, Grade 270. Low-relaxation prestressing steel shall be free of dirt, oil, paint, mill scale, corrosion, coatings, lubricants, or any other foreign material that may prevent an acceptable bond between the steel and the concrete.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Low-relaxation prestressing steel will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's name and location appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification. Buy America requirements apply.

709-07 STONE CURB ANCHOR BARS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for stone curb bars used in bridge construction.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Anchor bars for Types F1, G1, M, R1, R2, S and T1 curbs shall meet the requirements of ASTM A615, Grade 60 or Grade 75, deformed billet-steel bars shall be galvanized in accordance with ’719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Field Repair Methods, Type I. As an alternate to galvanizing, the bars may be treated with a protective epoxy coating. This coating shall be applied by either the electrostatic spray method of the electrostatic fluidized bed method, as specified in ’709-04 Epoxy Coated Bar Reinforcement or in accordance with the applicable requirements of ’705-14 Longitudinal Joint Ties.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The stone curb anchor bars will be accepted when on the basis of evaluation by the Engineer, the product complies with these specification requirements.

709-08 EPOXY COATED WIRE FABRIC REINFORCEMENT

SCOPE. This specification covers sheets of wire fabric reinforcement with protective epoxy coatings that are applied by the electrostatic spray method or electrostatic fluidized bed method.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Wire Fabric Reinforcement. Wire fabric reinforcement shall conform to the requirements of 709-02.

B. Epoxy Coating Material

1. The epoxy coating material shall be an organic, powered epoxy resin that is applied by electrostatic methods. Epoxy coating materials shall be approved by the Materials Bureau. Detailed requirements and procedures for the acceptance of epoxy coating materials are available from the Materials Bureau. Upon approval of the product, the epoxy coating will be placed on a Department Approved List of materials.

2. The epoxy coating manufacturer shall supply written certification to the coating applicator that the coating material is the same as that approved by the Materials Bureau.

C. Patching Material. Patching or repair materials shall be supplied by the epoxy coating manufacturer. The patching material shall be compatible with the epoxy coating, inert in concrete, and shall be suitable for use in making field repairs.

Coating Application

A. Coating Applicator. The coating applicator's facilities shall be approved by the Materials Bureau. Applications for approval of facilities shall be made to the Materials Bureau by the coating applicator. Upon approval, they will be placed on the Department's list of “Approved Applicators For Epoxy Coated Wire Fabric Reinforcement.”

B. Surface Preparation.

1. The surface wire fabric to be coated shall be blast cleaned in accordance with the Steel Structures Paint Council - Surface Preparation Specification No. 10 (SSPC-SP10), near White Blast Cleaning. After blasting, the cleaned surface of the bar shall be defined by SSPC-Vis 1-89, Pictorial Standards A SP 10, B SP 10, or C SP 10, as applicable.

2. The powdered epoxy resin coating shall be applied to the cleaned surface as soon as possible after cleaning and before visible oxidation occurs. In no case shall more than 8 hours elapse between cleaning and coating.
C. Coating Application. The powdered epoxy resin coating shall be electrostatically applied in accordance with the recommendations of the coating manufacturer.

D. Coating Thickness. The epoxy coating shall be applied as a smooth, uniform coat. After curing, the coating thickness shall be a minimum of 4 mils. Coating thickness shall be controlled by taking measurements on a representative sample from each production lot. Coating thickness measurements shall be conducted by the method outlined in ASTM B499.

E. Continuity of Coating
1. The coating shall be checked visually after cure for continuity. It shall be free from holes, voids, contamination, cracks and damaged areas.
2. The coating shall not have more than two holidays (pinholes visible to the naked eye) in any 1 foot length of a coated single wire. A holiday detector shall be used, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, to check the coating for holidays. Sharp edges at the welded intersection of the wires shall not be considered to be holidays.

F. Coating Cure. The coating applicator shall check each production lot to determine that the entire production lot of coated fabric is in a fully-cured condition.

G. Flexibility of Coating
1. The flexibility of the coating shall be evaluated on two representative sections of wire fabric from each production lot or two #16, Grade 60 reinforcing bars that have been coated simultaneously with the wire fabric. A representative wire from the wire fabric shall be bent 120 degrees (after rebound) around a pin or mandrel of 10 diameters or alternately, a reinforcing bar shall be bent 120 degrees around a 6 inch diameter pin or mandrel. Bending shall be done at a minimum rate and may take up to one minute to complete. The test specimens shall be a thermal equilibrium between 68°F and 86°F at the time of testing.
2. When examined by the naked eye, the outside radius of the bent wire or bar shall be free of cracks in the coating.

TESTING AND SAMPLING

A. Lot Size. For test purposes a production lot is the smallest number of sheets of wire fabric of the same style (gauge, spacing size) from a given manufacturer as determined by the following requirements:
1. A lot shall not exceed a single order, or delivered load of 1500 sheets, whichever is smaller.
2. A lot shall consist of the number of sheets as defined by the coating applicator except that it shall not exceed the number of sheets coated within a single working shift.
3. A lot shall consist of the number of sheets of mesh coated with the same batch or lot of epoxy.

B. Quality Control. The coating applicator shall be responsible for performing quality control and tests. This will include inspection for compliance with the requirements of Coating Thickness, Continuity of Coating and Coating Cure and the testing required under Flexibility of Coating.

C. Plant Inspection.
1. The Department reserves the right to have its authorized representative observe the preparation, coating and testing of wire fabric. The representative shall have free access to the plant. Any work done while access was denied will be rejected.
2. If the representative elects, samples of coated fabric may be taken from the production run, on a random basis, for test, evaluation and check purposes by the Materials Bureau.
REPAIR. Epoxy coated wire fabric reinforcement which does not meet the requirements of Coating Thickness, Continuity of Coating, Coating Cure or Flexibility of Coating shall not be repaired. Reinforcement with these defects shall be replaced or stripped of epoxy coating, re-cleaned and recoated in accordance with the requirements of this specification. Any damage to the coated reinforcement, occurring at the coating applicator’s facility shall be cleaned and repaired with patching material. The cleaning shall remove loose or deleterious material or both. If rust is present, it shall be removed by blast cleaning prior to patching.

HANDLING. All systems for coated wire fabric shall have padded contact areas, wherever possible. All bundling bands shall be padded and all bundles shall be lifted with a strong back, multiple supports or a platform bridge so as to prevent sheet to sheet abrasion from sags in the bundle. The sheets or bundles shall not be dropped or dragged.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Epoxy-coated wire fabric will be accepted on the basis of the names and locations of the welded wire fabric manufacturer and the epoxy applicator appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification from the epoxy applicator that specifies the product conforms to this specification. Buy America requirements apply.

709-09 COLD-DRAWN WIRE FOR CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for cold-drawn wire for concrete reinforcement used in portland cement concrete pavement, precast concrete products and other concrete construction.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Cold-drawn wire shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A1064, exclusive of the portions pertaining to rejection, retests and rehearing, except as indicated on the plans or in the proposal.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Cold-drawn wire will be considered for acceptance on the basis of the Manufacturer’s name appearing on the Approved List and certification in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. Alternately, cold-drawn wire from a Manufacturer not appearing on the Approved List may be considered for acceptance in stock lot quantities at manufacturing locations based on sampling and testing in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

709-10 MECHANICAL CONNECTORS FOR REINFORCING BAR SPLICES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for mechanical connectors for splicing reinforcing bars.

GENERAL. Mechanical connectors for use on epoxy coated reinforcing bars shall be epoxy coated. Mechanical connectors coated prior to installation shall be coated in conformance with the applicable requirements for epoxy coatings contained in 709-04, Epoxy Coated Reinforcement. Mechanical connectors coated after installation shall be coated with an epoxy repair material compatible with the reinforcing bar epoxy coating. The assembled connection on epoxy coated reinforcing bars shall have no exposed uncoated steel. Any damage to the epoxy on the mechanical connector or reinforcing bars shall be repaired with a compatible epoxy repair material. Mechanical connectors used on Galvanized Bar Reinforcement shall be galvanized in accordance with §719-01 Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods.
Mechanical connectors for Stainless Steel Reinforcement shall be fabricated from any alloy of stainless steel that is on the Approved List for 709-13. Connectors must be made from the same alloy of stainless steel as the bars they are connecting.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Mechanical connectors will be tested for the following three parameters:
- The maximum slip, at 50% of the yield strength of the reinforcing bar, shall be 0.010 inch. At least 70% of the maximum slip shall have occurred on the first cycle.
- The maximum slip, at 90% of the yield strength of the reinforcing bar, shall be 0.018 inch.
- The tensile strength of the splice shall be at least 90% of the specified minimum tensile strength of the reinforcing bar.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Mechanical connectors for Reinforcing Bar Splices will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s name and location appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification that states the product conforms to this specification or, at the discretion of the Department, based on sampling and testing in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. Buy America requirements apply.

709-11 GALVANIZED BAR REINFORCEMENT

SCOPE. This specification covers bar reinforcement with a hot dipped galvanized coating. Bar reinforcement will be coated before or after bending, as required by the payment specification.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Reinforcing Steel. The material for the reinforcing steel shall meet the requirements of ‘709-01 Bar Reinforcement, Grade 60 or §709-14, Bar Reinforcement, Grade 75.

B. Galvanizing. The bar reinforcement shall be galvanized in accordance with ASTM A767 “Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement” to a Class I Coating.

C. Embrittlement Testing. The coating applicator shall take the necessary precautions to prevent embrittlement by conforming to the requirements of STM A143 “Standard Practice for Safeguarding Against Embrittlement of Hot-Dip Galvanized Structural Steel Products and Procedures for Detecting Embrittlement”. The test for embrittlement shall be conducted by the coating applicator or his representative according to the bend test described in ASTM A615 “Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement”. The coating applicator shall include one reinforcing bar test specimen at least 3 feet long for each lot for this testing. The test specimen shall have the same diameter as the lot members and shall be quenched, and galvanized in the same manner and at the same time as the bars whose characteristics it is intended to represent. If the test specimen cracks or otherwise fails the bend test, the entire lot it represents shall be rejected. For test purposes, a lot is any one of the following:
- Reinforcing bars of the same diameter comprising a single order
- A number of reinforcing bars of the same diameter identified as a lot by the coating applicator, providing the bars are all been coated within a single production shift
- One thousand reinforcing bars of the same diameter. Notwithstanding the above two, no lot shall exceed one thousand bars.
D. Identification. The Contractor shall coordinate the tagging and identification requirements for the project and for lot identification and shall provide a non-destructive metal tag system for bent reinforcing bars.

E. Inspection. The materials Bureau shall be notified 30 days prior to the beginning of the coating application. The Materials Bureau representative and any other Department authorized representative shall have free access to the plant for inspection. Work done while any Department representative has been refused access shall be automatically rejected.

If the Department representative so elects, preparation of the bars, quenching and coating shall be done in his presence. On a random basis, lengths of coated bars may be taken by the representative from the production run at the point of coating application for test, evaluation and check purposes.

F. Zinc Rich Paint. Zinc rich paint used for field repairs of galvanized coatings shall meet the following requirements:

- One application of the material shall provide a dry film thickness of 2 mils
- The dried fill shall have a minimum zinc dust content of 94% by mass
- The paint shall be compatible with the galvanizing and shall be inert in concrete
- The brand of material used shall be approved by the galvanizer.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The coating applicator shall furnish a Certificate of Compliance with each shipment of coated bars. The Certificate of compliance shall state the representative samples of the coated bars have been tested and that the test results conform to the requirements described herein. Test results shall be retained and made available, if requested. The Certificate of Compliance and the documentation required for uncoated reinforcement bars by 709-01 Bar Reinforcement, Grade 60 or §709-14, Bar Reinforcement, Grade 75, shall accompany each shipment to the job site.

709-12 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

709-13 STAINLESS STEEL BAR REINFORCEMENT

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for stainless steel reinforcing bars used in portland cement concrete.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Material Properties. The stainless steel shall meet the requirements of ASTM A955 and its designated grade, either 60 or 75. Alloys of stainless steel which meet all the testing and process requirements of ASTM A955 but are not listed in ASTM A955 Table 2 are acceptable if they meet the chemical requirements of ASTM A276, are either austenitic or austenitic-ferritic, and have a UNS designation beginning with either ‘S2’ or ‘S3’.

A) Deformed Bar Reinforcement - Steel reinforcement shall be deformed billet stainless steel bars or deformed billet stainless steel coils meeting the requirements of ASTM A955 and its designated grade, either 60 or 75.

B) Plain Rounds - Reinforcement when specified for dowels, structural ties, and supports shall be plain billet stainless steel bars or coils meeting the requirements of ASTM A955 and its designated grade, either 60 or 75.
C) Spirals – Spirals shall be plain or deformed stainless steel bars in coils or cut lengths meeting the requirements ASTM A955 and its designated grade, either 60 or 75.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Stainless steel bar reinforcement will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s name and location and the fabricator’s name and location (where required) appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification that states the product conforms to this specification or, at the discretion of the Department, based on sampling and testing in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. *Buy America requirements apply.*

**709-14 BAR REINFORCEMENT, GRADE 75**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for deformed billet steel reinforcing bars used in portland cement concrete. Plain and deformed steel for the fabrication of spirals is included.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

**Deformed Bar Reinforcement.** Steel reinforcing bars shall be deformed billet steel bars meeting the requirements of ASTM A615, Grade 75.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Bar Reinforcement and spirals will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's name and location appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification. *Buy America requirements apply.*

**709-15 GROUTED REINFORCING BAR SPLICE SLEEVES**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for Grouted Splice Sleeves. The splice sleeve and the grout constitute a system, and both parts of the system will appear together on the Approved List.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

Grouted splice sleeves may be made of plain steel, stainless steel, or steel with epoxy coating. Grouted splice sleeves made of plain steel shall not be used with epoxy coated reinforcement. Grouted splice sleeves will be tested for the following parameters using California Test 670. The total slip shall be a maximum of:

- #3 to #6: 0.010 in.
- #7 to #9: 0.015 in.
- #10 to #11: 0.020 in.
- #14: 0.025 in.
- #18: 0.030 in.

The tensile strength of the splice shall be at least 125% of the yield strength of the reinforcing bar as tested according to ASTM A370.

In addition, the manufacturer shall submit test data as set forth in AASHTO LRFD 5.5.3.4 for grout-filled sleeves. The results shall show that the fatigue resistance of the splice meets the set criteria. The sample preparation, testing methodology, and data analysis shall all be conducted by a certified and independent laboratory using the same methodology as that used in NCHRP 10-35.

The grout shall be as supplied by the manufacturer of the splice sleeve, and shall be the same grout that appears on the Approved List.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Grouted Reinforcing Bar Splice Sleeve systems will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s name and location appearing on the Department’s Approved List and a material certification that states the product conforms to this specification or, at the discretion of the Department, based on sampling and testing in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. Buy America requirements apply.

709-16 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

709-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

SECTION 710 - FENCE AND GUIDE RAIL
(Last Revised September, 2016)

710-01 ALUMINUM FENCE FABRIC

SCOPE. This specification covers the requirements for aluminum alloy, chain link fence fabric.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Aluminum chain link fence fabric shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M181, Chain Link Fence, Type III, except as modified herein.

A. Wire. The aluminum alloy wire shall be 6061-T94 conforming to the applicable chemical composition limits of ASTM B211.

B. Mesh Size and Wire Diameter. The size of the mesh and the wire diameter shall be 2 inches and 9 gage (0.148 inch) respectively unless otherwise specified in the plans or proposal.

SHIPPING. Fabric shall be furnished in a clean condition free of all foreign material, including oil, dust, film, etc.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Aluminum fence fabric will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

710-02 GALVANIZED STEEL FENCE FABRIC

SCOPE. This specification covers the requirements for galvanized steel chain link fence fabric.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Galvanized steel chain link fence fabric shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M181, Chain Link Fence, Type I, except as modified herein.

A. Mesh Size Coated Wire Diameter. The size of the mesh and the coated wire diameter shall be 2 inches and 9 gage (0.148 inch) respectively unless otherwise specified in the plans or proposal.

B. Zinc-Coating. The 2 inch mesh shall be galvanized with a Class D coating (2 oz/sf) by the hot-dip process after weaving. When 1 inch mesh is specified, it shall be galvanized with Class D Coating (2 oz/sf) before weaving by the electrolytic process.

SHIPPING. Fabric shall be furnished in a clean condition free of all foreign material, including oil, dust, film, etc.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Galvanized steel fence fabric will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification. Buy America requirements apply.
710-03 VINYL COATED STEEL FENCE FABRIC

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for Class A-Extruded Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC)-Coated Steel Fence Fabric, and Class B-Bonded Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC)-Coated Steel Fence Fabric.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Vinyl coated steel chain link fence fabric shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M181, Chain Link Fence, Type IV, except as modified herein.

A. Mesh Size. The size of the mesh shall be 2 inches unless otherwise specified in the contract documents.

B. Wire Diameter. The wire diameter shall be as follows unless specified otherwise in the contract documents:

1. Class A- Extruded Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC)-Coated Steel shall have a 9-gage (0.148 inch) metallic coated core wire.

2. Class B- Bonded Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC)-Coated Steel shall have an 11-gage (0.12 inch) metallic coated core wire.

C. Vinyl Coating. The color of the vinyl coating shall be dark green unless shown otherwise in the contract documents. The Engineer shall have the option of approving an alternate color if the specified color is unavailable. An adhesion test is not required for coatings which are extruded or extruded and bonded.

SHIPPING. Fabric shall be furnished in a clean condition, free of all foreign material, including oil, dust, film, etc.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Vinyl-coated steel fence fabric will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification. Buy America requirements apply.

710-04 ALUMINUM COATED STEEL FENCE FABRIC

SCOPE. This specification covers the requirements for Aluminum Coated Chain Link Fence Fabric.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Aluminum coated steel fabric shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M181, Chain Link Fence, Type II, except as modified herein.

Mesh Size and Coated Wire Diameter. The size of the mesh and the coated wire diameter shall be 2 inches and 9 gage (0.148 inch) respectively unless otherwise specified in the contract documents.

SHIPPING. Fabric shall be furnished in a clean condition free of foreign material including oil, dust, film, etc. except that a methacrylate lacquer may be used to protect it under storage conditions.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Aluminum-coated steel fence fabric will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification. Buy America requirements apply.
710-05 COATED STEEL FENCE FABRIC, (95% ZINC 5% ALUMINUM - MISCHMETAL ALLOY)

SCOPE. This specification covers the requirements for coated steel fence fabric (95% zinc 5% aluminum - mischmetal alloy).

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Coated steel fence fabric (95% zinc 5% aluminum - mischmetal alloy) shall conform to the dimensional and strength requirements of AASHTO M 181 Chain Link Fence Type I, except as modified herein.

A. Mesh Size. The size of the mesh shall be 2 inches unless otherwise specified in the contract documents.

B. Coated Wire Diameter. The size of the coated wire diameter shall be 9 gage (0.148 inch) unless otherwise specified in the contract documents.

C. Coating. The coating shall meet the requirements of ASTM F1345 Class 2 (1 oz/sf).

SHIPPING. Fabric shall be furnished in a clean condition, free of all foreign material including oil, dust, film, etc.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Coated steel fence fabric will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification. Buy America requirements apply.

710-06 ROCK SLOPE NET AND WIRE MESH ASSEMBLIES
(Last Revised January 2019)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for the components for assembling a net or wire mesh used as part of a rock catchment system. The following materials are evaluated in this specification:

710.0601 – Rock Slope Net Assembly.
710.0602 – Rock Slope Wire Mesh Assembly.
710.0603 – Rock Slope Wire Mesh Drape Assembly.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. Rock Slope Net Assembly. Provide a fence consisting of a net fabricated from wire rope meeting the requirements of §710-27 Rock Slope Wire Ropes, Seam Rope for Wire Rope Rock Catchment Fence. The border rope of the net shall meet the requirements of §710-27 Rock Slope Wire Ropes, Net Supporting Wire Rope for Wire Rope Rock Catchment Fence. The mesh size of the net shall be 8 in. by 8 in. The net shall be diagonally woven.

B. Rock Slope Wire Mesh. Provide 11 gauge (1/8 in. diameter), single twisted, coated steel wire mesh, with Class 1 (Zn-5Al) coating conforming to ASTM F1345. The steel wire composing the mesh shall have a minimum tensile strength conforming to ASTM A817.

C. Rock Slope Wire Mesh Drape. Provide 11 gauge (1/8 in. diameter), 8 by 10 mesh type having a nominal mesh opening of 3 ¼ in. x 4 ½ in., galvanized steel wire mesh, conforming to ASTM A975, Style 1.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Rock Slope Net Assembly will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

The Rock Slope Wire Mesh will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

The Rock Slope Wire Mesh Drape will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

710-07 THRU 710-09 (VACANT)

710-10 STEEL AND IRON POSTS, RAILS, BRACES, AND FITTINGS FOR CHAIN LINK FENCE

SCOPE. This specification covers the requirements for steel and iron posts, rails, braces and fittings used in erecting chain link fence. The contractor shall have the option of supplying any one of the post sections shown on the Standard Sheets.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS. The following specifications cover the material requirements for each of the sections, fittings, and tension wires shown in the Post and Rail schedule on the Standard Sheets for Chain Link Fence:

A. Class A, Schedule 40 Pipe. Posts, rails and braces shall be standard weight Schedule 40 Pipe, manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1083, except that the protective coating system shall be as specified herein.

B. Class B, Steel Tubing. Posts, rails and braces shall be manufactured by one of the following methods with the steel conforming to ASTM A1011 or ASTM A1008 and A1011/A1011M with a minimum yield strength of 50,000 psi:

- Furnace butt welded, continuous welded
- Cold rolled and electric resistance welded
- Seamless

The tubing shall conform to the following dimensions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal Size (inches)</th>
<th>Outside Diameter, inches</th>
<th>Minimum Wall Thickness, inches</th>
<th>Weight lb/ft</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 1/4</td>
<td>1.660</td>
<td>0.111</td>
<td>1.836</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1.900</td>
<td>0.120</td>
<td>2.218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2.375</td>
<td>0.130</td>
<td>3.117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td>2.875</td>
<td>0.160</td>
<td>4.639</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C. Class C, Rolled-Formed Shapes. Posts, rails and braces shall be roll formed shapes which meet the requirements of ASTM F1043.

D. H-Posts. H Posts shall be fabricated from hot-rolled steel sections which meet the requirements of ASTM F1043.

E. Fittings. Fittings shall be manufactured of weldable steel, malleable iron, cast steel, cast iron, or aluminum alloy.
1. **Weldable Steel.** Weldable steel shall be commercial quality or better, produced by one of the following processes: Open-Hearth, Electric Furnace, or Basic Oxygen.

2. **Malleable Iron.** Malleable Iron shall conform to the requirements of '715-09.

3. **Cast Iron.** Cast iron shall conform to the requirements of '715-05.

4. **Cast Steel.** Cast steel shall conform to the requirements of '715-02.

5. **Aluminum Alloy.** Aluminum alloy shall meet the material requirements of '710-11.

Fittings other than aluminum fittings in contact with galvanized surfaces shall be galvanized in accordance with '719-01, Type II. Fittings in contact with aluminum surfaces shall be made of aluminum alloy or be aluminum coated in accordance with '719-03.

**F. Tension Wire.** Tension wire shall meet the requirements of ASTM A641M, as modified herein. The wire shall be a no. 7 gage minimum 0.177 ± 0.004 inch in diameter, having a minimum tensile strength of 80,000 psi, with a minimum galvanized coating of 0.7 oz/sf or a minimum aluminum coating of 0.3 oz/sf.

**Protective Coating Systems.** Posts, rails and braces shall be coated with a protective coating system conforming to one of the following depending on structural member.

**A. Class A Schedule 40 Pipe; Class B Steel Tubing**

1. **Galvanized Coatings.** Galvanized both inside and out in accordance with ASTM F1083.

2. **Combined Coatings**

   a. **External surfaces.** The external surfaces shall be coated with the following combined coating system:

      (1) **Hot Dip Galvanizing.** The external surface shall be hot-dip galvanized with “Special High Grade” or “High Grade” slab zinc conforming to ASTM B6. The weight of the coating shall be a minimum 0.9 oz/sf.

      (2) **Chromate Conversion Coating.** Chromate conversion coating shall be specifically designed for use as a pretreatment of galvanized surfaces. The coating shall be applied prior to the application of the thermoplastic acrylic coating at the manufacturer's recommended rate.

      (3) **Clear Coating.** A thermoplastic acrylic or cross linked polyester coating shall be applied with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mils.

   b. **Internal Surfaces.** The internal surfaces of the pipe or tubing shall be coated with one of the following:

      (1) **Zinc rich coating.** The zinc rich coating shall contain not less than 87% zinc dust by weight and shall be capable of providing galvanic protection. The minimum coating thickness shall be 0.3 mils.
(2) *Cross* linked polyester coating containing a corrosion inhibitor

(3) *Hot-dip galvanized coating*. The hot-dipped galvanized coating shall average not less than 0.35 oz/sf and no single specimen shall show less than 0.25 oz/sf.

**B. Class C Roll Formed Shapes and H Posts.** All surfaces shall be hot-dip galvanized in accordance with the requirements of ’719-01, Type I.

**C. Class A Schedule 40 Pipe; Class B Steel Tubing; Class C Roll Formed Shapes, H-Posts.**

1. *Aluminum with Chromate Coatings*. All surfaces shall be given a hot-dipped 99% pure aluminum, Type II coating. The aluminum coating shall average 0.66 oz/sf and no single specimen shall show less than 0.61 oz/sf when tested in accordance with ASTM A428. The coating shall meet the adherence and quality requirements of ’719-03. The aluminum coated surfaces shall be given a colorless chromate chemical treatment. The external surfaces shall be given a colorless protective resin coating to protect the material from abrasion in shipment and storage.

2. *Mischmetal Alloy Coating (95% Zinc 5% Aluminum)*. Coating shall meet the requirements of ASTM F1043 Protective Coatings on Steel Framework for Fences Type C, except the coating weight shall be 1.0 oz/sf.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Steel and iron posts, rails, braces, and fittings for chain link fence will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification. *Buy America requirements apply.*

**710-11 ALUMINUM POSTS, RAILS, BRACES AND FITTINGS FOR CHAIN LINK FENCE**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the requirements for aluminum posts, rails, braces and fittings to be used in erecting chain link fencing.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Posts, rails, braces and fittings shall conform to the following materials specifications, alloy, temper and dimensional requirements in Table below.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Aluminum posts, rails, braces and fittings for chain link fence will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Material Spec.</th>
<th>Alloy &amp; Temper</th>
<th>Dimensions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fabric Ties</td>
<td>715-04</td>
<td>5052-H-38, 1100-H18 or 3003-H14</td>
<td>0.144 in. nom.dia or 1/2 in. wide x 0.06 in. thick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top &amp; Bottom Tension Wires</td>
<td>715-04</td>
<td>6061-T94</td>
<td>0.192 in. nom. dia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hog Rings</td>
<td>715-04</td>
<td>6061-T94</td>
<td>0.110 in. nom. dia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stretcher Bars</td>
<td>715-04</td>
<td>6063-T5 or 6063-T6</td>
<td>1/4 x 3/4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Truss Rods</td>
<td>715-04</td>
<td>6061-T6 or 6063-T6</td>
<td>3/8 in. nom. dia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast Tumblers</td>
<td>715-03</td>
<td>356.0-T6</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wrought Turnbuckles</td>
<td>715-04</td>
<td>6061-T6 or 6063-T6</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brace &amp; Stretcher Bands</td>
<td>715-04</td>
<td>3003-H14 or 6063-T6</td>
<td>1/8 x 7/8 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carriage Bolts</td>
<td>715-04</td>
<td>2024-T4</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
710-12 PLASTIC COATED POSTS, RAILS, BRACES AND FITTINGS FOR CHAIN LINK FENCE

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the requirements for plastic coated posts, rails, braces and fittings used for erection of chain link fencing.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Posts, rails, braces, fittings, and accessories shall comply with the requirements of ’710-10, except for the galvanized coatings. Post, rails, braces, fittings and accessories shall be resin-clad with either an epoxy modified ply (vinyl chloride), or a thermoplastic polyester resin. The coating shall have a minimum thickness of 7 mils and shall be of the same color as the fabric.

**Fabrication Requirements.** The epoxy modified poly (vinyl chloride) coating shall be chemically bonded to heated pipe, fittings, etc., or the fitting and pipe, etc., shall be clad with a heavy molecule, saturated, linear thermoplastic polyester resin applied by electrostatic spray and fusing or equal method. Each length of pipe shall be sealed with two snug-fitting polyethylene plug-type seals to prevent condensation and eliminate internal corrosion.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Plastic-coated posts, rails, braces, and fittings for chain link fence will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification. *Buy America requirements apply.*

710-13 WOOD AND TIMBER POSTS AND TIMBER BLOCKOUTS

**SCOPE.** This specification covers wood posts used as witness posts, timber posts, and blockouts used in guiderail construction.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Wood posts, timber posts, and timber blockouts shall comply with the requirements of ’712-14, Stress Graded Timber and Lumber, except that not every timber blockout in the lot need be branded, provided that approximately 10% of the blockouts are branded, and that the unbranded blockouts are visually similar, as determined by the engineer, to the branded blockouts. Using the clean wood properties of ASTM D2555, the bending stress (Modulus of Rupture) shall not be less than 4000 psi. They shall be surfaced on four sides and the dimensions shall be actual or nominal as indicated on the plans. If the dimensions are indicated to be nominal, the actual dimensions provided shall be in accordance with current trade practice. Surface dried redwood, red cedar, cypress or black locust may be used untreated. Other lumber including douglas fir, pine, oak, birch, apple, and beech may also be used but shall be pressure treated in accordance with ’708-31, Wood Preservative-Water Borne.
after all the holes have been drilled and all other woodworking operations have been performed. Bituminous preservative treatments will not be permitted. Before using, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer, for approval, information as to the species of timber to be used and method of preservative treatment to be employed.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Wood and timber posts and timber blockouts will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

### 710-14 GALVANIZED STEEL BARRIER POSTS

**SCOPE.** This specification covers galvanized steel posts used as guiderail and median barrier posts, I-beam posts for existing guide railing and median barrier, and required soil plates, Anchor Post Base, and slip impact bases.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Galvanized steel barrier post shall conform to the following:

- Galvanizing: 719-01 Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type I
- Steel: ASTM A36

**Posts.** Steel posts used as guiderail and median barrier posts or I-beam posts for existing guide railing and median barrier, shall be fabricated from steel conforming to the ASTM A36 shape specified on the standard sheet for the guide railing or median barrier being utilized.

**Soil Plates, Slip Impact Bases, and Other Post Components.** Soil plates, slip impact bases, and other post components shall be fabricated from steel conforming to the dimensions shown on the standard sheet for the guide railing or median barrier being utilized.

**FABRICATION.** Guiderail and median barrier posts or I-beam posts for existing guide railing and median barrier shall be fabricated with all required welding, punching, drilling, or cutting of the post or any component of the post completed prior to galvanizing. Welding shall be done in accordance with the requirements of the *New York State Steel Construction Manual*, except that radiographic inspection of shop welds will not be required.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Galvanized steel barrier posts will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification. *Buy America requirements apply.*

### 710-15 AND 710-16 (VACANT)

### 710-17 CORRUGATED BEAM GUIDE RAILING END TERMINAL (ENERGY-ABSORBING)

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and performance requirements for energy-absorbing corrugated beam end terminals.

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS.** All metal components and hardware shall be new and galvanized to meet or exceed the requirements of §719-01 *Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type I*.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** End Terminal systems tested before December 31, 2010 shall be either NCHRP 350 approved or MASH approved. Systems tested after December 31, 2010 shall be MASH approved. End terminals acceptable at TL-3 will also be acceptable at TL-2.

Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have products considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall prepare and submit copies of drawings, specifications, test reports, and Federal
Acceptance Letters to the Director of the Materials Bureau. Upon approval, the name of the manufacturer and the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Corrugated Beam End Terminals (Energy-Absorbing) will be accepted at the contract site on the basis of the manufacturer’s name and product brand name appearing on the Approved List, conformance to the appropriate Materials Details Sheets, and the manufacturer’s certification that the product delivered is in conformance with these specifications.

**710-18 HPBO (Mod.) CORRUGATED BEAM GUIDE RAILING END TERMINAL (ENERGY ABSORBING)**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and performance requirements for HPBO (Mod.) Corrugated Beam Guide Railing End Terminal (Energy-Absorbing).

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS.** All metal components and hardware shall be new and galvanized to meet or exceed the requirements of §719-01 *Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type I.*

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** End Terminal systems tested before December 31, 2010 shall be either NCHRP 350 approved or MASH approved. Systems tested after December 31, 2010 shall be MASH approved. End terminals acceptable at TL-3 will also be acceptable at TL-2.

Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have products considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall prepare and submit copies of drawings, specifications, test reports, and Federal Acceptance Letters to the Director of the Materials Bureau. Upon approval, the name of the manufacturer and the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Corrugated Beam End Terminals (Energy-Absorbing) will be accepted at the contract site on the basis of the manufacturer’s name and product brand name appearing on the Approved List, conformance to the appropriate Materials Details Sheets, and the manufacturer’s certification that the product delivered is in conformance with these specifications.

**710-19 HPBO (Mod.) CORRUGATED BEAM MEDIAN BARRIER END TERMINAL (ENERGY ABSORBING)**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and performance requirements for HPBO (Mod.) Corrugated Beam Median Barrier End Terminal (Energy-Absorbing).

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS.** All metal components and hardware shall be new and be galvanized to meet or exceed the requirements of §719-01 *Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type I.*

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** End Terminal systems tested before December 31, 2010 shall be either NCHRP 350 approved or MASH approved. Systems tested after December 31, 2010 shall be MASH approved. End terminals acceptable at TL-3 will also be acceptable at TL-2.

Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have products considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall prepare and submit copies of drawings, specifications, test reports, and Federal Acceptance Letters to the Director of the Materials Bureau. Upon approval, the name of the manufacturer and the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** HPBO (Mod.) Corrugated Beam Median Barrier End Terminal (Energy-Absorbing) will be accepted at the contract site on the basis of the manufacturer’s name and product brand name appearing on the Approved List, conformance to the appropriate Materials Details Sheets, and the manufacturer’s certification that the product delivered is in conformance with these specifications.
710-20 CORRUGATED BEAM GUIDE RAILING AND MEDIAN BARRIER

SCOPE. This specification covers corrugated beam guide railing and median barrier including corrugated beams, posts, anchorage units and accessory hardware.

MATERIAL AND FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS

General: For new installations all components shall be new.

Posts. Posts shall meet the requirements of 710-14 Galvanized Steel Barrier Posts

Beams, Terminal Sections and Hardware. Corrugated beams, terminal sections and all hardware shall be fabricated in accordance with the details shown on the standard sheets. Bolt holes in the beam at the post hole and elsewhere, as necessary, shall be enlarged or slotted to permit expansion and contraction, and to facilitate erection. The beams shall be of uniform section and straight, unless shop curved beams are required by the plans or specifications. The edges shall be rolled to eliminate sharp edges. When shop curving of corrugated beams is required the radius of curvature shall be stamped into the base metal of the beam. The stamping shall be on the back, at or near both ends of the beam, and in a location where it will be visible to a worker after erection.

Beams and terminal sections shall be rolled from 12 gage (nominal thickness 0.105 inches -0.009 inch tolerance) or heavier sheet or coil stock. The sheet or coil stock shall be new billet open hearth, electric furnace, or basic oxygen steel sheet. The minimum yield point and elongation of the steel used in the beam sections shall be 50,000 psi and 12% in 2 inch gage length respectively. Terminal sections, used for finishing-off or ornamental purposes, may be of mild steel, 33,000 psi yield point.

Plates and Anchorage Units. Plates and Anchorage Units shall be as detailed on the standard sheet for corrugated beam type guide railing and median barrier. They shall conform to ASTM A36.

Splices and Post Bolts. Splices and post bolts shall be made with flat, roundheaded, grippable, galvanized bolts, nuts, and washers conforming to the following, unless specified otherwise in the contract documents: Bolts ASTM A307 Grade A, Nuts ASTM A563 Grade A or better, and Washers ASTM F844. They shall be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of §719-01 Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type II (ASTM A153) unless another coating is specified.

Post bolts and the splice bolts shall be as detailed on the Standard Sheets.

Fabrication Welding. Fabrication welding shall be done in accordance with the New York State Steel Construction Manual, except radiographic inspection of shop welds will not be required.

Galvanizing. The rail element shall be galvanized in accordance with 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type I (ASTM A123) or Type IV (ASTM A653/653M) of the standard specifications, except that the minimum check limits for the weight of coating as determined by the triple spot and single spot tests for 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type IV (ASTM A653/653M), shall be 4 oz/ft² and 3 oz/ft² respectively, (total amount both sides of sheet). Posts, plates, and anchorage units shall be galvanized in accordance with 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type I (ASTM A123). Hardware shall be galvanized in accordance with 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type II (ASTM A153).

When beams are to be galvanized in accordance with 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type I (ASTM A123), they shall be blanked to the proper shape, fabricated and ready for assembly before galvanizing. No punching, drilling, cutting or welding will be permitted after galvanizing. When galvanizing in accordance with 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods,
Type IV (ASTM A653/653M), the beam may be fabricated, cut, punched or drilled from galvanized sheet or coil stock. The exposed edges resulting from this process do not have to be repaired or touched up in any way.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** All components of the corrugated beam type guide railing and median barrier shall be accepted in accordance with directives issued by the Department.

**710-21 BOX BEAM GUIDE RAILING AND MEDIAN BARRIER**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers box beam guide railing and median barrier including the guide rail, posts, end assembly units and accessory hardware.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

**General:** For new installations all components shall be new.

**Posts.** Posts shall meet the requirements of 710-14 Galvanized Steel Barrier Posts.

**Rails.** Rails shall be cold-formed welded and seamless structural tubing. The rails shall conform to ASTM A500, Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes, Grade B, except as modified below. Splice plates and plates welded to tubes for splice assemblies shall be Charpy V-Notch tested. Splice tubes need not be tested.

All rail shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E436 “Drop-Weight Tear Tests of Ferritic Steels” except as modified below.

The percent shear area will be determined by testing nine (9) specimens, three (3) from each of three (3) sides not containing a weld. The shear areas of the three specimens from the side with the lowest average shear area shall be disregarded and the final average based on the remaining six specimens. If the average percent shear area falls below 50, the material represented by these tests shall be rejected.

To facilitate acceptance and rejection of material the manufacturer of the structural shape shall, before galvanizing, identify the product with the steel heat number, or some number which is traceable to the heat number, and its own unique identification code. The identification method shall be such that it can be read after the structural shape is galvanized. The identification information shall be placed on the structural shape at intervals not to exceed 4 feet.

When shop curving of box beams is required, the radius of curvature shall be stamped into the base metal of the beam. The stamping shall be the vertical faces, at or near both ends of the beam, and in a location where it will be visible to a worker after erection.

No mill transverse welds will be permitted on the rail sections. Longitudinal welds shall be made by the resistance, gas shielded arc, submerged arc or plasma arc welded process; shall be sound, free from defects, and shall not be repaired. The welded joint, in cold-formed welded rail, shall have a minimum tensile strength specified for the railing when tested according to the tensile strap test of ASTM Method E8. All fabrication shall be done in accordance with the requirements of the Steel Construction Manual.

Rails shall be galvanized in accordance with 719-01, Type I, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods. Slots and round holes may be subsequently drilled, punched, burned, or cut and regalvanized according to the paragraph below on “Regalvanizing Iron and Steel Using a Flame Sprayed Coating System.” This repair procedure shall also apply to curved rail sections and splice plates as required.

**Regalvanizing Iron and Steel Using a Flame Sprayed Coating System.** Those areas to be regalvanizing shall be blasted with silica sand or crushed garnet of such gradation that sand shall be mesh...
size # 20 to # 40 U.S. Standard Sieve with a minimum of 40% retained on a # 30 U.S. Standard Sieve. Pressure of not less than 75 psi shall be maintained at the blast generator. A sample steel plate shall be blasted until the surface cannot be further cleaned or roughened. This plate shall be used for visual comparison and any areas that do not meet this standard as to roughness or cleanliness shall be reblasted. The wire used in spraying shall be 1/8 or 3/16 inch diameter, zinc 99.0% purity. Air pressure at the Air Control Unit shall be 60 psi and there shall be no more than 35 feet of 3/8 inch I.D. hose between the Air Control Unit and the gun. The metal coating shall be applied at a minimum thickness of 0.0045 inches. At least one coating shall be applied within 4 hours of blasting and the surface shall be completely coated within 8 hours of blasting. The specified thickness of coating shall be applied in multiple layers and in no case shall less than two passes be made over every part of the surface.

**Fasteners.** Fasteners shall be galvanized and conform to the following unless specified otherwise in the contract documents. Bolts ASTM A307 Grade A, nuts ASTM A563 Grade A or better, and washers ASTM F844.

**FABRICATION.** Curved box beam guide rail or median barrier shall be shop bent or shop mitered in accordance with the following. At the fabricator’s option, the shop mitering process may be used instead of a shop bending process. However, shop bending may not be used in place of shop mitering.

1. **Shop Bent Box Beam Guide Railing.** Box beam guide rail installed on a curved alignment with a radius above 20 and up to 720 feet shall be shop bent prior to galvanizing. In order to achieve a smooth arc, the bend points shall be placed no farther apart than two feet when the radius is from 20 to 50 feet, no farther apart than three feet when the radius is between 50 and 150 feet, and no farther apart than four feet when the radius is 150 feet or greater.

2. **Shop Mitered Box Beam Guide Railing.** Box beam guide railing installed on a curved alignment with a radius of 20 feet or less shall be miter cut and welded in the shop prior to galvanizing. For radii less than 12 feet, the average spacing of the cuts shall be approximately 18 inches. For radii from 12 feet to 20 feet, the average spacing of the cuts shall not exceed 24 inches. Cut locations shall be adjusted as needed to avoid bolt holes and post brackets. After the miter cuts are completed, backer bars shall be tack welded to one side of the cut and the miter shall be closed to within a quarter of an inch (+ 0", -1/8") and butt welding performed in accordance with AWS D1.1. Section 3.

3. **Shop Bent Median Box Beam Barrier.** Box beam median barrier installed on a curved alignment with a radius above 30 and up to 1525 feet shall be shop bent prior to galvanizing. For radii between 30 and 60 feet, the bending shall be performed prior to cutting the slots for the post support paddles. In order to achieve a smooth arc, the bend points shall be placed no farther apart than 18 inches.

4. **Shop Mitered Box Beam Median Barrier.** Box beam median barrier installed on a curved alignment with a radius of 30 feet or less shall be miter cut and welded in the shop prior to galvanizing. For radii less than 12 feet, the average spacing of the cuts shall be approximately 18 inches. For radii of 12 feet or greater, the average spacing of the cuts shall not exceed 24 inches. Cut locations shall be adjusted as needed to avoid post support slots. After the miter cuts are completed, backer bars shall be tack welded to one side of the cut and the miter shall be closed to within a quarter of an inch (+ 0", -1/8") and butt welding performed in accordance with AWS D1.1. Section 3.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** All components of the box beam guide railing and median barrier shall be accepted in accordance with directives issued by the Department.
710-22 CABLE GUIDE RAILING

SCOPE. This specification covers cable guide railing including cable, posts, anchorage units, and accessory hardware.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Cable Guide Railing shall conform to the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Posts, Soil Plates</th>
<th>710-14 Galvanized Steel Barrier Posts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reflectors</td>
<td>730-01 Aluminum Sign Panels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflective Sheeting</td>
<td>730-05 Reflective Sheeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cable</td>
<td>AASHTO M30 or ASTM A741 Type I Construction, Class A Coating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anchor Angle, Anchor Post Base</td>
<td>ASTM A36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolts</td>
<td>ASTM A307 Grade A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuts</td>
<td>ASTM A563 Grade A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washers</td>
<td>ASTM F844</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

General: For new installations all components shall be new.

Cable End Assemblies. Designs for a steel turnbuckle cable-end assembly or spring cable-end assembly not shown on the standard sheet or detailed in the plans shall be submitted for approval. Compensating devices must have a spring rate of $450 \pm 45$ lb/in and a total available “throw” of 6 inches minimum.

Hook Bolts. Hook bolts shall develop an ultimate pull open strength of from 450 lbs to 1000 lbs applied in a direction normal to the longitudinal axis of the post.

Galvanizing. The bolts, including the “J” bolt used to mount the cable, nuts, washers, anchor rods, spring compensator components, steel turnbuckle cable end assembly, and all cast steel or malleable iron hardware, except the wedge shown in “Detail X” on the standard sheet, shall be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of 719-01 Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type II, unless another coating is specified. The wedge shown in “Detail X” shall be ungalvanized (black).

The anchor angles, and Anchor Post Base shall be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of 719-01 Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type I.

Welding. Welding shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the New York State Steel Construction Manual, except radiographic inspection of shop welds will not be required.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance shall be based on the manufacturer's certification and in accordance with directives issued by the Department.

710-23 STEEL BRIDGE RAILING

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for Steel Bridge Railing and its component parts.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Steel Bridge Railing materials shall conform to the following requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Piece</th>
<th>ASTM Designation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rail Tubes</td>
<td>A500 Grade B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rail End Caps: A36 (A709 Grade 36)
Base Plates: A572 Grade 50 (A709 grade 50)
Anchor Studs: A325 or A449 Grade 1
Splice Bolts: A325 or A449 Grade 1
Round Head Bolts: A325 or A449 Grade 1
Nuts: A563
Washers: F436
Lock Washers: High Carbon Heat Treated Spring Steel: ASME B18.2
Anchor Plates: A36 (A709 Grade 36)
Plate Shims: A36 (A709 Grade 36)
Tube Rail Splices: A500 Grade B
Solid Rail Splices: A572 Grade 50 (A709 grade 50)
Angle: A572 Grade 50 (A709 grade 50)
Splice Plates: A572 Grade 50 (A709 grade 50)
Railing Post: A572 Grade 50 (A709 grade 50)
Tubular Posts: A500 Grade B

1 All post material, including base plates, shall be furnished to minimum Charpy V-notch toughness requirements as required by §715-01, under Charpy V-Notch Impact test.
2 Use the following nut and washers for the given bolt class:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bolt or Stud</th>
<th>NUT A563 (class &amp; Dimension style of nut)</th>
<th>Washer A563 Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>5 H1</td>
<td>1or 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.8</td>
<td>10S HH</td>
<td>1or 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Beveled shims may be machined from the same type of metal as in the post base plates or may be cast from material conforming to the requirements of 715-02, Steel Castings, or 715-09, Malleable Iron Castings.

All rail, except bicycle and pedestrian rail, shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E436 - "Drop-Weight Tear Tests of Ferritic Steels", except as modified below.

The tests shall be done after all galvanizing and associated operations have been performed on the rail. The testing shall be conducted at a temperature of 0°F, without removing the galvanizing, on 2 x 9 inch specimens supported to achieve a 7 inch span.

The percent shear will be determined by testing nine (9) specimens, three (3) from each of three (3) sides not containing a weld. The shear areas of the three specimens from the side with the lowest average shear area shall be disregarded and the final average based on the remaining six specimens. If the average percent shear area falls below 50 the material represented by these tests shall be rejected.

Splice plates and plates welded to tubes for splice assemblies shall be Charpy V-notch tested. Splice tubes need not be Charpy V-notch tested.

To facilitate acceptance and rejection of material, the manufacturer of the structural shape shall, before galvanizing, identify the product with the steel heat number, or some number which is traceable to the heat number, and its own unique identification code. The identification method shall be such that it can be read after the structural shape is galvanized. The identification information shall be placed on the structural shape at intervals not to exceed 4 feet.

**FABRICATION.** Bridge Railing shall be fabricated to the dimensions shown in the contract plans and in compliance with the specifications.
A. Shop Drawings. Shop drawings, when required by the contract documents, shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of the S.C.M., except that: 1) the drawings shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval and 2) the computed weights need not be shown.

B. Welding. Shop welding shall be performed only where specifically noted on the contract documents. Transverse welds shall not be permitted unless directly called for on the contract plans. All welding shall be done in accordance with the requirements of the SCM.

C. Cutting. All exposed flame cut surfaces shall have a surface roughness not to exceed 250, as defined by the ANSI standard specification B46.1. Grind all edges of Posts and Post Base Plates so that all sharp edges are removed.

D. Bending. Rails for curved structures shall be curved in the shop prior to galvanizing. To facilitate bending, rails may be heated to a temperature not exceeding 1200°F.

E. Galvanizing. Galvanizing shall conform to the requirements of 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type I. All components of the railing, including anchor studs, nuts and washers, shall be galvanized. The rails, post assemblies, splices and all hardware shall be fabricated and ready or assembly prior to galvanizing.

   All galvanized bolts and galvanized anchor studs shall have a Class 2A Thread. All galvanized nuts shall have a standard oversized tap to allow for the galvanizing on the bolts and nuts. Shop galvanizing repair of uncoated areas will be permitted on localized areas. Repair of localized areas is limited to a total of 2 square inches on any post or rail. A post or rail which contains galvanizing defects totaling more than 2 square inches shall be stripped and regalvanized.

   Shop repair shall be made in accordance with the methods given in 719-01.

The following areas will not require galvanizing repair: One 1/8 inch maximum dimension spot of tight flux remaining in the fusion line of any 7 inch length of weld after blast cleaning picking and galvanizing.

F. Brown Rail. When brown rail is specified, all components of the railing system shall be galvanized and then the visible portions of the system shall be painted in accordance with §657 Painting Galvanized and Aluminum Surfaces. Paint color shall be ‘Weathered Brown’ as defined by 708-05 Standard Paint Colors.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The manufacturer shall furnish the Department with three (3) certified copies of physical test and chemical analysis of the materials used in the manufacture of the railing. Check analysis may be made by the Department from delivered material.

   Inspection will be performed in accordance with the provisions of the SCM, except that mill inspection will not be done.

   Materials that do not bear the Inspector’s mark of acceptance shall not be accepted at the project site.

710-24 BOX BEAM GUIDE RAIL END ASSEMBLY, TYPE III; AND BOX BEAM MEDIAN BARRIER END ASSEMBLY, TYPE C

SCOPE. These specifications cover the material and quality requirements for Box Beam Guide Rail End Assembly Type III and Box Beam Median Barrier End Assembly, Type C. These end assemblies are manufactured articles requiring federal approval as Test Level 3 end terminals for box beam guide rail and median barrier. They function by absorbing energy either through crushing of fiberglass elements or by splitting the beam element at the corners of the box beam. When specified, these end assemblies are used to terminate the ends of box beam guide rails and box beam median barriers. Box Beam Guide Rail End Assembly Type III and Box Beam Median Barrier End Assembly, Type C are fabricated in accordance with these specifications, the manufacturer=s instructions, and the manufacturer=s drawings.
They are available in two styles. These are Wyoming style and another style that uses a box beam splitting mandrel.

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS.**

**A. GENERAL.** Soil plates, struts, bearing plates shall meet the requirements of ASTM A36. All metal components shall be hot dip galvanized in accordance with 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods.

Reflective sheeting pre-mounted on a frangible material shall be provided by the manufacturer for the free end of the end assembly. If approaching traffic will be permitted on one side only, reflectorization shall consist of alternating reflectorized 4 inch yellow and non-reflectorized 4 1/2 inch black stripes oriented at a 45 degree angle, with the lower edge of the stripes near the traveled way to be used by the approaching traffic. The reflective material shall meet the requirements of 730-05, Reflective Sheeting, Class B. If approaching traffic will be permitted on both sides of the end assembly reflectorization shall be upward pointing chevrons of the same dimensions.

**B. END ASSEMBLIES USING CRUSHABLE FIBERGLASS ELEMENTS (WYOMING STYLE):** Materials used in the fabrication of the Box Beam Guide Rail End Assemblies Type III and Box Beam Median Barrier End Assembly, Type C (Wyoming style) shall conform with the following requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wood and Timber Post Posts and Timber Blockouts</td>
<td>710-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foundation Tubes, Nose Assembly, Outer Tube,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telescoping Section and Intermediate Spacer Block</td>
<td>710-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fasteners, except shear bolts on posts 6,7, &amp; 8</td>
<td>ASTM A307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shear bolts on posts 6, 7, &amp; 8</td>
<td>SAE Grade 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubber Pad</td>
<td>Hard Rubber Division II Sect 18.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel Posts, Shelf Angles, and other metal parts</td>
<td>ASTM A36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods</td>
<td>719-01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Cable Assembly shall consist of galvanized steel cable, 6 x 3/4 inch, with 3/4 inch threaded rod swaged to both ends.

The composite tube shall be MMFG Extren series 500 pulltruded fiberglass structural tubes and shall exhibit the following properties:

1. Composite tubing shall be manufactured using the pulltrusion process. Tubing shall be manufactured of glass fiber reinforced resin with a glass resin ratio of 50%. The resin shall be isophthalic polyester. Glass reinforcement shall include the following three varieties:

   A. Surface mat shall be used on all exterior surfaces.
   B. Continuous glass strand rovings shall be used internally.
   C. Continuous strand mats shall be used internally.

2. The composite material shall exhibit the following minimum mechanical properties:

   A. Ultimate Tensile Strength: Ultimate Tensile strength shall be longitudinally 30,000 psi and transversely 7000 psi measured from coupons. Bending strength of the full section shall be 20,000 psi.
   B. Ultimate Compressive Strength shall be as given above except Transversely shall be 15,000 psi.
   C. Ultimate Shear Strength shall be 4500 psi.
   D. Modulus of Elasticity shall be 250,000 psi.
E. Barcol Hardness shall be 50.

3. The energy dissipation properties of the alternate fiberglass epoxy composite tube shall be evaluated using static compressive testing. Each test specimen shall be 2.0 feet long with a 4 inch long tulip shape cut into one end of the test specimen. The test specimen shall be crushed statically at a rate of 4 inches per minute and the total crush length shall be not less than 1.0 foot. A minimum of three static compressive tests shall be conducted. The results of each test shall meet the following static energy dissipation properties:

First Stage Energy Absorber
Average Crush Force: 18,000 +/- 2000 lbs
Maximum Compressive Force: 26,000 lbs
Allowable Compressive Force Variation: +/- 2500 lbs

Second Stage Energy Absorber
Average Crush Force: 41,000 +/- 3000 lbs
Maximum Compressive Force: 55,000 lbs
Allowable Compressive Force Variation: +/- 5000 lbs

C. END ASSEMBLIES USING BOX BEAM BURSTING MANDREL:

Materials used in the fabrication of the Box Beam Guide Rail End Assemblies Type III (BEAT) shall conform with the following requirements:

Mandrel Tube, Box Beam rail: 710-21
Impact Head and components, including face plate, top and bottom plates, lower and upper support boxes, Gussets: 10 Ga. ASTM A36
Steel post, guide plates and mandrel support block, gusset plate, guide support, bent and front guide plates, and all metal parts: ASTM A36
Mandrel Plate shall be ASTM A514, with Brinell hardness number of 250, min.

Ordinary box beam guide rail and ordinary box beam median barrier included within the pay limits for the bursting style Type III End Assembly for guide rail and Type C End Assembly for median barrier shall conform to the same specifications as box beam guide rail to which the Type III or Type C bursting style end assembling is attached.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Box Beam Guide Rail End Assembly Type III and Box Beam Median Barrier End Assembly, Type C will be accepted at the site of the work by the Engineer on the basis of conformance of the delivered articles with the manufacturer’s drawings, and upon the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specifications.

710-25 (VACANT)

710-26 PLASTIC AND SYNTHETIC BLOCK-OUTS FOR HEAVY POST GUIDERAIL SYSTEMS

SCOPE. This specification describes plastic and synthetic material block-outs used to provide uniform offset distance from the corrugated beam rail to the heavy post.

GENERAL. The block-out shall have the same general dimensions as detailed in the Department Standard Sheets. The block-out shall not contain excessive voids that would compromise its physical strength. The material shall be designed for outdoor exposure and shall include chemical additives to resist UV degradation. If the product contains recycled materials, they shall be environmentally friendly.
and non-hazardous. Blocks shall contain no materials that will negatively affect their field performance, such as materials that absorb moisture.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Manufacturers or suppliers may submit their product for evaluation to the Director of the Materials Bureau. This submission shall include copies of drawings, specifications, test reports, the quality control procedure and Federal Acceptance Letters. At the Department=s discretion, the material will be evaluated for conformance to these specifications, and product samples will be tested in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

The product will be accepted at the job site based on its appearance on the Approved List. In addition, the contractor shall provide manufacturer certification that the supplied product has the same chemical composition, mechanical properties as the product used in the testing accepted for Federal Approval. Modifications to this product are acceptable, provided the resulting product is an equivalent or of higher level of quality, and supporting documentation is provided.

**710-27 ROCK SLOPE WIRE ROPES**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for the components for wire ropes generally used in a rock catchment system. The following materials are evaluated in this specification:

- 710.2702 – Rock Slope Wire Ropes, Seam Rope for Wire Rope Rock Catchment Fence.
- 710.2703 – Rock Slope Wire Ropes, Tieback Restraining Cable for Wire Rope Rock Catchment Fence.
- 710.2704 – Rock Slope Wire Ropes, Anchor Cable for Wire Rope Rock Catchment Fence.
- 710.2705 – Rock Slope Wire Ropes, Seam Rope for Wire Mesh Slope Protection

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Provide material in accordance with TABLE 710-27A Rock Slope Wire Ropes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rock Slope Wire Rope</th>
<th>Rope/Cable</th>
<th>Minimum Diameter</th>
<th>Minimum Breaking Strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wire Ropes for Wire Rope Rock Catchment Fence</td>
<td>Net Supporting Wire Rope</td>
<td>5/8 in. (6x19 construction)</td>
<td>37 kips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seam Rope</td>
<td>5/16 in. (7x7 construction)</td>
<td>9 kips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seam Wire for Wire Mesh Slope Protection</td>
<td>5/8 in. (6x19 construction)</td>
<td>37 kips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anchor Cables (10 ft. min. length, equipped with heavy duty type thimbles)</td>
<td>3/4 in.</td>
<td>53 kips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seam Rope</td>
<td>5/16 in. (7 x 19 Galvanized Aircraft Cable)</td>
<td>10 kips</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All wire ropes for the wire nets, supporting ropes, seam ropes and anchors shall be composed of steel wires individually galvanized before being woven into the ropes.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Wire Ropes for Wire Rope Rock Catchment Fence will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.
The Seam Wire Rope for Wire Mesh Slope Protection will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

**710-28 ANCHOR BOLTS FOR GUIDE RAILING AND MEDIAN BARRIER**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for anchor bolts.

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS.** Anchor bolts shall meet the requirements of ASTM A449. A hex nut and flat washer shall be supplied with each anchor bolt and their dimensions shall be as shown on the plans or Standard Sheets. The hex nut and flat washer shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM A325. The nuts, washers, and the top 12 inches of the anchor bolts shall be galvanized in accordance with the requirements for Type II or Type V galvanizing as stated in section §719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods. The anchor bolt, nut and washer dimensions shall be as shown on the plans or Standard Sheets.

**SHIPPING.** Anchor bolts, hex nuts, and washers shall be shipped to the construction site at a time convenient to the masonry construction.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Anchor bolts will be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification that they meet the requirements of this section.

**710-29 (VACANT)**

**710-30 RIGHT-OF-WAY FENCING**

**SCOPE.** These specifications cover the material requirements required for the construction of right-of-way fences comprised of (a) galvanized steel or aluminum coated steel fence fabric, and (b) posts, braces and hardware designed to support and retain the fencing.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

**Fence Fabric.** Right-of-way fencing fabric shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A116 “Zinc Coated (Galvanized) Steel Woven Wire Fence Fabric”. The fabric shall be woven in accordance with Design Number 1047-6-9 or 1047-6-11 as shown in Table 1 of both ASTM A116. The weight of the coating on the Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Fence Fabric shall conform to the coating weight requirements of Class 3 shown in Table 2 of ASTM A116.

**Fence Posts and Braces.** Posts and brace sizes shall be as indicated on the Standard Sheets. Steel line posts shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A702. Steel end, corner or intermediate post and braces shall conform to the requirements of Section 6.5 through Section 6.5.4 of ASTM A702; or the requirements for Class A, Schedule 40 Pipe or Class B, Steel Tubing of 710-10.03 of the Standard Specifications. Posts and braces conforming to the requirements of ASTM A702 shall be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of 719-01 Type I. Type A Schedule 40 Pipe and Type B Steel Tubing shall use one of the protective coating system specified in 7A of '710-10.03.

Wood posts and braces shall be seasoned southern yellow pine, red (Norway) pine, spruce, douglas fir, hemlock, larch, or redwood. All wood posts and braces shall be pressure treated with a water-borne wood preservative conforming to the requirements of '708-31. The wood posts shall be subject to inspection before and during treatment at the option of the Department. They shall be sound, free from loose knots or decay, and with no through checks on tops or butts. Posts shall be machine peeled to a smooth uniform appearance and free from all inner bark. The preservative pressure treatment shall be by the empty cell process in accordance with C5 of the American Wood-Preservers' Association Standards.
Fittings. Fittings shall be manufactured of weldable steel, malleable iron, cast steel, cast iron, or aluminum alloy. Fittings other than aluminum shall be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of 719-01 Type II.

Fasteners. Bolts, nuts, and washers shall conform to the following, unless specified otherwise in the contract documents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bolts</th>
<th>ASTM A307</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nuts</td>
<td>ASTM A563 Grade A or better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washers</td>
<td>ASTM F844</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The fasteners shall be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of 719-01 Type II.

Gates. Gates shall be constructed of Class A Schedule 40 Pipe conforming to 710-10 welded at all corners or assembled with corner fittings. The size of the pipe used to fabricate the gate shall be as shown on the Standard Sheets. When corner fittings are used the gates shall have truss rods of minimum 3/8 inch diameter to prevent sag or twist. Gate leaves shall have vertical intermediate bracing so that no vertical members are more than 8 feet apart. Gate leaves over 10 feet shall have a truss rod of 3/8 inch minimum diameter even if the corners are welded. The fence fabric used on the gate shall conform to the fence fabric in the remainder of the fence.

A. Hinges. Hinges shall be weldable steel, cast steel, or malleable iron 180° offset industrial type. The hinges shall not twist or turn under the action of the gate. The gate shall be able to be opened by one person. The hinges shall be galvanized in accordance with the requirements of 719-01 Type I.

B. Latches. Latches, stops, and keepers shall be provided for all gates.
   - Latches for single leaf gates may be a forked latch type. Double leaf gates shall have a plunger bar type latch arranged to engage a stop. Latches shall be capable of being locked and the Contractor shall provide a lock with triplicate keys for each gate. Keepers shall consist of a mechanical device for securing the free end of a gate when in the full open position.

C. Gate Posts. Gate posts shall conform to the dimensions shown on the Standard Sheets.
   - Steel gate posts shall be fabricated from either Class A Schedule 40 Pipe or Class B Steel Tubing conforming to the requirements of 710-10.
   - Wood gate posts shall be made from wood conforming to the requirements for wood posts and braces as specified in “Fence Posts and Braces”.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Right-of-way fencing will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification. Buy America requirements apply.

710-35 SECURITY BOLLARDS
(New Section September, 2019)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and testing methods for Security Bollards.

GENERAL. The security bollards are described as follows:
2. Bollard Array. A group of two or more bollards pre-assembled to a metal “sled”. The assembly may or may not include reinforcing bar. The components are welded together to form a unit.
3. **Retractable Bollard.** A bollard that may be briefly lowered to permit the passage of one or more vehicles.

4. **Removable Bollard.** A bollard that may be readily removed from its foundation, typically for seasonal maintenance needs. Such bollards are usually locked in place and may only be unlocked by authorized personnel.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Security bollards shall meet the following:

| Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods | 719-01 |
| Security Barrier |  |
| Test Method for Vehicle Crash Testing of Perimeter Barriers and Gates | SD-STD-02.01, Rev. A |

**Bollard System.** The bollard design (single bollard or array) shall be crash-test-certified to

- SD-STD-02.01, Rev. A K12, or

The bollards shall have the capability of stopping a 15,000 lb truck traveling at speeds up to 50mph.

All welded joints shall be performed by welders certified to AWS D1.1.

Any bollard covers or special finishes (e.g. powder coating, painting etc.) shall be as specified in the contract documents.

The manufacturer shall supply supporting documentation as noted in AWS D1.1., ASTM F2656 and SD-STD-02.01, Rev. A and §106-04 *Material Certification and Approved List*. The documentation shall certify that the units are fabricated in accordance with the required standards, test methods and specifications. Only those bollards (single unit) or bollard arrays (multiple units) that have been tested and found to meet the test condition designations listed above shall be eligible to be placed on the Department’s Approved List.

Security bollard manufacturer shall also certify that the bollard(s):

- conforms to §106-11 - Buy America,
- is installed with either a shallow foundation 24” or less below grade; or a deep foundation more than 24” below grade, and,
- exclusive of sleeve or cover, is stainless steel or metal that has been galvanized prior to final finishing (i.e. painting or powder coating).

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.

To be considered, bollards and bollard arrays will meet the following requirements:

- Security bollard manufacturers certification, as described under §106-04 *Material Certification and Approved List*, that units are fabricated in accordance with this specification.
- Certification that the bollard or bollard array has been tested for and passed either the:
  - US Department of State’s crash certification SD-STD-02.01, Rev. A, K12 Rating, or
  - ASTM F2656 certification for M50 P1 crash rating.
- Certification that all welds have been performed by welders certified to AWS D1.1.
• Manufacturer’s detail of the bollard/bollard array installation needed to achieve the crash certification rating.

The details shall be in conformance with those required in ASTM F2656:

§8.1.1.2 Each drawing shall identify the barrier in exact detail. Assembly drawings shall show the arrangement, locations and dimensions of all components.

§8.1.1.3 Specifications for materials used, location and type of all welds, and size and spacing of all rebar shall be included in the documents.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Materials will be accepted based on the manufacturer’s name and location appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that indicates that the product conforms to this specification.

**SECTION 711 - CONCRETE CURING MATERIALS AND ADMIXTURES**

**711-01 FIBERS FOR CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for fibers for concrete reinforcement.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Synthetic, fibrillated fibers, specifically engineered and manufactured for use as secondary concrete reinforcement meeting ASTM C1116 Type III.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance will be based on the product name and manufacturer appearing on the Department’s Approved List and material certification that states the product conforms to this specification.

**711-02 QUILTED COVERS (FOR CURING)**

**SCOPE.** These specifications cover cotton mats to be used for curing Portland Cement concrete pavements and bases, and concrete structures.

**GENERAL.** The mats shall consist of a filling material of cotton “bat” or “bats” covered with unsized cloth, and tufted or stitched to maintain the shape and stability of the unit under job conditions of handling.

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS**

**Cotton.** Cotton cloth covering shall weigh not less than 6.3 ounces per square yard and shall have an average of not less than 32 threads in warp and not less than 28 threads in filling, having a minimum average breaking strength (grab method) of 60 pounds in the warp and of 60 pounds in the filling.

The weight of the cotton cloth covering shall not fall below the specified weight by more than 5 percent. The raw materials used in the manufacture of the cotton cloth shall be raw cotton, cotton comber waste, cotton card strip waste, or combination thereof. The other physical characteristics of the cloth shall be equal to those in such material for industrial purposes.

**Burlap or Jute.** Burlap or jute covering for cotton mats shall weigh not less than 6.7 ounces per square yard and shall have not less than 8 threads per 1 inch of warp and not less than 8 threads per 1 inch of filling. It shall be the grade known commercially as “firsts” and shall be free from avoidable imperfections in manufacture and from defects or blemishes affecting the serviceability. A tolerance in weight of minus 5 percent will be permitted.
Filling Material. The filling material for the mats shall be cotton bat, or bats, made of raw cotton, cotton waste, cotton linters, or combinations thereof, and shall weigh not less than 12 ounces per square yard. The batting used shall not be lower in quality than a batting made of U. S. Standard Grade No. 3 Linters.

Thread

A. Tufting. The cotton thread for tufting shall be not less than 4-cord number 12’s.

B. Sewing or Stitching. The thread used for all sewing or stitching shall be at least equivalent in size and strength to standard 3-cord number 30 cotton thread.

DIMENSIONS

A. Mats. Mats shall have a filler of 5 feet 9 inches in width and shall have a flap 6 inches or more in width, consisting of an extension of two thicknesses of the covering material, extending along one longitudinal edge of the mat. The length of the mats shall be 2 feet 6 inches greater than the width of pavement slab to be cured.

B. Tolerance. The length or width of the mats shall not be less than that specified by more than 2 percent.

FABRICATION

A. Covering Material. The covering material for each surface of the mat shall consist of two widths of cloth joined by a lapped seam or by a seam formed by superimposing the two widths and uniting them by one row of stitches. If the seam of the latter type, the edges shall be on the inside of the finished mat.

B. Filling. The cotton filling materials in the form of a bat or bats shall be held in place between the coverings by sewing or tufting all around the periphery of the mat within 1 inch of each of the four edges of the filler, and by sewing or quilting longitudinally at intervals not greater than 4 inches, or by tufting at intervals both longitudinally and transversely, not greater than 3 inches. The sewing or tufting shall be sufficiently loose to permit substantially all of the surface of the mat to come in contact with a flat surface when in use, but not so loose as to permit the filling material to shift.

C. Flap and Ends. The flap shall be constructed by sewing the upper and lower covering together longitudinally within 1 inch of the outer edges of the flap. Along the edge of the mat opposite the flap, the filling materials shall be within 1 inch of the edges of the covering material, and the covering material shall be sewn together so as to enclose the filling material. The ends of the mats shall be finished by running an additional seam (i.e., a seam in addition to the seam holding the filling material in place) across the mats. This seam shall not be closer to the seam holding the filling material in place than 1/4 inch and not closer to the end of either covering than 1/2 inch, unless the ends of the mat are finished with an overlying or whip stitch, or in a manner which will not leave a raw edge.

D. Stitching. All longitudinal sewing or quilting shall average at least three stitches per 1 inch and shall have not less than five stitches in any 2 inches. All other sewing shall average six stitches per 1 inch and shall have not less than nine stitches in any 2 inches.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Quilted covers (for curing) will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

711-03 PLASTIC COATED FIBER BLANKETS (FOR CURING)

SCOPE. These specifications cover white plastic coated fiber blankets or white plastic coated absorbent synthetic fabric blankets.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The blankets shall conform to the test requirements of A.S.T.M. C171, for White burlap - polyethylene sheets, for Moisture Loss and Reflectance.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Application for approval of plastic fiber blankets shall be submitted to the Director, Materials Bureau. Upon approval, the name and manufacturer of the product will be placed on the Department's Approved List. Each roll of the blankets shall be marked with an indelible marking, every 10 feet, with the following.

- Manufacturer's name and/or logo
- Product name
- Meet ASTM C171, White Burlap - Polyethylene Sheets, for Moisture Loss and Reflectance

The product shall be accepted at the work site on the basis of the appearance of the name and manufacturer of the product on the Approved List and marking as required herein.

711-04 POLYETHYLENE CURING COVER (WHITE OPAQUE)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for polyethylene curing covers (white opaque) to be used for curing of Portland Cement concrete.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The blankets shall conform to the material requirements of AASHTO M171 (ASTM C171) for Polyethylene Film: White Opaque. Rolls shall be wound on serviceable handling members which extend beyond the edges of the roll, forming handles to facilitate applying the covers over concrete.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Each shipment shall be accompanied by the manufacturer's certificate attesting to the fact that the shipment meets the specified standards. Upon request, the manufacturer shall supply a record of the results of the prescribed tests as made on the samples.

711-05 MEMBRANE CURING COMPOUND

SCOPE. This specification covers white-pigmented and clear membrane curing compound material and quality requirements for spray application on surfaces of newly placed Portland Cement concrete.

GENERAL. Samples of membrane curing compound shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer upon application for approval. Approved material shall be delivered to the work site in clean containers. The curing compound shall be agitated mechanically to a uniform consistency throughout the container immediately before use.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

A. White Pigmented. The compound shall consist of finely ground white pigment and wax-free vehicle, ready mixed for immediate use without alteration. When applied to freshly placed damp
concrete at the rate of one gallon per 150 square feet, the compound shall adhere and present a uniform white appearance and effectively obscure the original color of the concrete. The compound applied at the specified rate shall provide a curing compound displaying the following properties:

1. **Drying.** The compound shall produce a uniform coating at a minimum temperature of 40°F and shall dry track-free within 4 hours.

2. **Permeability.** The moisture loss through the membrane shall be no more than 0.04 grams per square centimeter of surface area after three days.

3. **Reflectivity.** The membrane shall have a reflectance value of 60 percent, minimum based on Magnesium Oxide as a standard.

4. **Durability.** The membrane shall remain intact for at least seven days before becoming powdery and non-adherent due to weathering.

**B. Clear.** The compound shall consist of a wax-free vehicle, ready mixed for immediate use without alteration containing a fugitive dye that will fade uniformly. When applied to freshly placed, damp concrete, at the rate of 1 gallon per 150 square feet, it shall provide a curing membrane displaying the following properties:

1. **Drying.** The compound shall produce a uniform coating at a minimum temperature of 40°F and shall dry tack-free within 4 hours.

2. **Permeability.** The moisture loss through the membrane shall be no more than 0.04 grams per square centimeter of surface after three days.

3. **Durability.** The membrane shall remain intact for at least 7 days.

4. **Fugitive Dye.** The membrane-forming compounds with fugitive dye shall be readily distinguishable upon the concrete surface for at least 4 hours after application, but shall become inconspicuous within 7 days after application.

**TESTS.** The properties of a membrane curing compound shall be tested on laboratory specimens. Details of the tests may be obtained from the Materials Bureau.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The approval of the membrane curing compound shall be based upon tests performed by the Materials Bureau. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the name of the product will be placed on an Approved List. Such products shall then be accepted on the basis of the brand name labeled on the container.

**711-06 BURLAP**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers requirements for burlap for use in curing concrete.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Burlap shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M182. The burlap shall be made from jute or kenaf and shall weigh 10 to 12 ounces per linear yard on a 40 inch basis. Burlap shall be cleaned and free from cuts, tears, uneven weaving and contaminants.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The burlap will be accepted on the basis of a visual inspection by the Engineer and weighing of a sample at the point of use.
711-07 FORM INSULATING MATERIALS FOR COLD WEATHER CONCRETING

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for form insulating materials used for cold weather concreting operations.

GENERAL. Insulating materials shall be:

- Impervious to moisture penetration and absorption
- Uniform in thickness
- Durable
- Easy to apply
- Capable of maintaining consistent concrete temperature
- Be in good condition with no ragged or open edges, cracks or holes

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

Insulation Blankets: Shall be clearly labeled with the manufacturer’s name and the material’s thermal resistivity (R value).

Foam Boards: Boards must be made of Expanded Polystyrene and shall be clearly labeled with the manufacturer’s name and the material’s thermal resistivity (R value).

Sprayed Foam: This product must meet the requirements of ASTM C1029.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Contractor shall provide a material certification from the manufacturer that the insulating material meets the requirements of this specification and that the product R value is the same as labeled on the product.

711-08 ADMIXTURES

SCOPE. These specifications cover the material requirements for air-entraining, water-reducing and retarding, water-reducing (normal range and high range), and non-chloride accelerating admixtures used in the manufacture of Portland Cement concrete.

GENERAL. All admixtures shall be in liquid form having a consistency that flows readily. The admixtures shall not contain chemicals which, when mixed with concrete, produce a condition that is injurious to the quality and durability of the concrete or reinforcing steel. This applies specifically to compounds which, when used in manufacturing process, produce a significant amount of chloride ions in the final product. (Total chloride ion content shall be less than 1000 ppm.) Admixtures manufactured from carbohydrates such as sucrose (table sugar), glucose, and maltose when used alone will not be permitted.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Air-Entraining. The air-entraining agent shall entrain air in the concrete and the concrete containing an air-entraining agent shall conform to the following requirements:

A. Bleeding. The bleeding of the concrete made with the admixture under test shall not exceed that of concrete made with the reference admixture by more than 2 percentage points, the bleeding being
computed as a percentage of the net amount of mixing water in each concrete. The net mixing water is the water in excess of that present as absorbed water in the aggregate.

**B. Time of Setting.** The initial time of setting of concrete containing the admixture under test shall not deviate from that of the concrete made with the reference admixture by more than ±1 hour and 15 minutes.

**C. Compressive Strength.** The compressive strength of concrete containing the admixture under test shall be not less than 90 percent of the control concrete, at the same air content, containing the reference admixture at 48 hours, 7 days and 28 days.

**D. Resistance to Freezing and Thawing.** The hardened concrete containing the admixture under test shall not exceed a weight loss of 4.0 percent in 25 cycles in a 10% NaCl solution.

**E. Length Change.** Length changes shall be based on initial measurements taken at the time of removal of the specimens from the molds and final measurements taken at the end of 14 days of air drying. The specimens shall be moist-cured for 14 days followed by 14 days of air drying. Length change shall not be greater than ± 20% of similar concrete containing the reference admixture.

**Non-Chloride Accelerating Admixtures.** Non-chloride accelerating admixtures shall conform to the requirements outlined in ASTM C494 for Type C or Type E admixtures.

**Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixtures (ASTM TYPE D).** The water-reducing and retarding admixtures shall reduce the quantity of mixing water required to produce concrete of a given consistency, and retard the setting of concrete. Concrete containing this admixture shall conform to the following requirements:

**A. Water Reduction.** The mixing water required for concrete containing the admixture under test shall be reduced at least 5.0 percent when compared to that of the reference concrete without the admixture under test.

**B. Time of Setting.** The initial set time of the concrete containing the admixture under test shall be increased by at least 50 percent when compared to that of the reference concrete without the admixture under test.

**C. Compressive Strength.** The compressive strength of the concrete containing the admixture under test, when compared to concrete without the admixture under test, shall be equal or greater at 48 hours, 7 days and 28 days.

**D. Resistance to Freezing and Thawing.** The hardened concrete containing the admixture under test shall not exceed a weight loss of 4.0 percent, in 25 cycles in a 10% NaCl solution.

**E. Length Change.** Length changes shall be based on initial measurements taken at the time of removal of the specimens from the molds and final measurements taken at the end of 14 days of air drying. The specimens shall be moist-cured for 14 days followed by 14 days of air drying. Length change shall not be greater than ± 35% of similar concrete containing the reference admixture.

**Water-Reducing Admixtures (ASTM TYPE A).** The water-reducing admixtures shall reduce the quantity of mixing water required to produce concrete of a given consistency. Concrete containing this admixture shall meet the requirements of the water reducing and retarding admixtures above except that the time of setting of the concrete containing the admixture under test shall not deviate from that of
similar concrete without the admixture under test used as a reference by more than ±1 hour and 15 minutes.

**Water-Reducing (High Range) Admixtures (ASTM TYPE F).** The water-reducing (High Range) admixture shall reduce the quantity of mixing water required to produce concrete of a given consistency. Concrete containing this admixture shall conform to the following requirements:

**A. Water Reduction.** The mixing water required for concrete containing the admixture under test shall be reduced at least 12.0 percent when compared to that of the reference concrete without the admixture under test.

**B. Time of Setting.** The initial set time of the concrete containing the admixture under test when compared to that of the reference concrete shall not be more than 1 hour earlier nor 1 hour, 30 minutes later.

**C. Compressive Strength.** The compressive strength of the concrete containing the admixture under test when compared to concrete without the admixture under test shall be as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compressive Strength, minimum percent of control:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The compressive strength of the concrete containing the admixture under test at any test age shall be not less than 100% of that attained at any previous age.

**D. Resistance to Freezing and Thawing.** The hardened concrete containing the admixture under test shall not exceed a weight loss of 4.0 percent in 25 cycles in a 10% NaCl solution.

**E. Length Change.** Length changes shall be based on initial measurements taken at the time of removal of the specimens from the molds and final measurements taken at the end of 14 days of air drying. The specimens shall be moist-cured for 14 days followed by 14 days of air drying. Length change shall not be greater than ± 35% of similar concrete containing the reference admixture.

**SAMPLING AND TESTING.** A one quart sample of admixture shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer applying for approval, except that for Water-reducing (High Range) admixtures, two quarts will be required. The manufacturer shall submit information on the formulation of the product including the raw materials from which it is compounded, data from tests performed in accordance with these specifications and a description of the manufacturing process. Data from tests performed in accordance with ASTM C260 for air-entraining agents and ASTM C494 for water-reducing and retarding, water-reducing (normal range and high range), and non-chloride accelerating admixtures may be substituted.

The Department will test the submitted admixture sample according to written Department instructions. The test procedures are available from the Materials Bureau upon request.

The Department reserves the right to monitor the performance of any previously approved admixture. Samples of admixture may be taken from actual concrete operations and retested by the Materials Bureau.
BASIS OF APPROVAL. The approval of the admixture shall be based upon the submitted information and tests performed by the Materials Bureau. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the name of the product will be placed on the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Admixtures will be accepted on the basis of the brand name appearing on the Approved List and the product containers plainly labeled with the brand name.

Any admixtures sampled from actual concrete operations and retested in the Materials Bureau shall give substantially the same results, at the same dosage rate, as the original tests. Any significant change will be cause for rejection of that material and may require a resubmission of the admixture by the manufacturer for a complete retest to determine specification compliance. The admixture may be withdrawn from the Approved List during the retest period.

711-09 EMULSIFIED CARBON BLACK

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for Emulsified Carbon Black, which is used as a coloring agent in mortar or concrete.

GENERAL. The method of test shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO T 106, the standard method of test for compressive strength of hydraulic cement mortars.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Emulsified Carbon Black shall be a uniform colloidal dispersion of standard carbon black in a liquid medium. The air content of the concrete shall not be changed by more than 10% by addition of 2%, by weight of cement, of the dispersed carbon black. The ash content shall not exceed 3% by weight of the finished product. At least 25% of the commercial product shall be carbon black.

The Emulsified Carbon Black shall be stable and shall have the same effect on the air entrainment, after standing for a period of 28 days, as specified above.

The color produced on the broken surface after the seven day test shall be equal to that produced by a previously established standard of color.

The Emulsified Carbon Black shall show uniform dispersion in mortars or concrete when used in concentrations necessary to produce the desired pigmentation.

TEST. Test specimens shall be prepared as follows: Portland Cement Type 2 containing 2% by weight of Emulsified Carbon Black shall be used with standard Ottawa Sand to prepare 1:2.75 compressive cubes. The compressive strength of these cubes at the age of seven days and thereafter shall be not less that 85% of the strength of similar cubes with no pigment added.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. This material will be considered for acceptance in stock lot quantities at manufacture of supply locations in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

711-10 FLY ASH

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for fly ash when used as a partial replacement for Portland Cement in Portland Cement concrete.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Fly ash shall conform to the chemical and physical requirements for Mineral Admixture, Class F listed in AASHTO M 295 including Table 2 (except for Footnote A). Loss of Ignition shall not exceed 4.0%.
A. Storage. The fly ash shall be stored at its source of supply in weather-tight silos approved by the Director, Materials Bureau. All silos shall be completely empty and clean before fly ash is deposited therein unless the silo contains fly ash of the same type.

Fly ash remaining in bulk storage at the source of distribution terminal for a period greater than one year after completion of tests will be resampled and retested by the Materials Bureau before shipment or use. However, fly ash which has been in bulk storage at sources or distribution terminals more than two years from the time of original manufacture shall not be used.

B. Shipment. All shipments of fly ash shall be made in accordance with procedural directives issued by the Materials Bureau. Conveyances for bulk fly ash shipment shall be of a type approved by the Director, Materials Bureau. The compartments of all such conveyances shall be completely empty and clean before any fly ash is deposited therein.

C. Inspection and Testing. Inspection and testing shall be in accordance with procedural directives by the Materials Bureau. Tests for chemical and physical properties shall be in accordance with test methods stipulated by AASHTO M 295 as modified in test methods prescribed by the Materials Bureau.

Special Note. The Department will consider requests to evaluate alternate classes of fly ash, such as Class C or N. The Department's evaluation may include laboratory testing, field trials and other related work required to determine equivalency with specified materials, mix designs, and performance. Use of alternates is subject to approval by the Director, Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Fly ash will be considered for acceptance at the source or terminal locations in accordance with procedural directives issued by the Materials Bureau.

711-11 MICRO SILICA

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for Microsilica (Silica Fume) for use in enhancing the performance properties of Portland Cement Concrete, shotcrete and other mixtures.

GENERAL. Supply Microsilica admixture in bulk form as a dry powder. When necessary for testing purposes, or in special placement situations, the admixture may be supplied in bags or barrels.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. For approved list consideration, submit supporting documentation showing conformance with the standard and optional physical and chemical requirements of AASHTO M 307 SILICA FUME, and the following:

Uniformity of Silicon Dioxide Content: Maximum +/- 7.0% variation between any two samples.

Chloride Content: 0.20% maximum (as determined by AASHTO T 260, Procedure B).

Finness: Undensified powder: 10% maximum percent retained on the No. 325 sieve (AASHTO T 192).

MONITOR SAMPLING. For monitor sampling of previously approved materials, follow the procedures directed in Materials Procedure 90-1 or Materials Method 10. The Department will monitor the product for conformity with the standard physical and chemical requirements of AASHTO M 307 at its discretion.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have products considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall submit one 5 gallon sample of the admixture for each manufacturing or supply location to the Materials Bureau.
Provide a Quality Control report for each manufacturing or supply location. The report will be required prior to Departments evaluation of the product, and annually thereafter. Details of the Quality Control report are available from the Materials Bureau. If the material will be manufactured or supplied from multiple locations, identify each location separately. Submit a separate sample and Quality Control Report for each manufacturing or supply location.

Submit laboratory test results from a testing laboratory that is accepted by the Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) indicating conformance to this specification. For each sample submitted for approved list evaluation, provide a certification declaring conformance to this, and the applicable AASHTO specification, the production lot number, the date of manufacture, and the date tested. Clearly state the chemical and physical properties as required by AASHTO M 307, and the pH of the material. Provide supporting data, relative to these specifications, detailing the performance of the product when used in concrete mixtures. Provide a manufacturer’s label clearly stating the product and manufacturer’s name and a Material Safety Data Sheet for each product submitted for approved list evaluation.

The Department will test the submitted sample in accordance with these specifications and Department instructions. The review process requires a minimum of 30 calendar days. Test procedures are available from the Materials Bureau upon request. Upon approval, the name of the manufacturer and the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Each shipment will be considered for acceptance where it will be incorporated into the concrete. Acceptance will be based on the product name appearing on the Approved List, and a material certification indicating conformance to this specification. The Department reserves the right to monitor the performance of any previously approved Microsilica from concrete production. If the monitor test results indicate that the sampled product does not meet this specification, the concrete incorporating the product represented by the sample may be rejected.

**711-12 GROUND GRANULATED BLAST- FURNACE SLAG**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for ground granulated blast-furnace slag when used as a partial replacement for portland cement in portland cement concrete.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag (GGBFS) shall conform to the chemical and physical requirements for Grade 100 or 120, as classified in AASHTO M 302.

**Storage.** The ground granulated blast-furnace slag shall be stored at its source of supply in approved weather-tight silos. Facilities shall be provided for maintaining such silos under Department seal control when and as directed by the Materials Bureau. All silos shall be completely empty and clean before GGBFS is deposited therein unless the silo contains Department specification GGBFS of the same type.

GGBFS remaining in bulk storage at the mill and/or distribution terminal for a period greater than one year after completion of tests shall be resampled and retested before shipment. However, GGBFS which has been in bulk storage at mills and/or distribution terminals more than two years from the time of original manufacture shall not be used. No GGBFS stored by the Contractor over the winter shall be used until retested by the Materials Bureau.

**SHIPPING.** All shipments of ground granulated blast-furnace slag shall be made in accordance with procedural directives issued by the Materials Bureau. Conveyances for bulk shipment shall be of a type approved by the Department. The compartments of all such conveyances shall be completely empty and clean before any GGBFS is loaded therein.
INSPECTION AND TESTING. All inspection and testing shall be in accordance with procedural directives issued by the Materials Bureau. When required by the Materials Bureau, GGBFS shall be sampled by means of an automatic sampling device constructed so as to obtain continuous samples across the full stream of GGBFS and deliver such samples into a sealed container approved by the Materials Bureau. Tests for chemical and physical properties shall be in accordance with test methods stipulated by AASHTO M 302.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Ground granulated blast-furnace slag will be considered for acceptance at mill or terminal locations in accordance with procedural directives issued by the Materials Bureau.

711-13 CALCIUM NITRITE BASED CORROSION INHIBITORS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for corrosion inhibitors used in the manufacture of Portland Cement Concrete.

GENERAL. The corrosion inhibitor shall consist of a calcium nitrite solution. The admixture shall not contain chemicals which, when mixed with concrete, produce a condition that is injurious to the quality and durability of the concrete or reinforcing steel.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS. The corrosion inhibitor shall consist of a calcium nitrite solution, containing 30 +/- 2% calcium nitrite solids by weight and having a specific gravity of 1.27 +/- 0.02. The corrosion inhibitor when used in the manufacturing process shall not produce a significant amount of chloride ions in the final product (Less than 1000 ppm, as determined by the Department). The pH shall be greater than 8.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. A two quart sample of admixture shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer applying for approval. Along with the sample, the Manufacturer shall provide information to include the manufacturer’s name and address, a copy of the product literature, material safety data sheets, and written certification stating that the material meets the physical and chemical requirements of this specification (711-13, Calcium Nitrite Based Corrosion Inhibitors).

The Department will test the sample for specific gravity and percent calcium nitrite in accordance with written Department instructions. The Sampling and testing procedure is available from the Materials Bureau upon request. Upon testing by the Materials Bureau, if the sample submitted is within tolerance, it will be placed on the Department’s Approved List of Materials for corrosion inhibitors. In order to ensure their quality, regular monitor sampling and testing will be performed at the point of use. The concrete batching facility is typically the point of use.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The initial approval of the admixture shall be based upon the submitted information and tests performed by the Materials Bureau. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the name of the product will be placed on the Approved List. Such products shall then be accepted on the basis of the brand name labeled plainly on the containers.

711-14 HIGH REACTIVITY POZZOLAN

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for High Reactivity Pozzolan for use in enhancing the performance properties of Portland Cement Concrete, shotcrete and other mixtures.

GENERAL. Supply the High Reactivity Pozzolan admixture in bulk form as a dry powder. When necessary for testing purposes, or in special placement situations, the admixture may be supplied in bags or barrels.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. For approved list consideration, submit supporting documentation showing conformance with the standard and optional physical and chemical requirements of AASHTO M 321 HIGH REACTIVITY POZZOLANS FOR USE IN HYDRAULIC CEMENT CONCRETE, MORTAR, AND GROUT, and the following:

Uniformity of Reactive Oxides: Maximum +/- 7.0% variation between any two samples.

Chloride Content: 0.20% maximum (as determined by AASHTO T 260, Procedure B).

Finessness: 10% maximum percent retained on the No. 325 sieve (AASHTO T 192).

MONITOR SAMPLING. For monitor sampling of previously approved materials, follow the procedures directed in Materials Procedure 90-1 or Materials Method 10. The Department will monitor the product for conformity with the physical and chemical requirements of AASHTO M 321 at its discretion.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have products considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall submit one 5 gallon sample of the admixture for each manufacturing or supply location to the Materials Bureau.

Provide a Quality Control report for each manufacturing or supply location. The report will be required prior to Department’s evaluation of the product, and annually thereafter. Details of the Quality Control plan are available by contacting the Materials Bureau. If the material will be manufactured or supplied from multiple locations, identify each location separately. Submit a separate sample and Quality Control Report for each location.

Submit laboratory test results from a testing laboratory that is accepted by the Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) indicating conformance to this specification. For each sample submitted for approved list evaluation, provide a certification declaring conformance to this and the applicable AASHTO specification, the production lot number, the date of manufacture, and the date tested. Clearly state the chemical and physical properties as required by AASHTO M 321, and the pH of the material. Provide supporting data, relative to these specifications, detailing the performance of the product when used in concrete mixtures. Provide a manufacturer’s label clearly stating the product and manufacturer’s name and a Material Safety Data Sheet for each product submitted for approved list evaluation.

The Department will test the submitted sample in accordance with these specifications and Department instructions. The review process requires a minimum of 30 calendar days. Test procedures are available from the Materials Bureau upon request. Upon approval, the name of the manufacturer and the product will be placed on the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Each shipment will be considered for acceptance where it will be incorporated into the concrete. Acceptance will be based on the product name appearing on the Approved List, and a material certification indicating conformance to this specification. The Department reserves the right to monitor the performance of any previously approved High Reactivity Pozzolan from actual concrete production. If the monitor test results indicate that the sampled product does not meet this specification, the concrete incorporating the product represented by the sample may be rejected.

711-15 MISCELLANEOUS SUPPLEMENTARY CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for Miscellaneous Supplementary Cementitious Materials for use as a partial replacement for ordinary Portland cement (OPC) in enhancing the performance properties of Portland Cement Concrete, shotcrete and other mixtures.
GENERAL. Supply the Miscellaneous Supplementary Cementitious Materials in bulk form as a dry powder. When necessary for testing purposes, or in special placement situations, the admixture may be supplied in bags or barrels.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. For approved list consideration, submit supporting documentation showing the beneficial use of the product relative to the enhancement of physical properties of concrete mixtures as per the requirements in Table 711-15-1:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROPERTY</th>
<th>REQUIREMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fineness (AASHTO T 192)</td>
<td>10% maximum percent retained on the 45-µm (#325) sieve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compressive Strength (AASHTO T 22)</td>
<td>Set of 2 cylinders tested at 3, 7, 14, 28, and 56 days. At least two concrete test batches must contain 10% and 20% replacement for OPC and compare to a reference mixture containing 100% OPC. Compressive strength of each test batch must equal or exceed 85% of the reference batch @ 28 days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permeability (AASHTO T 277)</td>
<td>Avg. of 3 specimens sampled from each test batch described above. Total average charge passed must be ≤ than the reference batch @ 56 days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strength Activity Index (ASTM C 311)</td>
<td>85% minimum @ 28 days using 30% replacement for OPC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkali Silica Reactivity (ASTM C 441)</td>
<td>35% minimum reduction of mortar expansion @14 days using 10 and 20% replacement for OPC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reactive Oxides (Al₂O₃ + SiO₂ + Fe₂O₃)</td>
<td>(AASHTO T105) 70% minimum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniformity of Reactive Oxides</td>
<td>±7.0% maximum variation between any two samples.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloride Content (AASHTO T 260 Proc. B)</td>
<td>0.20% maximum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOI (ASTM C 311)</td>
<td>6.0% maximum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SO₃ (ASTM C 311)</td>
<td>3.0% maximum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moisture Content (ASTM C 311)</td>
<td>3.0% maximum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MONITOR SAMPLING. For monitor sampling of previously approved materials, follow the same procedures as directed in Materials Method 10 for High Reactivity Pozzolans. The Department will monitor the product for conformity with the physical and chemical requirements at its discretion.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have products considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall submit a sample of the admixture for each manufacturing or supply location to the Materials Bureau in accordance with Materials Method 10 (for High Reactivity Pozzolans). Provide a Facility Report for each manufacturing or supply location. The report will be required prior to Departments evaluation of the product, and annually thereafter. Details of the Facility Report outline are available by contacting the Materials Bureau. If the material will be manufactured or supplied from multiple locations, submit a separate sample and Facility Report for each location. Submit laboratory test results from a testing laboratory that is accepted by the Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) indicating
conformance to this specification. For each sample submitted for approved list evaluation, provide a certification declaring conformance to this specification, the production lot number, the date of manufacture, and the date tested. Clearly state the chemical and physical properties as required by this specification, and the pH of the material. Provide supporting data, relative to these specifications, detailing the performance of the product when used in concrete mixtures. Provide a manufacturer’s label clearly stating the product and manufacturer’s name and a Material Safety Data Sheet for each product submitted for approved list evaluation. The Department will test the submitted sample in accordance with these specifications and Department instructions. Test procedures are available from the Materials Bureau upon request. Upon approval, the name of the manufacturer and the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Each shipment will be considered for acceptance where it will be incorporated into the concrete. Acceptance will be based on the product name appearing on the Approved List, and a material certification indicating conformance to this specification. The Department reserves the right to monitor the performance of any previously approved cementitious material from actual concrete production. If the monitor test results indicate that the sampled product does not meet this specification, the concrete incorporating the product represented by the sample may be rejected.

**711-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**SECTION 712 - MISCELLANEOUS**
(Last Revised January, 2020)

**712-01 WATER**

**SCOPE.** This specification contains the requirements for water used in Portland Cement concrete, mortar, concrete curing, treated subgrade, soil cement and for application to plants, seeded or sodded areas and planted areas.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Water used for mixing and curing Portland Cement concrete, mortar, treated subgrade and soil cement shall meet the requirements indicated in Table 712-1, Water. NYSDOT Test Method No. 712-01P shall apply to all Physical tests.

Water for curing concrete shall not contain any impurities in sufficient amount to cause discoloration or surface deterioration.

Water applied to seeded or sodded areas, plants or planted areas shall be free from oil, have a pH not less than 6.0 nor greater than 8.0 and shall be free from impurities injurious to vegetation.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Municipal water supplies are considered acceptable sources. Acceptance of questionable sources of water, as determined by the Regional Director or his/her representative, shall be determined by the Materials Bureau on samples taken by Department representatives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 712-1 WATER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air Content of Mortar, percent by volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soundness, Autoclave Expansion, percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compressive Strength, 7 day, 28 day (optional) percent of compressive strength of mortar cubes made with standard water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time of Setting, Vicat Test, Initial Set, minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Set, hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence of Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pH, AASHTO T26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
712-02 CALCIUM CHLORIDE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for calcium chloride for use in dust control, stabilization, ice control and for other highway construction related purposes.

Calcium chloride material shall be either Type A - Solid Flake Calcium Chloride or Type B - Liquid Calcium Chloride Solution.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Type A - Solid Flake Calcium Chloride. Solid Flake Calcium Chloride shall meet the requirements of ASTM D98 and upon analysis shall show not less than 77.0% CaCl$_2$. The calcium chloride shall be supplied in the form of dry, loose flakes, pellets or granules and shall be fine enough to feed through the common types of spreaders used in roadwork. The Engineer reserves the right to reject any material that has become caked or otherwise damaged.

Type B - Liquid Calcium Chloride Solution. Liquid Calcium Chloride shall be supplied as a mixed solution which upon analysis shall show not less than 30.0% of CaCl$_2$.

Equivalent Spreading Rates. For purposes of these specifications 1.0 lb/sy of Type A, Solid Flake CaCl$_2$ is equivalent to 0.2 gal/sy of Type B, Liquid CaCl$_2$ Solution. These factors shall be used as the basis for determining other rates of application.

PACKAGING, MARKING & SHIPPING

Type A - Solid Flake Calcium Chloride. Solid Calcium chloride shall be packaged in moistureproof bags containing not more than 100 lbs each, or in airtight drums weighing not more than 450 lbs each, or it may be delivered in bulk in tank cars, covered hopper cars, or covered trucks. All bulk shipments that are to be stored and stockpiled on the job site shall be protected with waterproof covers. The location and protection of stockpiled material shall be approved by the Engineer prior to shipment.

The name of the manufacturer, name of the product, net weight, and the percentage of calcium chloride (CaCl$_2$) guaranteed by the manufacturer shall be legibly marked on each container, except in the case of bulk shipments where the invoice shall be accepted as evidence of compliance with these requirements.

Type B - Liquid Calcium Chloride Solution. Liquid calcium chloride shall be delivered in bulk shipments on a supplied-and-applied basis. The delivery equipment shall be capable of applying the liquid solution at the specified rate(s). The delivery equipment shall be subject to approval by the Engineer and shall be equipped with suitable calibration devices to insure the correct rate of application. Each bulk shipment shall be accompanied with the manufacturer's invoice.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Calcium chloride will be accepted based on its use as follows:

A. For dust control, ice control and other highway construction related purposes. Type A and Type B calcium chloride will be accepted based on the Engineer=s approval.
B. For soil stabilization. Type A and Type B calcium chloride will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's certification that the product conforms to the above specifications. The certification shall reference the number of containers shipped, or in the case of bulk deliveries, the invoice numbers associated with each delivery.

712-03 SODIUM CHLORIDE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for sodium chloride to be used as a soil admixture or deicing agent for maintenance.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Sodium chloride shall meet the requirements of ASTM D632, Sodium Chloride - Type 1, Grade 1.

Sodium chloride shall be packaged in moistureproof bags containing not more than 100 lbs each, or in airtight drums weighing not more than 450 lbs each, or it may be delivered in bulk in tank cars, covered hopper cars, or covered trucks. All bulk shipments that are to be stored and stockpiled on the job site shall be protected with waterproof covers. The location and protection of stockpiled material shall be approved, by the Engineer, prior to shipment.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Sodium chloride will be accepted based upon the Engineer's approval. The Department reserves the right to sample and test this material subsequent to delivery at the project site.

712-04 HYDRATED LIME

SCOPE. This specification contains the material requirements pertaining to Hydrated Lime.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Hydrated Lime shall meet the requirements of ASTM C207, Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes - Type NA or SA.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The manufacturer's certification shall constitute sufficient documentation for acceptance of this material at the site of the work. The Department reserves the right to sample this material to test for conformance to these specifications.

712-05 PRECAST CONCRETE RIGHT-OF-WAY MARKERS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for precast concrete right-of-way markers.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The Material Requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

DRAWINGS. The Drawing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

FABRICATION. The Fabrication requirements contained in §704-03, along with the following shall apply.

Precast right-of-way markers shall be fabricated to conform to the size and shape shown on the standard sheet unless otherwise shown on the plans.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. The Sampling And Testing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

MARKING. The Marking requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply except as noted herein.
Markings shall be placed on the bottom end face of each unit such that they won’t be exposed to view after installation. Instead of marking the contract number on each unit they may be marked with “NYSDOT”.

FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION. The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

SHIPPING. The Shipping requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Basis of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

712-06 EXPENDABLE IMPACT ATTENUATOR

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for expendable impact attenuators.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS. Expendable Impact Attenuator components shall meet the following requirements:

- Impact attenuators that use liquid or other materials as a filler or to provide ballast will be evaluated for potential environmental impacts and/or seasonal limitations. Impact attenuators will be approved for use in shielding an object of a maximum width as specified in the Approved List, and specific configurations may be approved for maximum speeds.
- Covers shall be provided by the manufacturer for all units where ingress of debris from the top will result in deterioration of performance.
- Metal parts shall be fabricated from M1020 Merchant Quality or ASTM A36M steel.
- All galvanization shall be in accordance with §719-01 Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type I.
- Welding shall be in accordance with the Steel Construction Manual, except radiographic inspection shall not be required.
- The size and recommended attachment method for reflective marking shall be specified.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Impact attenuator systems shall be NCHRP 350 approved. Impact attenuators meeting the requirements of NCHRP 350 TL-2 are acceptable only as TL-2 devices. TL-3 devices are acceptable for TL-3 and TL-2.

Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have impact attenuators approved shall prepare and submit Materials Details Sheets consisting of copies of drawings, specifications, test reports, and Federal acceptance letters, to the Director of the Materials Bureau. The review process requires a minimum of 45 calendar days.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Expendable Impact Attenuators will be accepted at the contract site on the basis of the manufacturer=s name appearing on the Approved List, conformance to the appropriate Materials Details Sheets, and the manufacturer=s certification that the product delivered is in conformance with these specifications.

712-07 INERTIAL BARRIER MODULES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for sand-filled inertial barrier systems used for site hazard protection.

GENERAL. Modules composing the array shall be free-draining with respect to residual moisture in the fill sand. Their lids shall be such that they divert precipitation and stop moisture from seeping into the
shell. Lids shall be fastened with a minimum of six equally spaced pop rivets or secured by other approved fasteners so as to provide a reasonably vandal resistant, closed barrel.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The modules shall be federal yellow or as shown on the plans. They shall be durable, waterproof, resistant to deterioration from ultra-violet rays, deformation from dynamic loadings due to vibration in the placement area and long-term stresses induced by thermal expansion and contraction and fill settlement.

The fill sand shall conform to the requirements of either 703-06, Cushion Sand, or 703-07, Concrete Sand. Sodium chloride, as dry rock salt, equal to 3-5 percent by weight of the sand, shall be thoroughly mixed into the sand. Sodium chloride shall meet the requirements of 712-03, Sodium Chloride.

**TESTS.** To determine the crash worthiness of inertial barrier modules not on the NYSDOT’s Approved List, an array containing each size module shall be subjected to crash tests to verify that the barrier system can safely decelerate an impacting vehicle. These tests shall be done in accordance with the National Cooperative Highway Research Program Report 350, test numbers, 3-40, 3-41, 3-42, 3-43 and 3-44. Evaluation criteria shall conform to the safety evaluation guidelines found in Table 5.1, as specified in Table 3.2.

Crash cushion arrays shall be designed to conform to the occupant risk values found in NCHRP Report 350, Table 5.1, Criteria D, H and I.

Any values deviating from these shall be justified by site and/or shape limitations, or cost, and approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Department requires the submission of Materials Details. The manufacturer or supplier shall prepare and submit the appropriate material in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the name of the product and/or supplier, and the reference number assigned to the approved Materials Details will be placed on the Approved List. Such products shall then be accepted on the basis of their brand and conformance to the approved Materials Details.

---

**712-08 VACANT**
(Last Revised May, 2019)

**712-09 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**712-10 WARM MIX ASPHALT TECHNOLOGIES**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for warm mix asphalt (WMA) technologies for use in asphalt mixtures. Warm mix asphalt technologies can either be organic or chemical additives or a foaming system. The organic, chemical, and foaming system used as additives in the Performance-Graded (PG) Asphalt Binders give the PG binder unique functional properties in the production and placement of the asphalt mixtures.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Warm Mix Asphalt Technologies on the Department’s Approved List:


B. **Chemical Additives (712-1020):** Chemical used as an additive in Performance-Graded (PG) Asphalt Binders.

C. **Foaming Processes (712-1030):** A comprehensive foaming process of water mixed with Performance-Graded (PG) Asphalt binder in the production of the asphalt mixture.
Warm mix asphalt technologies shall be tested by the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP) in accordance with their procedures and must meet the material specification listed in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material Specification</th>
<th>Test Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PG Binder Properties, AASHTO M332</td>
<td>The resulting grade determination must not decrease more than 3 degrees from the true grade of the PG binder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Strength Ratio (TSR), AASHTO T283</td>
<td>≥ 80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rutting Test using the Hamburg Wheel Test, AASHTO T324</td>
<td>WMA cannot exceed ¼ inch (6 mm) difference from the control HMA.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** The approval of the warm mix asphalt technologies shall be based upon satisfactory completion of the following:

Acceptable test results from the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP).

Technology Details submitted to the Materials Bureau.

Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the name of the technology, the technology provider, a contact, and technology details will be placed on the Approved List. Resubmittal of organic and chemical warm mix technologies to NTPEP for product testing of a previously approved product is required every seven years.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The warm mix asphalt technology will be accepted based on the product appearing on the Approved List for the appropriate type of technology.

---

**712-11 ASPHALT RELEASE AGENTS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for asphalt release agents for use on hot mix asphalt (HMA) hauling equipment. Asphalt release agents are chemicals used for coating metal on truck beds, pavers, rollers, and hand tools to prevent the asphalt mixture from adhering to the metal.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Asphalt release agents must meet the following requirements:

1. The release agents shall be petroleum-free products and contain no solvents.

2. The material shall be tested by the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP) for asphalt release agents in accordance with their procedures and must meet the material specification listed in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material Specification</th>
<th>Test Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asphalt Stripping Test</td>
<td>No detrimental effects on HMA sample.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixture Slide Test</td>
<td>No adherence of HMA to metal plate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** The approval of asphalt release agents shall be based upon satisfactory test results from the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP). Upon approval by the
Materials Bureau, the asphalt release brand, supplier’s name and location will be placed on the Approved List. Resubmittal to NTPEP for product testing of a previously approved product is required every three years.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The asphalt release agent will be accepted based on the product appearing on the Approved List and the manufacturer’s certification.

**712-12 ASPHALT ROOFING FELT**

**SCOPE.** These specifications contain the material requirements pertaining to Asphalt Roofing Felt.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Roofing shall conform to the requirements of the standard specifications for Asphalt-Saturated Roofing Felt for use in Waterproofing and in Constructing Built-Up Roofs, ASTM D226.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

**712-13 TIMBER AND LUMBER**

**GENERAL.** Unless otherwise specified or noted upon the plans or in the itemized proposal, timber and lumber shall be of any kind acceptable to the Engineer. The material shall be sound, square-edged, free from shakes, loose knots or decay.

**712-14 STRESS GRADED TIMBER AND LUMBER**

**GENERAL.** Stress graded timber and lumber shall be graded for the stress grade selected, in accordance with grading rules for the indicated stress grade, developed from ASTM D245.

Commercial stress grades of timber and lumber, with grade descriptions providing material which will meet the indicated stress requirements under rules conforming to ASTM D245, will be acceptable.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The manufacturer shall inspect and grade the timber and lumber. Each piece shall be clearly branded with the stress grade mark of the manufacturer's inspector. Stress graded timber and lumber will be subject to inspection by representatives of the Department, to whom the manufacturer shall supply three copies of its certification of inspection and piece tally.

The Contractor shall furnish all facilities for the inspection of this material by the Department's representatives and shall allow them free access to all premises where inspections can be made.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** This material will be accepted on the basis of certification by the manufacturer that the timber and lumber has been inspected and stress graded under grading rules which conform to the requirements of ASTM D245. The certification shall show the identifying stress grade mark used by the manufacturer's inspector.

**712-15 GABIONS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for galvanized gabions and galvanized with polyvinyl chloride (PVC) gabions.

**GENERAL.** The materials used in fabricating and filling of gabions shall comply to specifications and tests set forth below.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

**Gabions.** Gabions produced from twisted wire shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A975. Gabions produced from welded wire shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A974. The physical properties of the PVC coating shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A975 or ASTM A974, as appropriate.

**Tiewire or Lacing Wire.** Tiewire or lacing wire shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A975 or ASTM A974, as appropriate.

**Stone Fill.** The baskets shall be filled with approved stone of the following sizes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basket Depth or Height</th>
<th>Minimum Stone Size</th>
<th>Maximum Stone Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12 inches</td>
<td>4 inches</td>
<td>8 inches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater than 12 inches</td>
<td>4 inches</td>
<td>12 inches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The soundness of all stone used for gabions shall be approved on the basis of a geologic evaluation in accordance with the control procedure in effect on the date of advertisement for bids. Prior to the evaluation, the Contractor shall stockpile the material. Where the State elects to conduct tests, a material will be rejected if it fails to meet the following criteria:

A. **Freeze-Thaw Test.** A maximum 10 percent loss, by weight, after 25 cycles of freezing and thawing.

B. **Magnesium Sulfate Soundness Test.** A maximum 10 percent loss, by weight, after 10 cycles of the magnesium sulfate soundness test.

**Fabrication.** Gabions shall be supplied, as specified, in various lengths and heights. The lengths shall be multiples (2, 3, or 4) of the horizontal width. The heights shall be fractions (1, 1/2, or 1/3) of the horizontal width. The horizontal width shall not be less than 3 feet. However, all gabions furnished by a manufacturer shall be uniform width. Dimensions for height, lengths and widths are subject to a tolerance limit of ± 5% of manufacturer's stated sizes.

Gabions shall be fabricated in such a manner that the front, back, sides, ends, lid and diaphragms can be assembled at the construction site into a rectangular basket of the specified sizes. Gabions shall be of single-unit construction. The base, lid, ends, front and back shall be either woven into a single unit or one edge of these members connected to the base section of the gabion in such a manner that strength and flexibility at the point of connection is at least equal to that of the mesh. Where the length of the gabion exceeds its horizontal width, the gabion shall be equally divided by diaphragms of the same mesh and gage as the body of the gabion, forming cells such that the length does not exceed the horizontal width.

The gabion shall be furnished with the necessary diaphragms secured in proper position on the base in such a manner that no additional tying at this juncture will be necessary. All perimeter edges of the mesh forming the gabion shall be securely selvedged so that the joints formed by tying the selvedges have at least the same strength as the body of the mesh.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Each shipment of gabions to a job site shall be accompanied by a certification which states that the material conforms to the requirements of this specification. A shipment shall consist of all material arriving at the job site at substantially the same time. The certification shall be on company letterhead and shall be signed by an officer of the company having legal authority to bind the company.

**712-16 PIGMENT FOR COLORED SYNTHETIC RESIN BINDER CONCRETE**
SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for pigment used in colored synthetic resin binder concrete.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The pigment shall be compatible with the synthetic resin binder material and shall provide the colored synthetic resin binder concrete with a non-fading, heat stable color. When the color specified is white, the pigment shall be Rutile Titanium Dioxide.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material shall be in accordance with procedural directives of the Department.

712-17 WOOD CROSS TIES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for wood cross ties for railroads.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Species. The following kinds of wood suitable for cross ties will be accepted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ash</th>
<th>Elm</th>
<th>Sassafras</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Beech</td>
<td>Hackberry</td>
<td>Sycamore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birch</td>
<td>Locust</td>
<td>Walnut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black Gum</td>
<td>Maple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalpa</td>
<td>Mulberry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cherry</td>
<td>Oak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. Manufacture. Cross ties shall be well sawed in top, bottom and sides. A cross tie shall be considered well sawed as long as score marks are not more than 1/4 inch deep and the surfaces are even.

Cross ties shall be straight, cut square at the ends, have bottom and top parallel, and have all bark entirely removed. A cross tie shall be considered straight only if it meets both of the following requirements:

1. A straight line drawn along the top of the tie from the middle of one end to the middle of the other end of the tie, falls entirely within the width of the tie.
2. A straight line drawn along a side of the tie from the middle of one end to the middle of the other end of the tie, is everywhere more than 2 inches from the top and 2 inches from the bottom of the tie.

The top and bottom of a tie will be considered parallel if any difference in the thickness at the sides or ends does not exceed 1/2 inch.

C. Dimensions. All thicknesses and widths apply to areas of the tie defined as the ‘rail bearing area(s)’. The rail bearing areas are those areas which lie between 20 and 40 inches on both sides of the mid-point of the tie length. The rail bearing area for switch ties is the area between 12 inches from each end of the switch tie.

All determinations of width shall be made on the top of the tie. The top is defined as the narrower of the horizontal surfaces, or the surface with the least or no heartwood if both surfaces are the same width.

Standard size thickness and width dimensions are shown in Table 712-17, and apply to the rail bearing areas. The dimensions of the tie shall not be averaged. All ties shall be 8 feet 6 inches long, or as required.
TABLE 712-17

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Dimensions in Rail Bearing Areas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>7 in. thick by 9 in. wide (top)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>7 in. thick by 8 in. wide (top)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3A</td>
<td>7 in. thick by 7 in. wide (top)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>minimum 8 in. wide through body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>6 in. thick by 8 in. wide (top)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>6 in. thick by 7 in. wide (top)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6 in. thick by 6 in. wide (top)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>minimum 7 in. wide through body</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. Tolerances. Individual untreated ties shall have the following tolerances applied to the thickness and width dimensions shown in Table 712-17.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Length:</th>
<th>Thickness:</th>
<th>Width:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plus 2 in.,</td>
<td>plus 2 in.,</td>
<td>minus 1 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>minus 1/4 in.</td>
<td>minus 1/4 in.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is not the intent of this specification that all ties shall be manufactured to the minimum allowable dimensions. A minimum of 75% of the ties presented for inspection shall conform to the dimensions shown in Table 712-17 without the application of the minus tolerances.

E. Defects. The occurrence of any of the following defects in an individual tie shall be the cause for rejection.

1. Shakes. A separation along the grain, occurring between the annual growth rings. A shake length more than one-third the nominal width of the tie shall not be allowed.

2. Slant or Slope of Grain. Except in the case of woods with interlocking grain, a slant or slope of grain in excess of 1 in 15 shall not be allowed.

3. Holes. Large holes shall not be allowed. A large hole is more than 1/2 inch in diameter and 3 inches deep within the rail bearing areas, or more than one-fourth the width of the surface on which it appears and 3 inches deep outside the rail bearing area. Numerous holes shall not be allowed. Numerous holes are any number equalling a large hole in size.

4. Knots. Large knots shall not be allowed. A large knot is one whose average diameter exceeds one-fourth the width of the face on which it appears. Numerous knots shall not be allowed. Numerous knots are any number equalling a large knot in size.

5. Checks. A separation along the grain of the wood occurring across the annual rings. Fully seasoned and treated ties with check depths greater than one-fourth the thickness and longer than one-half the length of the tie shall not be allowed.

6. Decay. Ties shall contain no decay. Although blue stain is not considered decay and is not a defect, ties shall be inspected with extra care for presence of decay in heavily stained areas.
7. **Wane.** The lack of wood on the edge or corner of the tie due to the natural curvature of the log from which the tie is cut. Wane which reduces the face dimension greater than 3 inches outside the rail bearing area shall not be allowed. In the rail bearing area, dimensions given in Table 712-17 apply.

8. **Splits.** A split is a separation of the wood extending from one surface to an opposite or adjacent surface. In unseasoned ties, a split more than 1/8 inch wide or longer than 5 inches shall not be allowed.

   After treatment, a split in either end of the tie greater than 1/8 inch wide or longer than 5 inches is not acceptable without an anti-splitting device. A split tie which has had an anti-splitting device applied but which re-opens after treatment to exceed 1/2 inch in width is not acceptable.

9. **Twist.** The deviation from a flat plane of all four faces by a spiraling or torsional action. A rotation of more than 3.5° from end face to end face shall not be allowed.

**F. Anti-Splitting Devices.** Anti-Splitting devices are to be installed prior to preservative treatment.

1. **Dowelling.** Dowels are anti-splitting devices driven or pushed into pre-bored holes. The length of dowel embedded shall not be less than half the width or thickness through which it is placed. Use of lubricants to facilitate driving of dowels is prohibited.

   a. **Equipment.** These specifications are based on dowelling by mechanical dowel machines. Alternate methods may be used if the results are equal to those obtained by mechanical devices that press the tie together, drill and dowel in one or two operation. Dowelling by mechanical means is considered satisfactory as long as sufficient pressure is applied to completely close the split. Substitution of hand drills and pneumatic hammers for drilling dowels in switch ties is satisfactory as long as splits are held closed during dowelling by the use of clamps or other devices.

   b. **Pre-Drilled Holes.** The maximum diameter of the pre-drilled holes is 1/8 inch less than the diameter of dowel. The minimum length of the hole shall be equal to the length of the dowel, except that holes drilled from the face opposite the face where the dowel enters shall be completely through the tie.

   c. **Location of Dowels.** Dowels shall be driven perpendicular to the face most parallel to the split. Two dowels shall be used to close each split. They shall be located a minimum of 4 inches and a maximum of 6 inches from the end of the tie. Where the tie is split parallel to the narrow faces, the 7 3/4 inches long dowels shall be located 1 1/2 inch plus or minus 1/4 inch from each wide face. Where the tie is split parallel to the wide faces, 5 3/4 inches long dowels are driven 2 inches plus or minus 1/4 inch from each narrow face.

   d. **Protruding Dowels.** Dowels not completely driven by dowelling machines shall be driven flush with the wood with a hammer. Dowels which protrude more than 1/4 inch after driving should be burned off with an oxyacetylene torch. However, dowels bent over flush with the surface of the wood will be accepted, provided this is done without splitting the wood.

2. **Irons.** Anti-splitting irons are driven into the ends of ties and shall be placed to cross at right angles and the greatest possible number of radial lines of the wood. Irons shall be placed far enough from the wide faces to prevent splitting of the tie.
a. Design. Anti-splitting irons shall be made from a strip of steel formed to an “S” iron or “C” iron design. They will be of adequate size to prevent splitting of the tie.

b. Material. Irons shall conform to specifications for anti-splitting irons given in the AREA Manual, Chapter 3, Section 1.9.2.1.

3. Nail Plates. Anti-splitting nail plates shall be applied to the ends of the ties.

a. Design. Anti-splitting nail plates shall be rectangular and perforated to form multiple nails.

b. Material. Nail plates shall be stamped from 18 gage galvanized sheet steel.

c. Size. The area of anti-splitting nail plates shall not be less than 60% of the nominal end area of the tie.

G. Conditioning. Ties shall be dried before preservative treatment until the amount of moisture in the wood will not prevent adequate penetration and retention of preservative. The producer may use any of the following methods as long as satisfactory results are obtained.

1. Air Seasoning. Ties shall be stacked for air seasoning in accordance with the American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA) Standard C6, Cross Ties and Switch Ties - Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process. Stacking dates during the period of stacking shall be painted on the front of the stack. A maximum of 60 days age spread shall be allowed between the dates of the first ties stacked and the last ties stacked.

Ties shall be stacked as grouped below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group Ta</th>
<th>Group Tc</th>
<th>Group Td</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Black Locust</td>
<td>Black Gum</td>
<td>Hackberry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black Walnut</td>
<td>Ash</td>
<td>Hard Maples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honey Locust</td>
<td>Beech</td>
<td>Mulberries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Oaks</td>
<td>Birches</td>
<td>Sassafras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Oaks</td>
<td>Catalpa</td>
<td>Sycamores</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cherries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Elms</td>
<td>White Walnut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Accelerated Seasoning. Ties may be conditioned by the Boulton drying process, kiln drying, vapor drying or controlled air seasoning in accordance with AWPA Standard C6, Cross ties and Switch Ties - Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process.

H. Preservative Treatment. Plants used for the treatment of wood shall conform to AWPA Standard 3, Standard Quality Control Procedures for Wood Preserving Plants.

All cross ties shall be treated with creosote-coal tar solution conforming to AWPA Standard P2, Standard for Creosote and Creosote Solutions, Grade C. Grades A or B may be substituted for Grade C.

Preservative treatment shall be carried out in accordance with AWPA Standard C1, All Timber Products - Preservative Treatment by Pressure Processing or C6, Cross Ties and Switch Ties - Preservative Treatment by Pressure Processes. The method used shall be the empty cell process by use of initial air to control retention.

Retention of preservative shall be 7 pounds of preservative per cubic foot of wood. Retention shall be determined by gauge in accordance with paragraph 3.1 of AWPA Standard C1.
When specified, pentachlorophenol in heavy AWPA Standard P9A solvent may be used as a preservative. Minimum retention shall be 0.4 pounds of preservative per cubic foot of wood.

**INSPECTION AND TESTING.** The Contractor shall give the Materials Bureau thirty days written notice prior to the start of preservative treatment. This notice shall include at the minimum, the name of the tie treater, the location of the treating plant and that date of the initial treatment.

The treating company is responsible for performing quality control in accordance with AWPA M3, Standard Quality Control Procedures for Wood Preserving Plants. All records required to be maintained in accordance with the quality control procedure shall be made available to the Department upon request. A Department representative may be assigned, at the option of the Materials Bureau, to perform sampling and inspection in accordance with Materials Bureau directives and AWPA M2, Standard For Inspection of Treated Timber Products. The producer shall furnish all facilities and equipment for the inspection and testing of the materials and workmanship.

In the event plant inspection is waived, written notice will be provided to the tie treater by the Materials Bureau. The tie treater shall then supply the Materials Bureau with all preservative charge reports, which describe the treatment process and preservative retention, and written certification that the treatment and ties conform to these specifications.

All treated ties shipped to the project site shall bear in legible form, the inspector's stamp of approval; however, in the event plant inspection has been waived, ties shall be shipped only if they are accompanied by a copy of the Materials Bureau notification waiving plant inspection.

Treated ties shall be subject to final inspection and approval by the Engineer after arrival at the project site.

**SHIPMENT AND STORAGE.** Ties delivered at the job site shall be stacked not less than 10 feet from the nearest rail of any track at suitable and convenient places. They shall not be stacked at public crossing or where they will interfere with the view of trainmen or of people approaching the railroad. Where room for spaced stacking is not available, ties may be piled together provided the lowest layer is at least 6 inches above the ground.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The wood cross ties will be considered for acceptance in stock lot quantities at the treatment facility in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

**712-18 THRU 712-23 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**712-24 PRECAST CONCRETE PERMANENT SURVEY MARKERS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for precast concrete permanent survey markers.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The Material Requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**DRAWINGS.** The Drawing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply. Precast permanent survey markers shall be fabricated to conform to the size and shape shown on the standard sheet unless otherwise shown on the plans.

**FABRICATION.** The Fabrication requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**SAMPLING AND TESTING.** The Sampling and Testing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.
MARKING. The Marking requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply, except as noted herein. Instead of marking the contract number on each unit they may be marked with “NYSDOT”.

FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION. The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

SHIPPING. The Shipping requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Basis of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

SECTION 713 - LANDSCAPE DEVELOPMENT MATERIALS

713-01 TOPSOIL

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for topsoil for use in turf establishment, wildflower seeding, sodding, and planting.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Topsoil may be naturally occurring or may be manufactured. If naturally occurring topsoil exists on the site it shall be the surface layer of soil at a depth specified in the contract documents or approved by the engineer.

Manufactured topsoil is a mixture of materials comprised of a mineral(soil) component that by itself does not exhibit the properties and characteristics of topsoil, an organic material component consisting of compost(s) meeting the requirements of §713-15 Compost, and amendment(s), such as limestone meeting the requirements of §713-02 Limestone that, when combined together, meet the requirements for topsoil. For manufactured topsoil the contractor shall thoroughly mix the organic portion with the granular portion under dry conditions.

Topsoil shall be free from refuse, material toxic or otherwise deleterious to plant growth, subsoil, sod clumps, seeds or other viable propagules of invasive plants, woody vegetation and stumps, roots, brush, refuse, stones, clay lumps, or similar objects. Construction and demolition debris as classified under 6 NYCRR Part 360, other than uncontaminated land clearing debris, shall not be used to manufacture or amend topsoil. Sod and herbaceous growth such as grass and non-invasive weeds need not be removed but shall be thoroughly broken up and mixed with the soil during handling or manufacturing operations.

A. Topsoil-Reuse of On-Site Materials. Existing topsoil stripped and reclaimed in accordance with Section 203 Excavation and Embankment taken from sites within the contract limits. The general limits and depth of the material to be utilized for topsoil will be indicated in the Contract documents. Where no depth is indicated it shall be 6 inches. Topsoil shall be stored on site. Based on visual inspection by the Engineer, topsoil may require screening to meet this requirement.

B. Manufactured or Offsite Materials.

1. Topsoil -Roadside

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gradation:</th>
<th>Percent Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sieve Size</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 inch</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 inch</td>
<td>85 to 100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- The pH of the material shall be between 5.5 and 7.6.
- The organic content shall be not less than 3% or more than 8%

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>Percent Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 inch</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 inch</td>
<td>85 to 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4 inch</td>
<td>65 to 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
<td>20 to 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Micron</td>
<td>0 to 20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Topsoil - Lawn
- The pH of the material shall be between 5.5 and 7.6.
- The organic content shall be not less than 6% or more than 12%

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>Percent Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 inch</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 10</td>
<td>90 to 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 40</td>
<td>45 to 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
<td>25 to 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Micron</td>
<td>5 to 35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Topsoil - Special Planting Mix
- The pH of the material shall be between 5.5 and 7.0.
- The organic content shall be not less than 10% or more than 15%

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>Percent Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 inch</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 inch</td>
<td>85 to 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4 inch</td>
<td>65 to 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
<td>20 to 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Micron</td>
<td>5 to 35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Topsoil - Acidic
- The pH of the material shall be between 4.8 and 6.0.
- The organic content shall be not less than 6% or more than 15%

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>Percent Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 inch</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 10</td>
<td>90 to 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 40</td>
<td>25 to 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
<td>5 to 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Micron</td>
<td>5 to 35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C. Topsoil- Wetland
1. Topsoil - On-Site Wetland Materials. Existing wetland soil stripped and reclaimed from existing impacted delineated wetlands sites in accordance Section 203 *Excavation and Embankment* taken from within the contract limits and to the depth specified in the contract documents. This wetland soil shall be exempt from the Sampling & Testing requirements.

2. Topsoil - Offsite or Manufactured Wetland Materials. These materials shall meet the following requirements:
   - The pH of the material shall be between 5.0 and 7.0.
   - The organic content shall be not less than 15% or more than 20% dry weight basis and be comprised of leaf or well rotted manure compost meeting the requirements of §713-15 *Compost*.
   - Granular material shall be naturally occurring mineral soil and the following gradation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>Percent Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. 16</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 40</td>
<td>85 to 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 60</td>
<td>40 to 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
<td>5 to 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   The Contractor may amend impacted upland area and manufactured wetland topsoil with approved materials and by approved methods to meet the material requirements.

**STOCKPILING, SAMPLING & TESTING.**

Topsoil-Reuse of On-Site Materials and Topsoil- On-Site Wetland Materials: Topsoil acquired from sites that are designated in the contract documents are not subject to requirements for stockpiling, sampling, and testing.

Topsoil Types Roadside, Lawns & Special Planting Mix, Acidic, and Topsoil - Manufactured or Offsite Wetland Materials are subject to the requirements for stockpiling, sampling and testing.

**Stockpiling.** The details for stockpiling methods and requirements may be obtained from the Landscape Architecture Bureau.

**Sampling.** The details for sampling methods and requirements may be obtained from the Landscape Architecture Bureau.

Samples taken for topsoil amended or manufactured with approved composted biosolids shall be identified as such.

Contractors who believe that an error was made in sampling the topsoil shall, within one work day, indicate the alleged error in writing to the Engineer. The Engineer will respond within 7 calendar days.

**TESTING.**

**Composted Biosolids.** Composted biosolids used to amend or manufacture topsoil shall conform to the applicable requirements of §713-15 *Compost*. Composted biosolids shall require a certificate, from a laboratory approved by the NYS Department of Health, verifying compliance with all applicable laws, rules, and regulations. The certification shall be provided to the Engineer by the Contractor prior to the delivery of any composted biosolids, topsoil containing composted biosolids, or other such regulated material to the contract site. The material shall be approved before it is used.

The Contractor shall have topsoil that has been amended with approved composted biosolids or other such regulated material tested to ensure compliance with the pH organic content, and gradation...
requirements certified by a nationally recognized entity which provides soils laboratory services and provide the laboratory results to the Engineer.

**Topsoil Testing.** All other material tests required by this section, will be performed by the Department or its designated representative, in conformance with the procedures contained in the appropriate Department publications or test methods. The details for testing methods and requirements may be obtained from the Materials Bureau.

Stockpiles meeting all requirements for pH, organic and gradation may be accepted and used.

Stockpiles that when tested fail to meet requirements for pH or organic may be amended in place. A stockpile that fails to meet gradation requirements may not be accepted. The Contractor shall provide a plan for amending pH and/or organic to the Engineer certified by a nationally recognized entity which provides soils laboratory services. Once the Department accepts the plan and certification the Contractor may amend the stockpile. Re-testing of the stockpile is not required prior to placing the topsoil materials.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Topsoil-Reuse of On-Site Materials and Topsoil- On-Site Wetland Materials will be accepted on the basis of a visual inspection.

Topsoil - Roadside, Topsoil – Lawns, Topsoil - Special Planting Mix, Topsoil - Acidic, and Topsoil - Manufactured or Offsite Wetland Materials will be accepted on the basis of the stockpile meeting all the requirements or the stockpile material meeting all gradation requirements and a plan and certification approved by Engineer for amending pH and organic requirements.

### 713-02 LIMESTONE

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for limestone.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Limestone shall be ground limestone having a minimum total neutralizing value of 88% calcium carbonate equivalence. A minimum of 90% shall pass the No. 20 sieve and a minimum of 60% shall pass the No. 100 sieve.

**PACKAGING.** Packaged agricultural limestone packed in the manufacturer's standard containers shall weigh not over 100 lbs each, with the name of the material, net weight of contents and the manufacturer's name and guaranteed analysis appearing on each container.

**BULK DELIVERY.** Bulk delivery of limestone shall be accompanied by a certificate providing the names, weight and analysis as specified herein for packaged material.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Limestone will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's label or certificate and visual inspection for compliance with the material requirements.

### 713-03 FERTILIZER

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for fertilizers.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Fertilizers may be either fluid or dry formulations of commercial carriers of available plant nutrients. Fertilizers may also be provided in standardized packets designed to control the release of their contents over a specified period of time.

The following mixed commercial fertilizers shall contain total nitrogen, phosphoric acid and soluble potash in the ratios stated:

**Type A.** 2-1-1 or 3-1-1 (approximate analysis). Minimum of 50% water insoluble nitrogen and with a salt index of less than 50.
Type B. 1-2-1 (approximate analysis) 50 % Organic/IBDU (Isobutydine diurea)/ or coated for slow release with a water in-soluble nitrogen (WIN).

Type C. Nitrate of soda containing a minimum of 16% nitrogen or Ammonium sulfate containing a minimum of 20.5% nitrogen as appropriate to soil conditions.

Type D. Bonemeal shall be commercial steamed bonemeal, finely ground with a minimum of 1.0% nitrogen and a minimum of 20% phosphoric acid.

Type E. 13-0-0 (approximate analysis) shall be a commercial slow release organic nitrogen fertilizer such as blood meal

PACKAGING. Packaged fertilizers shall be in the manufacturer's standard containers or packets. Containers shall weigh not more than 100 lbs and shall include a label stating the name of the material, the net weight of the contents, the manufacturer's name, and the guaranteed analysis of the fertilizer. Labels on containers of fluid fertilizers shall state the net volume of the container. Packets shall include a label stating the name of the material, the net weight of the contents, the manufacturer's name, and the guaranteed analysis of the fertilizer.

BULK DELIVERY. Bulk delivery of fertilizer shall be accompanied by the manufacturer's certificate stating the name of the manufacturer, the guaranteed analysis and the weight of the shipment. Certificates accompanying bulk deliveries of fluid fertilizers shall also state the net volume of the shipment.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Fertilizer will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's label or certificate indicating conformance with this specification and visual inspection. Material that has become caked or otherwise damaged will be rejected.

713-04 SEEDS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for seeds for grasses, legumes, wildflowers and cereals.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. All species and their cultivars or varieties must be disease and insect resistant, not considered noxious or invasive, guaranteed hardy and adapted for the locality, and among the top 25% of commercially-available seed types as rated by NTEP (National Turfgrass Evaluation Program). Cultivars infected with non-pathogenic (non-disease causing) fungal endophytes are preferred, if available. Experimental varieties should be excluded.

Material other than pure live seed shall comprise only nonviable seed, chaff, hulls, live seed of crop plants other than those specified, harmless inert matter and non-noxious, non-invasive weed species seeds. Non-noxious, non-invasive species weed seeds will be permitted up to 1% of the gross weight of each seed mixture.

Seeding mixtures shall be composed of perennial (except for annual rye) grasses suited to the site conditions, use, soils, moisture and local climate. All seeds of leguminous plants requiring inoculation shall be inoculated prior to mixing or sowing unless otherwise specified or approved or unless accompanied by a certificate of preinoculation. The Contractor may propose a dormant seed additive for cold weather seeding at no additional cost to the state. The Contractor may propose an alternate range for a component of a given mix based on regional and commercial availability.

A. General Roadside Seed Mix
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Variety</th>
<th>Percent by weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fine Fescue (2 varieties min. must include creeping red)</td>
<td>Festuca rubra var.</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>50-70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perennial Ryegrass (2 var. min.)</td>
<td>Lolium perenne</td>
<td>Commercial “turf” type</td>
<td>15-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual Ryegrass</td>
<td>Lolium multiflorum</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>5-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clover (White preferred)</td>
<td>Trifolium repens</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>5-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B. Restoration/High-Traffic Seed Mix**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Variety</th>
<th>Percent by weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kentucky Bluegrass (2 var. min.)</td>
<td>Poa pratensis</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>5-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fine Fescue (2 var. min.; must include creeping red)</td>
<td>Festuca rubra var.</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>15-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tall Fescue (2 var. min.)</td>
<td>Festuca arundinacea</td>
<td>Commercial “turf” type</td>
<td>25-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perennial Ryegrass (2 var. min.)</td>
<td>Lolium perenne</td>
<td>Commercial “turf” type</td>
<td>10–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual Ryegrass</td>
<td>Lolium multiflorum</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>5-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ticklegrass (or, if unavailable, Redtop)</td>
<td>Agrostis scabra (or Agrostis alba)</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>0-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clover (White preferred)</td>
<td>Trifolium repens</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>0-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**C. Lawn Seed Mix**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Variety</th>
<th>Percent by weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kentucky Bluegrass (3 var. min.)</td>
<td>Poa pratensis</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>15-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fine Fescue (2 var. min. must include creeping red)</td>
<td>Festuca rubra var.</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>30-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perennial Ryegrass (2 var. min.)</td>
<td>Lolium perenne</td>
<td>Commercial “turf” type</td>
<td>15-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual Ryegrass</td>
<td>Lolium multiflorum</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>5-15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**D. Salt-Tolerant Seed Mix**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Name</th>
<th>Scientific Name</th>
<th>Variety</th>
<th>Percent by weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fine Fescue (must include creeping red and hard fescue)</td>
<td>Festuca rubra var. &amp; Festuca longifolia*</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>10-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perennial Ryegrass (2 var. min.)</td>
<td>Lolium perenne</td>
<td>Commercial “turf” type</td>
<td>10-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tall Fescue (2 var. min., selected for maximum salt tolerance)</td>
<td>Festuca arundinacea</td>
<td>Commercial “turf” type</td>
<td>25-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ticklegrass (or, if unavailable, Redtop)</td>
<td>Agrostis scabra (or Agrostis alba)</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>5-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkaligrass (weeping preferred)</td>
<td>Puccinellia distans</td>
<td>Commercial</td>
<td>15-40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aaka. F. trachyphylla Krajina; F. brevipila Tracey*

**Wildflower Seed Mix.** Wildflower seed mix shall be as specified in contract documents

**Nomenclature.** The common and scientific names of grasses, legumes, wildflowers and cereals specified in the contract documents shall conform to one or more of the authorities on botanical nomenclature recognized by the American Association of Nurserymen.
Stratification. Seeds in Wildflower Seed Mixes that require cold and/or warm stratification in order to germinate shall be prepared prior to sowing or used only in fall planting mixes.

Legume Inoculants. Legume seeds requiring inoculation shall be accompanied by adequate amounts of their proper inoculants unless accompanied by certification of preinoculation. Inoculants for treating legume seeds shall be a standard culture of nitrogen fixing bacteria that is not more than one year old. Each inoculant shall be the specific culture required for each legume. Inoculants shall be supplied only from suppliers licensed by the Department of Agriculture and Markets to sell legume inoculants in New York State.

PACKAGING. Seeds shall be furnished and delivered in labeled containers or bags that are acceptably sealed or sewn tight. All seed and seed labels shall be in accordance with Agriculture and Markets Law. Container or bag labels shall not be removed prior to the time of sowing nor shall container labels be altered, obliterated or otherwise illegible.

When seeds are to be accepted by certification, they may be mixed prior to delivery. The certification shall consist of the label that shall be attached to each container of seed in accordance with the provisions of the Agriculture and Markets Law. Seeds will not be accepted by certification unless the test dates shown on the seed container labels are within the twelve months prior to the date that the seeds are sown.

Seeds shall be furnished damage free, with no mold, rot or deterioration, as a result of handling, transit or storage. After delivery to the Contractor, seed shall be stored so that it is protected from damage or deterioration from any source.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Seeds will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's label or certificate indicating conformance with this specification and Agriculture and Markets Law.

713-05 MULCH FOR PLANTING

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for wood and bark chips used as mulch, landscape bedding or erosion control.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENT. Wood and bark chips used for mulch, landscape bedding or erosion control may be the following.

TYPE A Seasoned Wood Chips. This shall be derived from 100 % first generation hardwood or softwood. The chips shall be seasoned (aged a minimum of 1 year), free from leaves, young growth, unchipped branches, twigs 1 inch or greater in diameter, wood shavings, sawdust or foreign materials such as stones, nails, plastic, etc. Wood chips shall not exceed 3 inches in the greatest dimension.

TYPE B Recycled or Green Wood Chips. Shall be wood chips derived from unadulterated construction and/or demolition waste wood. Wood chips derived from construction and/or demolition waste wood shall not be contaminated with paint, chemicals, asphalt shingles, glass, nails, etc. Wood chips shall not exceed 3 inches in the greatest dimension.

TYPE C USDA-APHIS Protocol Wood Chips. USDA-APHIS (United States Department of Agriculture- Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service) Protocol wood chips shall be wood chips from current construction activities derived from trees removed and chipped according to USDA-APHIS protocol. Wood is chipped or mulched to less than 1 inch in at least two dimensions or apply an APHIS approved method.

Type D Shredded Bark Mulch. Shredded bark mulch shall be commercially available double or triple-processed aged bark mulch made from a mixture of hardwood and/or softwood. It shall be
created by regrinding the mulch in a tub grinder and be finely screened to a uniform particle size. It shall be composed of bark and have a low wood content with no hidden woods from construction and demolition debris or pressure treated lumber.

**Type E Pine Bark Chunks or Nuggets.** Pine Bark chunks or nuggets shall be commercially available, manufactured from 100% pine bark and shall not exceed 3 inches.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Wood and bark chips will be accepted on the basis of visual inspection, upon delivery, for compliance with the materials requirements and applicable certification of compliance with 6 NYCRR Part 360.

Shredded bark mulch will be accepted on the basis of a visual inspection for compliance with the material requirements.

**713-06 TREES, SHRUBS AND VINES**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for trees, shrubs, vines, and other plants

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENT.**

**Nomenclature.** The common and scientific nomenclature for plants shall be in conformity with the American Nursery and Landscape Association’s American Standard for Nursery Stock (ANSI Z60.1).

**Quality and Size.** Plants, including root spread and ball size, shall be in accordance with the American Standard for Nursery Stock (ANSI Z60.1). All plants shall have a normal habit of growth and be typically characteristic of their respective kinds. The specified plant sizes shall be the minimum size allowed and shall include plants from that size up to but not including the next larger size. Plants shall not be pruned at the time of digging or before delivery and no plants shall be cut back from larger sizes to meet the sizes specified. Plants shall be free from injury, insect damage, infestation and disease. Plants except those for transplanting shall be nursery and/or field grown and shall bear evidence of proper nursery care, including adequate transplanting and root pruning. Containers shall be sufficiently rigid to hold the ball shapes and protect the root balls during handling and shipping. Plants shall have been grown in the container long enough for new fibrous roots to have developed so that the root ball is firm and will retain its shape and hold together when removed from the container. The plants shall be in a healthy growing condition with tops which are of good quality, and shall have been adequately hardened off before shipment. The plants shall have been grown in similar climatic conditions to the planting location.

**Digging Plants.** Digging shall avoid all possible injury to, or loss of roots, but when required, roots cut shall be cleanly cut. No cold storage plants will be accepted unless approved in writing prior to delivery. Plants stored temporarily shall be properly heeled in or otherwise protected from injury.

**Root Protection.** After plants are dug, their roots shall be protected from injury such as caused by heat, sun, wind and freezing temperatures.

**Trees.** Pruning cuts on nursery and/or field grown trees shall be healed over. There shall be no cut back crowns or leaders and no abrasions of the bark. Any stem to rootstock grafts shall be healed. Trees must have good fibrous root systems characteristic of the kind. Deciduous trees shall have normal spread of crowns unless otherwise specified. Bare root trees shall not require earth adhering to the roots except as required under Root Protection above.

Balled and burlapped trees shall be properly dug and protected to preserve the natural earth in contact with the roots. No processed balls will be accepted. The balls shall be of the required size, firmly wrapped and tied with approved materials. No balled plants will be acceptable if the ball is cracked or broken.
The tops of trees shall be well formed structurally, but they are not required to have more than reasonably straight trunks, nor better than average well balanced crowns, nor be of specimen or street tree quality consistent with ANSI Z60.1 unless those requirements are specified on the plans.

**Shrubs.** Shrubs shall have good fibrous root systems. The quality of balled and burlapped shrubs and container grown shrubs shall be as specified in ANSI Z60.1.

**Vines.** Vines shall be as specified in ANSI Z60.1. Vines shall be field grown unless otherwise specified. Pot grown plants shall be vigorous, well-developed plants, well established in pots with sufficient roots to hold the earth intact after removal from containers but they shall not be rootbound.

**Plants for Transplanting.** Plants, including root spread and ball size, shall be in accordance with ANSI Z60.1 for Collected Plant.

**LABELING.** Labeling shall be in accordance with currently accepted nursery labeling practice except that the Contractor shall upon request supply positive identification by genus and species of any plant.

**TRANSPORTATION.** Tarpaulins or other covers shall be placed over plants transported by open vehicles. Closed vehicles shall be ventilated to avoid overheating and the doors shall be kept closed during shipment to prevent plants from drying. The heads of trees shall be tied-in carefully to prevent fracturing or breaking the branches. Trunks and branches shall be adequately supported and padded to avoid scraping or bruising.

**INSPECTION.** The Contractor shall be responsible to supply current, valid certificates of inspection of plant materials which may be required by federal, state, provincial or other authority to accompany shipments of plants.

The Department will identify by suitable non-injurious means such as painting, marking by various methods, etc. all plant material rejected upon delivery to the contract site.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE:** Acceptance will be based on visual inspection, upon delivery to site, by the Engineer for compliance with the materials requirements.

### 713-07 ROLLED EROSION CONTROL PRODUCTS AND SOIL STABILIZERS

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for Rolled Erosion Control Products and Soil Stabilizers.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

**Class I (Short-Term)** Light-duty, organic, or synthetic erosion control products.

- **Type A.** No minimum shear stress is required. The product shall be capable of withstanding moderate foot traffic without tearing or puncturing.

- **Type B.** No minimum shear stress is required.

- **Type C.** Products shall have the ability to protect soil from hydraulically induced shear stresses under bench scale conditions for at least 1.5 psf (pounds force per square foot) at \( \frac{1}{2} \) inch soil loss.

**Class II (Intermediate-Term)** Erosion control products.
Type A. Jute Mesh. Jute mesh shall be of a uniform, open, plain weave of undyed and unbleached, single-jute yarn. Jute mesh shall be woven as follows:
- Approximately 55 warp ends per yard width.
- Approximately 37 weft ends per linear yard.
- Mass of jute mesh shall average 1.0 (± 5%) pound per square yard.

Type B. Products shall have the ability to protect soil from hydraulically induced shear stresses under bench scale conditions for at least 1 psf at ½ inch soil loss.

Type C. Products made entirely of organic materials. Only 100% organic materials are allowed. Products shall have the ability to protect soil from hydraulically induced shear stresses under bench scale conditions for at least 1 psf at ½ inch soil loss.

Type D. Organic or nonorganic products shall have the ability to protect soil from hydraulically induced shear stresses under bench scale conditions for at least 2 psf at ½ inch soil loss.

Class III (Permanent) Nondegradable synthetic [fibers, filaments, or nettings] which may be supplemented with degradable natural fiber components).

Type A. TRM (Turf Reinforcement Mat) mat products shall have the ability to protect soil from hydraulically induced shear stresses under bench scale conditions for at least 2 psf at ½ inch soil loss.

Type B. TRM mat products shall have the ability to protect soil from hydraulically induced shear stresses under bench scale conditions for at least 3 psf at ½ inch soil loss.

Type C. TRM mat (which includes a composite) products shall have the ability to protect soil from hydraulically induced shear stresses under bench scale conditions for at least 2.25 psf at ½ inch soil loss.

Type D. TRM mat (which includes a composite) products shall have the ability to protect soil from hydraulically induced shear stresses under bench scale conditions for at least 3 psf at ½ inch soil loss.

Class IV Soil Stabilizers. Soil stabilizers are short-term duration, erosion control products. When used alone, they shall be used on slopes 1:2 or flatter. They shall not be used in channels or in areas of concentrated flow. Type A, B, and C soil stabilizers may be used alone or in combination with Class III, Types A and B Turf Reinforcement Materials where those products are used on slope applications.

Type A. Type A Soil Stabilizer shall be a soil binding system consisting of one of the following:
- A Cementitious soil binder which is added to wood cellulose fiber mulch, a Bonded Fiber Matrix (BFM), intended to form a thick, heavy-bodied crust or mat-like barrier that controls storm water and wind induced erosion. BFMs last up to six months and require a cure time up to 48 hours, without rain, to develop intimate soil contact.
- A Soil stabilizing polymer which is added to wood cellulose fiber mulch, a Polymer Stabilized Fiber Matrix (PSFM), intended to form a matrix that is designed to work directly with soil to maintain its stability by preserving existing soil structure, flocculating fine sediment being dislodged by storm water or wind, and to prevent splash erosion. PSFMs last up to six months and require a cure time up to 24 hours.
Type B. An anionic polyacrylamide (PAM) and calcium solution intended to reduce the erodibility of bare soils during construction activities or to enhance the performance of mulching on permanent slopes. Soil stabilizers, Type B, shall bond soil particles and shall effectively increase the soil particle size to 3/64 inch or larger. Soil stabilizers, Type B, shall reduce the movement of soil due to chemical bonding, thereby increasing the particle size rendering silt fence/sediment trapping devices more effective, and increase the water absorption of the soil.

Type C. A soil binder which may be made up of wood fibers, straw fibers, cotton fibers, interlocking fibers, polymers and hydro-colloid tackifiers, a Flexible Growth Medium (FGM) or Cotton Fiber Reinforcement Matrix (C-FRM). Intended to form a thick, heavy-bodied crust or mat-like barrier that controls storm water and wind induced erosion. FGMs/C-FRMs last up to a year and require no cure time to develop intimate soil contact.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Materials will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s name and location appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

713-08 MATERIALS FOR PROTECTION OF PLANTS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for materials used in planting and protection of plant operations.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Rodent Guards. Shall be a commercially available horticultural product created for this activity.

Stakes for Supporting Trees

A. Above Ground Support. Shall be wooden stakes, commercially available product or system developed for supporting trees. Wooden stakes shall be 8 to 10 feet long with a minimum diameter of 2 to 2 1/2 inches or stakes 12 feet long which shall have a minimum diameter of 3 inches. The maximum diameter of stakes shall not exceed 4 inches. Stakes shall be pointed at one end. All wooden stakes shall be sound and free from insects and fungi.

B. Underground Support. Shall be a commercially available product or system developed for supporting trees.

Wire. Wire for guying plants shall be annealed steel wire (either galvanized or ungalvanized).

Hose. Hose for protecting the bark from guy wires shall be braided rubber, plastic, or reinforced materials. Hose shall be at least 3/4 inch outside diameter.

Straps for Protecting Tree Bark. Straps for protecting tree bark from guy wires shall be stretch resistant nylon or polypropylene fabric. Straps shall be 1 inch wide, shall have soft woven edges to assure abrasion resistance and shall have metal grommets at each end for the purpose of attaching guy wires. Straps shall be of sufficient length to assure guy wires will not be in contact with the tree. Straps for guying trees up to and including 2 inch in diameter shall have a minimum breaking strength of 1,000 lbs. Straps for guying trees up to and including 6 inches in diameter shall have a minimum breaking strength of 4,000 lbs.
Anti-Desiccants. Anti-desiccants shall be emulsions or other materials which will provide a protective film over plant surfaces, permeable enough to permit transpiration.

Portable Drip Irrigation System (PDIS). PDIS shall allow slow even watering. PDIS shall be a slow release watering system with accommodation for even watering. The fill opening shall accommodate a standard hose diameter. PDIS watering systems shall be constructed so that they can be attached to the trees, provide water from two drip points (minimum) and have a zipper or similar method to attach securely to the tree. PDIS watering system or bags shall be UV treated reinforced Polyethylene material. Each shall be sized according to manufacture’s recommendation for plant size and type.

Mowing Markers.

A. Type A. Mowing limit markers shall be any commercially available semi-rigid composite fiber reinforced plastic posts or flexible co-extruded polyethylene posts with U.V. inhibitors. Posts shall not crack at -20 °F. Posts shall have adhesive decals meeting the following requirements and conforming to the attached details:
- Posts or post assemblies shall be such that they can withstand wind and shall be approved by the Engineer.
- Approximate Width: 2.5 to 3 inches
- Length: 4 feet above ground
- Color: Medium to dark brown or black.
- Anchor Device: Manufacturer’s standard anchor system
- Decals shall be brown or black and shall match the color of the posts. Decals shall be cast vinyl sheeting, adhesive on one side, with inks suitable for outdoor use and shall be covered with a laminate protective layer that provides resistance to weather, graffiti, vandalism and discoloration. Letters shall be white and of a size and weight to fully utilize the full dimension of the decal and shall be legible.

B. Type B. Mowing limit markers shall be any commercially available glass fiber reinforced polyester stakes, manufactured with UV inhibitors and shall not crack at -22 °F. Tubular stakes shall be 3/16 inch (ID), with a 1/16 inch wall thickness, approximately 6 feet in length, and sealed on top with a cap or similar method.
- Color shall be olive drab green.
- Note: Solid glass fiber stakes which have the same length and color may be substituted with the approval of the Engineer.

Reflective Tapes. Material shall be reflective safety tape rated for 5 to 7 years of outdoor life meeting ASTM specifications D4596. Tape shall be 2 inch wide, reflective tape, in red or yellow.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Material for the protection of plants will be accepted on the basis of a visual inspection.

713-09 MYCORRHIZAL FUNGI

SCOPE. This specification covers the materials requirements for mycorrhizal fungi.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Mycorrhizal fungi shall be commercially available products suited to and labeled for the intended purpose.
Products for turf establishment shall be granular (when mixed directly with soil), or soluble powder or liquid (when mixed with seeds for drill seeding or hydroseeding) and shall typically include:

- **Endomycorrhizal fungi.** Live propagules (spores, colonized roots, hyphae) of vesicular arbuscular (VA) fungi including Glomus intraradices and at least two other Glomus species shown to be biologically adapted to grass.

Products for planting pits, beds and Tree Root Zone Treatment (Vertical Mulching/Aeration) shall typically be granular and shall typically include:

- **Endomycorrhizal fungi.** Live propagules (spores, colonized roots, hyphae) of vesicular arbuscular (VA) fungi including Glomus intraradices and at least two other Glomus species.
- **Ectomycorrhizal fungi.** Live spores of Pisolithus tinctorius and at least four Rhizopogon species.

Products may also include any or all of:

- Biostimulants such as Dry soluble yucca extract (yucca schidigera), soluble sea kelp extract (ascophyllum, nodosum) and humic acid (leonardite humates)
- Amino acids, vitamins, enzymes, beneficial bacteria, microbial metabolites, trichoderma fungi.
- Water management gels/polymers (for planting pits, beds and Tree Root Zone Treatment – typically not for turf applications).

**PACKAGING.** Mycorrhizal fungi shall be delivered in the manufacturer’s standard containers. Containers shall include a label stating the name of the material, species, propagule counts, application rates, expiration date, the net weight of the contents, and the manufacturer’s name.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Mycorrhizal fungi will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s label or material certification indicating compliance with these specifications. The Department reserves the right to reject any material that has become caked or otherwise damaged. Material that has expired will be rejected.

### 713-10 MOISTURE RETENTION ADDITIVE

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for moisture retention additive.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Moisture retention additives shall be commercially available Polyacrylamide or Co-polymer of Acrylamide Hydro gel polymer products.

**PACKAGING.** Moisture retention additives shall be delivered in the manufacturer’s standard containers. Containers shall include a label stating the name of the material, application rates, expiration date, the net weight of the contents, and the manufacturer’s name.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Moisture retention additives will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s label or material certification indicating compliance with these specifications.

### 713-11 MULCH FOR TURF ESTABLISHMENT AND EROSION CONTROL

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for organic mulch materials used in conjunction with turf establishment or erosion control.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**

General
Mulch shall be manufactured so that the materials will remain uniformly suspended in water under agitation and will blend with seeds, fertilizer and other additives to form homogeneous slurry. It shall have the characteristics which, upon hydraulic application, shall form a blotter-like ground coating with moisture absorption and percolation properties and the ability to cover and hold seeds in contact with the soil. Mulch shall contain no growth or germination inhibiting factors.

**Type I. Wood Fiber Mulch.** Wood fiber shall be a first generation product manufactured directly from 100 percent wood which has been recovered or diverted from solid waste.

Wood fiber shall be manufactured from unadulterated wood that is not contaminated with paint, chemicals, non-wood shingles, plastic or other foreign materials. Wood fiber mulch shall not be manufactured exclusively from paper.

**Type II Cellulose Mulch.** Cellulose or Paper mulch shall be composed of 100% clean recycled cellulose fiber and free of plastic netting.

- Water Holding Capacity >1000%
- Moisture Content 12% +/- 3
- Organic Matter >93%
- Ash Content <7%
- pH Range 6.5 +/- 2
- Non toxic dye

**Type III Cellulose and Wood Fiber Blend Mulch.** Cellulose and Wood fiber blend shall be composed of biodegradable recycled 100% wood fibers and recycled paper, phyto-sanitized and free from plastic netting.

- Wood fiber 70% Minimum
- Paper fiber 30% Maximum
- Water Holding Capacity >1000%
- Moisture Content 12% +/- 3
- Organic Matter >93%
- Ash Content <7%
- pH Range 5.5 +/- 2

**Type IV Cotton Hydro Mulch.** Cotton hydro mulch shall be a blend of processed straw and reclaimed cotton plant materials.

- Straw 80% Maximum
- Reclaimed Cotton Plant Material 17% Minimum
- Additives, Activators and Tackifiers Range 3 to 10%
- Moisture Content 12% +/- 3
- Organic Matter ≥90%

**Type V Pelletized Hydro Mulch.** Cellulose and Wood fiber blend shall be composed of clean cellulose fiber and raw lumber chips manufactured from unadulterated wood that is not contaminated with paint, chemicals, non-wood shingles, plastic or other foreign materials.

- Wood fiber 20% Minimum
- Paper fiber 80% Maximum
- Water Holding Capacity >850%
- Moisture Content Range 12 to 15% +/- 3
- Organic Matter >93%
- Ash Content <7%
- pH Range 7.0 +/- 2
PACKAGING AND LABELING. Mulch shall be supplied in the manufacturer's standard containers, with the name of the material, net weight of contents, the manufacturer's name and the air dry weight of fiber (equivalent to 10% moisture) appearing on each container.

STORAGE AND HANDLING. Store and handle in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Protect from damage, weather, excessive temperatures and construction operations.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Mulch will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s product label, including methods and rates of applications, and material certification indicating compliance with these specifications and any applicable regulatory requirements pertaining to solid waste management.

713-12 MULCH ANCHORAGE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for mulch anchorage.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Mulch anchorage shall be 713-07 Class IV Soil Stabilizers or any non-asphaltic, non-toxic commercially available products formulated for the purpose of anchoring or tacking straw mulch. The paper content of paper-based hydraulic mulch anchorage shall be 100 percent post consumer recovered from solid waste.

PACKAGING. Mulch Anchorage shall be furnished in the manufacturer's standard containers with the name of the material, net weight of contents, the manufacturer's name and the dry weight of fiber (equivalent to 10% moisture) appearing on each container. The instructions for mixing and application shall also appear on each container.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Mulch Anchorage will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's product label or product literature that indicates compliance with this specification. Materials that have become wet, caked, frozen, separated or otherwise unfit for use will be rejected.

713-13 PESTICIDES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for pesticides used to manage vegetation, insects, rodents and/or other target pests.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Pesticides shall be approved commercially available products that are currently registered by the US Environmental Protection Agency and the NYS Department of Environmental Conservation. Pesticides shall also have all required labels indicating that they are approved for the intended use.

Pesticides shall be mixed and used in strict conformance with the instructions on the label or supplemental labels.

PACKAGING. Pesticides shall be delivered and securely stored until used in the manufacturer's standard containers that have legible labels affixed. Pesticides that do not meet these packaging requirements will be rejected.

Pesticide containers shall be sealed. Containers with breaks, damage; or altered, obliterated, illegible, or missing labels will not be accepted.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Pesticides will be accepted on the basis of the original, sealed, and properly labeled pesticide containers; and two copies of sample labels and supplemental labels that include instructions for the intended use of the pesticide. Pesticides that have become wet, caked or otherwise unfit for use will be rejected.
713-14 SOD

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for sod.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Sod shall be commercially grown sod and shall be accompanied by a certificate indicating compliance with the regulations of the NYS Department of Agriculture and Markets.

Sources of sod shall be made known to the Engineer at least five calendar days before cutting. Sod shall be cut into squares or rectangular portions which shall be a minimum of 12 inches wide, or as approved, and may vary in length, but shall be of a size which will permit them to be lifted without breaking. Height of the grass shall not exceed 3 inches. The sod shall be cut to a minimum thickness of 3/4 inch. The sod shall be reasonably free from weeds in conformance with accepted commercial practice. The sod shall consist of a mixture of at least three permanent grasses such as bluegrass and fine leaved fescues, unless otherwise specified. Sod that is heat damaged or fermenting will be rejected.

DELIVERY AND HANDLING. Sod shall be delivered to the job within 24 hours after being cut and installed within 48 hours after being cut. The sod, when delivered to the contract site and during the time it is held on site, shall be sufficiently moist so the soil will adhere firmly to the roots when it is handled.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Sod will be accepted based on inspection for compliance with the material requirements.

713-15 COMPOST

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for organic material used in conjunction with amending or manufacturing topsoil and for erosion control products.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Compost shall be the material resulting from the biological and biochemical decomposition of biosolids, source-separated organic waste, yard waste, leaves or agricultural waste. These composts shall have been commercially or municipally produced. Compost and composting facilities shall be in compliance with all federal laws (40 CFR Part 503 and others), Article 10 of the Agriculture and Markets Law and 6 NYCRR Part 360.

Biosolids, including mixed solid waste, septage and other sludges, are the solid or semi-solid organic material generated by a wastewater treatment plant. Source-separated organic waste (SSOW) is readily decomposable material that is separated at the point of waste generation, and may include, but not be limited to, food scraps, food processing residues, soiled and/or unreecyclable paper, and other compostable materials. Yard waste includes grass clippings, leaves and other similar readily-compostable organic material.

Compost shall be reasonably free of sticks, stones, refuse, materials deleterious to soil structure, or any material toxic or detrimental to plant germination and growth. Compost containing foreign material may be rejected on the basis of a visual examination.

Composted biosolids shall have a certificate from a laboratory approved by the NYSDOH verifying compliance with all applicable laws, rules, and regulations. Only facilities permitted to compost biosolids under 6 NYCRR Part 360 will be allowed to furnish biosolid compost. The certification shall be supplied by the Contractor prior to the delivery of any composted biosolids, topsoil containing composted biosolids, or other such regulated material to the contract site.
Type A. Compost for Turf Establishment, Sodding, and Planting. Compost for Turf Establishment, Sodding, and Planting shall have a minimum organic-matter content of 30% (dry-weight basis) as determined by loss on ignition. Product shall be loose and friable, not dusty, and have a moisture content of 35% - 60%, (wet weight basis). Particle size shall be < 1/2 inch, (100% passing). Soluble salts concentration shall be < 4.0 mmhos/cm (ds/m), maximum. Compost shall be stable to very stable. pH shall be between 6.0-8.5.

Type B. Compost for Erosion/Sediment Control Filter Berms. Compost for Erosion/Sediment Control Filter Berms shall meet the requirements of AASHTO Designation MP 9-03 and as follows: Minimum organic matter content 25% - 65% (dry-weight basis) surfaces to be vegetated; 25% - 100% (dry weight basis) surfaces to be left unvegetated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>Percent Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 inch</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 inch</td>
<td>90 to 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4 inch</td>
<td>70 to 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4 inch</td>
<td>30 to 75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Maximum particle length; 6 inch

Soluble salt concentration shall be 5 mmhos/cm; (ds/m) maximum. Compost shall be stable to very stable pH shall be between 5.0 - 8.5.

Type C. Compost for Erosion/Sediment Control Compost Blankets (Mulch for Seeded Areas). Compost for Erosion/Sediment Control Compost Blankets, (mulch for seeded areas), shall meet the requirements of AASHTO Designation MP 10-03 and as follows: For surfaces to be vegetated, minimum organic matter content 25% - 65% (dry weight basis); for surfaces to be left unvegetated 25% - 100% (dry-weight basis).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>Percent Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 inch</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 inch</td>
<td>90 to 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4 inch</td>
<td>65 to 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4 inch</td>
<td>0 to 75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Maximum particle length; 6 inch

Soluble salt concentration shall be 5 mmhos/cm; (ds/m) maximum. Compost shall be stable to very stable pH shall be between 5.0 - 8.5.

Type D. Leaf Compost. The material shall consist exclusively of deciduous leaf material. Compost material that contains food waste, sewage waste, or other waste material is unacceptable. The leaf compost shall be mature (actively composted for 6 months minimum, and temperature slightly above air temperature) and humic (organic material is no longer rapidly degrading). Mature compost material shall be a dark, friable, partially decomposed substance that has an earthy odor. Visible
fibers should be short and dark with no discernable particles of leaf material. Because not all items decompose at the same rate screening may be necessary to remove larger partially decomposed material and/or undecomposed material.

- Organic Content – 25% to 100% by dry weight
- Natural Inert Material - <5% by dry weight of woody or green yard debris material.
- Man Made Inert Material - <1% by dry weight of man made material such as glass or plastic.
- Bulk Density – 636 to 812 kg/m³
- Moisture Content – 30% to 60% by total weight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gradation:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sieve Size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum particle length: 6 inch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Type E. Well Rotten Manure.** The material shall consist of animal excreta with litter material. The well rotted manure shall be mature (aged a minimum of one year), dark brown or black in color, crumbly in texture, and shall not have an objectionable odor. The material’s moisture content shall be such that no visible free water or dust is produced when handling it. It shall contain no visible admixture of refuse or other physical contaminates or any material toxic to plant growth.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Compost will be accepted on the basis of a Producer’s label or a certificate of analysis by a laboratory certified by a nationally recognized entity indicating compliance with the material requirements and visual inspection.

- Composted biosolids will be accepted on the basis of a material certification by a NYSDOH approved laboratory that the product conforms to this specification and all applicable regulations.
- Compost supplied or manufactured by participants in the US Composting Council’s Seal of Testing Approval Program will be accepted on the basis of the Program’s Compost Technical Data Sheets. The data shall represent a minimum of one year of testing results and the most recent test shall have been conducted with ninety days of material acceptance.
- Compost supplied or manufactured by suppliers that do not participate in the US Composting Council Seal of Testing Approval Program will be accepted on the basis of a material certification, by a laboratory certified by a nationally recognized entity, that the product conforms to this specification.

The Department reserves the right to sample and test the materials subsequent to delivery.

**713-16 (VACANT)**

**713-17 SULFUR**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for elemental sulfur (flowers of sulfur).

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**

**PACKAGING.** Agricultural sulfur packed in the manufacturer's standard containers shall weigh not over 100 lbs each, with the name of the material, net weight of contents and the manufacturer's name and guaranteed analysis appearing on each container. Sulfur shall be commercially available products.

**DELIVERY.** Bulk delivery of sulfur shall be accompanied by a certificate providing the names, weight and analysis as specified herein for packaged material.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Sulfur will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s label or certificate and visual inspection for compliance with the material requirements.

713-18 WEED CONTROL BARRIERS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for landscape fabrics, mats and Geotextiles specifically manufactured to control weed growth.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Weed control barriers shall be commercially available products.

Type A. Permeable Landscape Fabric. Permeable Landscape Fabric shall be a permeable weed blocking geotextile resistant to rot, mold, chemicals and micro-organisms which allows the free flow of water, air, fertilizers and nutrients.

Type B. Permeable Landscape Fabric with Herbicide. Permeable Landscape Fabric with Herbicide shall be durable, nonwoven, polypropylene geotextile fabric with permanently attached nodules containing a slow release herbicide with a maximum EPA toxicity rating of class IV.

Type C. Permeable Weed Barrier Mat. Permeable Weed Barrier Mat shall be a commercial weed control product. The mat shall prevent sunlight, water, or vegetation nutrients from reaching the soil underneath. The mat shall contain no herbicides and shall resist ultraviolet light, mildew, and algae.

The mat shall be self-extinguishing when removed from flame.

The mat shall be a polyester matting system a minimum of 0.2 inches thick, with a minimum weight of 1.8 pounds per square yard, able to support pedestrian traffic and commercial tractor mowing equipment’s wheels and skid plates without displacement.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Weed control mats or fabric will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s label or certificate and visual inspection for compliance with the material requirements.

713-19 STRAW

SCOPE. This specification covers the materials requirements for straw.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Straw for mulching shall be stalks of oats, wheat, rye or other similar crops which are free from noxious and invasive species. Straw shall show no signs of excessive moisture and be visually free of mold or mildew

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Straw will be accepted on the basis of a visual inspection for compliance with the material requirements.

713-20 SEDIMENT FILTER LOGS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for sediment filter logs.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Sediment filter logs shall meet the following material requirements:

- Be capable of filtering sediment.
- Consist of a fill material encased in a mesh tube of netting.
  - Both fill and netting material shall be bio- or photo- degradable with a minimum functional longevity of one (1) year.
  - Filling shall be made of wood, straw, coconut fibers or other natural materials.
- Be weed and seed free.
• Have an effective height that is a minimum of 75% of the specified log diameter.
• Be capable of being installed without trenching and still function properly.
• Be movable once placed to accommodate field adjustments.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** The Manufacturer shall submit an application for approval to the Materials Bureau, along with a minimum of one foot of assembled product sample and product literature. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Materials will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s name and location appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that specifies the product conforms to this specification.

### 713-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

### SECTION 714 - CURBING AND GUTTER

#### 714-01 STONE CURB

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for stone curb used in highway and bridge construction.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Stone curb shall be either a bluestone, sandstone or granite. The stone shall be sound and durable, free from seams which impair its structural integrity and of a smooth splitting and machining character. Natural color variations that are characteristic of the deposit will be permitted. Any curb containing discoloration other than cleanable surface stains shall be sampled and submitted to the Materials Bureau for evaluation.

**Dimensions**

_A. General._ Curb shall be cut to conform to the shape and size shown on the Standard Sheets and contract plans.

_B. Curbs on Straight Sections._ Minimum lengths of straight segments of Economy, Aesthetic and Sloped curbs shall be 2 feet. All other straight curb types shall have 3 foot minimum lengths.

_C. Curbs on Curved Sections._ No minimum length requirements are specified for curb segments on curves with radii of 200 feet or less. When directed by the Engineer, curb segments on curves with radii 100 to 200 feet shall be cut in 3 to 4 feet straight lengths. With exception of Economy, Aesthetic and Sloped curbs, segments on curves with radii of 100 feet or less shall be shaped to the required curvature and the ends cut on radial lines. Economy, Aesthetic and Sloped curbs on curves with radii of 100 feet or less shall be furnished only in straight segments of lengths equal to 1/10 the radius and on curves with radii less than 10 feet shall be furnished only in straight segments of minimum lengths of one foot, their ends shall be cut on radial lines.

_D. Transition Curb for Bridge to Roadway Curbs._ A transition curb for bridge curb to roadway curb shall be furnished, if required. Where an 8 inch exposed face is desired for a roadway curb, the appropriate curb sections with a 6 inch exposed face shown on the appropriate section of the Standard Sheet shall be increased 2 inches in depth.

_E. Curb Widths._ The bottom width of the various types of curbing shall be as follows:
Finish

A. General. Curb surfaces shall be finished as indicated on the plans or Standard Sheets.

B. Top Surfaces. Top surfaces shall be finished to approximately true planes. When sawed, hammered or thermal finishes are applied, no projection or depression shall be greater than 3/16 inch. Saw marks normal to the sawing process will be permitted if within the 3/16 inch tolerance.

C. Arris Lines. Top front arris lines shall be straight and true with no variations greater than 1/8 inch measured from a 2 foot straightedge placed along the arris line.

Back arris lines on curb types E,F1,M,T1, and T2 curb and the lower front arris lines on types E,F1,M,R1,R2,S,T1 and T2 curbs shall be straight and true with no variations from a straight line greater than 1/4 inch measured in the same manner. Back arris lines are not required for types R1,R2 and S curbs.

Exposed arris lines at the joints shall not project beyond the plane of a split face and shall not fall under the plane of a split face more than 1/4 inch.

D. Back Surfaces. Back surfaces shall have no projection or depression which exceeds a batter of 1 inch in 3 inches for a distance of 3 inches from the top.

E. Front Exposed Faces. Front exposed faces of straight Types A, F1, and G1 curbs, when split, shall have no projection greater than 1 inch or depression greater than 1/2 inch measured from a vertical plane passing through the arris line at the top of the split face. For radius units the front exposed faces when split, shall have no projection greater than 1 1/4 inch. The entire face of Type G1 curb shall be considered as exposed face. Front exposed faces of types M, R1, R2, S, T1 and T2 curbs, when split, shall have no projection or depression greater than 1/2 inch measured from a vertical plane passing through the arris line at the top of the split face. Front faces below grade shall have no projection or depression greater than 1 inch measured in the same manner.

No projection on the exposed face of Type C curb shall extend over 1/4 inch beyond a vertical plane extending from the intersection of the pavement grade line and the curb face. The exposed face of Type C curb shall have no depression greater than 1/2 inch measured from the plane of the face through the top arris line.

F. Ends. Ends of curbs shall be approximately square with the planes of the exposed curb surfaces and shall be finished so that when curbs are set, no space greater than 3/4 inch shall show in the joints for the full length of the exposed joint. The curb ends below the pavement surface or shoulder shall break not over 8 inches from the joint plane on curb types A, B, C, D, E and T2 curbs and not more than 2 inches on types G1, R2, and T1.

Ends of types F1, G1, M, R1, R2, S and T1 curbs shall be sawed at locations called for on the contract plans.

G. Drill Holes. Drill holes will not be permitted in exposed curb surfaces.
Exceptions to Finish Requirements

A. Landscaping Type Curbs. Top surfaces shall be split so that no projections or depressions are greater than 1/2 inch. Front arris lines shall not vary from a straight line more than 1/2 inch. Exposed joint openings shall not exceed 1 1/2 inch. Drill holes will be permitted in top and face surfaces.

B. Sloped Type Curb. Exposed faces shall be relatively smooth and quarry split to an approximately true plane having no projection or depression greater than 1 inch from a 2 foot straightedge placed as closely as possible to the plane of the curb face.

Arris lines at joints shall not project beyond the plane of the split face and shall not fall more than 1/2 inch under the plane of the split face.

Curb ends shall be approximately square with the plane of the exposed curb surfaces and finished so that when curbs are set, no space greater than 3/4 inch shall show in the joints for the full width of the face.

C. Light Duty Type Curbs. Front arris lines shall not vary from a straight line more than 1/2 inch. Exposed joint openings shall not exceed 1 1/2 inch.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Stone curb shall be from a source appearing on the Department's Approved List and will be accepted in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. In addition, the stone curbing will be inspected for dimensional compliance at the project site by the Engineer. Curbing not in compliance with the dimensions on the Standard Sheets or contract plans will be rejected by the Engineer.

714-02 AND 714-03 (VACANT)

714-04 PRECAST CONCRETE CURB

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for precast concrete curb.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The Material Requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

DRAWINGS. The Drawing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

FABRICATION. The Fabrication requirements contained in §704-03, along with the following shall apply. Precast curb shall be fabricated to conform to the size and shape shown on the standard sheet unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Minimum curb lengths shall be 6 feet except for radial curb and closures. Maximum curb lengths shall be 10 feet. Curb to be set on a radius of 100 feet or less shall be cast to the curve required and the ends shall be formed or sawed on radial lines. Curbs to be set on a radius of 101 to 200 feet may be cast or cut in 3 or 4 foot straight lengths, if approved by the Engineer.

Reinforcing. Reinforcement is optional, however if the manufacturer chooses to reinforce the curb for handling the reinforcement shall be epoxy coated or the concrete shall contain corrosion inhibitor.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. The Sampling And Testing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

MARKING. The Marking requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply except as noted herein.
Markings shall be placed on an end face of each unit such that they won’t be exposed to view after installation. Instead of marking the contract number on each unit they may be marked with “NYSDOT”.

**FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION.** The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**SHIPPING.** The Shipping requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Basis Of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

714-05 (VACANT)

714-06 HOT MIX ASPHALT CURB

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for Hot Mix Asphalt curb.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The Contractor shall have the option of supplying the mix specified herein or he may elect to furnish an alternate mixture subject to prior approval by the Director, Materials Bureau. The requirements of Section 401 - Hot Mix Asphalt Production shall apply with the following modifications:

A. Automatic batching and recording equipment will not be required.
B. The HMA shall include recycled tire rubber which is moisture free and does not contain any fabric or metal material. The gradation shall conform to the following sieve analysis; percent passing of total weight:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>No. 4</th>
<th>No. 8</th>
<th>No. 12</th>
<th>No. 20</th>
<th>No. 30</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>% Passing</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>85-100</td>
<td>65-100</td>
<td>35-80</td>
<td>15-40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C. The asphalt cement used in the mix shall comply with either material specification ’702-0400, ’702-0500, or ’702-0600.
D. The aggregate gradation shall be as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size</th>
<th>% Passing (1)</th>
<th>Job Mix Tolerances (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/2 inch</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4 inch</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>± 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/8 inch</td>
<td>80-100</td>
<td>± 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 20</td>
<td>30-70</td>
<td>± 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 40</td>
<td>15-45</td>
<td>± 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 80</td>
<td>5-23</td>
<td>± 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
<td>2-10</td>
<td>± 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asphalt Cement(2)</td>
<td>6-9</td>
<td>± 0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire Rubber(2)</td>
<td>1/2 - 2</td>
<td>± 0.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Based on total aggregate weight.
(2) Based on total weight of mix.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The acceptance of the Hot Mix Asphalt used in asphalt curb shall be in accordance with the Department written instructions.
714-07 PRECAST CONCRETE GUTTER

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for precast concrete gutter.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The Material Requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

DRAWINGS. The Drawing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

FABRICATION. The Fabrication requirements contained in §704-03, along with the following shall apply.

Precast concrete gutter shall be fabricated to conform to the size and shape shown on the standard sheet unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Reinforcing. Wire mesh reinforcement shall consist of one layer of Size 4 x 4 inch - W4 x W4 embedded midway between the upper and lower surfaces, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Reinforcing bars of equivalent area may be substituted for the wire mesh reinforcement. Reinforcement shall be epoxy coated or the concrete shall contain corrosion inhibitor.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. The Sampling And Testing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

MARKING. The Marking requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply except as noted herein.

Markings shall be placed on an end face of each unit such that they won’t be exposed to view after installation. Instead of marking the contract number on each unit they may be marked with “NYSDOT”.

FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION. The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

SHIPPING. The Shipping requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Basis Of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

714-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

SECTION 715 - CASTINGS, FORGINGS AND METALS
(Last Revised January, 2017)

715-01 STRUCTURAL STEEL

SCOPE. This specification covers structural steels used in bridge construction that have a minimum specified yield point of 70 ksi, or less. Steel ordered under this specification may be subject to stress in any direction.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The manufacture, testing, mill inspection and delivery of structural steel shall comply with the requirements of the applicable ASTM Specifications except as modified herein.

Requirements for shop inspection of plates and shapes, and provisions for rejection or shop repair of plates and shapes because of rejectable surface or internal discontinuities, are described in the New York State Steel Construction Manual (SCM).
**Steels to be Furnished.** The contract documents will indicate, by ASTM designation, the steel to be used in specific portions of the structure. If the ASTM designation is not indicated in the contract documents, the type to be furnished shall meet the requirements of ASTM A709-50.

All structural steel plates and shapes used in areas subject to tensile stress as designated in the contract documents, or as listed herein, shall meet the minimum Charpy V-Notch toughness requirements. The Contractor shall submit an RFI to the DCES in the event of uncertainty as to the state of stress in a component. The following Structural Steel shall meet the minimum notch toughness requirements:

- Tension flanges and webs of girders, floorbeams and stringers, floorbeam and stringer connection angles, splice plates and lateral gusset plates welded to members in areas subject to tensile stress.
- Curved girder diaphragms
- Truss chords and diagonals, floorbeam and stringer connection angles, cantilever brackets, splice plates, and vertical gusset plates.
- Components used to repair or reinforce existing steel if the components are subjected to tensile stress.
- Plates and shapes of specified thickness which are subject to design tensile stress used in overhead sign structures in accordance with §644-2.01.

**TESTS.** Physical (mechanical) tests and chemical analysis shall be conducted in accordance with the applicable ASTM designation, except as modified herein.

**Charpy V-Notch (CVN) Testing.** Material sampling shall be performed in accordance with ASTM A673 Standard Specification for Sampling Procedure for Impact Testing of Structural Steel. Testing methodology and reporting will be in accordance with ASTM A370 Standard Test Methods and Definitions for Mechanical Testing of Steel Products. Minimum energy values and testing frequency shall be based on whether the components are fracture-critical or not. For material that is required to be shop inspected, Mill Test Reports (MTRs) shall be provided to the shop inspector, for forwarding to the DCES. For material that is not required to be shop inspected, Mill Test Reports (MTRs) shall be provided to the Engineer.

**Fracture-Critical Members (FCM).** Testing frequency and CVN toughness values will be provided in accordance with the requirements of Section 904 of the SCM. If the ASTM material specification for Temperature Zone 2 has a toughness requirement that differs from the SCM minimums, then the higher value will govern.

**Non-FCM Material.** The minimum toughness values will be in accordance with the ASTM specification for the given material, Temperature Zone 2. Testing shall be at the “H” frequency. For steels where the CVN toughness is not specified in ASTM, minimum CVN values will depend on yield stress, High Performance designation and plate thickness, as shown in Table 715-01-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yield Stress (ksi)/ Performance Designation</th>
<th>Plate thickness (in.)</th>
<th>Min Energy (ft-lbs)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>below 50</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>15 @ 40°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>To 2 incl.</td>
<td>15 @ 40°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Over 2 to 4</td>
<td>20 @ 40°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPS 50</td>
<td>To 4 incl.</td>
<td>25 @ -10°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPS 70</td>
<td>To 4 incl.</td>
<td>25 @ -10°F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Basis of Acceptance.** Materials that are shop inspected by the Department will be accepted on the basis of conformance with the material requirements and traceability criteria in accordance with Section 508 of the SCM. Materials that are not shop inspected will be accepted on the basis of acceptable Mill Test Reports and a visual inspection by the Engineer. *Buy America requirements apply.*

**715-02 STEEL CASTINGS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for steel casting for highway bridges.

**GENERAL.** Steel castings shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A27. Unless otherwise specified, all steel castings shall be Grade 70-40, Class 1.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

**Fracture.** Test specimens shall show a fracture having a silky or fine granular structure throughout.

**Testing.** Additional supplemental testing, as noted in ASTM A27, may be required by the contract documents.

**Structural Defects.** Steel castings shall be true to pattern in form and dimensions, without sharp unfilleted angles, or corners, and shall be free of pouring faults, sponginess, cracks, blow holes and other defects in positions affecting their strength and value for the service intended.

Blow holes appearing upon finished castings shall be so located that a straight line laid in any direction will not cut a total length of cavity greater than 1 inch in any 12 inches, nor shall any single blow hole exceed 1 inch in any dimension or have an area greater than 1/2 square inch. Blow holes shall not have a depth injuriously affecting the strength of the casting as determined by the Deputy Chief Engineer (Structures). Minor defects which do not impair the strength may, with the approval of the Deputy Chief Engineer (Structures), be welded by an approved process. The defects shall be removed to solid metal by drilling, grinding, or air-carbon arc gouging followed by grinding. After welding, the castings shall be heat treated again if required by the approved repair procedure.

Castings which have been, or are being, welded without prior approval of the repair welding procedure will be rejected.

Large castings may be subjected to non-destructive tests if required by the Contract Documents.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance will be based upon shop inspection at the manufacturing plant by representatives of the Department, or on the basis of inspection by the Engineer. Certified copies of the results of the chemical and physical tests shall be submitted as required under the provisions of “Basis of Acceptance” in 715-01, Structural Steel. *Buy America Requirements Apply.*

**715-03 ALUMINUM CASTINGS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the requirements for various aluminum alloys and shapes.

**GENERAL.** Aluminum castings shall conform to the requirements of ASTM Specifications as shown in the following table, and as modified herein and by the plans and specifications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Commercial Specification Alloy &amp; Temper</th>
<th>ASTM Alloy &amp; Temper</th>
<th>ASTM Specification</th>
<th>Product</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

Section 700  
STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS (USC) May 1, 2020  
VOLUME 4
NOTE: 1. Where this material is required, castings shall be solution treated and aged to produce the following mechanical properties (Yield strength need not be determined unless ordered by the Deputy Chief Engineer (Technical Services)):
Ultimate Tensile Strength 25 ksi min.
Yield Strength (0.2 percent offset) 18 ksi min.
Elongation (measured with gage length of four times the diameter of the specimen.) 6 percent min.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Quality. The castings shall be of uniform quality and condition, free from cracks, blow holes, porous places, hard spots, or shrinkage defects which affect the suitability of the castings for their intended use. Before inspection the castings shall be smooth and clean.

Heat Treatment. Casting shall be heat treated in such a manner as to produce material which will conform to the properties specified herein with the approved uniformity.

Casting to be used as bridge railing posts shall be produced under radiographic control. This shall consist of radiographic examination of castings until proper foundry technique, which will produce castings consistently free from harmful internal defects, is established for each mold. Production castings shall be examined as necessary to ensure maintenance of satisfactory quality.

Tension test specimens shall be machined from integrally cast test coupons extending sufficiently from one side of the base of the posts to obtain a 0.35 inch diameter test specimen as defined in “Methods of Tension Testing of Metallic Materials” ASTM E8, with the exception that the radii at the ends of the reduced section shall not be less than 1/2 inch.

The method of test and determination of tensile properties shall be in accordance with ASTM E8. A minimum of one percent of the posts in any lot, but not less than one, shall be sampled for tensile testing. For the purpose of sampling, a lot shall consist of not more than 1000 pounds of clean castings when produced from a batch type furnace charged with one heat of ingot of known analysis or not more than 1 ton of clean castings when produced from one continuous furnace in not more than 8 consecutive hours.

If the results of any tensile test do not conform to the requirements prescribed, two additional tests shall be taken from the same group of castings, and the average of the three tests must meet the requirements.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. This material is accepted on the basis of a Material Certification as described in “Basis of Acceptance,” 715-01 except as follows, when the material is used in:

Bridge Railings. Accepted on the basis of shop inspection by the Department in accordance with Department directives.

Fencing. Accepted on the basis of samples secured in accordance with Department directives.
715-04 WROUGHT ALUMINUM

SCOPE. This specification covers the requirements for various aluminum alloys and shapes.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Physical & Chemical Requirements. Wrought aluminum shall conform to the requirements of ASTM specifications as shown in Table 715-04 and as modified herein and by the plans and specifications.

Each piece shall be marked with the manufacturer's name or trade mark and with alloy and temper designations in the manner described in the pertinent ASTM specifications.

When a clad material is specified, it shall be clad on both sides unless specified otherwise.

Mechanical Properties. When alloy 6061-T94 is required by the plans or specifications, it shall be defined as that temper which will produce in the wire the following mechanical properties after weaving:

- minimum ultimate tensile strength: 54 ksi
- minimum tensile yield strength: 47 ksi

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. This material will be accepted on the basis of a Material Certification except when this material is used in Bridge Railing when it will be accepted on the basis of shop inspection by the Department in accordance with Department directives, or Fencing when it will be accepted on the basis of samples received in accordance with Departmental directives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 715-04 PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL REQUIREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRODUCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheet and Plate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bars and Rod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extruded Bars and Rods and Shapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extruded Shapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawn Seamless Tube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extruded Tube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
715-05 IRON CASTINGS

SCOPE. This specification covers material requirements for iron castings.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Iron castings shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M 105, Class 30B or Class 35B, or ASTM A48, Class 30.

FABRICATION. Castings shall be true to pattern in form and dimensions, free from pouring faults, sponginess, cracks, blow holes and other defects at locations affecting their strength and value for the service intended. Castings shall be boldly filleted at angles and the arrises shall be sharp and perfect. Castings having blow holes plugged or filled with putty or cement of any kind will be rejected.

Grates, covers and curb boxes shall have continuous, full, and uniform bearing contact with their corresponding frames and shall be non-rocking when in place and under the influence of traffic or other loads. Methods that are permissible to achieve secure non-rocking fit between grates, covers and their corresponding frames are:

- Ground mating surfaces
- Machined and milled mating surfaces (horizontal and/or vertical).

All cast gratings, covers, frames and curb boxes shall be free of any coatings unless specified otherwise.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Iron castings conforming to the requirements of Standard Sheets “Cast Manhole Frames, Grates and Covers” and “Cast Frames and Curb Boxes and Welded Frames” will be accepted in accordance with the procedural directives of the Department. Buy America Requirements Apply.

715-06 STEEL FORGINGS

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Steel forgings shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A668 Class C (CH), F (FH), or other class approved by the DCES.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material will be in accordance with procedural directives of the Department. Buy America Requirements Apply.

715-07 PROOF LOADED IRON CASTINGS

SCOPE. This specification covers material and testing requirements for proof loaded iron castings.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Iron castings shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M306, except for gray iron may be class 30B or class 35B and ductile iron shall have a minimum yield strength of 50 ksi. Castings shall be true to pattern in form and dimensions, free from pouring faults, sponginess, cracks, blow holes and other defects at locations affecting their strength and value for the service intended, and shall not be galvanized.
Grates, covers and curb boxes shall have continuous, full, and uniform bearing contact with their corresponding frames and shall be non-rocking when in place and under the influence of traffic or other loads. Methods that are permissible to achieve secure non-rocking fit between grates, covers and their corresponding frames are:

- Ground mating surfaces
- Machined and milled mating surfaces (horizontal and/or vertical).

All gratings, covers, frames and curb boxes shall be free of any coatings unless specified otherwise. Castings shall be boldly filleted at angles, and the arrises shall be sharp and perfect. Castings having blow-holes plugged or filled with putty or cement of any kind will be rejected.

**Materials Details.** All dimensions, including specified tolerances, in the Material Details shall substantially comply with the dimensions specified on the relevant standard sheets. The class of gray iron and yield strength of ductile iron shall be clearly identified on the drawings.

**Testing Facility.** The Department will conduct the proof load testing for acceptance of the design.

**SAMPLES AND SUBMISSIONS.** The manufacturer/supplier shall provide the following to the Materials Bureau before any testing can begin:

- Two (2) copies of the Material Details for each iron casting to be approved
- Two (2) samples of each cast article to be load tested
- One (1) sample of corresponding approved frame, grate, or cover, and any nuts and bolts required for assembly
- Two (2) tension test specimens cast within an hour of casting each of the test samples and machined as per AASHTO M 105 Type B.

It is the manufacturer/supplier's responsibility to remove in an expedient manner all supplied material from the Department's premises after the tests are done.

**Failure Criteria.** The design of an iron casting will be rejected if the following conditions are not met:

**A. Permanent Set.** This criterion applies to cast iron grate and cover. The maximum permanent set in any article, measured relative to a fixed horizontal plane, shall not exceed the lesser of 1/8 inch or 1/150 of the clear opening.

**B. Cracks.** All articles will be inspected after the completion of each test. No part of any article shall break or have any cracks.

**Retests and Re-submissions.** If the dimensions of the article(s) do not comply with the dimensions given in the Material Details, either new article(s) or new Details shall be submitted at the manufacturer's option. Upon failure under proof loading no retests will be allowed. Complete new designs shall be submitted for further testing.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Material Details shall be prepared and submitted to the Director of Materials Bureau for approval. The articles will be proof-load tested in accordance to the Department's Test Method "Proof Loading of Cast Iron Frames, Grates, Covers and Curb Boxes", a copy of which may be obtained from the Director of Materials Bureau. After the proof-load tests are successful and the drawings are approved, the manufacturer's name, Material Details and approval date will be placed on the Department's Approved List.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Cast iron frames, grates, covers and curb boxes will be accepted at the project site based on the manufacturer's name appearing on the Approved List, conformance to the approved Material Details, and a Material Certification. Buy America Requirements Apply.

For each type of casting supplied, the following shall be provided to the Engineer:

A. Material Certification. The manufacturer or supplier shall provide certification that every piece of cast iron frame, grate, cover and curb box supplied was manufactured in accordance with these specifications and the approved Material Details.

B. Material Details. One copy of the approved Material Details, as referenced on the Approved List.

715-08 (VACANT)

715-09 MALLEABLE IRON CASTINGS

SCOPE. Malleable Iron Castings shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A47. The Grade shall be Grade 32510.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Castings shall be true to pattern in form and dimensions, free from pouring faults, sponginess, cracks, blow holes and other defects in positions affecting their strength and value for the service intended.

The casting shall be boldly filleted at angles and the arrises shall be sharp and perfect. The surface shall have a standard quality finish.

When galvanizing is required, it shall be in accordance with 719-01 Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type II. Particular care shall be exercised so as not to embrittle malleable castings when galvanizing. All galvanized castings shall meet specification requirements after galvanizing.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material will be in accordance with procedural directives of the Department. Buy America Requirements Apply.

715-10 (VACANT)

715-11 METAL BIN TYPE RETAINING WALL

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for metal bin-type retaining walls.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Base Metal. The base metal for all components except fasteners shall be manufactured by the open hearth, basic oxygen process or electric furnace process and shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M218. Base metal for the fasteners shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A307.

FABRICATION

Details. All members shall be so fabricated that members of the same nominal size shall be freely interchangeable. No drilling, punching or drifting to correct defects in manufacture will be permitted. Any units having holes improperly punched shall be replaced by the Contractor at no expense to the State.
The members in the wall shall conform to the gages, surface treatments and descriptions in Table 715-11, as well as the gages and dimensions shown in the plans. All materials receiving the Type IV surface treatment shall have a nominal zinc coating weight of 2.0 oz/sf such that the minimum check limits for the triple-spot and single-spot tests shall be 2.0 oz/sf and 1.8 oz/sf respectively.

**Configuration.** Walls shall consist of a series of pairs of columns, one column in each pair being in the plane of the wall face and the other column being in the plane of the rear of the wall, with the pair of columns spaced longitudinally with overlapping S-shaped facing and rear members (stringers) and transversely with overlapping U-shaped tie-members (spacers). All necessary bolts and appurtenances shall be furnished to form a continuous closed-face wall of connected bins.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The metal bin-type retaining wall members will be accepted on the basis of the Material Certification and the Engineer’s inspection. *Buy America Requirements Apply.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Gage</th>
<th>Surface Treatment</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Column</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>719-01 Type IV</td>
<td>Vertical Member, Front &amp; Back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column Cap</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>719-01 Type IV</td>
<td>Cover for front Column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stringer Stiffener</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>719-01 Type IV</td>
<td>Top flange return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stringer</td>
<td>16,14,12,10</td>
<td>719-01 Type IV</td>
<td>Horizontal Longitudinal members, front &amp; rear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting Channel</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>719-01 Type I</td>
<td>Connector, Stringer to Column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spacer</td>
<td>16,14,12</td>
<td>719-01 Type IV</td>
<td>Horizontal Transverse member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bottom Spacer</td>
<td>16,14,12</td>
<td>719-01 Type IV</td>
<td>Special bottom transverse member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Plate</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>719-01 Type I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/8 in dia. nuts</td>
<td>¼ in</td>
<td>719-01 Type II</td>
<td>All connections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/8 in dia. nuts</td>
<td></td>
<td>719-01 Type II</td>
<td>All connections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/8 in dia. Spring nuts</td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
<td>All connections</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

715-12 (VACANT)

715-13 PREFABRICATED ADJUSTMENT RINGS, FRAMES AND UTILITY VALVE RISERS FOR DRAINAGE UNITS, MANHOLES AND UTILITIES

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and fabrication of adjustment rings, frames and utility valve risers for drainage structures, manholes and utilities.

The adjustment rings, frames and utility valve risers shall consist of one of the following types unless otherwise approved by the Director, Materials Bureau:

**RINGS**
Type AR1 - Single Height Segmented Unit  
Type AR2 - Single Height - One Cut Unit  
Type AR3 - Single Height - Solid Unit

**FRAMES**
Type AF1 - Single Height Segmented Unit  
Type AF2 - Single Height Solid Unit

**UTILITY VALVE RISERS**
Type UVR1 - Single Height - Solid Ring Unit
Type UVF1 - Single Height - Solid Frame Unit

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS  All adjustment rings, frames and utility valve risers shall be fabricated from steel, iron castings, a combination of these two materials, or an alternative material or materials as approved by the Director of the Materials Bureau.

The steel used for fabrication of rings, frames and utility valve risers shall meet the requirements of ASTM A709-36, A108, A242 or equivalent. If cast iron is used, the cast iron units shall be iron castings meeting the requirements of 715-05, Iron Castings. All welding shall meet the requirements of the New York State Steel Construction Manual. All bolts, nuts, washers and threaded studs shall be stainless steel meeting the requirements of ASTM A240 or equivalent.

FABRICATION. All adjustment rings, frames and utility valve risers shall be designed to allow full bearing of the unit on the existing frame seat. Designs shall include a clamping device capable of securing the adjustment ring, frame or utility valve riser to the existing frame. Alternate methods of securing the rings, frames and utility valve risers to the existing frame shall be approved by the Director, Materials Bureau. All adjustment rings, frames and utility valve risers shall be reinforced to prevent bending during construction and routine service.

Steel rings, frames and utility valve risers shall be galvanized in accordance with 719-01 Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods. When steel rings, frames and utility valve risers contain no component parts which are less than 1/4 inch in thickness, they may be coated with a bituminous base or coal tar product and will not require galvanizing. Any alternate coating system shall be approved by the Director, Materials Bureau. Cast iron rings, frames and utility valve risers do not require any galvanizing, but may instead be coated with a bituminous based or coal tar product approved by the Director, Materials Bureau.

Rings

Type AR1 - Single Height Segmented Unit. This ring shall consist of two or more radial segments which may be adjusted to open and close the diameter of the ring. When fully expanded the ring shall bear firmly against the sidewalks and seat of the existing manhole frame.

Type AR2 - Single Height - One Cut Unit. This ring shall consist of a single circular unit which is cut through its circumference at one point. The ring shall include an adjusting device that shall enable the ring to be expanded to bear firmly against the sidewalks and seat of the existing manhole frame.

Type AR3 - Single Height - Solid Unit. This ring shall consist of a solid unit with no cuts or openings in its circumference. The diameter of this ring is not field adjustable, unless approved by the Materials Bureau.

Frames

Type AF1 - Single Height Segmented Unit. This frame shall consist of a rectangular, segmented unit which is adjustable for length and width. When expanded the frame shall bear firmly against the sidewalks and seat of the existing frame.

Type AF2 - Single Height Solid Unit. This frame shall consist of a solid rectangular unit with fixed lengths and widths.

Utility Valve Risers

Type UVR1 - Single Height Solid Ring Unit. This unit shall consist of a solid ring with no cuts or openings along its length.
**Type UVF1 - Single Height Solid Frame Unit.** This unit shall consist of a solid rectangular with fixed lengths and widths.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** The manufacturer or supplier shall prepare and submit Materials Details and the appropriate material in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the name of the manufacturer or supplier along with the drawing number and date assigned to the approved Material Details will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Contractor shall provide two copies of the approved Material Details to the Engineer as evidence of acceptability for the product at least 10 days prior to its use. *Buy America Requirements Apply.*

**715-14 HIGH STRENGTH BOLTS, NUTS AND WASHERS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the requirements for high-strength steel bolts, nuts and washers used for structural steel connections.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The bolts, nuts and washers shall conform to the provisions of ASTM A325, A563, & F436, respectively; and 715-01 except as modified herein.

**Bolt and Nut Dimensions.** Bolt and nut dimensions shall conform to the current requirements of ASME B18.2.6. Alternate fasteners which differ in dimensions from those specified by the ASME may be used provided that the body diameter and bearing areas under the head and nut, or their equivalent areas, are not less than those of the same nominal dimensions specified by the ASME, and that approval for the use is given by the DCES.

**Washer Dimensions.** Circular washers shall be flat and smooth and their nominal dimensions shall conform to the dimensions given in Table 715-14. Beveled washers for American Standard beams and channels shall be square or rectangular, shall have an average thickness of 5/16 inch, and shall conform to the dimensions and taper in thickness given in Table 715-14.

**TESTS AND ACCEPTANCE.** Tests and acceptance of high strength bolts, nuts and washers will be as described in section 10 of the SCM. *Buy America Requirements Apply.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bolt Size</th>
<th>Nominal Outside Diam.,2</th>
<th>Nominal Diam. of hole</th>
<th>Thickness Min.</th>
<th>Thickness Max.</th>
<th>Min. Side Dimensions</th>
<th>Slope, or Taper in Thickness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1 1/16</td>
<td>17/32</td>
<td>0.097</td>
<td>0.177</td>
<td>1 3/4</td>
<td>1:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/8</td>
<td>1 5/16</td>
<td>21/32</td>
<td>0.122</td>
<td>0.177</td>
<td>1 3/4</td>
<td>1:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>1 1/32</td>
<td>13/16</td>
<td>0.122</td>
<td>0.177</td>
<td>1 3/4</td>
<td>1:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/8</td>
<td>1 3/4</td>
<td>15/16</td>
<td>0.136</td>
<td>0.177</td>
<td>1 3/4</td>
<td>1:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1/16</td>
<td>0.136</td>
<td>0.177</td>
<td>1 3/4</td>
<td>1:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/8</td>
<td>2 1/4</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
<td>0.136</td>
<td>0.177</td>
<td>2 1/4</td>
<td>1:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/4</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td>1 3/8</td>
<td>0.136</td>
<td>0.177</td>
<td>2 1/4</td>
<td>1:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 3/8</td>
<td>2 3/4</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>0.136</td>
<td>0.177</td>
<td>2 1/4</td>
<td>1:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 5/8</td>
<td>0.136</td>
<td>0.177</td>
<td>2 1/4</td>
<td>1:6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 715-15 Pins and Rollers

**SCOPE.** This specification covers steel pins and rollers used in bridge construction.

**GENERAL.** The material furnished for pins and rollers shall conform to the following requirements:

- Pins and rollers designed for a minimum yield stress of 36 ksi shall conform to ASTM A668, Class D
- Pins and rollers designed for a minimum yield stress of 50 ksi shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A668, Class F
- Any pin or roller greater than 12 inches in diameter shall be furnished in conformance with the requirements of ASTM A668, Class G.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Tests are to be performed as required in the applicable ASTM Designation. Certified copies of the results of the specified tests are to be furnished as described in “Basis of Acceptance,” of 715-01 Structural Steel. Acceptance of material will be based on satisfactory test results and dimensional compliance with the contract documents. *Buy America Requirements Apply.*

### 715-16 Stainless Steel Connecting Products

**SCOPE.** This specification covers stainless steel bolts, nuts, washers, and set screws used in the construction of sign structures.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Stainless steel connecting products shall conform to the following:

- Hex bolts designed for 85 ksi minimum yield strength shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A193, Grade B6 (AISI 410).
- Nuts for Grade B6 bolts shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A194, Grade B6 (AISI 416).
- Hex bolts and U-bolts designed for 30 ksi minimum yield strength shall be either AISI 304 or 305 stainless steel conforming to the requirements of ASTM A193, Grade B8 or Grade B8P, Class 1.
- Hex bolts and U-bolts designed for 100 ksi minimum yield strength shall be either AISI 304 or 305 stainless steel conforming to the requirements of ASTM A193, Grade B8 or Grade B8P, Class 2.
- Nuts for Grade B8 or Grade B8P bolts shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A194, Grade B8 (AISI 304).
- Flat washers shall be circular, flat, smooth, and fabricated from material conforming to the requirements of ASTM A167 (AISI 302B (UNS S30215) or ASTM A240 (AISI 302 or 304 (UNS S30200 or S30400))).
- Lock washers shall be fabricated in accordance with ANSI B18.21.1 from material conforming to the requirements of ASTM A313 (AISI 302, 304, or 305 (UNS S30200, S30400, or S30500)) with a hardness Rc 35-43.
- Set screws shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A320, Grade B8F (AISI 303).
Cleaning. Following heat treatment, all stainless steel connecting products shall be descaled and cleaned in accordance with the requirements of ASTM A380. After cleaning and descaling the stainless steel hardware shall be passivated. Stainless steel hardware with a black or speckled rusty appearance is acceptable provided the discoloration does not run when installed.

Delivery. All stainless steel connecting products shall be delivered to the project site no less than 30 days prior to utilization of the hardware to allow ample time for sampling and testing.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. Stainless steel connecting products will be sampled at the project site or supply location. Sampling and testing will be in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Stainless steel connecting products will be accepted in stock-lot quantities at the project site or supplier's location in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. Grade B8 bolts less than 3/8 inch in diameter will be accepted based on chemical properties only. Buy America Requirements Apply.

715-17 STEEL SHEETING

SCOPE. This section provides the material and quality requirements for steel sheeting.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Steel sheeting shall meet the requirements of §715-01 Structural Steel and the requirements of ASTM A328M.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. This material will be accepted on the basis of a material certification as described in Basis of Acceptance §715-01 Structural Steel. Buy America Requirements Apply to all permanent and interim applications. Temporary steel which is not removed after completion of the work is considered a permanent application.

715-18 SOLDIER PILES

SCOPE. This section provides the material and quality requirements for soldier piles.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Soldier piles shall meet the requirements of §715-01 Structural Steel except that the use of ASTM A588M is prohibited.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. This material will be accepted on the basis of a material certification as described in Basis of Acceptance 715-01 Structural Steel. Buy America Requirements Apply to all permanent and interim applications. Temporary steel which is not removed after completion of the work is considered a permanent application.

715-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

SECTION 716 - BEARINGS AND EXPANSION PLATES

(1ast Revised May, 2016)

716-01 THRU 716-02 (VACANT)

716-03 POLYETHER URETHANE STRUCTURAL ELEMENT

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for Polyether Urethane Structural Element.
GENERAL. The polyether urethane structural element used in the construction of disc-design bearings shall be molded from a polyether urethane compound.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The physical properties of the polyether urethane shall conform to the requirements of Table 716-03-1.

**TABLE 716-03-1 PHYSICAL REQUIREMENTS OF POLYETHER URETHANE STRUCTURAL ELEMENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physical Property</th>
<th>ASTM Test Method</th>
<th>Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hardness, Type D Durometer</td>
<td>D2240</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Stress, psi¹</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At 100% elongation</td>
<td>D412</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At 300% elongation³</td>
<td></td>
<td>3750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Strength, psi¹</td>
<td>D412</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimate Elongation, %¹</td>
<td>D412</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression Set¹, %²</td>
<td>D395</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES:  
1. 10% deviation from specified values is permissible.  
2. 22 hours at 158°F  
3. Only required if 300% is attained

**SAMPLING AND TESTING.**

**TABLE 716-03-2 POLYETHER URETHANE SAMPLING AND TESTING REQUIREMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Performed By</th>
<th>Samples Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physical Properties Polyether Urethane Rotational Element (except compression set)</td>
<td>Materials Bureau</td>
<td>One 10 x 15 inch sheet of polyether urethane material (thickness of 1/16 - 1/8 inch) per lot.¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression Set of Polyether Urethane Rotation Element</td>
<td>Materials Bureau</td>
<td>One 4 x 4 inch sheet of polyether urethane material, molded or cut to the thickness requirements of ASTM D395, Method B.²</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES:  
1. All submitted sample sheets of polyether urethane material shall be certified by the bearing manufacturer as having been taken from the same batch of polyether urethane material as was used in the actual production bearings.  
2. The manufacturer shall have the option of supplying four (4) die cut specimens in accordance with ASTM D395, Method B. All submitted specimens of polyether urethane material shall be certified by the bearing manufacturer as having been taken from the same batch of polyether urethane material as was used in the actual production bearings.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Polyether Urethane Structural Element will be considered for acceptance in lot quantities in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

716-04 POLYTETRAFLUOROETHYLENE SHEET AND STRIP

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) sheet and strip.

GENERAL. Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) sheet and strip shall be manufactured from pure virgin (not processed) unfilled TFE resin; or from TFE resin uniformly blended with either 15% glass fiber or 25% carbon (maximum filler, percent by weight).
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Finished PTFE sheet and strip shall be resistant to all acids, alkalis and petroleum products, stable at temperatures from -360°F to +500°F, non-flammable, non-absorbing of water, and shall conform to the physical requirements of Table 716-04-1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physical Property</th>
<th>ASTM Test Method</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unfilled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimate Tensile Strength, psi</td>
<td>D638M</td>
<td>2800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimate Elongation, %</td>
<td>D638M</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific Gravity</td>
<td>D792</td>
<td>2.13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SAMPLING AND TESTING. One 10 x 15 inch sheet of PTFE material per lot as per 716-07. Single sheets of PTFE Material from which the bearing has been fabricated may be submitted to the Materials Bureau for consideration of multiple lot acceptance, provided that the thickness of the material does not vary from lot to lot. All submitted sample sheets shall be certified by the bearing manufacturer as having been taken from the same batch of PTFE material as was used in the actual production of bearings.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) sheet and strip will be considered for acceptance in lot quantities in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

716-05 SELF-LUBRICATING BRONZE PLATES

SCOPE. This specification covers requirements for self-lubricating bronze plates used as bearing plates in expansion bearings.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Self-lubricating bronze shall conform to the requirements of ASTM B22, Alloy 911.

The lubricant shall be of the solid type and shall consist of graphite, metallic substances having lubricating properties and a lubricating binder. Materials which do not have lubricating qualities or promote chemical or electrolytic reactions, shall not be acceptable. The lubricant shall be integrally molded and compressed into the lubrication recesses with hydraulic pressure of at least five times the maximum design unit loading to form a dense, non-plastic lubricant which shall project above the surface of the bronze a minimum of 0.005 inch.

The recesses for the lubricant shall consist of annular rings with or without central circular recess with a depth at least equal to the width of the ring or diameter of hole for proper containment of lubricant. The recesses shall be arranged in a geometrical pattern such that successive rows shall overlap in the direction of motion and the distance between extremities of recesses shall be closer in the direction of motion than that perpendicular to motion. The entire bearing area of all surfaces which have provision for motion shall be lubricated by means of these lubricant filled recesses. The total area of these recesses shall comprise not less than 25 percent nor more than 35 percent of the total bearing area of the plate.

The bearing plates shall be furnished to the sizes and shapes specified on the plans. The maximum permissible variation in the specified thickness of bronze plates shall be ± 0.01 inch. The lay of the tool marks shall be in the direction of motion or shall be omnidirectional.

On flat faces the machined surface shall be flat to a tolerance of 0.0005 inches in each inch of length and width.

On curved faces the radius of the machined surface shall have the following tolerances:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surface</th>
<th>Positive tolerance</th>
<th>Negative tolerance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Concave</td>
<td>0.010 inch</td>
<td>Zero</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

211
Convex Surface: Zero 0.010 inch

The curved surface shall be machined to a tolerance of 0.0005 inches in each inch of length perpendicular to the circular section.

Surfaces of bronze plates in contact with machined surfaces of steel plates shall be machine finished in accordance with the requirements of the SCM, Section 6, Part 612 (When the SCM requires DCES approval, delete the term “DCES” and replace it with “the Regional Director.”). Machining shall be of the same surface roughness as that required for sliding bearings.

The coefficient of friction between the self-lubricating bronze plates and the steel plates in contact with them shall not exceed 0.10 when subjected to the maximum designed unit loading and also at twice the maximum design unit loading.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The manufacturer shall supply the Engineer with certification that the bronze plate was manufactured in accordance with this specification. This certification must be received by the Engineer prior to the placement of the bronze plate or any fabricated piece containing the bronze plate into any construction work.

**716-06 DISC-DESIGN STRUCTURAL BRIDGE BEARINGS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for disc-design structural bridge bearings. Bearings furnished under this specification shall adequately provide for the thermal expansion and contraction, rotation, camber changes, and creep and shrinkage of structural members, where applicable.

**GENERAL.** Disc-design structural bridge bearings shall consist of a polyether urethane structural element (disc) confined by upper and lower steel bearing plates. The bearings shall be equipped with a shear restriction mechanism to prevent movement of the disc.

Disc-design structural bridge bearings shall be supplied as fixed bearings; guided expansion bearings; and non-guided expansion bearings as designated by the Contract Documents.

**Fixed Bearings.** Fixed bearings shall allow rotation but no longitudinal or transverse movement in the bearing plane.

**Guided Expansion Bearings.** Guided expansion bearings shall allow rotation and longitudinal movement in the bearing plane; transverse movement shall be restricted. To allow longitudinal movement, the upper steel bearing plate shall be faced with polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) sheet and support a sliding steel top bearing plate. The mating surface of the sliding steel top bearing plate shall be faced with polished stainless steel. To restrict transverse movement, either a guide bar or keyway system shall be used. If required, the guide bar or keyway systems and their mating steel surfaces shall be faced with strips of either PTFE or PTFE-stainless steel.

**Non-Guided Expansion Bearings.** Non-guided expansion bearings shall allow rotation, longitudinal, and transverse movement in the bearing plane. To allow longitudinal and transverse movement, the upper steel bearing plate shall be faced with polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) sheet and support a sliding steel top bearing plate. The mating surface of the sliding steel top bearing plate shall be faced with polished stainless steel.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** All material shall be new and unused, with no reclaimed material incorporated in the finished bearing.

**Polyether Urethane Structural Element.** The polyether urethane structural element shall meet the requirements of 716-03.
**Steel.** All steel except stainless steel components of the bearing shall conform to the requirements of the type of steel designated on the Contract Plans and applicable provisions of the New York State Steel Construction Manual.

**Stainless Steel.** Stainless steel shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A167, or ASTM A240, Type 304. Stainless steel in contact with PTFE shall be polished to a No. 8, bright mirror finish. The minimum thickness of the stainless steel shall be 0.05 inches.

**Polytetrafluoroethylene Sheet and Strip.** Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) sheet and strip shall meet the requirements of 716-04.

**FABRICATION.** The finish of the mold used to produce the bearing elements shall conform to good machine shop practice. Every bearing shall have the Project Identification Number, NYSDOT Lot Number and individual bearing number indelibly marked with ink on a side that will be visible after erection.

The PTFE sheet shall be bonded to its grit blasted steel substrate using an epoxy resin adhesive under controlled factory conditions in accordance with the instructions of the adhesive manufacturer. Alternately, the PTFE sheet may be recessed into its steel substrate for one-half its thickness. The bearing manufacturer shall have the option of bonding recessed PTFE sheet.

All steel surfaces exposed to the atmosphere, except stainless steel surfaces and metal surfaces to be welded, shall be shop painted with one coat of an approved list product meeting 708-01 Structural Steel Paints Class 1. Prior to painting, the exposed steel surfaces shall be cleaned in accordance with the recommendations of the coating's manufacturer. Metal surfaces to be welded shall be given a coat of clear lacquer, or other protective coating approved by the Engineer, if exposure is to exceed three months prior to welding. The coating shall be removed at the time of welding. No painting will be done to these surfaces prior to the completion of welding.

Except as noted, all bearing surfaces of steel plates shall be finished or machined flat within 0.010 inch. Out-of-flatness greater than 0.010 inch on any plate shall be cause for rejection. The bottom surfaces of lower bearing plates (masonry plates) designed to rest on bearing pads shall not exceed an out-of-flatness value of 1/16 inch. Oxygen cut surfaces shall not exceed a surface roughness value of 1 mil, as defined by ANSI B46.1. Repair, when necessary, shall conform to the requirements of the New York State Steel Construction Manual (When the SCM requires DCES approval, delete the term DCES” and replace it with "the Regional Director).

The steel base pot of all bearings shall be either integrally machined or continuously welded to its bottom steel masonry plate. Unless otherwise approved by the Regional Director, all welding shall conform to, and all welders shall be qualified in accordance with the requirements of the New York State Construction Manual (When the SCM requires DCES approval, delete the term DCES and replace it with A the Regional Director).

Gross bearing dimensions shall have a tolerance of -0, +1/8 inch.

**PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS**

**Compression Strain.** The compression stress is based on the net area of the rotational element using the total overall diameter. The compression strain is measured as a percentage of the original thickness of the rotational element. A load equal to 150% of the bearing's design capacity shall first be applied to seat the bearing components. The 150% load shall then be gradually reduced, over a time period of 30 to 90 seconds, to a pre-load equal to 3% of the bearing's design capacity. Each compression strain shall be recorded relative to the initial 3% pre-load deflection, one minute after the desired stress level has been reached, on deflectometers, at four locations 90º apart on the perimeter of the bearing.

The test results will be evaluated as follows:
• The bearing will be visually examined both during and after the test. Any resultant visual defects (such as extruded elastomer, damaged seals, or cracked steel) shall be cause for rejection
• Non-uniform compression deflections at a desired stress level shall be cause for rejection
• The compression strain of each bearing shall conform to the following requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compression Stress (psi)</th>
<th>Compression Strain, Max. %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3000</td>
<td>11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4000</td>
<td>13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5000</td>
<td>16.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sliding Coefficient of Friction.** For all guided and non-guided expansion disc-design bearings, the coefficients of friction shall be measured at the bearing's design capacity, on the fifth and fiftieth cycles, at a sliding speed of 1 inch per minute.

The sliding coefficient of friction shall be calculated as the horizontal load required to maintain continuous sliding of one bearing, divided by the bearing's design capacity vertical load. The vertical load shall have been applied continuously for a minimum of 12 hours prior to testing.

The test results will be evaluated as follows:

• The measured sliding coefficients of friction shall not exceed 75% of the maximum design coefficient of friction
• The bearing will be visually examined both during and after the test. Any resultant visual defects (such as bond failure, physical destruction, cold flow of PTFE, or damaged components) shall be cause for rejection.

**Rotation.** For all disc-design bearings, the polyether urethane element shall be capable of maintaining its initial uniform contact with the steel bearing plates throughout a rotation range of 0.02 radians under a compressive load equal to 150% of the design capacity of the bearing.

The test results will be evaluated as follows:

• The bearing will be visually examined both during and after the test. Any resultant visual defects shall be cause for rejection
• Continuous and uniform contact between the polyether urethane element and bearing plates, and between the sliding steel top and upper bearing plates shall be maintained for the duration of the test. Any observed lift-off shall be cause for rejection.

**DRAWINGS.** The Contractor shall submit detailed shop drawings, drawn by the Manufacturer only, in conformance with the applicable requirements of the New York State Steel Construction Manual, for approval by the Regional Director prior to the start of fabrication.

In addition to the above requirements, the Manufacturer shall note the following on the shop drawings.

• The total quantity of each kind of disc-design bearing required, i.e., fixed, guided expansion, or non-guided expansion, grouped first according to type (load range) and then by actual design capacity
• The thickness and plan area of the polyether urethane structural elements required
• The maximum design coefficient of friction as noted on the Contract Plans
• The type of PTFE sheet (filled or unfilled) and, if applicable, the type and amount (by weight) of filler
The type(s) of steel(s) to be used
If applicable, any welding process used in the bearing manufacture that does not conform to the approved processes of New York State Steel Construction Manual shall be clearly described and detailed.

The location of the fabrication plant
The Manufacturer's name and the name of the manufacturer's representative who will be responsible for coordinating production, inspection, sampling and testing with the Materials Bureau.

The Contractor shall also provide the Materials Bureau with written notification thirty (30) days prior to the start of bearing fabrication. This notification shall include all of the information required as identified above. A copy of this notification shall be sent to the Regional Director.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. The manufacturer shall furnish the required number of samples to perform testing in accordance with Table 716-06-3.

Lot Size. Sampling, testing and acceptance consideration will be made on a lot basis. A lot shall be defined as those bearings presented for inspection at a specific time or date. A lot shall be further defined as the smallest number of bearings as determined by the following criteria:

- A lot shall not exceed a single contract or project quantity
- A lot shall not exceed 25 bearings
- A lot shall consist of those bearings that can be manufactured with polyether urethane rotation elements from one batch of polyether urethane material. The mass of one batch shall not exceed 450 lbs.
- A lot shall consist of those bearings of the same type, regardless of load capacity. Bearing types shall be fixed type bearings or expansion type bearings. Guided and non-guided expansion bearings will be considered as a single type.

Schedule. The manufacturer shall complete the required testing and determine compliance with this specification before submitting the lot(s) for inspection, sampling and acceptance consideration. A minimum of thirty (30) days shall be allowed for the Department's inspection, sampling and testing of production bearings and component materials.

Sampling Method. The manufacturer shall select, at random, the required sample bearing(s) from the completed lots of bearings for testing by the manufacturer.

The Department's representative shall select, at random, the required sample bearing(s) from completed lots of bearings, and samples of the polyether urethane and the PTFE materials for testing by the Materials Bureau. All samples shall be taken in accordance with the Department's written instructions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Performed By</th>
<th>Samples Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rotation</td>
<td>Manufacturer</td>
<td>One production bearing per lot1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient of Friction</td>
<td>Manufacturer</td>
<td>One production bearing per lot1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression Strain</td>
<td>Materials Bureau</td>
<td>Three production bearings per lot 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTES:
1. Sample production bearings of such size that cannot be tested by the manufacturer at 150% design capacity for rotation shall be tested at actual design capacity. Bearings which are tested at actual design capacity will be tested at that capacity because it is not possible, or not practical in the Department's opinion to test them at a higher capacity. Therefore, bearings tested at 150% design capacity which are rejected, will not be retested below 150% design capacity for the purpose of rendering such bearings acceptable. Sample production bearings that cannot be tested by the manufacturer at their actual design capacity for rotation and/or friction shall be tested by an outside laboratory selected by the Materials Bureau. The Manufacturer shall assume the cost of this testing and submit the certified test results to the Materials Bureau.
2. Bearings with load capacities greater than 600 kip will be tested by an outside laboratory approved by the Materials Bureau. The Department will assume the cost of this testing. The Contractor shall be responsible for transportation, scheduling and related costs. All bearings will be made available for return to the Contractor.

Finish and Accessories. All exterior surfaces of sampled production bearings shall be smooth and free from irregularities or protrusions that might interfere with testing procedures.

Basis of Acceptance. Acceptance of Disc Bearings will be based on the manufacturer’s name appearing on the Department’s Approved List for Disc Bearings (716-06). Bearings will be considered for acceptance in project lot quantities, or portions thereof, at the manufacturing site in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

716-07 POT-DESIGN STRUCTURAL BRIDGE BEARINGS

Scope. This specification covers the material requirements for pot-design structural bridge bearings. Bearings furnished under this specification shall adequately provide for the thermal expansion and contraction, rotation, camber changes, and creep and shrinkage of structural members, where applicable.

General. Pot-design structural bridge bearings shall be supplied as fixed bearings; guided expansion bearings; and non-guided expansion bearings as designated by the Contract Documents.

Fixed Bearings. Fixed bearings shall allow rotation but no longitudinal or transverse movement in the bearing plane. Fixed bearings shall consist of an elastomeric rotational element, confined and sealed by a steel piston and steel base pot.

Guided Expansion Bearings. Guided expansion bearings shall allow rotation and longitudinal movement in the bearing plane; transverse movement shall be restricted. Guided expansion bearings shall consist of an elastomeric rotational element, confined and sealed by a steel piston and steel base pot. To allow longitudinal movement, the upper surface of the steel piston shall be faced with polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) sheet and support a sliding steel top bearing plate. The mating surface of the sliding steel bearing plate shall be faced with polished stainless steel. To restrict transverse movement,
either a guide bar or keyway system shall be used. If required, the guide bar or keyway systems and their mating steel surfaces shall be faced with strips of either PTFE or PTFE-stainless steel.

**Non-Guided Expansion Bearings.** Non-guided expansion bearings shall allow rotation, longitudinal, and transverse movement in the bearing plane. Non-guided expansion bearings shall consist of an elastomeric rotational element, confined and sealed by a steel piston and steel base pot. To allow longitudinal and transverse movement, the upper surface of the steel piston shall be faced with polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) sheet and support a sliding steel top bearing plate. The mating surface of the sliding steel bearing plate shall be faced with polished stainless steel.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** All material shall be new and unused, with no reclaimed material incorporated in the finished bearing.

**Elastomeric Rotational Element.** The elastomeric rotational element used in the construction of potdesign bearings shall contain only virgin crystallization resistant polychloroprene (neoprene) or virgin natural polyisoprene (natural rubber) as the raw polymer. The physical properties of neoprene and natural rubber used in these bearings shall conform to ASTM or AASHTO requirements, with modifications as noted, in Table 716-07-1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elastomeric Compound</th>
<th>ASTM Requirement</th>
<th>AASHTO Standard Specifications for Bridge</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neoprene</td>
<td>D2000, Line Call Out M2BC517A14B34</td>
<td>Section 2.25.2, Materials, 50 Durometer Hardness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Rubber</td>
<td>D2000, Line Call Out M4AA517A13B33</td>
<td>Section 2.25.2, Materials, 50 Durometer Hardness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTES:**
1. The Shore A Durometer hardness shall be 50±10 points.
2. Samples for compression set tests shall be prepared using a Type 2 die. The compression set of the neoprene specimens shall not exceed 35%. The compression set of the natural rubber specimens shall not exceed 25%.
3. For the purpose of determining conformance with these specifications, an observed or calculated value shall be rounded off to the nearest 10 psi for tensile strength, to the nearest 10% for elongation, and to the nearest 1% for the change in aged tensile and aged elongation. Hardness and aged hardness shall be rounded off to the nearest point.

**Sealant.** If used, the type of sealant between the steel base pot and the top steel bearing plate shall be as recommended by the Manufacturer.

**Sealing Rings.** The sealing rings between the steel piston and the elastomeric rotational element shall be brass formed to the size recommended by the Manufacturer.

**Steel.** All steel except stainless steel components of the bearing shall conform to the requirements of the type of steel designated on the Contract Plans and applicable provisions of the New York State Steel Construction Manual (When the SCM requires DCES approval, delete the term DCES and replace it with the Regional Director).

**Stainless Steel.** Stainless steel shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A167, or ASTM A240, Type 304. Stainless steel in contact with PTFE sheet shall be polished to a No. 8. bright mirror finish. The minimum thickness of the stainless steel shall be 0.050 inch.

**Polytetrafluoroethylene Sheet and Strip.** Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) sheet and strip shall meet the requirements of 716-04.
FABRICATION. The finish of the mold used to produce the elastomeric rotational elements shall conform to good machine shop practices. Every bearing shall have the Contract D#, Project Identification Number, NYS DOT Lot Number and individual bearing number indelibly marked with ink on a side that will be visible after erection.

The PTFE shall be bonded to its grit blasted steel substrate using an epoxy resin adhesive under controlled factory conditions in accordance with the instructions of the adhesive manufacturer. Alternately, the PTFE sheet may be recessed into its steel substrate for one-half its thickness. The bearing manufacturer shall have the option of bonding recessed PTFE sheet.

All steel surfaces exposed to the atmosphere, except stainless steel surfaces and metal surfaces to be welded shall be shop painted with one coat of coal-tar epoxy. Coal-tar epoxy paint shall meet the requirements of SPC Paint Specification No. 16, and be applied at a minimum wet film thickness of 10 mils. Prior to painting, the exposed steel surfaces shall be cleaned with the recommendations of the coating's manufacturer. Metal surfaces to be welded shall be given a coat of clear lacquer, or other protective coating approved by the Engineer, if exposure is to exceed three months prior to welding. The coating shall be removed at the time of welding.

Except as noted, all bearing surfaces of steel plates shall be finished or machined flat within 0.010 inch. Out-of-flatness greater than 0.010 inch on any plate shall be cause for rejection. The bottom surface of lower bearing plates (masonry plates) designed to rest on bearing pads shall not exceed an out-of-flatness value of 1/16 inch. Oxygen cut surfaces shall not exceed a surface roughness value of 1 mil, as defined by ANSI B46.1. Repair, when necessary shall conform to the requirements of the New York State Steel Construction Manual.

The steel base pot of all bearings shall be either integrally machined or continuously welded to its bottom steel masonry plate. Unless otherwise approved by the Regional Director, all welding shall conform to, and all welders shall be qualified in accordance with, the requirements of the New York State Steel Construction Manual (When the SCM requires DCES approval, delete the term DCES and replace it with the Regional Director).

Gross bearing dimensions shall have a tolerance of -0, +1/8 inch.

PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS

Sliding Coefficient of Friction. For all guided and non-guided expansion type pot-design bearings, the sliding coefficients of friction shall be measured at the bearing's design capacity, on the fifth and fiftieth cycles, at a sliding speed of 1 inch per minute.

The sliding coefficient of friction shall be calculated as the horizontal load required to maintain continuous sliding of one bearing, divided by the bearing's design capacity vertical load. The vertical load shall have been applied continuously for a minimum of 12 hours prior to testing.

The test results will be evaluated as follows:

- The measured sliding coefficients of friction shall not exceed 75% of the maximum design coefficient of friction
- The bearing will be visually examined both during and after the test. Any resultant visual defects (such as bond failure, physical destruction, cold flow of PTFE, or damaged bearing components) shall be cause for rejection.

Rotation. For all pot-design bearings, the elastomeric rotational element shall be capable of maintaining its initial uniform contact with the steel piston and steel base pot throughout a rotation range of 0.02 radians, under a compressive load equal to 150% of the design capacity of the bearing.

The test results will be evaluated as follows:

- The bearing will be visually examined both during and after the test. Any resultant defects shall be cause for rejection
• The sole plate, top bearing plate, and steel piston shall maintain continuous and uniform contact for the duration of the test. Any observed lift-off will be cause for rejection.

DRAWINGS. The Contractor shall submit detailed shop drawings, drawn by the Manufacturer only, in conformance with the applicable requirements of the New York State Steel Construction Manual, for approval by the Regional Director prior to the start of the fabrication. (When the SCM requires DCES approval, delete the term DCES and replace it with the Regional Director).

In addition to the above requirements, the Manufacturer shall note the following on the shop drawings:

• The total quantity of each kind of pot-design bearing required, (i.e. fixed, guided expansion, or nonguided expansion), grouped first according to type (load range) and then by actual design capacity
• The thickness and plan area of the elastomeric rotational elements and the internal diameters of the steel base pots required
• The maximum design coefficient of friction as noted on the Contract Plans
• The type of PTFE sheet (filled or unfilled) and, if applicable, the type and amount (by weight) of Filler.
• The type(s) of steel(s) to be used
• If applicable, any welding process used in the bearing manufacture that does not conform to the approved processes of the New York State Steel Construction Manual shall be clearly described and detailed. (When the SCM requires DCES approval, delete the term DCES and replace it with the Regional Director).
• The location of the fabrication plant
• The Manufacturer's name and the name of the manufacturer's representative will be responsible for coordinating production, inspection, sampling and testing with the Materials Bureau.

The Contractor shall also provide the Materials Bureau with written notification thirty (30) days prior to the start of the bearing fabrication. This notification shall include all of the information required as identified above. A copy of this notification shall be sent to the Regional Director.

SAMPLING AND TESTING

Lot Size. Sampling, testing and acceptance consideration will be made on a lot basis. A lot shall be defined as the smallest number of bearings as determined by the following criteria:

• A lot shall not exceed a single contract or project quantity
• A lot shall not exceed 25 bearings
• A lot shall consist of those bearings of the same type, regardless of load capacity. Bearing types shall be fixed type bearings or expansion type bearings. Guided and non-guided expansion bearings will be considered a single type.

Sampling and Testing Requirements. The manufacturer shall furnish the required number and size of samples to perform testing in accordance with Table 716-07-3.

A minimum of thirty (30) days shall be allowed for the Department’s inspection, sampling and testing of production bearings and component materials.

All exterior surfaces of sampled production bearings shall be smooth and free from irregularities or protrusions that might interfere with testing procedures.

The manufacturer shall select, at random, the required sample bearing(s) from completed lots of bearings for testing by the manufacturer. The manufacturer shall complete the required testing and
determine compliance with this specification before submitting the lot(s) for inspection, sampling and acceptance consideration.

The Department's representative shall select, at random, samples of elastomeric and PTFE materials for testing by the Materials Bureau. All samples shall be taken in accordance with the Department's written instructions.

The Contractor shall assume the cost of transporting all samples from the place of manufacture to the Materials Bureau and return, or, if applicable, to the project site.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 716-07-3 POT BEARING SAMPLING AND TESTING REQUIREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Test</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient of Friction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical Properties of Elastomeric Rotational Element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical Properties of PTFE Sheet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTES:**
1. Sample production bearings of such size that cannot be tested by the manufacturer at 150% design capacity for rotation shall be tested at actual design capacity. Bearings which are tested at actual design capacity will be tested at that capacity because it is not possible, or not practical in the Department's opinion to test them at a higher capacity. Therefore, bearings tested at 150% design capacity which are rejected, will not be retested below 150% design capacity for the purpose of rendering such bearings acceptable. Sample production bearings that cannot be tested by the manufacturer at their actual design capacity for rotation and/or friction shall be tested by an outside laboratory selected by the Materials Bureau. The Manufacturer shall assume the cost of this testing and submit the certified test results to the Materials Bureau.
2. At the time of sampling the Department representative shall remove an elastomeric rotational element from a production bearing (not from a bearing that requires compressive strain testing) and forward it to the Materials Bureau for test. This testing will be destructive and the manufacturer shall, at the cost of the manufacturer, replace the sample elastomeric element.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of Pot Bearings will be based on the manufacturer’s name appearing on the Department’s Approved List for Pot Bearings (716-07). Bearings will be considered for acceptance in project lot quantities, or portions thereof, at the manufacturing site in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

**716-08 (VACANT)**

**716-09 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**716-10 PLAIN ELASTOMERIC BRIDGE BEARINGS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for plain elastomeric bridge bearings. Bearings furnished under this specification shall be adequate for the specified design load, and provide for the thermal expansion and contraction, rotation, camber changes, creep, and shrinkage of structural members.

**GENERAL.** Plain elastomeric bridge bearings (Type EP bearings) are composed entirely of elastomeric material. They may be used for both fixed and expansion applications without changes in details. The bearings will accommodate longitudinal, transverse, and rotational movements.

Elastomeric bridge bearings shall be designed in accordance with New York State Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** All materials shall be new with no reclaimed material incorporated in the finished bearing. The elastomeric compound used in the construction of these bearings shall contain only virgin crystallization resistant polychloroprene (neoprene) or virgin natural...
polyisoprene (natural rubber) as the raw polymer. The resulting product shall be free of porous areas, weak sections, bubbles, foreign matter, or other defects affecting serviceability. The physical properties of the cured elastomeric compound shall meet the requirements of Table 716-10-1.

The manufacturer shall certify that the elastomeric compound passes Grade 3 Low - Temperature Brittleness as determined by ASTM D746 - Brittleness Temperature of Plastics and Elastomers by Impact Procedure B.

**DRAWINGS.** Shop drawings are not required for Type EP bearings.

**FABRICATION.** The finish of the mold used to produce these bearings shall conform to good machine shop practice. Each bearing shall be marked in indelible ink or flexible paint. The marking shall consist of the manufacturer's name and location. The marking shall be placed on at least one side or face that will be visible after erection and, if possible, on two sides or faces.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 716-10-1 PROPERTIES OF ELASTOMERIC MATERIAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PHYSICAL PROPERTIES:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Strength, Min., (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultimate Elongation, Min., (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ASTM TEST METHOD</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NEOPRENE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NATURAL RUBBER</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTES:**
1. Tolerances for samples cut from finished parts have already been applied to each of these requirements. No greater tolerances will be allowed.
2. For the purpose of determining conformance with these specifications, an observed or calculated value shall be rounded off to the nearest 10 psi for tensile strength and to the nearest 10% for elongation.

The bearings shall be cast in a mold under pressure and heat to the specified thickness. They may be molded and vulcanized in large sheets and cut to size. Cutting shall not heat the material, and the finish produced shall be equal to a surface roughness average of 2 mils as defined by ANSI B46.1. A type EP bearing that has been cut from a larger piece of material and fabricated to the finished size by bonding or plying smaller pieces together will not be acceptable.

**Bearing Tolerances.** Finished elastomeric bearings shall conform to the design dimensions, with the tolerances listed in Table 716-10-2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 716-10-2 BEARING TOLERANCES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall Vertical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall Horizontal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position of Holes and Slots centerline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size of Holes, Slots and Internal Steel Plates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-0, +1/8 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-0, +1/4 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>±1/16 inch from centerline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-0, +1/16 inch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS**

**Compression Deflection.** The compression deflection of each bearing shall not exceed 10.0% of the design effective rubber thickness at a compressive load equal to the actual design load.

The compression deflection shall be determined by loading the bearings to 500 psi and 800 psi. At each load a deflection reading will be taken and the readings used to calculate the slope between the two loads. The slope shall then be used to determine the deflection at the bearing's design load.

The bearing and ambient temperature shall be 75° F ± 5° F at the time of testing.
NOTE: For conformance to this specification an observed or calculated value shall be rounded off (ASTM E29) to the nearest 0.1% for compression deflection.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of this material will be based upon the manufacturer’s name appearing on the Department’s Approved List for Elastomeric Bridge Bearings, and a manufacturer’s certification stating conformance with these specifications.

**716-11 STEEL LAMINATED ELASTOMERIC BRIDGE BEARINGS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for steel laminated elastomeric bridge bearings without external load plates. Bearings furnished under this specification shall be adequate for the specified design load, and provide for the thermal expansion and contraction, rotation, camber changes, creep, and shrinkage of structural members.

**GENERAL.** Steel laminated elastomeric bridge bearings (Type EL bearings) are composed of multiple layers of elastomeric material separated by steel plates. They may be used for both fixed and expansion applications without changes in details. The bearings will accommodate longitudinal, transverse, and rotational movements.

Elastomeric bridge bearings shall be designed in accordance with New York State Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS.** All materials shall be new with no reclaimed material incorporated in the finished bearing.

**Elastomeric Material.** The elastomeric compound used in the construction of these bearings shall contain only virgin crystallization resistant polychloroprene (neoprene) or virgin natural polyisoprene (natural rubber) as the raw polymer. The resulting product shall be free of porous areas, weak sections, bubbles, foreign matter, or other defects affecting serviceability. The physical properties of the cured elastomeric compound shall be determined by using samples taken from bearings and shall meet the requirements of Table 716-10-1.

The manufacturer shall certify that the elastomeric compound passes Grade 3 Low-Temperature Brittleness as determined by ASTM D746 - Brittleness Temperature of Plastics and Elastomers by Impact Procedure B.

**Internal Steel Plates.** Steel plates for internal laminates shall be rolled mild steel conforming to the requirements of ASTM A36M, ASTM 1008/A1008/M or ASTM 1011/A1011/M (Grade 33, 36 and 40).

**DRAWINGS.** Shop drawings are not required for Department approval unless a change in the details shown on the plans is proposed. When Department approved shop drawings are required, they shall be furnished in accordance with the Steel Construction Manual (SCM), Section 2, except that in place of two sets of Department approved drawings submitted to the designated Shop Inspection Agency, five sets of Department approved drawings shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau. The Contractor shall submit one copy of these drawings to the Engineer.

When the bearing details are identical to the plans, the Contractor shall be responsible for supplying shop drawings prepared by the Manufacturer. The Manufacturer shall certify that the bearings depicted on the drawings are in conformance with the contract documents. The Contractor shall submit one copy of the certified drawings to the Engineer and five copies of their certified drawings to the Materials Bureau. The Department's acceptance procedures will commence subsequent to receipt of these drawings. The Manufacturer shall note the following on all shop drawings:

- The Contract number, bridge identification number (BIN), feature carried/feature crossed, specification pay item no. and the type, size and quantity of bearings being produced.
• The design load (dead load plus live load) for each type and size bearing. If bearings of the same type and size are designed for differing load conditions the maximum design load shall be noted.
• The effective rubber thickness, typical laminate thickness, compressive area, shear area and shape factor.
• The Manufacturer's name, the location of the fabrication plant and the name and phone number of the Manufacturer's representative who will coordinate production, inspection, and sampling and testing with the Materials Bureau.
• The specification reference and grade of steel used.

FABRICATION. The finish of the mold used to produce these bearings shall conform to good machine shop practice. Each bearing shall be marked in indelible ink or flexible paint. The marking shall consist of the manufacturer's name, contract number, lot number, and individual bearing number. The marking shall be placed on at least one side or face that will be visible after erection and, if possible, on two sides or faces.

Type EL bearings shall be cast as a single unit in a mold and bonded and vulcanized under pressure and heat to the specified size and thickness. The internal steel plate(s) shall be commercially blast cleaned to a condition matching that of SSPC-Vis1, Pictorial Standards A SP6, B SP6 or C SP6, and cleaned of all oil or grease before bonding.

Bearing Tolerances. Finished elastomeric bearings shall conform to the design dimensions, with the tolerances listed in Table 716-11 and the following details:

| TABLE 716-11 BEARING TOLERANCES |
|-------------------------------|------------------|
| Dimension                     | Tolerance        |
| Overall Vertical              | -0, +1/8 inch    |
| Overall Horizontal            | -0, +1/4 inch    |
| Position of Holes and Slots centerline | ±1/16 inch from centerline |
| Size of Holes, Slots and Internal Steel Plates | -0, +1/16 inch |
| Edge Cover over External Steel Plates¹ | 1/8 inch min. |
| Bedding Surface (Top and Bottom) Over Internal Steel Plates | 1/4 inch min. |

NOTES:
1. No edge cover will be required over internal details that will not be exposed after erection (i.e.- vertical holes covered by bearing seats or flanges).
2. For 716-12, With external load plate(s) there shall be an effective rubber laminate between the load plate(s) and internal steel plate(s).

A. Internal Steel Plates. The internal steel plates shall be checked for parallelism by measuring the distance between each individual steel plate, and between the top or bottom edge of the bearing to the first adjacent steel plate. For rectangular bearings, take measurements for each plate along the vertical surface of the bearing, located 1 inch from the edge of the four alternate corners. For round bearings, measurements will be taken at four points located at 90° intervals around the perimeter. The smallest of the four measurements shall be recorded for each plate. The cumulative total of these measurements shall not be less than 75% of the design effective rubber thickness.

B. Elastomeric Laminae. The average thickness of individual layers of elastomer in steel laminated elastomeric bearings shall not vary more than ±20% of the design thickness and in no case exceed the design thickness by 1/8 inch. Average thickness will be calculated from measurements taken at four points, located at 1 inch from the edge of the four alternate corners for rectangular bearings and at 90° intervals around the perimeter for round bearings.
PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS

Compression Deflection. The compression deflection of each bearing shall not exceed 10.0% of the design effective rubber thickness at a compressive load equal to the actual design load.

The compression deflection shall be determined by loading the bearings to 500 psi and 800 psi. At each load a deflection reading will be taken and the readings used to calculate a slope between the two loads. The slope shall then be used to determine the deflection at the bearing’s design load.

The bearing and ambient temperature shall be 75°F ± 5°F at the time of testing.

Adhesion. The adhesion of the elastomer to the internal plates shall be demonstrated by subjecting the bearing to a compressive load equal to 150% of the actual design load. Upon visual examination, the bearing shall be free of visual defects.

The bearing and ambient temperature shall be 75°F ± 5°F at the time of testing.

NOTE: For conformance to this specification an observed or calculated value shall be rounded off (ASTM E29) to the nearest 0.1% for compression deflection.

SAMPLING AND TESTING

Lot Size. Sampling, testing and acceptance consideration will be made on a lot basis. A lot shall be defined as those bearings presented for inspection at a specific time or date. A lot shall be further defined as the smallest number of bearings as determined by the following criteria:

- A lot shall not exceed a single contract quantity.
- A lot shall consist of bearings with the elastomer being of the same dimensions and configuration.
- A lot shall consist of bearings produced in a continuous manner.

Procedure. The Department's representative shall select at random the required sample bearings from completed lots of bearings for testing by the Materials Bureau. Bearings with a plan area of less than 4 sf shall be tested for performance characteristics by the Materials Bureau. Bearings with a plan area greater than 4 sf shall be tested by an outside laboratory approved by the Materials Bureau. The Department shall assume the cost of testing the sampled bearings and the Contractor shall assume the responsibility and cost of transporting the sampled bearings from the place of manufacture to the testing laboratory. After testing, the Contractor has the responsibility for the cost of transporting the sampled bearings back to the bearing manufacturer or, if applicable, to the project site. All samples shall be taken and delivered for tests in accordance with the Department's written instructions. A minimum of thirty (30) days shall be allowed for inspection, sampling and testing by the Materials Bureau. This thirty days is exclusive of shipping time which is the Contractor's responsibility. The sampling procedure and test methods may be obtained from the Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer's name appearing on the Department's Approved List for Elastomeric Bridge Bearings and in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

716-12 ELASTOMERIC BRIDGE BEARINGS WITH EXTERNAL LOAD PLATES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for elastomeric bridge bearings with external load plates. Bearings furnished under this specification shall be adequate for the specified design load, and provide for the thermal expansion and contraction, rotation, camber changes, and creep and shrinkage of structural members.
GENERAL. Elastomeric bridge bearings with external load plates (Type EB bearings) are composed of either plain elastomeric or laminated elastomeric bearings with external steel load bearing plates. The steel load bearing plates are bonded to the elastomer by vulcanization during the primary molding process. These bearings may be used for both fixed and expansion applications with appropriate changes in details, as shown on the contract plans. The bearings will accommodate longitudinal, transverse, and rotational movements.

Elastomeric bridge bearings with external load plates shall be designed in accordance with New York State Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS. All materials shall be new with no reclaimed material incorporated in the finished bearing.

Elastomeric Material. The elastomeric compound used in the construction of these bearings shall contain only virgin crystallization resistant polychloroprene (neoprene) or virgin natural polyisoprene (natural rubber) as the raw polymer. The resulting product shall be free of porous areas, weak sections, bubbles, foreign matter, or other defects affecting serviceability. The physical properties of the cured elastomeric compound shall be determined by using samples taken from bearings and shall meet the requirements of Table 716-10-1.

The manufacturer shall certify that the elastomeric compound passes Grade 3 Low Temperature Brittleness as determined by ASTM D746 - Britteness Temperature of Plastics and Elastomers by Impact Procedure B.

Internal Steel Plates. Steel plates for internal laminates shall be rolled mild steel conforming to the requirements of ASTM A36, or ASTM 1008/A1008/M ASTM 1011/A1011/M (Grade 33, 36 and 40).

External Load Bearing Plates and Steel Backing Plates. External load bearing plates shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A36 and to the requirements of the Steel Construction Manual (SCM), unless otherwise provided for in the contract documents.

Except as noted, all bearing surfaces of external load plates shall be finished or machined flat within 0.010 inch. Out-of-flatness greater than 0.010 inch on any plate, except the bottom surface of the lower external plates (masonry plates), shall be cause for rejection. The bottom surface of lower external load plates (masonry plates) shall not exceed an out-of-flatness value of 1/16 inch. Oxygen cut surfaces shall not exceed a surface roughness average of 1 mil as defined by ANSI B46.1. Repairs shall conform to the requirements of the SCM.

External load bearing plate surfaces to be welded shall be painted with one coat of lacquer or other protective coatings approved by the Director of the Materials Bureau. This coating shall be removed before welding. All surfaces shall be cleaned and painted in accordance with §572, Structural Steel Paint System, Shop Applied. Color shall match that of the finish coat of other structural steel. For bearing used in conjunction with unpainted steel, the finish coat shall match “Weathered Brown” as defined by 708-05 Standard Paint Colors.

DRAWINGS. Department approval of shop drawings are not required unless a change in the details shown on the plans is proposed. When Department approved drawings are required, they shall be furnished in accordance with SCM, Section 2, except that in place of two sets of Department approved drawings submitted to the designated Shop Inspection Agency, five sets of Department approved drawings shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau. The Contractor shall submit one copy of these drawings to the Engineer.

When the bearing details are identical to the plans, the Contractor shall be responsible for supplying shop drawings prepared by the manufacturer. The manufacturer shall certify that the bearings depicted on the drawings are in conformance with the contract documents. The Contractor shall submit one copy of the certified drawings to the Engineer and five copies of their certified
drawings to the Materials Bureau. The Department's acceptance procedures will commence
subsequent to receipt of these drawings. The Manufacturer shall note the following on all shop
drawings:

- The Contract number, bridge identification number (BIN), feature carried/feature crossed,
specification pay item no. and the type, size and quantity of bearings being produced.
- The design load (dead load plus live load) for each type and size bearing. If bearings of the same
type and size are designed for differing load conditions the maximum design load shall be noted.
- The effective rubber thickness, typical laminate thickness, compressive area, shear area and
shape factor.
- The Manufacturer's name, the location of the fabrication plant and the name and phone number
of the manufacturer's representative who will coordinate production, inspection, and sampling
and testing with the Materials Bureau.
- The specification references and grades of steel to be used.
- All welding procedures to be used in the manufacture of the bearings.

WELDING PROCEDURE. The bearing manufacturer shall submit a Welding Procedure to the
Deputy Chief Engineer Structures (DCES) for each welding process to be used in the manufacture
of the bearings. No welding shall be performed until the manufacturer receives an approved
Welding Procedure.

FABRICATION. The finish of the mold used to produce these bearings shall conform to good
machine shop practice. Each bearing shall be marked in indelible ink or flexible paint. The
marking shall consist of the manufacturer's name, contract number, lot number, and individual
bearing number. The marking shall be placed on at least one side or face that will be visible after
erction and, if possible, on two sides or faces.

The bearings shall be cast as a single unit in a mold and bonded and vulcanized under pressure
and heat to the specified size and thickness. They shall be cast as a single unit with the external load
plate(s) bonded to the elastomer by vulcanization during the primary molding process. If internal
steel plate(s) are required, they shall be commercially blast cleaned to a condition matching that of
SSPC-Vis1, Pictorial Standards A SP6, B SP6 or C SP6, and cleaned of all oil or grease before
bonding.

During any welding, the temperature of the steel adjacent to the elastomer shall not exceed
200°F. Temperature shall be controlled by welding procedures and temperature indicating crayons,
or other devices approved by the Engineer. Unless otherwise approved by the DCES, all welding
shall conform to, and all welders shall be qualified in accordance with the requirements of the
SCM.

Bearing Tolerances. Finished elastomeric bearings shall conform to the design dimensions, with
the tolerances listed in Table 716-11 and the following details:

A. Internal Steel Plates. The internal steel plates shall be checked for parallelism by
measuring the distance between each individual steel plate, and between the top or bottom edge
of the bearing to the first adjacent steel plate. For rectangular bearings, take measurements for
each plate along the vertical surface of the bearing, located 1 inch from the edge of the four
alternate corners. For round bearings, measurements will be taken at four points located at 90°
intervals around the perimeter. The smallest of the four measurements shall be recorded for
each plate. The cumulative total of these measurements shall not be less than 75% of the design
effective rubber thickness.

B. Elastomeric Laminae. The average thickness of individual layers of elastomer in steel
laminated elastomeric bearings shall not vary more than ±20% of the design thickness and in no
case exceed the design thickness by 1/8 inch. Average thickness will be calculated from measurements taken at four points, located at 1 inch from the edge of the four alternate corners for rectangular bearings and at 90° intervals around the perimeter for round bearings.

Performance Characteristics

Compression Deflection. The compression deflection of each bearing shall not exceed 10.0% of the design effective rubber thickness at a compressive load equal to the actual design load.

The compression deflection shall be determined by loading the bearings to 500 psi and 800 psi. At each load a deflection reading will be taken and the readings used to calculate a slope between the two loads. The slope shall then be used to determine the deflection at the bearing's design load.

The bearing and ambient temperature shall be 75°F ± 5°F at the time of testing.

Adhesion. The adhesion of the elastomer to the internal plates shall be demonstrated by subjecting the bearing to a compressive load equal to 150% of the actual design load. Upon visual examination, the bearing shall be free of visual defects.

The bearing and ambient temperature shall be 75°F ± 5°F at the time of testing.

NOTE: For conformance to this specification an observed or calculated value shall be rounded off (ASTM E29) to the nearest 0.1% for compression deflection.

SAMPLING AND TESTING

Lot Size. Sampling, testing and acceptance consideration will be made on a lot basis. A lot shall be defined as those bearings presented for inspection at a specific time or date. A lot shall be further defined as the smallest number of bearings as determined by the following criteria:

- A lot shall not exceed a single contract quantity
- A lot shall consist of bearings with the elastomer being of the same dimensions and configuration
- A lot shall consist of bearings produced in a continuous manner.

Procedure. The Department's representative shall select at random the required sample bearings from completed lots of bearings for testing by the Materials Bureau. The manufacturer shall supply the Department's representative with a copy of an approved Welding Procedure for each welding process used in the manufacture of the bearings. Bearings with a plan area greater than 4 sf shall be tested by an outside laboratory approved by the Materials Bureau. The Department shall assume the cost of testing the sampled bearings and the Contractor shall assume the responsibility and cost of transporting the sampled bearings from the place of manufacture to the testing laboratory. After testing the Contractor has the responsibility for the cost of transporting the sampled bearings back to the bearing manufacturer or, if applicable, to the project site. All samples shall be taken and delivered for test in accordance with the Department's written instructions. A minimum of thirty (30) days shall be allowed for inspection, sampling and testing by the Materials Bureau. This thirty days is exclusive of shipping time which is the Contractor's responsibility. The sampling procedure and test methods may be obtained from the Materials Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer's name appearing on the Department's Approved List for Elastomeric Bridge Bearings and in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

716-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

SECTION 717 - CONCRETE PROTECTIVE COATINGS
717-01 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

717-02 WATERPROOFING MEMBRANES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for waterproofing membranes.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Waterproofing membranes shall be spray applied, hot-applied, or sheet applied. All materials used shall be as per each manufacturer’s recommendations. Approved Materials Details will be available on the Department’s Approved List.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Manufacturers shall submit their product(s) for evaluation to the Director, Materials Bureau. All components of the membrane system shall be clearly identified in the Materials Details submitted to the Department for approval. The Details shall also contain all the preparation requirements and installation instructions. The membrane system will be approved based on successful field performance evaluations at two (2) approved sites for 2 years.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Waterproofing membranes will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer and the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification.

717-03 PENETRATING TYPE PROTECTIVE SEALERS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements of penetrating type protective sealers for use on portland cement concrete.

GENERAL. The material shall be a one component material consisting of a penetrating sealer which does not alter the color or texture of portland cement concrete.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Penetrating sealers shall be a one-part liquid, composed of a minimum of 40% silane or siloxane material, with no petroleum distillates. The Department will test the sealers as delivered, in accordance with Department written instructions, to ensure that the following properties are attainable. If the material attains these properties, the Department will place the material on its Approved List. The properties are:

Water Absorption. The final average percent water absorbed, for concrete coated with the protective sealer, shall not be greater than 20.0% of the final average percent water absorbed by the uncoated reference concrete.

Moisture Vapor Transmission. The final average percent moisture loss, for concrete coated with the protective sealer, shall not be less than 75.0% of its final average percent water absorption.

Chloride Ion Penetration. The final average absorbed chloride ion content, for concrete coated with the protective sealer, shall not be greater than 15.0% of the final average absorbed chloride ion content of the uncoated reference concrete.

Durability. The protective sealer shall not show any signs of weathering, discoloration, or deterioration after 6 months of exposure to atmospheric conditions.

PACKAGING. All materials shall be packaged in strong, substantial containers. Each container shall be plainly marked with the following information: name of the product; name and address of Manufacturer.
application instructions; lot/batch number; date of manufacture; quantity of material; and date of expiration or shelf life. The printed shelf life shall not exceed one year from the date of manufacture.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of penetrating type sealers will be based upon the product appearing on the Department's Approved List, and the Manufacturer's certification that the material meets the requirements of this section. The shelf life of this material shall not exceed one year from the date of manufacture printed on the product label. The Department reserves the right to sample and test the material at its discretion.

**717-04 COATING TYPE PROTECTIVE SEALERS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements of coating type protective sealers for use on portland cement concrete.

**GENERAL.** The coating system shall be either a single coating material or a primer coat followed by a top coat. After application, the sealer shall be opaque and uniform in color.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The Department will test the sealers as delivered, in accordance with Department written instructions, to ensure that the following properties are attainable. If the material attains these properties, the Department will place the material on its Approved List. The properties are:

- **Water Absorption.** The final average percent water absorbed, for concrete coated with the protective sealer, shall not be greater than 25.0% of the final average percent water absorbed by the uncoated reference concrete.

- **Moisture Vapor Transmission.** The final average percent moisture loss, for concrete coated with the protective sealer, shall not be less than 50.0% of its final average percent water absorption.

- **Chloride Ion Penetration.** The final average absorbed chloride ion content, for concrete coated with the protective sealer, shall not be greater than 25.0% of the final average absorbed chloride ion content of the uncoated reference concrete.

- **Durability.** The protective sealer shall not show any signs of weathering, discoloration, or deterioration after 6 months of exposure to atmospheric conditions.

**PACKAGING.** All materials shall be packaged in strong, substantial containers. Each container shall be plainly marked with the following information: name of the product; name and address of Manufacturer; mix proportions(if applicable) and application instructions; lot/batch number; date of manufacture; quantity of material; and date of expiration or shelf life. The printed shelf life shall not exceed one year from the date of manufacture.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of coating type sealers will be based upon the product appearing on the Department's Approved List, and the Manufacturer's certification that the material meets the requirements of this section. The shelf life of this material shall not exceed one year from the date of manufacture printed on the product label. The Department reserves the right to sample and test the material at its discretion.

**717-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**SECTION 718 - PRESTRESSED CONCRETE UNITS**
718-01 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE UNITS (STRUCTURAL)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for prestressed concrete units.

GENERAL. Prestressed concrete units provided under this specification shall meet all design requirements for the structure for which they are being fabricated.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Concrete. The concrete shall meet the requirements of ’501-2, under 501, Portland Cement Concrete, General, with the following modifications:

- Cement shall be either Type 1, Type 2 or Type 3. Only one type of cement shall be used to fabricate units for any one structure
- Coarse aggregate gradation shall be No. 1 Size or ASTM D448, No. 67
- Concrete requirements for Classes A and C concrete shall not apply
- Air content shall be 7 percent + 2 percent
- The use of calcium chloride, or an admixture containing calcium chloride will not be permitted.

Steel.

Bar Reinforcement 709-01
Wire Fabric 709-02
Chairs or other devices to ensure proper placement of steel items 556-2.02
Prestressing steel 709-06
Bearing plates, if required 715-01

Epoxy. Epoxy shall meet the requirements of ’721-01, Epoxy Resin System; ’721-03, Epoxy Polysulfide Grout, or ’721-05, Epoxy Repair Paste.

Fine Aggregate. Fine aggregate shall meet the requirements of ’703-03, Mortar Sand or ’703-04, Grout Sand. Fine aggregate shall be absolutely dry.

DRAWINGS

Contract Drawings. Drawings which accompany the contract proposal are designated as contract drawings. These drawings are not intended to be working drawings.

Working Drawings. Complete and accurate drawings shall be made by the Contractor, indicating how each prestressed concrete unit is to be fabricated. The Contractor shall be responsible for modifying the dimensions of units to compensate for elastic shortening, shrinkage, grade correction and other phenomena that make in-process fabricating dimensions different from those shown on the contract drawings. Approval of the working drawings by the DCES shall not relieve the Contractor from the responsibility for the correctness of all dimensions shown on these drawings. These drawings shall be made as soon as possible after the award of contract and they shall be designated as working drawings.

A. Size and Type. Working Drawings shall be neatly drawn and clearly legible to produce microfilm negatives. The drawings shall be made in ink, or reproduced from the pencil drawings by a process
subject to the approval of the DCES, on tracing cloth or mylar of acceptable quality. Working drawings shall be cut to a standard size of 22 x 34 inches (nominal) and arranged to conform to the contract drawings.

Failure to submit working drawings of the required size will be cause for their return without examination. The margin line shall be drawn 1/2 inch from the top, bottom, and right-hand edges and 2 inches from the left-hand edge to permit binding. A space 3 x 11 inches, and parallel to the length of the sheet shall be reserved in the lower right-hand corner for title and approval signature. Each working drawing shall have an identical (top right) corner box to the one shown on the contract drawings. The sheets shall be arranged so that, as far as possible, the notes will appear above each other near the right edge of the sheet.

B. Information Required on Working Drawings. The working drawings shall include the following information:

- Plan layout of superstructure indicating the piece mark assigned to each prestressed unit
- Fabricating plant production schedule
- Description of the fabricating plant, including any backup concrete mixing facilities, original design mix and proposed method of placement. Modifications or deviations from the original mix at any time after the working drawings have been approved, shall be submitted, in writing to the DCES
- Proposed admixture to be added to the concrete mix
- Quality control tests and procedures
- Method and outline of unit and cylinder curing procedure, as required by “Curing”
- The name of the manufacturer of the prestressing steel, including any alternate source
- Material and manner of sealing the exposed portions of the prestressing steel
- Transfer of prestress procedure for all unit types to be fabricated
- Complete details, including anticipated camber, tensioning force (initial and final), concrete strength (transfer and 28 day), and type and location of lifting device for all prestressed concrete units to be fabricated.
- Proposed method of handling and transporting prestressed concrete units to the project site
- Working drawings shall clearly indicate any proposed deviations from the prestressed concrete unit shown on the contract drawings
- Winter concreting procedures, if need is anticipated.

Submission of Working Drawings. When the working drawings, prepared by the Contractor, as specified, are completed, check prints shall be submitted to the DCES, who will indicate thereon such corrections as may be necessary to secure the completion of the contract in accordance with the requirements of the contract documents. The Contractor shall submit three sets of check prints for the DCES and two additional sets of check prints for each Railroad or other Agency involved with the contract. All sets of check prints shall be submitted to the DCES, who will make the distribution to the Railroad and other Agencies involved. One set of check prints or sepia's with desired corrections indicated thereon in colored crayon or pencil, will be returned to the Contractor. When the revisions have been completed to the satisfaction of the DCES, the original drawings shall be forwarded to the DCES for written approval, after which a set of approved drawings will be returned. The original drawings shall remain the property of the State.

The DCES shall be allowed two work days for the examination of each drawing in a set of working drawings, or ten work days minimum per set. A set of working drawings shall be considered to be all drawings received by the DCES from any given Contractor for a particular contract on any calendar day. If the working drawings are detained for examination for a period longer than that previously stated, such detention will be taken into account when considering application by the Contractor for an extension of
time for the completion of the contract. All working drawings are time and date stamped as they are
received and recorded in a log at the office of the DCES. This log shall be the basis for determining when
drawings must be returned without consideration for an adjustment of the completion date as described
herein.

Approval of working drawings shall not constitute approval for the following information required on
the working drawings 2B(3) and 2B(7). This data is required for information only.

FABRICATION

Approval of Working Drawings. No fabrication shall be started until after the working drawings have
been approved and the Inspector has received prints made from the original drawings.

Data Required with Working Drawings. Data required by the DCES prior to approval of the working
drawings shall be as follows:

- Calculations of strand elongation for each unique casting length (grip-to-grip)
- A calibration certificate indicating the load calibration of each gage and hydraulic jack combination
  used for tensioning. The gage shall be calibrated from zero, throughout its entire load range. The
  gage shall have clearly marked divisions that are easily readable at the initial and final tensioning
  force. The calibration date of each combination gage and hydraulic jack shall be within the 12 month
  period immediately prior to the start of the work.
- A calibration certificate attesting to the fact that the concrete cylinder testing machine to be used has
  been calibrated within the 12 month period immediately prior to the first date of actual use of the
  machine.

Data for Inspector. Data required to be submitted to the Inspector for approval prior to the inclusion of
the respective materials in the unit, shall be as follows:

A. Prestressing Steel Certification. A certificate from the prestressing steel manufacturer stating
that the prestressing steel has been manufactured in accordance with ’709-06.

B. Load-Strain Curves. Typical load-strain curves made during the processing of steel from which
the elongation appropriate to the required prestressing force can be determined, including the
following information:

- The breaking strength
- The elongation at rupture
- The load at one percent elongation
- The test dates

The aforesaid information shall be submitted to the Inspector, in triplicate, for each 25 ton lot, or
fraction thereof, of prestressing steel.

C. Other Certifications. Certificates indicating acceptance of bar reinforcement, concrete materials
and any other material used in the prestressed concrete unit.

Inspection. Fabrication of units shall be inspected by an Inspector designated by the State. The
Contractor shall inform the State 72 hours prior to:

- Commencement of work
• Commencement of work after a work suspension of 48 hours or more
• Unit shipping

The Contractor shall keep the Inspector informed of the day-to-day scheduling of operations. The Inspector shall have free access throughout the fabrication plant to see that the work being done is in conformance with the contract documents. Work done while the Inspector has been refused access shall be automatically rejected. The Inspector shall be present when necessary tests are made on the prestressing steel at the place of manufacture.

Concrete Forms

A. General. Forms shall be well-constructed, carefully aligned, clean, substantial and firm, securely braced and fastened together and sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar. They shall be strong enough to withstand the action of mechanical vibrators. All forms for each unit shall be approved by the Inspector prior to placing concrete.

All form surfaces that come in contact with the concrete shall be thoroughly treated with an approved form coating in the manner and at the rate specified by the manufacturer. Forms so treated shall be protected against damage and dirt prior to placing concrete.

Any form coating material that will stick to or discolor concrete shall not be used.

B. Void-Producing Forms. Void forms shall be coated with a waterproofing material on the outside and shall have a 3/4 inch (nominal) diameter drain placed at each end of each void.

When units are steam-cured, all voids shall be vented.

Reinforcement and Prestressing Steel. Prior to installation in the units, reinforcement and prestressing steel shall be free of frost, dirt, oil, paint, mill scale, corrosion, or any foreign material that may prevent bond between the steel and the concrete.

Tack welding of bar reinforcement shall not be allowed under any circumstances.

Welded wire fabric, smooth or deformed, may be substituted for the required bar reinforcement provided that:

• The required cover is maintained
• The design steel area of the fabric equals that of the bar reinforcement
• Splices to the fabric are made in accordance with the requirements of the N.Y.S.D.O.T. Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges, '1.5.22D and '1.5.22E as applicable.

If wire fabric is used, the details shall be indicated on the working drawings. Design computations shall also be included.

Tensioning of Prestressing Strands. A calibrated force of 3000 pounds shall be applied initially to each strand. Consideration will be given by the DCES to a different initial force for special cases. This force shall be the starting point for additional tensioning by elongation.

For draped strands, the additional tensioning or prestressing force induced in the prestressing steel shall be measured by jacking gages and by elongation of the steel. The jacking gages shall read within 5 percent of the force theoretically calculated to be induced by elongation.

For straight strands, elongation only shall determine the prestressing force.

During tensioning of any one strand, the process shall be so conducted that the applied load and the elongation of the strand may be measured at all times.

Two copies of recorded gage pressures and measured elongations, as required for the tensioning of prestressing strands in each unit, shall be submitted to the Inspector.
The use of load cells or other tension measuring devices may be required. They shall be furnished by the Inspector and used in accordance with his/her instructions.

**Concrete Mix Design and Proportioning.** The Contractor shall be responsible for designing a concrete mix to produce the strength and other requirements specified on the contract plans. If no strength is indicated, the required minimum strength shall be 4000 psi at transfer and 5000 psi at 28 days. Maximum cement content for any proposed mix shall be 750 lb/cy. Proposed mixes shall be submitted in accordance with the requirements of Drawings, Paragraph 2B(3). Automatic proportioning equipment will not be required.

The Contractor may request permission from the DCES to incorporate a High Range Water Reducing (HRWR) admixture into the concrete mix. The DCES will grant such permission only if deemed to be in the best interests of the State and then only under such conditions as the DCES requires.

**Placing Concrete.** No concrete shall be placed without the Inspector's approval. Compliance with the precasting tolerances is a prerequisite for casting approval by the Inspector.

When the atmospheric temperature is below 40°F, the fabrication of the units shall be in accordance with the winter concrete procedures as approved on the working drawings.

Suitable means shall be used for placing concrete without segregation. The concrete mixture shall not be dropped from a height greater than 12 inches above the top of the forms. Special care shall be taken to deposit the concrete in its final position in each part of the form.

The plastic concrete shall be consolidated in place by either external or internal vibration methods, or both, if necessary. The vibrators shall be of a type and design approved by the Inspector and the size of the vibrating head will be governed by the spacing of the prestressing steel and reinforcement. Vibrators shall be used only to consolidate the concrete after it has been properly placed.

The internal vibrator shall be slowly inserted and removed from the concrete.

The following quality control tests shall be performed, by the Contractor in the presence of the Inspector from the same concrete sample as that used for the Concrete Strength Requirements of this specification:

- Slump
- Air content
- Temperature
- Unit mass.

**Finishing.** To assure production of well-formed matching beams with overall pleasing appearance, all surfaces of concrete shall be true and even, free from rough, open or honeycombed areas, depressions or projections. After all the concrete has been placed and thoroughly compacted as required under Placing Concrete, the tops of units shall be magnesium-float finished, or finished as shown on the Working Drawings. If required, all exposed surfaces shall be finished by bagging.

All exposed reinforcement shall be coated with neat cement paste prior to placement in the storage area.

**Curing.** The Contractor shall indicate on the working drawings, for approval, the method of cure and complete outline of the proposed procedure under each of the phases of the curing cycle. The full curing cycle consists of an Initial Curing Phase and Final Curing Phase. The Contractor may choose any one of the following acceptable curing methods, however only one curing method will be allowed for the units of a single structure.

To ensure complete hydration of cement, and to prevent the formation of cracks, moisture must be retained within the concrete. Therefore, immediately upon the completion of concrete placement for each
unit, an enclosure shall be placed over the casting bed. The Contractor shall submit all covers for inspection prior to the commencement of work.

**A. Accelerated Cures.** Acceptable methods for accelerated cures are by application of low pressure steam or by application of radiant heat and moisture.

1. **Initial Curing Phase.** The initial curing phase for each unit shall be that period beginning from the time each unit is completely covered and continuing until the final curing phase commences.
   
   The Contractor shall indicate the duration of the initial curing phase for each unit. However, the initial curing phase shall not exceed eight hours. During this phase, the enclosure temperature shall be maintained at approximately the concrete placing temperature; artificial heat shall be applied if necessary.

2. **Final Curing Phase.** The final curing phase for each unit shall be that period required to raise the initial curing phase temperature to the selected temperature range at a rate not exceeding $50^\circ F$ per hour and continuing until the concrete has attained the minimum transfer strength as noted on the contract plans or as noted in this specification, under the paragraph Concrete Mix Design and Proportioning, whichever is applicable.

   The selected curing temperature range shall be as approved on the working drawings.

**B. Non-Accelerated Cure.** The acceptable method of non-accelerated cure is by the application of a saturated cover.

1. **Initial Curing Phase.** The requirements of A1 above, shall apply.

2. **Final Curing Phase.** The final curing phase may begin at anytime after commencement of the initial curing phase. Each unit shall be covered with heavy, water saturated burlap, or other material acceptable to the Inspector. The burlap shall be kept saturated, and the concrete surface temperature shall not drop below $68^\circ F$. These conditions shall be maintained until either of the following has occurred:

   a. Seventy-two hours have passed from the time of burlap placement; or
   b. Minimum transfer strength has been reached.

**Record of Curing Time - Temperature.** The Contractor shall provide one (1) automatic temperature recorder for every 100 feet of casting bed. The recorder shall continuously record curing temperatures for the initial and final curing phases. Temperature sensors shall be carefully placed within the curing enclosure to ensure that ambient temperatures are measured at the designated locations. Recorder accuracy shall be certified once every 12 months and the certificate displayed with each recorder. In addition, random temperature checks of each recorder shall be made by the Inspector.

   Each temperature chart shall indicate the casting bed, date of casting, time of commencing graphic plot and units represented by chart. The start of artificial heat and the transfer of prestress shall be indicated on each graphic record.

   After completion of the final curing phase, the charts shall be properly marked and given to the Inspector. Temperatures recorded on the charts shall be considered as verification of whether the units have been cured in accordance with the approved working drawings.

**Transfer of Prestress.** Transfer of prestress shall be accomplished as soon as the final curing phase is complete.
Concrete Strength Requirements

**A. Test Cylinders.** The concrete strength shall be determined from concrete test cylinders made in conformance with ASTM C31, except that all cylinders shall be vibrated. All cylinders shall be tested in conformance with ASTM C39, on an approved testing machine. All cylinders shall be made and tested by the Contractor in the presence of the Inspector.

The cylinders shall be made from concrete actually placed in the units. The Inspector shall be the sole judge of which cylinders are defective or damaged and are not to be included in the determination of the strength class. Test cylinders used to determine required strengths for detensioning shall be cured as specified on the working drawings.

All cylinders used to test for concrete strength shall be cured in the same manner as the units they represent unless otherwise indicated on the working drawings.

The Contractor shall cast a sufficient number of concrete test cylinders to fulfill the concrete strength test requirements as stated in 2 below. This testing procedure may be altered by the DCES. If an alternate procedure is to be followed, it shall be indicated on the contract drawings. The number of test cylinders to be cast for each unit shall be shown on the working drawings.

**B. Testing for Concrete Strength.** The strength requirements for each unit shall be certified by the Contractor, as follows, before the unit is accepted for strength:

1. **Transfer Strength.** Two cylinders from each unit shall be tested in immediate succession to verify prestress transfer strength. One of the two cylinders tested to determine the strength of the last unit cast in any bed shall be taken from the last batch of concrete placed in that unit. The strength of each cylinder shall be at least 95 percent of the required prestress transfer strength. The average strength of the two cylinders shall be equal to or greater than the required prestress transfer strength.

2. **28 Day Strength**
   a. Two cylinders from each unit shall be tested in immediate succession at 28 days of age to verify the required 28 day strength of the concrete. The average strength of the two cylinders shall be equal to or greater than the required 28 day strength. If this requirement is not met, any remaining cylinders representing the unit shall be tested at 28 days of age. The average strength of all cylinders representing the 28 day strength of any one unit shall be equal to or greater than the required 28 day strength.
   b. The Contractor may elect to test two cylinders from each unit in immediate succession, prior to the 28 day age limit. If this option is exercised sufficient cylinders shall be made to ensure that at least two cylinders are available for the 28 day test. Each cylinder shall have a strength of at least 95 percent of the required 28 day strength. The average of the two cylinders must be equal to or greater than the required 28 day strength. If these requirements are met, the cylinder test at 28 days of age shall be waived.

**Rejection of Units.** Any unit not fabricated in accordance with the contract documents or displaying any of the following defects shall be subject to rejection:

**A. Strength Requirement.** Any unit represented by cylinders not meeting the required strengths, as specified in Concrete Strength Requirements.

**B. Exposed Prestressing Steel.** Any unit that has one (1) prestress strand exposed in excess of 24 diameters, or two (2) or more exposed strands.
**C. Honeycombing.** Honeycombing of the unit to such an extent that chipping away from the honeycombed concrete results in the conditions described in the above paragraph 2, Exposed Prestressing Steel.

All honeycombed areas in a unit must be chipped until sound concrete is detected. Sound concrete is defined as that point at which chipping causes fracture of the aggregates.

**D. Stress Cracks.** Any unit that has a stress crack in the area beginning 4 inches from the unit end to the center line of the unit that is greater than 1/2 inch in depth and 2.5 mils in width.

**E. Injurious Materials.** Materials used for the manufacture of concrete shall not contain, nor cause concentration of, chemicals, or other materials injurious to concrete.

Concentrations of total chloride ions in excess of 0.05% by mass of cement are considered injurious.

Other material and concentration injury potential will be determined by the D.C.E.T.S. according to Department written instructions.

**Damaged units.** The Inspector shall determine whether spalled, honeycombed, or otherwise defective concrete shall be repaired or be subject to rejection. The decision to repair a unit or reject a unit shall require the concurrence of the DCES.

**Removal of Unsuitable Material.** Prior to beginning the repair, all spalled, honeycombed or disintegrated concrete shall be removed by chipping the unsuitable material away until sound concrete is reached. Sound concrete shall be as defined under Rejection of Units, Subparagraph 3. Chipping tools shall be pneumatic. The type and size of tools and the depth at which sound concrete is reached shall be determined by the Inspector.

**Blast Cleaning Surfaces.** All surfaces to be repaired shall be thoroughly blast-cleaned with No. 40 boiler slag grit or No. 2 sandblast sand, or as ordered by the Inspector.

**REPAIR.** Repair shall be designated as “structural repair” or “nonstructural repair” by the Deputy Chief Engineer (Structures). Repair to a unit shall be done in accordance with the following.

**Structural Repair.** Repair, designated as “structural” by the DCES, shall be made with an epoxy grout comprised of an epoxy resin system (721-01), or an epoxy polysulfide grout (721-03), mixed with fine aggregate. The grout shall be mixed and placed in accordance with the following:

**A. Mixing.** No mixing shall be started until all preparations have been made to use the grout. The Contractor shall be familiar with the pot life limitations of the epoxy being used, and its operations shall be governed accordingly. Mixing shall be carried out in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the following:

- Mixing shall be done as close as possible to the portion to be repaired.
- All necessary equipment for mixing and placing shall be present at the site, and in good working order, prior to the start of mixing.
- The grout shall be proportioned by volume in the approximate ratio of two (2) parts fine aggregate to one (1) part epoxy. The exact ratio of sand to epoxy resin system shall be determined on-site to produce a dense void-free grout.
- Dry, fine aggregate shall be placed in the mix container first. It shall be thoroughly agitated prior to the addition of the epoxy.
• The two components of the epoxy system shall be thoroughly mixed together before being added to the fine aggregate.
• The epoxy shall be added to the fine aggregate slowly, but mixing time shall not exceed three minutes.
• All grout, in any individual batch, shall be used within 25 minutes after the start of mixing of the two components to create the epoxy system. All grout not used within the time limit shall be discarded.
• The epoxy grout shall not be retempered.

B. Placing. The epoxy grout shall be placed against a clean, primed, receiving surface, in accordance with the following:

• The receiving surface shall be cleaned of all oil, grease, or other material which may prevent effective bond, immediately prior to priming the surface with neat epoxy (epoxy without aggregate).
• The priming of the receiving surface shall be done immediately prior to the placement of the epoxy grout.
• The epoxy grout shall be placed quickly and continuously. It shall not be overworked.
• The temperature of the receiving surface shall be above 50°F at the time of grout placement.
• Grout placement shall not be permitted when ambient temperatures are 50°F or lower, unless methods of protection, acceptable to the Inspector, are employed. Methods of protection, if permitted, shall be continued for a period of 15 hours following grout placement. The 15 hour period may be shortened, at the discretion of the Inspector, but under no circumstances will it be less than 12 hours. Methods of protection, if permitted, are conveniences granted by the State. As such, they are not considered extra work, and therefore they are not entitled to extra compensation.
• Upon completion of grout placement, the new surface of the repaired area shall be flush with the adjacent surfaces, unless the design of the unit specifically requires otherwise.
• On surfaces which will be exposed to view after installation, the repaired area shall be color matched to the adjacent surfaces by use of cement dust, or other means acceptable to the Inspector.

Nonstructural Repair. Repair, designated as “nonstructural” by the DCES shall be made with either of the following:

• Epoxy grout composed of 721-01 Epoxy Resin System or 721-03 Epoxy Polysulfide Grout, and fine aggregate; or,
• 721-05 Epoxy Repair Paste.

The Contractor has the choice of materials.

A. Mixing. Epoxy grout shall be mixed in accordance with the requirements of A. Mixing as given under Structural Repair.

Epoxy repair paste shall be mixed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

B. Placing. Placing of either material shall be done in accordance with the requirements of B. Placing as given under Structural Repair.

TOLERANCES. Tolerances of the Prestressed Concrete Units shall meet the requirements specified in the Contract Documents.
Units which fail to meet the tolerances shall be rejected with the concurrence of the DCES.

**SHIPPING.** Units shall not be shipped until the minimum 28 day strength has been attained, but in no case, before 72 hours' storage time has elapsed following transfer of prestress.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Inspector's stamp of approval shall constitute the basis of acceptance for shipment to the job site. The Inspector's stamp shall be placed on the unit after loading for shipment.

Application of the Inspector's acceptance stamp indicates that at the time of shipment, it was the Inspector's opinion that the unit was fabricated from accepted materials, by approved processes, and was properly loaded for shipment.

Such application does not imply that the material will not be rejected by the State if it is subsequently found to be defective.

718-02 THRU 718-04 (VACANT)

718-05 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE FORM UNITS

**SCOPE.** This specification contains the requirements for prestressed concrete form units. These units are used to form the lower portion of a structural slab. They act compositely with the cast-in-place portion of the slab and become an integral part of the structural slab.

**GENERAL.** 718-01 Prestressed Concrete Units (Structural) shall apply except for the following modifications to the FABRICATION, REPAIR and TOLERANCES:

**FABRICATION.** 718-01 shall apply except as follows:

**Reinforcement and Prestressing Steel.** 718-01 shall apply. In addition, devices which will be used as hold-down points for outside reinforcing steel shall be placed prior to concrete placement in the forms. Devices used to lift the units are acceptable for this purpose. The maximum spacing between hold-down devices shall be 4 feet center-to-center of device.

**Finishing.** 718-01 shall apply except the tops of units do not have to be magnesium float finished.

**Concrete Strength Requirements.** 718-01 shall apply except the testing shall be as follows:

**Testing for Concrete Strength.** The strength requirements for each day's production shall be certified by the Contractor before that day's production is accepted for strength. Certification shall be done in accordance with the terms of this subsection. All cylinders cast shall be cast in sets of three. One set shall be cast from the first concrete placement of the day. One set shall be cast from the last concrete placement of the day. In addition to those, there shall be a set cast for each 15 cubic yards of concrete, or major fraction thereof, placed in any one day.

1. **Transfer Strength.** Three cylinders from each day's production shall be tested in immediate succession to verify prestress transfer strength. One cylinder shall be taken from the first set cast; one cylinder shall be taken from the last set cast. The strength of each cylinder shall be at least 95 percent of the required prestress transfer strength. The average strength of the three cylinders shall be equal to, or greater than, the required prestress transfer strength.

2. **28-Day Strength.** Three (3) cylinders representing each day's production shall be tested in immediate succession at twenty-eight (28) days of age to verify the required 28-day strength. The strength of each cylinder shall be at least ninety-five (95) percent of the required 28-day strength.
The average strength of the three cylinders shall be equal to, or greater than, the required 28-day strength. If these requirements are not met, any remaining cylinders representing the day's production shall also be tested at 28 days of age. The average strength of all cylinders representing the 28-day strength of any one day's production shall be equal to, or greater than, the required 28-day strength.

3. Option. The Contractor may test three (3) cylinders, representing each day's production in immediate succession, prior to the 28-day age limit. Each cylinder shall have a strength of at least ninety-five (95) percent of the required 28-day strength. The average strength of the three cylinders shall be equal to, or greater than, the required 28-day strength. If these requirements are met, the cylinder test at 28 days of age shall be waived. If this option is exercised, sufficient cylinders shall be made to ensure that at least 3 cylinders are available for the 28-day test.

Rejection of Units. Any unit not fabricated in accordance with the Contract Documents, or displaying any of the following defects, shall be subject to rejection:

A. Strength Requirements. Any unit represented by cylinders not meeting the required strengths, as specified in Concrete Strength Requirements, of this specification.

B. Exposed Prestressing Steel. Any unit which exhibits one or more exposed prestressing strand(s) on a top or bottom surface.

C. Honeycombing. Honeycombing of the unit to such an extent that chipping away from the honeycombed concrete results in the exposure of one, or more, prestressing strands on a top, or bottom, surface.

   All honeycombed areas shall be chipped until sound concrete is reached. Sound concrete is defined as that point at which chipping causes fracture of the aggregates. If chipping of the honeycombed portion results in a hole more than one-half the thickness of the unit, the unit will be rejected.

D. Cracks. Any unit which exhibits a crack that is greater than 1/2 inch in depth, and 2.5 mils in width.

REPAIR. Repair, if allowed by the DCES, shall be made with 721-05 Epoxy Repair Paste. Epoxy repair paste shall be mixed and placed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Form Supports Form supports for installation of the units shall be supplied as part of this work. They shall conform to the latest specification for ASTM A446, Grades A through E. Fabrication shall be in conformance with ASTM A653/A653M, Coating Class G165.

The Contractor shall supply the Engineer with certification that the form supports meet the foregoing requirements.

TOLERANCES. All units shall be checked for compliance with the tolerances listed below, after the units have completed the final curing phase and within three (3) days prior to shipping. The Inspector shall document to the DCES any unit with dimensions out of tolerance. Any unit which fails to meet these tolerances shall be rejected with the concurrence of the DCES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Finished Dimensions</th>
<th>Position of Strands</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Width ± 1/4 inch</td>
<td>Vertical ± 1/4 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length ± 1/2 inch</td>
<td>Horizontal ± 1/2 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depth ± 1/4 inch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
718-06 HIGH PERFORMANCE CONCRETE FOR PRECAST AND PRESTRESSED BRIDGE BEAMS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for high performance concrete for precast and prestressed bridge beams.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The concrete shall meet the requirements of the approved Mix Design Sheet, described below, and the PCCM. The concrete mix shall contain a minimum of 5% microsilica measured as a percent of the total cementitious material.

MIX DESIGN SHEETS (MDS). These sheets shall contain all the information on the mix design, materials, material sources, production facilities, quality control, curing, and preproduction testing of the mix. Once approved for production, the MDS may be used in any contract requiring high performance concrete for precast and prestressed bridge beams.

The MDS will have a two-step approval process. The first submittal shall contain all the information required in A. through N. Complete submittals that meet the specification requirements will be examined according to Section 2.5 of the PCCM and, if found acceptable, it will be returned with the notation “APPROVED FOR TESTING.” Section 2.5.7 of the PCCM does not apply.

Following required testing of the mix, the MDS shall be submitted to the DCES with the information in O. through Q. added to the sheet. If the test results meet the requirements of this specification, the MDS will be returned with the notation “APPROVED.” After approval for production, no changes in materials sources, production, curing, or mix design shall be made, except those changes necessitated by a change in the fineness modulus of the aggregate.

If changes are required after the approval of the MDS, a revised MDS with all the required changes shall be submitted to the DCES. After examining the revised MDS, the DCES will determine if repetition of any testing is required for the approval of the revised MDS. If it is determined that some or all tests shall be repeated, the revised MDS will be returned marked up, specifying the required tests to be repeated and stamped “APPROVED FOR TESTING.” Remaining portions of the approval process will exactly follow the procedure used for the initial approval of the MDS except that the tests to be performed will be limited to the tests to be repeated marked up by the DCES.

If it is determined that there is no need for repeating the preproduction testing and if the proposed changes are acceptable to the DCES, the revised MDS will be approved and returned.

Information Required on MDS. The MDS shall include the following information:

A. The source and type of cement.
B. The specific source of the coarse aggregate.
C. The specific source of the fine aggregate and the fineness modulus of the material proposed for use in the preproduction testing.
D. The brand and type of all admixtures that will be used.
E. The complete mix design including all ingredient and quantities proposed for the production concrete.
F. The maximum water-to-total-cementitious-material ratio that is proposed for production.
G. Description of the concrete batching and mixing facilities, including the date of last annual inspection and date of last scale calibration check.
H. Description of the concrete transport equipment.
I. The method of concrete placement.
J. Outline of the curing procedure to be used for the production units and test samples.
K. Quality control tests and procedures that the fabricator will perform.
L. Detailed description of the preproduction testing procedure to establish that concrete made from

*Width is defined as the dimension measured parallel to the prestressing strands.
the proposed mix design meets the required performance criteria.
M. The name and address of the testing laboratory(s) conducting the tests.
N. A fabricator selected identifier for the mix.
O. Test results for the preproduction test mix.
P. Actual fineness modulus of the fine aggregate used in the preproduction test mix.
Q. Graph of compressive strength versus age.

**TESTING.** The concrete mix design shall be tested prior to making any bridge beams and shall meet the following performance criteria.

| TABLE 718-06-1 TESTING REQUIREMENTS FOR HP CONCRETE |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| PROPERTY        | TEST METHOD     | ACCEPTANCE CRITERIA |
| Compressive Strength (at 56 days) | AASHTO T22 | > 10,000 psi (all tests) |
| Freeze/Thaw Durability (x=relative dynamic modulus of elasticity after 300 cycles) | AASHTO T161 Procedure A | x ≥ 80% |
| Scaling Resistance (y= visual rating of surface after 50 cycles) | ASTM C672 | y ≤ 3 |
| Elasticity (E = modulus of elasticity) | ASTM C469 (Note C) | E ≥ 4.35 x 10⁶ psi |
| Shrinkage (s= microstrain) | AASHTO T160-97 (at 56 days) | s < 600 |
| Creep (c = microstrain/pressure unit) | ASTM C512(at 56 days, 40% fc') | c ≤ 414/ ksi |
| Chloride Penetration (p= increase in percent of chloride ion by weight of concrete) | AASHTO T259 modified (Note A) | p ≤ 0.025% at 1 inch |
| Air Content | AASHTO T 152 | A = % selected by contractor, A ≥ 3% |
| Water/Cementitious-Materials ratio (W= mass ratio) | AASHTO TP23-93 (Note B) | Supplier selects W, W < 0.40 |

Note A: The test specimens are to be cured under the same conditions and for the same time as proposed for production. They shall then be stored for 28 days in the drying room specified by the AASHTO T259.
Note B: The AASHTO TP23 test shall be corrected for the absorbed water in the aggregate. This correction shall be made using the mass percentage of absorption shown under “ABS” in the Approved List of Sources of Fine and Coarse Aggregates (or as determined by AASHTO T-84 for fine aggregates and AASHTO T-85 for coarse aggregate) by an AASHTO accredited testing laboratory.
Note C: Test two samples. Each sample is to be loaded at 40% of the load required to break a companion sample cast from the same mix at the same time as the test sample. Sample 1 is to be loaded when the strength of a companion sample achieves a strength of 7000 ± 430 psi. Sample 2 is to be loaded when the strength of a companion sample achieves a strength of 10,000 ± 860 psi.

**PREPRODUCTION TESTING**

The Contractor shall engage an AASHTO Accredited testing laboratory for testing of all preproduction concrete specimens except compressive strength, air content, and water/cementitious-materials ratio. These tests shall be performed in the presence of the Quality Assurance (QA) Inspector. The DCES may approve laboratories with equivalent certification from another organization. The testing laboratory shall send a copy of the test results directly to the DCES.

The Contractor shall notify the Department at least three work days prior to casting preproduction test specimens. No test specimens shall be cast unless the QA Inspector is present to witness the mixing, casting, and curing of the specimens. The test specimens shall be prepared of concrete made using materials from sources shown on the “Approved For Testing” MDS.

The water-to-total-cementitious-materials ratio for concrete mix for purposes of preparing specimens for chloride penetration testing shall be 0.03 higher than the maximum water-to-total-cementitious-
materials ratio that is proposed for production. In addition to those specimens needed for AASHTO T259 testing, the fabricator shall cast eighteen 4 x 8 inch cylinders from the chloride penetration test mix, cure the cylinders in accordance with the approved production curing procedures for long-term independent testing and research. These cylinders shall be delivered to the testing laboratory designated by the DCES.

The test mix for all other tests shall be the water-to-total-cementitious-materials ratio that is proposed for production within a tolerance of 0.01. Include the total aggregate moisture, as determined according to AASHTO T 255, in the calculation of the water-to-total-cementitious-materials ratio with appropriate adjustments. (See Note B in Material Requirements.)

Using the test mix, cast and test compressive strength cylinders at 18 hours, 3 days, 7 days, 28 days, and 56 days. Present the test results in a graph.

**Acceptance of Test Specimens.** All test specimens shall be prepared in accordance with an “Approved for Testing” MDS. The preparation, casting, and curing of the test specimens shall be done in the presence of the QA Inspector. The QA Inspector shall indicate the procedures on the MDS were followed by affixing the inspection agency stamp on the samples prior to shipping to the Independent Testing Laboratories.

**FABRICATION.** The requirements of the PCCM shall apply with the following modifications:

1. Submitted Shop Drawings shall include approved Mix Design Sheets.
2. The required 56-day strength is 10,000 psi, unless shown otherwise in the Contract Documents.
3. The required minimum strength for imparting prestressing force into the concrete is 7000 psi unless shown otherwise in the Contract Documents.
4. The fineness modulus of the fine aggregate shall not vary more than 0.2 from the actual fineness modulus used in the preproduction test mix.
5. Water/Cementitious-materials ratio shall be measured by the Fabricator for the first batch of concrete in a day’s placement and monitored by slump tests throughout production. If the QA Inspector has reason to believe the water/cementitious-materials ratio is changing, or if the slump increases by more than the allowed increase in the table below, additional water/cementitious-materials ratio tests may be ordered.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slump of First Batch</th>
<th>Allowed Increase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Less than 4 inches</td>
<td>1 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 inches or more</td>
<td>1 1/2 inch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Batch tickets shall be provided to the Inspector to verify the concrete mix contents.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Units will be considered for acceptance at the manufacturing location in accordance with the PCCM.

**718-07 DIAPHRAGMS FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for diaphragms used with prestressed concrete beam spread systems. Diaphragms may be cast-in-place concrete, precast concrete, or steel.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Diaphragms shall meet the requirements of the PCCM, and the following:
A. Cast-in-place concrete shall meet the requirements for Class HP concrete. Damaged or defective concrete shall be defined by and repaired in accordance with the requirements of §555-3.11, Damaged or Defective Concrete.

B. Steel Diaphragms.
   a. Steel shall meet the requirements of §715-01. Stock steel is allowed.
   b. All steel shall be galvanized in accordance with §719-01.
   c. Fabrication and transportation shall follow the requirements of the SCM.
   d. Shop drawings shall be submitted as part of the complete package of prestressed concrete beam drawings.
   e. Erection shall follow the requirements of the SCM, except that the erection drawings will be included with the erection drawings for the concrete beams and shall follow the approval procedure in the PCCM.
   f. Shop inspection may be performed at the discretion of the Department.
   g. All steel-to-steel connections shall meet the requirements of the SCM.
   h. Bolts in steel-to-concrete connections shall be snug tight only.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Steel diaphragms will be accepted by the Engineer in accordance with the requirements of 715.01. Precast diaphragms will be accepted in accordance with the requirements of the PCCM. Cast-in-place diaphragms will be accepted by the Engineer.

718-08 THRU 718-29 (VACANT)

718-47 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

718-50 THRU 718-53 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

718-61 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

718-66 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

718-96 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

718-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

**SECTION 719 - METAL COATINGS**

719-01 GALVANIZED COATINGS AND REPAIR METHODS

**SCOPE.** These specifications cover the galvanized coatings applied to various materials and the repair thereto.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Materials shall be galvanized in accordance with the specification indicated by Type on the plans or in the specifications.

**Type I.** ASTM A123 Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coating on Iron and Steel Products.

**Type II.** ASTM A153, Zinc Coating (Hot Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware. As an alternate to the hot dip method of ASTM A153, nuts, bolts, washers and other miscellaneous hardware, approved by the Engineer, may be mechanically galvanized. The mechanically zinc-coated product(s) shall conform to the applicable coating thickness, adherence and quality requirements of ASTM A153. Mechanically zinc-coated nuts for assembly with mechanically zinc-coated bolts shall be tapped oversize prior to coating and need not be re-tapped afterwards.
Type III. ASTM A123 Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coating on Iron and Steel Products, except as modified herein. A minimum weight of coating (oz/ft$^2$ of surface) for base metal less than 1/16 inch thickness shall be as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Average of Specimen</th>
<th>Any Individual Specimen or Computed Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Type IV. ASTM A653/A653M, Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process, Coating Designation G 210 unless otherwise specified.

Type V. Flame Sprayed Coating System.

A. Preparation of Base. Those areas to be coated shall be sand blasted with silica sand or crushed garnet of such gradation that sand shall be mesh size 20 to 40 with a minimum of 40% retained on a No. 30 mesh screen (U.S. Standard Sieve series). Pressure of not less than 75 psi shall be maintained at the blast generator. A sample steel plate shall be blasted until the surface cannot be further cleaned or roughened. This plate shall be used for visual comparison and any areas that do not meet this standard as to roughness or cleanliness shall be reblasted.

B. Zinc Application. The wire used in spraying shall be 15 ga., 1/8 inch or 3/16 inch diameter, zinc 99.0% purity. Air pressure at the Air Control Unit shall be 60 psi and there shall be no more than 35 feet of 3/8 inch I.D. hose between the Air Control Unit and the gun.

The metal coating shall be applied at a minimum thickness of 3 mils. At least one coating shall be applied within 4 hours of blasting and the surface must be completely coated within 8 hours of blasting. The specified thickness of coating shall be applied in multiple layers and in no case shall less than two passes be made over every part of the surface.

C. Finish Coat. The zinc coating shall be given a finish coating consisting of two coats of Aluminum Vinyl sealer. This sealer shall consist of a volatile vehicle containing a minimum of 20% Vinyl Copolymer and plasticizer and a minimum of 10% Non-Leafing Aluminum Flake.

REPAIR. The Contractor shall be required to repair damaged areas of galvanized zinc coating. Damage may result from wet storage (white rust), welding or cutting (flame), or from excessive rough handling during shipping or erection. In general, only field repairs will be allowed. Shop repairs shall only be permitted when the total area of damage on any single piece is less than 2% of the coated surface or 16 square inches, whichever is less. Any coated piece on which the total area of damage exceeds these amounts in the shop shall be rejected.

Materials for field repair shall be selected from Department=s Approved List of Galvanized Repair Materials. Zinc solders shall be zinc-cadmium and zinc-tin-lead alloys supplied in stick or paste form, and that liquidize for application at temperature ranges of from 518 to 527°F and 446 to 500°F, respectively. Zinc paints shall contain not less than 65% zinc dust (by weight) in the dried paint film and shall meet current standards for the emission of volatile organic compounds. Detailed requirements for the approval of galvanized repair materials are available from the Materials Bureau.

Corrosion deposits shall be removed in a manner satisfactory to the Department prior to incorporation of the material in the work. After removal of these deposits, the coating shall have a uniform appearance free from uncoated spots, lumps, blisters, gritty areas, acid, flux and black spots. Materials with these defects will be rejected and shall be immediately removed from the worksite. Acceptable material shall be provided to replace rejected material at no additional expense to the State.
Damaged areas of loose and deteriorated galvanized zinc coating shall be cleaned by power sanding, power grinding, or abrasive blast cleaning to bright metal.

If zinc solder is used for repairs the cleaned area shall be preheated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for use. The heated surface shall then be rubbed with a repair stick to evenly distribute a layer of zinc alloy, or if zinc paste is used it shall be spread evenly using a spatula or similar tool. Zinc solder shall be deposited in a uniform layer at a minimum dry film thickness of 3 mils.

If zinc paint is used for repairs it shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for use, using a brush or by spray methods. Zinc paint shall be applied in such quantity as to produce a minimum dry film thickness of 3 mils.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The acceptance of galvanized coating and repairs is included in the acceptance of the materials receiving the coating.

### 719-02 ALUMINUM ANODIC COATINGS

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for Anodic Coatings for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloys.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 719-02-1 MINIMUM COATING THICKNESS AND WEIGHT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coating Designation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 226</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Anodic coatings for Aluminum and its alloys shall conform to the requirements of Table 719-02-1 for the coating designation shown on the plans or in the proposal:

### 719-03 ALUMINUM COATING (HOT DIP)

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for hot dip aluminum coatings applied to steel appurtenances in contact with aluminum surfaces, or where applied as shown on the contract plans.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The material used shall be 99 percent pure aluminum conforming to the specifications for Aluminum Alloy Number 1100 according to ANSI H 35.1.

Thickness of the coating shall not be less than 2 mils on any individual specimen and the average of the specimens tested shall not be less than 2.3 mils. The thickness of coating may be determined by the use of a Magna-Gage.

The aluminum coating on threads, except on topped threads, shall not be subjected to a cutting, rolling, or finishing tool operation, unless specifically authorized by the Engineer.

The coating shall be continuous and uniform in thickness. The coating shall adhere tenaciously to the surface of the base metal. When the coating is cut or pried into, such as with a stout knife applied with
considerable pressure in a manner tending to remove a portion of the coating, it shall only be possible to remove small particles of the coating by paring or whittling, and it shall not be possible to peel any portion of the coating so as to expose the steel.

The aluminum coated articles shall be free from uncoated spots and other defects not consistent with good aluminum coating practice.

719-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

SECTION 720 - PILES

720-01 UNTREATED TIMBER PILES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for untreated timber piles.

GENERAL. Timber piling shall consist of any species of wood that will withstand driving, except white or gray birch, poplar or basswood.

Piles shall be clean-peeled and shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D25.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The inspector's indelible stamp of approval shall constitute sufficient basis of acceptance at the job site.

720-02 TREATED TIMBER PILES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for treated timber piles.

GENERAL. The requirements for treated timber piles shall conform to the applicable provisions of '720-01 Untreated Timber Piles with the following additions and modifications:

- Piles shall be Southern Yellow Pine or Douglas Fir containing a minimum thickness of sapwood of not less than 1 1/2 inches in Southern Yellow Pine and not less than 1 inch of Douglas Fir at the butt ends.
  - Piles shall be peeled clean of bark, including the inner bark, soon after cutting, so that the piles are smooth and clean. Care shall be taken to remove as little sapwood as possible in the bark peeling operation.
  - The preservative used in the treatment of piles shall conform to the requirements of '708-30, Wood Preservative Creosote Oil, American Wood Preservers' Association Standard P-1 for land and fresh water use; P-13 for Marine (Coastal Waters) or '708-31 Wood Preservative-Water Borne.

Conditioning and treatment. The conditioning before treatment and the preservative treatment shall conform to the requirements of American Wood Preservers' Association Standards C-1, C-3, C-12, C-14, or C-18.

Inspection of piles. The Contractor shall give the Department ample notice relative to the location of, and time when treating operations will take place. Inspection of piles will be made by inspectors designated by the Department, before, during and after the piles are treated at the treatment plant. No piles shall be shipped which do not bear, in legible form, the inspector's stamp of approval.

The piles shall be subject to inspection by the Engineer after arrival at the site and no previous approval at the plant shall bar rejection in the field for injury, breakage, or defects discovered after the piles have left the treatment plant.

Piles shall be free from damage or defects which would impair their usefulness or durability for the purpose intended. The use of “S” irons or other devices for repairing or preventing checks, splits, or other defects will not be permitted.
STORAGE AND HANDLING. All treated timber piles shall be carefully handled and properly stored. Any surface breaks which do not warrant the rejection of the pile shall be treated in accordance with AWPA M4 with the addition that at least three coats of preservative shall be applied.

Treatment of Pile Heads and Bolt Holes. The heads of piles shall be treated as follows: The sawed surface shall be treated in accordance with AWPA M4 with the addition that at least three coats of preservative shall be applied followed by a thick application of a mixture of 30% creosote and 70% pitch. The application of the pitch coat shall not apply to pile heads encased in concrete. All bolt holes bored subsequent to treatment shall be treated with preservative by means of an approved pressure bolt hole treater.

Any unfilled holes, after being treated with preservative shall be plugged with preservative treated plugs.

The Contractor shall obtain all necessary permits pertaining to the purchase and field application of wood preservatives from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the New York State Department of Environmental Conservation.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Inspector's indelible stamp of approval shall constitute basis of acceptance at the job site.

720-03 CASINGS FOR CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE PILES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for casings used for cast-in-place concrete piles.

GENERAL. When the diameter and thickness of pipes are shown on the plans, the material used shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A252, Grade 2, unless otherwise specified. The Contractor will be required to furnish the Engineer with two certified copies of the records of the physical tests performed on the newly manufactured pipe in accordance with the above ASTM requirements. In addition, a manufacturer's statement of certification, which explicitly verifies that the material and workmanship comply with the current ASTM standards for ASTM A252, Grade 2, must accompany each heat.

Thickness Requirements. The metal of shells which are directly driven shall have a thickness sufficient to withstand the driving without fracture or failure, but in no case shall the thickness be less than 0.1053 inch. Shells driven with a mandrel shall have a thickness not less than 0.0538 inch.

Pipes shall have a thickness sufficient to withstand driving without fracture or failure but in no case shall the thickness of pipes be less than 3/16 inch unless otherwise shown on the plans.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The manufacturer's certification shall constitute sufficient basis of acceptance at the job site.

720-04 STEEL H-PILES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for steel H-Piles.

GENERAL. All steel H-Piles shall be rolled HP sections of standard dimensions. Steel for bearing piles shall be new and unused and shall conform to the requirements of 715-01 Structural Steel. Stock steel may be used.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Material acceptance will be by material certification. The certifying
statement must accompany each heat and must verify that the material and workmanship comply with the current ASTM standards for ASTM A709 Grade 50, or A992 Grade 50. Two copies shall be furnished to the Engineer. **Buy America requirements apply.**

### 720-05 PILE SHOES

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for pile shoes.

**GENERAL.** The pile shoes shall consist of ASTM A36 steel or equivalent material capable of withstanding driving without excessive deformation.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Approval by the DCES shall constitute acceptance.

### 720-06 MECHANICAL PILE SPLICES

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the requirements for mechanical splices for steel H-Piles.

**GENERAL.** Steel used in the mechanical pile splices shall meet the requirements of §715-01 Structural Steel.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** The material will be evaluated for conformance with the material requirements, and product samples may be required to be submitted for testing.

Manufacturers may submit their product for evaluation to the DCES. The submission shall include copies of installation drawings, specifications, welding procedures meeting the requirements of the Steel Construction Manual, engineering calculations, test results, and quality control procedures for the splice manufacturer.

Stamped engineering calculations, performed by a New York State Licensed Professional Engineer with current registration, shall show that the spliced pile has a theoretical bending capacity of at least 95% of the unspliced pile.

Test results by an independent testing agency shall show that the bending strength on both the strong and weak axes of the spliced pile is at least as great as the calculated capacity of the splice. The tests shall be third point loadings of a spliced pile with the splice in the middle of the span. The tests shall be continued to failure. A minimum of two pile sizes shall be tested in each direction to prove the engineering calculations.

If the submission is acceptable, the installation drawings will be stamped approved, returned to the manufacturer and the product will be placed on the Approved List. Any changes to the product, product manufacturing, or installation procedure will require re-submission and re-approval.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with an installation drawing approved by the DCES showing the sizes and types of welds that are required. Mechanical pile splices will be accepted based on the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the supplied product has the same chemical composition and mechanical properties as the product used in the testing. **Buy America requirements apply.**

### 720-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

### SECTION 721 - CONCRETE ADHESIVES AND REPAIR MATERIALS

#### 721-01 EPOXY RESIN SYSTEM
SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements of a two-component, rapid setting, high strength epoxy resin system for use as an adhesive and for making epoxy mortar for the repair of minor damaged areas of hardened concrete. This material should not be used when the temperature is below 40°F or when there is moisture present in any of the materials or surfaces it will be in contact with while in the uncured state.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Component A. Component A shall consist of a blend of epoxy resin, plasticizer and fillers so that when mixed with component B the mix will have the characteristics described under “Characteristics of the Mixture”.

Component B. Component B shall consist of an amine adduct curing agent capable of curing the epoxy system from 40°F and above when mixed according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 721-01-1 EPOXY RESIN MIXTURE REQUIREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pot life for 1 pint unit, minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity, cps @ 75°F±2°F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Characteristics of the Mixture. Mixture shall meet the requirements of Table 721-01-1.

Cured Materials. Mixed with three (3) parts by volume of Ottawa silica sand conforming to the requirements for graded standard sand in ASTM C778, the resulting mortar shall have the following characteristics after being cured at 75°F±2°F for 24 hours:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 721-01-2 COMRESSIVE AND TENSILE STRENGTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compressive Strength, psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Splitting Strength, psi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PACKAGING. All material furnished must be shipped in strong, substantial containers. The containers shall be identified as “Part A - contains epoxy resin” and “Part B - contains curing agent” and shall be plainly marked with the following information:

- N.Y.S.D.O.T. materials specification number
- Name of product
- Mixing proportions and instructions
- Name and address of the manufacturer
- Lot number and batch number
- Date of manufacture
- Quantity
- Date of expiration of acceptance
SAMPLING. Material shall be sampled and inspected at the place of manufacture or in warehouse lots as determined by the Department. Samples submitted to the Materials Bureau shall be taken as directed by the Department.

TESTING

Pot Life. The pot life shall be determined as follows: The mixed components shall be set on a bench top and probed with a small flat stick every two (2) minutes. The time at which a soft ball forms in the center of the container is the pot life.

Initial Viscosity. Components A and B shall be conditioned at 75°±2°F prior to mixing and the reading taken two (2) minutes after mixing. The viscosity shall be measured with a Brookfield Model RVT viscometer, spindle No. 3 at 20 rpm.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. This material will be considered for acceptance in stock lot quantities at manufacture or supply locations in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. The expiration date of acceptance of this material shall be one year after the date of manufacture. Any unauthorized tampering or breaking of the seals on the containers between the time of sampling and delivery to the job site will be cause for rejection of the material.

721-02 (VACANT)

721-03 EPOXY POLYSULFIDE GROUT

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements of a two-component, flexible, polysulfide modified epoxy grout containing an inert mineral filler. This material is used for bonding fresh concrete to hardened concrete in both vertical and horizontal planes; grouting studs, etc. into hardened concrete; and making epoxy mortar for the repair of minor damaged areas on hardened concrete. This material should not be used when the temperature is below 50°F.

GENERAL. The two-component epoxy system shall have a maximum ratio of epoxy resin to polysulfide polymer of 2:1 by weight (Min. 1 3/4:1). In addition, the ratio of epoxy resin to curing agent shall be 11:1 by weight (Max. 12:1, Min. 10:1). The fine inert mineral filler when incorporated into the carrying component(s) shall be nonsettling.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Component A. This component shall consist of an unmodified epoxy resin and may contain a portion of fine inert mineral filler. It shall not contain solvents or reactive diluents. The epoxy resin shall be the condensation product of the reaction of bisphenol A with epichlorohydrin, shall be translucent, and shall have the following physical characteristics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 721-03-1 COMPONENT A REQUIREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color, Hellige</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epoxide equivalent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Component B. This material shall consist of a blend of a low viscosity polysulfide polymer and a tertiary amine catalyst. The “B” component shall include a fine inert mineral filler. The component shall
not contain solvents or dilutents. When mixed with Component “A” as directed by the manufacturer, the resulting characteristics shall be as specified in “Characteristics of the Mixture.”

The polysulfide polymer flexibilizer shall be a dichloroethyl formal polysulfide in the 1000-molecular weight range having the following characteristics:

**TABLE 721-03-2 COMPONENT B REQUIREMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Test Method</th>
<th>Min.</th>
<th>Max.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Color, Hellige</td>
<td>ASTM D1544</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulphur Content, percent</td>
<td>ASTM D129</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shelf Life</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Characteristics of the Mixture.** When the two components are mixed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the mixture shall have the physical characteristics in Table 721-03-3.

**TABLE 721-03-3 MIXTURE REQUIREMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Test Method</th>
<th>Min.</th>
<th>Max.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pot Life at 77°F, minutes</td>
<td>See TESTING</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Viscosity at 77°F, poises</td>
<td>See TESTING</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spray applications</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other applications</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tack free time at 77°F, hrs</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>1/8</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degree of temporary gelation, depth, in</td>
<td>See TESTING</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ash content, percent</td>
<td>ASTM D482</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volatiles, percent</td>
<td>ASTM D1259</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Properties of Cured Materials.** The grout, when mixed according to the manufacturer's instructions, shall harden into a solid having the physical characteristics in Table 721-03-4.

**TABLE 721-03-4 CURED MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Test Method</th>
<th>Min.</th>
<th>Max.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compressive Shear Double Strength, psi</td>
<td>Federal Specification</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beam Break Test, psi</td>
<td>Described under &quot;Test&quot;</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PACKAGING.** All material furnished must be shipped in strong substantial containers. The containers shall be identified as “Part A - contains epoxy resin” and “Part B- contains curing agent” and shall be plainly marked with the following information:

- N.Y.S.D.O.T. materials specification number
- Name of product
- Mixing proportions and instructions
- Name and address of the manufacturer
- Lot number and batch number
- Date of manufacture
- Quantity
- Date of expiration of acceptance
SAMPLING. Material shall be sampled and inspected at the place of manufacture or in warehouse lots as determined by the Department. Samples submitted to the Materials Bureau shall be taken as directed by the Department.

TESTING

Pot Life. The pot life shall be determined as follows: The two components are conditioned to 77°F and mixed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The pot life of the material shall be considered to have ended when the viscosity reaches 850 poises (Brookfield Model MBT with Helipath Attachment) at 77°F ambient. The time from initial mixing of the components until the mixture reaches 850 poises shall be recorded as the pot life.

Initial Viscosity. The initial viscosity shall be measured with a Brookfield Model HBT, Spindle No. 3 at 20 rpm.

Tack Free Time. The epoxy mixture shall remain tacky and capable of bonding during a contact period of at least two hours at 77°F ambient measured from the time of spreading.

Degree of Temporary Gelation. The epoxy grout mixture shall have a degree of temporary gelation such that a 1/8 inch film can be maintained on the surface of a standard 2 x 5 inch paint panel after dripping ceases.

Compressive Shear Test. The test shall be performed in accordance with Federal Specification MMM-B-350 Paragraph 4.4.3 except that hand mixing of the epoxy will be permitted.

Beam Break Test. The specimens shall be tested for flexural strength using a simple beam with third point loading. The specimen shall be prepared and tested in accordance with ASTM Methods C192 and C78 except that the concrete shall be designed for 800 - 900 psi flexural strength and shall be cast in 3 x 4 x 16 inch molds using a well-graded coarse aggregate all of which passes a 1 inch square sieve. Each beam to be tested shall be sawed transversely at midpoint, the sawed faces etched with a 10 percent aqueous solution of HCl and then thoroughly washed, and bonded with a 10 mil thickness of the epoxy adhesive under test. The surface to be bonded shall be maintained in a vertical position during application and cure of epoxy adhesive and plastic concrete. The hardened specimens shall be cured for a total time of at least 96 hours. During the last 24 hours of the curing period, they shall be immersed in water. The result reported shall be the average of two tests. Any result below 400 psi which fails outside the plane of adhesion will be disregarded and a retest performed. Any result below 800 psi and above 400 psi, of which 80% of the failure occurs outside the plane of adhesion, shall be considered acceptable. Any result above 800 psi will be considered acceptable regardless of where the failure occurs.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. This material will be considered for acceptance in stock lot quantities at manufacture or supply locations in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. The expiration date of acceptance of this material shall be one year after the date of manufacture. Any unauthorized tampering or breaking of the seals on the containers between the time of sampling and delivery to the job site will be cause for rejection of the material.

721-04 (VACANT)

721-05 EPOXY REPAIR PASTE
SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements of a two-component, flexible, rapid-hardening epoxy resin paste for making epoxy mortar. This material is used for the repair and sealing of cracks and other minor damaged areas in hardened concrete. It is suitable for patching on horizontal, vertical, and overhead applications. It develops high early strengths and achieves final cure in seven (7) days. This material shall not be used when the concrete or ambient temperature is below 50°F or above 100°F. It is suitable for damp, moist, and underwater applications.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Component A. Component A shall be the condensation product of the reaction of bisphenol A with epichlorohydrin. It may contain fillers but shall not contain non-reactive diluents. When mixed with Component B the mixture shall have the characteristics described under Characteristics of the Mixture.

Component B. Component B shall be the curing agent for the system and shall be capable of curing the system from 40°F and above when mixed according to the manufacturer's instructions. It shall contain no non-reactive diluents but may contain flexibilizers or fillers. Component B shall be completely reactive with Component A.

Components A and B shall each have a shelf life of one (1) year.

Characteristics of the Mixture. When Components A and B are mixed according to the manufacturer's instructions, the mixture will have a paste or gel consistency such that a 1/2 inch thick layer of the mixture will not sag or drip from an overhead surface throughout the temperature range from 50°F to 100°F. It shall also have the following characteristics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pot Life @ 77°F, minutes</td>
<td>10 min.- 60 max.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Properties of Cured Material. For testing purposes the Components A and B shall be mixed with ASTM C109 Ottawa Silica Sand in the ratio of 1 part sand to 1 part epoxy by volume. This paste shall also be non-sagging and non-dripping as stated under Characteristics of the Mixture. The cured material shall have the following physical properties:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 721-05-1 CURED MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compressive Strength1, psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bond Test Modulus of Rupture, psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freeze-Thaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: 2 inch cubic samples conditioned 24 hrs.

PACKAGING. All materials furnished shall be shipped in strong, substantial containers. The containers shall be identified as “Part A contains epoxy resin” and “Part B contains curing agent.” It shall also be plainly marked with the following information:

- N.Y.S.D.O.T. materials specification number
- Name of product
- Mixing proportions and instructions
- Name and address of manufacturer
- Lot number and batch number
- Date of manufacturer
• Quantity
• Date of expiration of acceptance.

TESTING

Pot Life. The components will be conditioned to 77°F and mixed according to the manufacturer's instructions. A 60±0.4 g. total weight will be placed in an unwaxed paper cup and placed on a work bench. The mixture will be probed every 2 minutes with a small stick starting 8 minutes from the time of mixing. The time at which a small ball forms in the center of the container is recorded as the pot life.

Bond Test. The epoxy will be tested for flexural strength using a simple beam with third point loading. The concrete will be designed for 800 to 900 psi flexural strength and will be cast in 3 x 4 x 16 inch molds using a well-graded coarse aggregate all of which passes a 1 inch square sieve. Each beam to be tested will be sawed transversely at midpoint, the sawed faces etched with a 10% aqueous solution of HCL and then thoroughly washed. A 10 mil thickness of the epoxy adhesive under test will be applied to both wet etched surfaces while in a vertical position and worked into the surface. One of the prism halves will be inverted and placed on the matching half and allowed to cure for 72 hours.

The result reported will be the average of two tests. Any result below 400 psi which fails outside the plane of adhesion will be disregarded and a retest performed. Any result below 800 psi and above 400 psi, of which 80% of the failure occurs outside the plane of adhesion, will be considered acceptable. Any result above 800 psi will be considered acceptable regardless of where the failure occurs.

Freeze-Thaw. Testing will be conducted in accordance with New York Test Method 216. In addition bond test specimens will be subjected to 7 freeze-thaw cycles before breaking in third point loading. A bond strength of 80% of the original average bond strength will be considered acceptable.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. This material will be considered for acceptance in stock lot quantities at the manufacture or supply locations in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

The expiration date of acceptance of this material shall be one year after the date of manufacture. Any unauthorized tampering or breaking of the seals on the containers between the time of sampling and delivery to the job site will be cause for rejection of the material.

721-06 THRU 721-19 (VACANT)

721-20 RAPID HARDENING POLYMER CONCRETE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements of a two component, rapid hardening, methyl methacrylate based polymer concrete repair material. The material is used with a primer to repair hardened concrete.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS

Polymer Concrete Mortar. The polymer concrete mortar shall be a two component methyl methacrylate based system. One component shall be a premixed powder consisting of catalyst, fine fillers, and fine aggregate not to exceed 1/16 inch in size. The other component shall be a methyl methacrylate monomer liquid capable of chemically reacting with the powder component such that the mixture hardens to a completely cured condition within three (3) hours at temperatures between 35°F and 100°F inclusive. The working life of the mixture shall be a minimum of 10 minutes and its workability shall be consistent
throughout the above temperature range. The shelf life of the unopened components, stored at room
temperature and in a dry atmosphere, shall be 6 months, minimum. Material older than 12 months from
the date of manufacturer shall not be used.

**Properties of Cured Polymer Concrete.** Polymer Concrete Mortar specimens, when prepared in
accordance with the manufacturer's mixing instructions, shall exhibit the following properties when cured
168±2 hours at 73°F± 5°F:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 721-20-1 CURED POLYMER CONCRETE REQUIREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modulus of Rupture, psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elastic Modulus, psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal Expansion Coefficient, in/in/°F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The material shall also exhibit the following properties when tested under NYSDOT Test Method
701-13F:
- A minimum one hour compressive strength of 2500 psi, a 24 hour strength of 3500 psi, and a 28 day
  strength of 5000 psi.
- Be able to withstand 50 cycles of freeze-thaw (10% NaCl solution) with a maximum loss of 4%.

**Primer.** The primer shall be a two component methyl methacrylate resin system capable of enhancing
the bond between the polymer concrete and the substrate. It shall have a curing time of 20 to 60 minutes
at temperatures between 35°F and 100°F inclusive.

**Flammability.** The polymer concrete shall not support or sustain combustion within five (5) minutes
after mixing.

**PACKAGING.** The material delivered from the manufacturer shall be in moisture proof bags and the
contents shall weigh within ±3% of the labeled bag weight. The manufacturer's name, address, date of
manufacture and mixing instructions shall be printed on each bag.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Application for material approval shall be submitted to the Director of the
Materials Bureau accompanied by at least a 50 lbs, production run, sample of material. Upon approval,
the name of the product will be placed on the Department's Approved List. Products so listed will be
acceptable at the work site on the basis of the brand name labeled on the container. The Department
reserves the right to sample and test the material at any time.

**721-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**SECTION 722 - WATER SUPPLY**

**722-01 DUCTILE IRON WATER PIPE, FITTINGS AND ENCASEMENT**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for ductile iron water pipe,
miscellaneous fittings, coatings and encasement.

**GENERAL.** Ductile iron water pipe, fittings and encasement shall conform to the requirements of the
following:
Cement-Mortar Lining for
Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings for Water
AWWA C104 / ANSI A21.4
Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems
AWWA C105 / ANSI A21.5
Ductile Iron and Gray Iron Fittings, 3 through 48 in. diam.
for Water
AWWA C110 / ANSI A21.10
Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe
and Fittings
AWWA C111 / ANSI A21.11
Flanged Ductile-Iron Pipe with Ductile-Iron or Gray-Iron
Threaded Flanges
AWWA C115 / ANSI A21.15
Protective Fusion-Bonded Epoxy Coating for the Interior and
Exterior Surfaces of Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings
for Water Supply Service
AWWA C116 / ANSI A21.16
Thickness Design of Ductile-Iron Pipe
AWWA C150 / ANSI A21.50
Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, for Water
AWWA C151 / ANSI A21.51
Ductile-Iron Compact Fittings, 3 through 24 in. diam.
and 54 through 64 in. diam., for Water Service
AWWA C153 / ANSI A21.53

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Ductile iron water pipe and fittings will be accepted on the basis of the
Manufacturer’s certification that the material conforms to this specification. The certification for iron
fittings shall list a fitting description, quantity, bare fitting weight and source, (AWWA Standard C110,
C153 or Manufacturer, if fitting is not listed in either standard). The certification shall accompany the
material delivered to the project site.

The Department reserves the right to sample and test this material subsequent to delivery at the project
site.

722-02 STEEL WATER PIPE AND FITTINGS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for steel water pipe and
miscellaneous fittings.

GENERAL. Steel water pipe and fittings shall conform to the requirements of the following:

Steel Water Pipe - 6 in. diam. and Larger
AWWA C200
Coal-Tar Protective Coatings and Linings for Steel Water Pipelines -
Enamel and Tape - Hot Applied
AWWA C203
Cement-Mortar Protective Lining and Coating for Steel Water Pipe -
4 in. diam. and Larger - Shop Applied
AWWA C205
Field Welding of Steel Water Pipe
AWWA C206
Steel Pipe Flanges for Waterworks Service - Sizes 4 to 144 in. diam.
AWWA C207
Dimensions for Fabricated Steel Water Pipe Fittings
AWWA C208
Cold-Applied Exterior Tape Coatings for the Exterior of Special Sections,
Connections and Fittings for Steel Water Pipelines
AWWA C209
Liquid-Epoxy Coatings for Steel Pipelines
AWWA C210
Fusion-Bonded Epoxy Coatings Systems for the Interior and Exterior
of Steel Water Pipelines
AWWA C213
Tape Coating Systems for the Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines
AWWA C214
Extruded Polyolefin Coatings for the Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines
AWWA C215
Heat-Shrinkable Cross-Linked Polyolefin Coatings for the Exterior
of Fittings for Buried or Submerged Steel Water Pipelines
AWWA C216
Cold-Applied Petrolatum Tape and Petroleum Wax Tape Coatings
for the Exterior of Special Sections, Connections and Fittings

for Buried Steel Water Pipelines AWWA C217
Coating the Exterior of Aboveground Steel Water Pipelines and Fittings AWWA C218
Bolted, Sleeve-Type Couplings for Plain-End Pipe AWWA C219
Stainless-Steel Pipe, 4 in. diam. and Larger AWWA C220
Fabricated Steel Mechanical Slip-Type Expansion Joints AWWA C221
Polyurethane Coatings for the Interior and Exterior of Steel Water Pipe Fittings AWWA C222

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Steel water pipe and fittings will be accepted on the basis of the Manufacturer=’s certification that the material conforms to this specification. The certification shall accompany the material delivered to the project site.

The Department reserves the right to sample and test this material subsequent to delivery at the project site.

722-03 CONCRETE WATER PIPE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for concrete water pipe.

GENERAL. Concrete water pipe shall conform to the requirements of the following:

Reinforced Concrete Pressure Pipe, Steel Cylinder Type AWWA C300
Prestressed Concrete Pressure Pipe, Steel Cylinder Type AWWA C301
Reinforced Concrete Pressure Pipe, Noncylinder Type AWWA C302
Concrete Pressure Pipe, Bar-Wrapped, Steel Cylinder Type AWWA C303

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Concrete water pipe will be accepted on the basis of the Manufacturer=’s certification that the material conforms to this specification. The certification shall accompany the material delivered to the project site.

The Department reserves the right to sample and test this material subsequent to delivery at the project site.

722-04 WATER VALVES AND HYDRANTS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for water valves and hydrants.

GENERAL. Water valves and hydrants shall conform to the requirements of the following:

Metal-Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service AWWA C500
Cast-Iron Sluice Gates AWWA C501
Dry Barrel Hydrants AWWA C502
Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves AWWA C504
Ball Valves (6 through 48 in. diam.) AWWA C507
Swing Check Valves for Waterworks Service (2 through 24 in. diam.) AWWA C508
Resilient-Seated Gate Valves AWWA C509
Double-Check Valve Backflow Prevention Assembly AWWA C510
Reduced-Pressure Principle Backflow Prevention Assembly AWWA C511
Air-Release, Air/Vacuum and Combination Air Valves for Waterworks Service AWWA C512
Open-Channel, Fabricated Metal Slides AWWA C513
Reduced-Wall, Resilient Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service AWWA C515
Power Actuating Devices for Valves and Sluice Gates AWWA C540
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Water valves and hydrants will be accepted on the basis of the Manufacturer=s certification that the material conforms to this specification. The certification shall accompany the material delivered to the project site.

The Department reserves the right to sample and test this material subsequent to delivery at the project site.

722-05 PLASTIC WATER PIPE AND FITTINGS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for plastic water pipe and fittings.

GENERAL. Plastic water pipe and fittings shall conform to the requirements of the following:

- Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe 4 through 12 in. diam. for Water Distribution AWWA C900
- Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe and Fabricated Fittings (14 through 48 in. diam.) for Water Transmission and Distribution AWWA C905
- Polyethylene Water Pipe and Fittings, 4 through 63 in. diam., for Water Distribution and Transmission AWWA C906
- Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Fittings for Water, 4 through 8 in. diam. AWWA C907
- PVC Self-Tapping Saddle Tees for Use on PVC Pipe AWWA C908
- Molecularly Oriented Polyvinyl Chloride (PVCO) Pressure Pipe, 4 through 12 in. diam. AWWA C909
- Fiberglass Pressure Pipe AWWA C950

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Plastic water pipe and fittings will be accepted on the basis of the Manufacturer=s certification that the material conforms to this specification. The certification shall accompany the material delivered to the project site.

The Department reserves the right to sample and test this material subsequent to delivery at the project site.

722-06 WATER SERVICE PIPE, SERVICE VALVES AND FITTINGS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for water service pipe, service valves and fittings.

GENERAL. Water service pipe, service valves and fittings shall conform to the requirements of the following:

- Underground Service Line Valves and Fittings AWWA C800
- Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Pipe and Tubing (1/2 through 3 in. diam.) for Water Service AWWA C901
- Steel Water Service Pipe (1/2 to 4 in. diam.) ASTM A53
- Seamless Copper Water Tube, Type K ASTM B88

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Water service pipe, service valves and fittings will be accepted on the basis of the Manufacturer=s certification that the material conforms to this specification. The certification shall accompany the material delivered to the project site.
The Department reserves the right to sample and test this material subsequent to delivery at the project site.

**722-07 WEDGE TYPE MECHANICAL RESTRAINT GLANDS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for wedge type mechanical restraint glands.

**GENERAL.** Wedge type mechanical restraint glands shall have a number of individually activated wedges around the circumference of a pipe which grip the pipe surface and bolts through the gland which are attached to a fitting or a gland that restrains a pipe bell. Glands shall be constructed of high strength ductile iron in accordance with ASTM Standard A536, and shall have a minimum pressure rating exceeding the system test pressure identified in the Owner requirements. Glands shall be specifically manufactured for the type of pipe used, and may be solid or split ring (two piece). Glands shall be manufactured with twist off bolts.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Wedge type mechanical restraint glands will be accepted on the basis of the Manufacturer’s certification that the material conforms to this specification. The certification shall accompany the material delivered to the project site.

The Department reserves the right to sample and test this material subsequent to delivery at the project site.

**722-08 INSULATION FOR WATER MAINS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for insulation for water mains.

**GENERAL.** Insulation for water mains shall be made of fiberglass, cellular glass, urethane or cellular phenol and shall conform to the requirements of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Insulation Type</th>
<th>Standard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fiberglass Pipe Insulation</td>
<td>ASTM C547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular Glass Insulation</td>
<td>ASTM C552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethane Foam Pipe Insulation</td>
<td>ASTM C591</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spray Applied Urethane Insulation</td>
<td>ASTM C1029</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rigid Cellular Phenolic Pipe Insulation</td>
<td>ASTM C1126, Type III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterproof Jacket for Insulation</td>
<td>ASTM C1136</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Insulation for water mains will be accepted on the basis of the Manufacturer’s certification that the material conforms to this specification. The certification shall accompany the material delivered to the project site.

The Department reserves the right to sample and test this material subsequent to delivery at the project site.

**722-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**SECTION 723 - LIGHTING**

**723-01 ALUMINUM LIGHT STANDARDS AND ARMS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for aluminum light standard shafts and aluminum bracket arms.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

General. All light standards and arms shall be designed in accordance with the latest edition of the AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals. The ARTBA Guide to Standardized Highway Lighting Pole Hardware may be used in conjunction with the AASHTO Standard Specifications in lieu of actual design computations. Wind pressure for design purposes shall be determined in accordance with the above AASHTO Standard Specifications, utilizing the wind speeds listed below. In addition, the dimensions of all lighting hardware shall also be consistent with the requirements of the appropriate maintenance agency.

 Shaft. The shaft shall be a one-piece, seamless, round tapered spun aluminum tube of alloy 6063. The aluminum shaft shall be heat treated for its full length to produce a T6 temper, and an anchor base shall be welded to the bottom of the shaft. Shafts, which are to be mounted without transformer bases, shall be equipped with a 4 inch wide by 6 inch to 8 inch high reinforced handhole centered 14 to 18 inches above the base of the shaft, and located 90 degrees from the plane of the arm and on the side away from traffic if possible. Each handhole shall have a cover with stainless steel attachment screws to secure the cover. A grounding nut shall be provided inside the shaft opposite the handhole to accommodate a 1/2 inch threaded bolt or stud. The shaft shall have a satin finish accomplished by mechanical rotary grinding.

 An anchor base shall be joined to the shaft by means of complete circumferential welds, externally at top of anchor base and internally at bottom of shaft.

 The anchor base shall be a one-piece permanent mold casting, aluminum alloy 356-T6 provided with four (4) slots to receive 1 inch diameter bolts. The casting shall be free of cracks, pits, blow holes and non-metallic inclusions. Each anchor base shall be provided with four anchor bolt covers fabricated from aluminum alloy with stainless steel screws for attaching the covers.

 If bracket arm light standards are proposed, a removable ornamental cast aluminum pole cap with stainless steel setscrews to hold it in place shall be provided and installed on the top of each shaft. A 1 1/2 inch diameter hole shall be furnished near the top of each shaft where the arm is to be attached to provide a cable entrance from the shaft into the bracket arm. The opening shall have an approved metal or rubber grommet placed to provide a smooth cable guide for pulling the electrical cable through. The pole cap and hole are not required for davit arm light standards. Wall thickness and tube diameters for 80 mph wind zones shall conform to Table 723-01-1 Light Standard Dimensions.

 Truss Arms. The upper and lower members shall be fabricated from seamless tubing of 6063-T6 or 6061-T6 aluminum alloy. The upper member shall be the continuous or wiring member and shall have a 1/8 inch minimum wall thickness. Truss bracket arms shall be designed with the upper and lower members joined near the luminaire end of the arm. The arms shall be braced with one or two vertical pipe struts depending on the arm length. Each truss bracket arm shall be equipped with a 2 inch pipe size slip fitter tenon projecting 5 inches from the luminaire end. The arm shall be secured to the shaft with a bolt type or clamp type attachment similar to those shown in drawings ASA 2-1 or ASA 2-2 of the ARTBA Guide to Standardized Highway Lighting Pole Hardware. Attachments that require welding a fitting directly onto the shaft, similar to ARTBA drawing SPS 2-1, will not be allowed on aluminum light pole shafts. Bolts and nuts shall be fabricated from AISI Type 302 stainless steel according to ANSI B1.1. Washers shall be fabricated from AISI 300 series stainless steel according to the requirements of ANSI B18.21.2. In projects where arm lengths are intermixed, the rise for each length is to be set to keep the upper chord of all arms at approximately equal slopes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 723-01-1 LIGHT STANDARD DIMENSIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Pole Height (ft-in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Single Bracket Arms.  4 to 8 feet.  The single member arms shall be fabricated from seamless tubing of 6063-T6 or 6061-T6 aluminum alloy.  Wall thickness shall not be less than 1/8 inch.  The arms shall be designed in accordance with AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals.  Each arm shall be equipped with a 2 in. diam. pipe size slip fitter tenon projecting 6 - 8 inches from the luminaire end.  The arms shall be secured to the shaft with a bolt type or clamp type attachment similar to those shown in drawings ASA 2-1 or ASA 2-2 of the ARTBA Guide to Standardized Highway Lighting Pole Hardware.  Attachments that require welding a fitting directly onto the shaft, similar to ARTBA drawing SPS 2-1, will not be allowed on aluminum light pole shafts.  Bolts and nuts shall be fabricated from AISI Type 302 stainless steel according to ANSI B1.1 Washers shall be fabricated from AISI 300 series stainless steel according to the requirements of ANSI B18.21.2.

Bracket Arms for Wood Utility Poles.  Bracket arms to be mounted on wooden utility poles shall be tapered, seamless tube aluminum with a 1/8 inch minimum wall thickness.  The bracket arm shall be welded to an appropriate connection plate at the pole end and have a 2 inch slip-fitter tenon at the luminaire end.  A 1 1/4 inch cable opening on the underside near the pole shall be protected with a rubber grommet.  Arms over 6 feet long shall be trussed, with upper and lower members securely joined by means of vertical strut(s).  All aluminum shall be alloy 6063-T6 and all connecting hardware such as nuts, bolts, etc. shall be stainless steel.

Davit Arm Poles.  For davit arm poles the top of the shaft shall terminate in a tenon (or twin tenons for double arm poles) and be equipped with a friction fit outer sleeve to produce a flush joint with the arms(s).  The davit arms(s) shall be constructed of the materials and methods specified for the shaft and as dimensioned on the drawings.  The davit arm(s) shall be secured to the shaft in a flush connection with two stainless steel bolts, nuts and lockwashers.  The davit arms(s) shall terminate in a cast or fabricated flush tenon for a slipfit connection to the luminaire.  The tenon shall be secured to the davit arm by stainless steel bolts.

SHIPPING.  Shafts and arms shall be tire-wrapped with a heavy water resistant paper, for protection during shipping and installation.  All small parts shall be boxed.
Wind speeds. Poles, arms and attachments covered by this specification shall be designed for the following wind speeds in accordance with the AASHTO Standard mentioned above.

- 70 mph - All Other Counties.

Welding. All aluminum welding on light standards shall be performed in the shop, using the inert metal-arc welding process. Filler metal shall conform to the A.W.S. Specification A5-10. Welders shall be certified by A.S.M.E. Section 9 or A.W.S. D 1.2.

Vibration Shims. Vibration shims (dampeners) shall be provided by the pole manufacturer for all aluminum poles 30 feet or longer. Vibration shims shall also be provided for poles installed in excessively windy locations or on viaducts with continuous vibration.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of the shaft, anchor base, truss bracket arms, and single member arms covered by this specification will be based on:

- Manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.
- Submission, to the Engineer, of design and fabrication details for each shaft, anchor base and arm intended for a particular design load as specified in the contract documents. The design and fabrication details being submitted shall have been approved and signed by a professional engineer licensed to practice in New York State. This submission shall be sent in time to be received at least 10 working days prior to the date the Contractor orders the poles, anchor bases and arms.

723-02 HIGH MAST POLE, HEAD FRAME ASSEMBLY WITH LUMINAIRE RING AND LOWERING DEVICE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for the pole and head frame assembly with luminaire ring and lowering device to be used in a high mast lighting system.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

General. The steel pole, head frame assembly, luminaire ring and lowering system shall be designed to meet or exceed the AASHTO Standard Specifications, for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals, 2009 with interims, with a Fatigue Importance Category of I. The design wind loading shall be chosen to be consistent with the location of the structure and the height factor. See §723-01 Aluminum Light Standards and Arms. The Contractor shall obtain verification of all necessary weights and effective projected areas as required in the contract documents.

Poles. The pole shall meet the requirements of one of the following specifications:

- ASTM A53, Welded and Seamless Steel Pipe, Grade B, Type E or S
- ASTM A500, Welded and Seamless Steel Pipe, Grade B (Rounds Only)
- ASTM 252, Welded and Seamless Pipe, Grade 2 or 3, provided that the chemical certifications meet the requirements for ASTM A53, Grade B Type E or S.
The high mast steel pole shall be capable of supporting the combined weight and projected area of both the lowering system and number of luminaires with built-in ballast as shown on the contract documents.

The high mast pole shall consist of sections of tapered steel tubes, a round cross section, which telescopes into each other with an overlap of 1.5 diameters. Steel used in fabricating the shaft shall have a minimum yield strength of 50,000 psi after all fabricating operations have been completed.

The base of the pole shall have an adequate size hand hole complete with a weatherproof cover and lock. A plate shall be welded opposite the hand hole for mounting the lowering system winch (unless externally mounted on the portable power drive), circuit breakers and other hardware. The hand hole area shall have a 6 feet reinforcing sleeve. The hand hole and plate shall be designed to accommodate the required High Mast Head Frame and Lowering Assembly.

The high mast pole shall be galvanized after fabrication in accordance with §719-01 Coating and Repair Methods, Type I.

**Anchor Base.** The anchor base shall be fabricated of steel meeting or exceeding the yield strength of ASTM A-36M. The anchor base shall telescope the butt end of the pole and be welded on the inside bottom and outside top.

**Anchor bolts, nuts, and washers.** Anchor bolts and nuts shall be ASTM F1554 Grade 36 or 55. The top of the anchor bolts shall have a minimum 9 inches of thread. Nuts, washers and a minimum of 12 inches of the top of anchor bolts shall be hot-dipped galvanized in accordance with the requirements of 719-01 Galvanized Coating and Repair Method, Type II. Each bolt shall be furnished with two (2) heavy duty, galvanized, hex nuts with a strength equal to or exceeding the proof load of the bolts. Washers shall be plain hardened washers. The Contractor may wish to install pre-assembled anchor bolt cages, subject to approval by the Engineer, in lieu of the design shown in the contract documents.

The pole manufacturer shall design the anchor bolts and nuts in accordance with AASHTO Standard Specification for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals, 2009 with interims, with a Fatigue Importance Category of I.

**Welding.** Pole sections shall have no more than two longitudinal welded seam and no transverse seams. All welding shall be performed in accordance with the N.Y.S. Steel Construction Manual. Longitudinal welds shall have a minimum 60% penetration. All circumferential welds for slip joints and shaft to base shall be 100% penetration. All 100% welds shall be inspected ultrasonically by the State.

**Reinforcing sleeve.** The reinforcing sleeve shall be fabricated of steel meeting or exceeding AISI 1020 steel. The sleeve shall be galvanized under the same ASTM specification as the pole.

**Head Frame.** The head frame shall be capable of supporting the combined weight and projected areas of the luminaire ring assembly and luminaires with built in ballast as shown on the plans. The luminaire ring shall be designed to use the number and configuration of luminaires shown on the plans.

The head frame shall be equipped with a suitable weather resistant and bird proof cover.

The head frame shall be a zinc-coated steel structure attached to the pole by means of a steel slip fitter and secured by at least four (4) stainless steel set screws.

The head frame shall provide at least three point suspension for the luminaire ring assembly.

For raising and lowering the luminaire ring assembly, three 7x19 aircraft-grade stainless steel, hoisting cables, of sufficient size to support the load shall be included. Hoisting cable sheaves shall be grooved to the exact diameter of the hoisting cable for 180° bearing surface and be equipped with suitable guides to prevent jumping the sheaves. Sheave bearings shall be permanently lubricated on stainless steel shafts.

Permanently lubricated power cable sheave(s) shall be provided over a stainless steel shaft. The grooved diameter of the sheave(s) shall be coordinated with the power cable diameter and be equipped with guides to prevent jumping the sheave(s).
The power cable supplied shall be a minimum of 20 feet longer than the street lighting pole installed. It shall be a waterproof cable with the necessary number of conductors and sized to properly operate the street lighting system.

Three latching devices shall be provided to support the luminaire ring assembly when in the latched position. There will be no tension on the hoisting cables when the luminaire ring is in the latched position. The latches shall be actuated from the ground. Locking of the luminaire ring shall be signalled by indicators visible from the ground. All moving parts of the latch mechanism shall be serviceable from the ground. The latching mechanism shall not be impaired by the formation of ice and shall not require adjustment. Each of the latches, independently, shall be strong enough to support eight times the weight of the luminaire ring assembly and all luminaires installed.

Lowering System and Luminaire Assembly. The luminaire ring assembly shall be fabricated of steel with the appropriate number of 2 inch nominal steel pipe mounting arms. It shall be zinc plated and prewired to distribute the power to the required number of luminaires. Power cables shall be positively attached to the ring assembly through a watertight wiring chamber, with watertight cable connectors. A 600 volt terminal block, completely prewired shall be included in the watertight wiring chamber. A watertight twist lock power receptacle shall be installed in the luminaire ring to allow testing of the luminaires at ground level. A cable support shall be provided to hold the power cable in the luminaire ring.

Attached to the luminaire ring assembly shall be a spring loaded roller contact guidance mechanism with a minimum of three arms that maintain positive contact with the pole surface, centering and guiding the ring assembly during lowering to prevent jamming. Rollers shall be made of water resistant non-marking material with permanently lubricated bearings on stainless steel shafts.

Winch Assembly, if permanently mounted in the pole, shall be a worm-gear self locking type (Torque rated) and designed for both hand operation or operation by means of a portable power unit. Winch Cable shall be 1/4 inch or greater diameter, stainless steel aircraft cable to support the load. There shall be a take-up guide on the winch assembly to eliminate cable 'fall-off'. Compression springs shall be used in the connection of the hoisting cables to the luminaire ring assembly, but ultimate support of the luminaire ring will not be sacrificed by individual or total compression spring failure.

The lowering system shall also include circuit breaker assembly, twist-lock receptacle and plugs for the power cable.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. If the Contractor proposes to use a shape of pole and/or appurtenances different from that indicated in the contract documents, written approval of the change in shape must be received from the Engineer prior to fabrication of the poles and/or appurtenances. The differences shall be highlighted on the shop drawings submitted to the Office of Structures for approval. Where the pole and/or appurtenances to be used are not as indicated in the contract documents, the manufacturer shall certify, in writing that the pole and/or appurtenances supplied meet or exceed the capacity of the pole and/or appurtenances indicated in the contract documents.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of the steel poles and appurtenances will be based on the delivery, by the Contractor to the Engineer, of a manufacturer's certification, signed by a Professional Engineer, of compliance with the specification requirements and the details of the poles and their appurtenances as indicated in the contract documents. The Contractor shall submit to the Engineer five copies of the shop drawings, approved by DCES, that were used to fabricate the poles and appurtenances.

723-03 PORTABLE POWER DRIVE FOR HIGH MAST LUMINAIRE LOWERING SYSTEM

SCOPE. This specification covers the functional requirements for a portable power drive unit, and winch when necessary, issued for a High Mast Luminaire Lowering System.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The portable power drive unit shall be a heavy duty reversing electric drill motor and drive shaft coupled with a torque limiter which shall supply all of the necessary driving power to the winch. A portable winch assembly shall be included with the portable power drive unit unless the winch has been permanently installed in the base of the high mast pole. The power drive shall be provided with a step down transformer and a remote control cord which will enable the operator to stand at least 16 feet 6 inches from the pole. The unit shall be designed so as to be simply strapped to the base of the pole with a quick-connect securing mechanism that will accommodate any size or shape pole. The unit shall be capable of raising or lowering the lowering ring and luminaires at an approximate rate of 10 feet per minute. All aspects of the power drive shall be compatible with the detailing of the pole base and the lowering system for which it is to be used.

Detail specifications, parts lists, instruction sheets and shop drawings of the portable power drive shall be submitted in accordance with 670-3.02 Shop Drawings.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE: Acceptance of the portable power drive will be based on the manufacturer's certificate of compliance with these specification requirements, and the Engineer's approval of the detail specifications and shop drawings.

723-04 THRU 723-09 (VACANT)

723-10 ANCHOR BASE (ALUMINUM)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for cast aluminum anchor bases for lighting standards.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Aluminum anchor bases shall be a one piece casting of 356.0 aluminum alloy. The casting shall be free of cracks, pits, blow holes and non-metallic inclusions. Each anchor base shall be provided with four anchor bolt covers fabricated from B443.0 aluminum alloy with stainless steel screws for attaching the covers.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Anchor bases will be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification that they meet the requirements of this section.

723-11 THRU 723-14 (VACANT)

723-15 BREAKAWAY TRANSFORMER BASE (ALUMINUM)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for Breakaway Aluminum Transformer Bases for Lighting Standards.

GENERAL. Transformer bases shall be one-piece aluminum alloy sand or aluminum alloy permanent-mold castings. The bases shall be equipped with a removable, aluminum or plastic, trapezoidal shaped door (approximately 12 inches high; 7 inches wide (top); 9 inches wide (bottom). Each door shall be secured to the base with a stainless steel screw(s).

For attachment to the shaft anchor base, each transformer base shall be supplied with four (4) loose bearing plates or other acceptable bearing surfaces and four (4) 1 inch diameter by 3 3/4 inch long or longer hot-dipped galvanized hexhead machine bolts.

A grounding connection, accommodating a 1/2 inch threaded bolt or nut shall be provided inside each transformer base.

The light pole manufacturer shall obtain the base and bolt circle dimensions from the plans and shall then provide the Contractor with a template print, giving complete information for setting the anchor bolts.
Transformer bases shall be so designed as to minimize the possibility of hooking or snagging an impacting vehicle.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Transformer bases shall be cast of Aluminum-Alloy 356.0-T6 (SG70A-T6) in conformance with ASTM B26M, Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings or ASTM B108, Aluminum-Alloy Permanent Mold Castings. The trapezoidal shaped door shall be fabricated from B443.0 (S5A) or 356.0-T6 (SG70A-T6) Aluminum Alloy.

Transformer bases and doors may be made of an Aluminum Alloy equivalent to 356.0-T6 (SG70A-T6) upon approval of the Materials Bureau.

**TESTS.** To determine acceptable breakaway characteristics, transformer bases shall be subjected to dynamic laboratory testing. The test shall apply to transformer bases accommodating poles of less than 700 pounds in weight (including luminaire and bracket) and poles of less than 50 foot mounting height only.

A full size pole, together with luminaire or a suitable weight to simulate the luminaire, shall be mounted on the transformer base. A ballistic pendulum, equipped with a crushable nose, as approved by FHWA, and weighing 1800 pounds, shall be swung in such a manner so as to strike the transformer base at a velocity of 20 mph. The point of impact shall be at a height of 20 inches from the bottom of the transformer base.

Transformer bases shall be considered to have acceptable breakaway features if they produce a change in velocity of 18 feet per second or less. For further specific information concerning the test equipment and procedure, contact the Materials Bureau.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Department requires the submission of Materials Details. The manufacturer or supplier shall prepare and submit the appropriate material in accordance with the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the name of the product and/or supplier, and the reference number assigned to the approved Materials Details will be placed on the Approved List. Such products shall then be accepted on the basis of their brand name and conformance to the approved Materials Details.

The supplier shall provide two copies of the approved Materials Details through the Contractor to the Engineer as part of the evidence of acceptability for the material at least 10 days prior to the use of the product.

**723-16 THRU 723-18 (VACANT)**

**723-19 RIGID PLASTIC CONDUIT**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for rigid plastic conduits (PVC and high-density PE) for use as raceway for wires or cables of an electrical system. Rigid plastic conduit is acceptable for up to 167°F wiring service. Rigid PVC (polyvinyl chloride) conduit is suitable for installation above or below ground and with or without concrete encasement; high-density PE (polyethylene) conduit is intended for below ground installations only, and with or without concrete encasement.

**GENERAL.** Under these requirements either Class 1, Heavy Wall PVC or Class 2, High Density PE conduit may be supplied for underground installation. For above ground use, only Class 1 conduit shall be allowed.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Rigid plastic conduit shall conform to the requirements of UL 651A.

All fittings, couplings and expansion fittings shall conform to the applicable requirements of UL514A. Solvent cement for joining Class 1 conduit and conduit fittings shall meet the requirements of ASTM
D2564, or alternately be of the type recommended by the conduit manufacturer. Unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer, fittings for Class 2 conduit shall be of a drive-on type and solvent cement will not be needed for “jointing.”

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Rigid plastic conduit shall be accepted upon the basis of the manufacturer's certification that it meets the requirements of this specification, as well as being Underwriters Laboratory Listed. Fittings, couplings and solvent cement shall be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification that they meet the requirements of this specification.

### 723-20 METAL STEEL CONDUIT, ZINC COATED

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for zinc coated rigid metal steel and intermediate metal steel conduits, used as raceways for wires or cable of an electrical system. Steel conduit may be embedded in concrete or earth; or may be used under all atmospheric conditions, including those locations classified as hazardous; and may be used in high voltage (over 600 volts) installations.

**GENERAL.** Under these requirements, either Class 1, Rigid Metal Steel Conduit or Class 2, Intermediate Metal Steel Conduit may be supplied. In addition, Class 1 and Class 2 conduits may be interchanged in the same run, providing the ends of both of the conduits are reamed, so as to create beveled edges and a smooth area over which the wires and cables will pass. Where conduit is to be jacked or exposed to the atmosphere, only Class I, Rigid Metal Steel Conduit, is permitted.

Additionally, conduit exposed to the atmosphere shall be PVC coated.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The zinc coated metal steel conduit shall conform to the requirements of UL 6, Class 1 - Rigid Metal Conduit: or UL 1242, Class 2 - Intermediate Metal Conduit.

All fittings, couplings and expansion fittings shall be zinc coated and shall meet the same specifications as the conduits. Condulets shall be gasketed and shall be furnished with stainless steel or brass screws for the cover. Expansion fittings shall be metallically connected for continuity of grounding on either side.

The zinc coating on the outside surfaces shall be equivalent to a minimum thickness of 0.8 mil.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Metal steel conduit may be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification that it meets the requirements of this section.

### 723-21 AND 723-22 (VACANT)

### 723-23 P.V.C. COATED GALVANIZED STEEL CONDUIT

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for P.V.C. coated galvanized steel conduit.

**GENERAL.** P.V.C. Coated Galvanized Steel Conduit. The hot-dipped galvanized Rigid Steel Conduit; prior to plastic coating, shall conform to N.E.M.A. Standards Publication No. RN 1, and ANSI C80.1.

Elbows in standard and special radii shall be coated as above except that no coupling will be coated with the elbow. Separate couplings will be furnished as required and ordered.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** P.V.C. coated galvanized steel conduit will be accepted upon manufacturer's certification that it meets the requirements of this section.
723-24 FLEXIBLE LIQUID-TIGHT STEEL CONDUIT

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements of flexible liquid-tight steel conduit.

GENERAL. The flexible liquid-tight steel conduit shall be of the size indicated on the plans. It shall conform to the requirements of Underwriters' Laboratory specification UL 360 and shall be listed with Underwriters' Laboratory Inc. Connectors furnished under this specification shall be standard liquid-tight connectors.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Flexible liquid-tight steel conduit will be accepted upon manufacturer's certification that it meets the requirements of this section.

723-25 AND 723-26 (VACANT)

723-27 HIGH PRESSURE SODIUM VAPOR LUMINAIRES (STANDARD MOUNT)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for high pressure sodium vapor luminaires.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The luminaires shall be of the high pressure sodium vapor type designed for use with high pressure sodium vapor lamps, color corrected or clear, and fully weatherproof.

The luminaires shall be constructed so they cover a complete self contained insect resistant and shock resistant unit. The entire luminaire assembly shall be completely pre-wired, at the factory, requiring only the connection of the primary circuit wires to the electric power source for its operation. All metallic component parts of the luminaire shall be made of a rust-resistant alloy or coated with an approved rust-resistant finish. Weep holes shall be provided for drainage.

Easy access to the lamp and major electrical components shall be provided requiring no special tools to gain entrance for maintenance purposes. The luminaire shall be provided with a means to prevent accidental exposure of the inner electrical components and accidental separation of the component parts.

The luminaire shall be equipped with an adjustable lamp socket to simplify beam angle setting and an appropriate refractor for the wattage and lighting distribution specified.

The luminaire casing shall be precision die-cast aluminum for the wattage of the lamps specified, and painted inside and out with a coat of baked on epoxy enamel, or polyester powder, virtually pinhole free, leaving no exposed metal. The underside of the luminaire shall be marked with the standard NEMA decal, visible from the ground, indicating the type and wattage of the lamp.

The luminaire shall contain a complete ballast assembly to which are mounted the necessary electrical components for multiple operation including ballast, solid state starting aid, capacitors, adjustable twist-lock three prong receptacle for photo-electric control when specified, and a dead back terminal board with pressure type terminals.

The ballast shall be a high power factor (exceeding 90%) 3 coil lag type (magnetic regulator) capable of operation on a 120 volt, 60 cycle, multiple circuit (unless otherwise shown on the plans) and able to operate the lamp in an open or short-circuit condition for six months without significant loss of ballast life.

The ballast assembly shall be capable of starting and operating the lamp at a temperature of -20°F.

The entire ballast assembly shall be readily removable as a single unit and utilize quick disconnect plugs.

The slipfitter shall be suitable for mounting on a 2 inch standard pipe bracket and capable of securely fastening flush to the mounting brackets without the need of separate mounting parts or rearrangement of mounting components. Leveling and clamping of the luminaire to the bracket shall be accomplished by
the tightening of bolts and capable of adjusting the luminaire at least three degrees above and below horizontal. Bird shields shall be supplied and installed on all slipfitter installations.

The optical assembly shall consist of a die cast aluminum lens holder with a glass or aluminum 'Alzak' finished, hydroformed, gasketed reflector, a heat and impact resistant refractor, and a porcelain or polyester enclosed mogul socket. The mogul socket shall be equipped with lamp grip and a spring type center contact.

If a photo-electric control is specified, the receptacle shall be provided with a fully weatherproof covering that is readily removable without tools.

Luminaires shall be complete with compatible high pressure sodium lamps having the following characteristics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>% Mean lumens at 10 hours/start</td>
<td>90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warm-up time</td>
<td>3 to 4 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restart time</td>
<td>1 minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum power variance around design center</td>
<td>±5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lowest ambient starting temperature</td>
<td>-20 °F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The unit shall be supplied with an ANSI-IES vertical light distribution as specified on the plans. It shall be adjustable for a Type II, III or IV lateral light distribution and set at the factory for the distribution shown on the plans. For high mast installations a Type V distribution shall be provided. The downward light efficiency shall be at least 73%.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of the roadway luminaire will be based on manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements and on inspection by the Engineer that no damage or defects are evident.

**723-28 LOW PRESSURE SODIUM VAPOR LUMINAIRES (UNDERDECK MOUNT)**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for Low Pressure Sodium Vapor Underdeck Luminaires.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The luminaire shall be of the low pressure sodium vapor type suitable for underdeck or wall mounting, designed for use with a horizontally mounted lamp, fully weatherproof and watertight. The luminaire shall operate satisfactorily with any appropriately sized low pressure sodium lamp now commercially available.

The luminaire shall be equipped with a built-in ballast, and shall be designed for operation on a 120 volt, 60 hz. multiple circuit unless otherwise shown on the plans.

The luminaire shall provide efficient even illumination and shall be optically sealed and gasketed. It shall be mechanically strong and easy to maintain. The ballast components shall be mounted in a structurally sound manner within the housing of the luminaire, with provision made for optimum heat dissipation of the ballast. The reflector, socket, terminal board, fuse and ballast components shall be readily accessible. When closed for operation, the optical assembly shall be sealed against the entry of all contaminants.

The luminaire shall withstand severe outdoor conditions due to radical seasonal changes in temperature and shall be structurally capable of operating satisfactorily in winds of 80 mph.

All exposed electrical live parts shall be protected to observe adequate safety precautions, subject to approval of the Engineer.

The whole luminaire assembly shall be completely prewired requiring only the connection of the primary circuit wires for its operation.

All components shall be corrosion resistant. Metals in contact with each other shall be compatible to prevent corrosion. Screws washers and nuts shall be stainless steel.
The luminaire housing shall be constructed of either heavy duty aluminum or heavy duty plastic and shall support the ballast, capacitor component, socket, lamp support, fuse, and terminal board. Those portions of the housing which support the ballast, and to which are connected the mounting hardware and the conduit, shall be aluminum. The underside of the housing shall be marked with the standard NEMA decal indicating the type and wattage of the lamp. All mounting hardware required for attaching the luminaire to the underdeck structure and for adjusting the luminaire about its longitudinal axis through an angle of 45 degrees from horizontal, shall be furnished with the luminaire when required. The luminaire shall be capable of being mounted flush against underdeck or, when required, suspended by rods from the underdeck. The mounting hardware shall be made of stainless steel, prevent rotation of the luminaire, and be capable of adequately supporting the luminaire in winds of 80 mph.

The reflector shall be fabricated from an aluminum alloy sheet mechanically polished and electro-chemically processed to a specular finish. It shall not darken to the extent that it cannot be wiped clean with a soft cloth.

The refractor shall be formed of clear, heat resistant, ultra-violet stabilized polycarbonate plastic, free from imperfections and capable of being removed without the use of tools.

Provisions shall be made to prevent accidental detachment of the refractor or any other luminaire part.

The ballast shall be a modified constant wattage type with high power factor (over 90%) and capable of regulating the output power within ±5% when the input voltage fluctuates ±10%. The ballast and lamp shall be capable of starting and operating at ambient temperatures of -20°F.

The lamp socket shall be bayonet type provided with a means to hold the lamp against vibration and achieve close contact between lamp and socket terminals.

A means shall be provided to reduce entrance of foreign material through the wiring opening into the optical system.

The terminal board shall be equipped with two clamp type pressure terminals for connection to the phase leg and neutral of the primary circuit. The terminals shall be properly identified for connection, with notations on terminal board, color coding, or wiring diagram.

The fuse holder shall be gasketed and provide external access to the fuse.

Photometric distribution shall be symmetric or asymmetric as specified.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Low pressure sodium vapor underdeck luminaires will be accepted upon the manufacturers certification that they meet the requirements of this section and are U.L. approved and on inspection by the Engineer that no damage or defects are evident.

723-29 HIGH PRESSURE SODIUM VAPOR LUMINAIRES (UNDERBRIDGE MOUNT)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for High Pressure Sodium Vapor Luminaires (Underbridge Mount).

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The luminaires shall be of the high pressure sodium vapor underbridge type designed for use with high pressure sodium vapor lamps.

The luminaires shall be constructed to be a complete self contained waterproof and shock resistant unit. The entire luminaire assembly shall be completely pre-wired, at the factory, requiring only the connection of the primary circuit wires to the electric power source for its operation. All metallic component parts of the luminaire shall be made of a rust-resistant alloy or coated with an approved rust-resistant finish.

Easy access to the lamp and major electrical components shall be provided requiring no special tools to gain entrance for maintenance purposes. The luminaire shall be provided with a means to prevent accidental exposure of the inner electrical components and accidental separation of the component parts.
The luminaire casing shall be precision die-cast aluminum for the wattage of the lamps specified, and marked with the standard NEMA decal, visible from the ground, indicating the type and wattage of the lamp.

The ballast shall be a high power factor (exceeding 90%) 3 coil lag type (magnetic regulator) capable of operation on a 120 volt, 60 cycle, multiple circuit (unless otherwise shown on the plans) and able to operate the lamp in an open or short-circuit condition for six months without significant loss of ballast life.

The ballast assembly shall be capable of starting and operating the lamp at a temperature of minus twenty nine degrees Celsius.

All mounting hardware required for attaching the luminaire to the underdeck structure and for adjusting the luminaire about its longitudinal axis shall be furnished with the luminaire. The luminaire shall be capable of being mounted flush against underdeck or suspended from the underdeck. The mounting hardware shall prevent rotation of the luminaire and be capable of adequately supporting the luminaire in winds of 80 mph.

The optical assembly shall consist of a die cast aluminum lens holder with a glass or aluminum 'Alzak= finished, hydroformed, gasketed reflector, a heat and impact resistant refractor, and a porcelain or polyester enclosed mogul socket. The mogul socket shall be equipped with lamp grip and a spring type center contact. Luminaires shall be complete with compatible high pressure sodium lamps having the following characteristics:

- % Mean lumens at 10 hours/start: 90%
- Warm-up time: 3 to 4 minutes
- Restart time: 1 minute
- Maximum power variance around design center: ±5%
- Lowest ambient starting temperature: -20°F
- Bulb finish: Clear

The unit shall be specifically designed and set to produce an ANSI-IES cutoff, type IV light distribution unless otherwise specified on the plans or ordered by the engineer. The downward light efficiency shall be at least 73%.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of the underdeck luminaire will be based on manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements and on inspection by the Engineer that no damage or defects are evident.

### 723-30 MERCURY VAPOR LUMINAIRES (STANDARD MOUNT)

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for Mercury Vapor Luminaires.

**GENERAL.** The luminaire shall be of the mercury vapor type designed for use with a horizontally mounted mercury vapor lamp, color corrected or clear and shall be fully weatherproof. The luminaire and lamp combination shall produce Type II, III, or IV light distribution conforming to ASA Standards, and as shown on the plans. The luminaires shall be equipped with a built-in ballast for the wattage and operating voltage shown on the plans. The components comprising the assembly of the upper half of the luminaire shall include a reflector, a porcelain enclosed mogul socket, a twist-lock three prong receptacle for a photo-electric control, and a ballast.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Mercury vapor luminaires will be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification that they meet the requirements of this section.
723-31 MERCURY VAPOR LUMINAIREs (UNDERBRIDGE MOUNT)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for Mercury Vapor Luminaires (Underbridge Mount).

GENERAL. The luminaire shall be complete for surface or pendant mounting, as shown on the plans. The luminaire shall be equipped with a prismatic refractor, be shock resistant, and protected with a cast guard. The door and guard assembly shall be equipped with stainless steel pressure latches and a safety chain. The housing shall be gasketed against which the door shall seat when closed. The luminaire shall provide a maximum candela beam of 60 degrees from the vertical for roadways up to 50 feet in width, and 70 degrees for wider roadways and approximately 180 degrees horizontal spread. The ballast shall be an integral part of the luminaire and shall be capable of operating a 175 watt or 250 watt mercury vapor lamp at -20°F. The lamps shall be included with the luminaire.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Mercury Vapor Luminaires will be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification that they meet the requirements of this section.

723-32 THRU 723-39 (VACANT)

723-40 CAST-IRON JUNCTION BOX

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for Cast-Iron Junction Boxes.

GENERAL. Junction boxes shall be hot-dipped galvanized cast-iron with a hot-dipped galvanized cast-iron cover. The cover shall be fastened to the box with brass or stainless steel screws. The box shall be so constructed that when the installation is complete and the cover is secured the box will be water tight. Galvanizing shall be as specified in '719-01, Type II. The Manufacturer shall refer to the plans for details and dimensions.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Junction boxes will be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification that they meet the requirements of this section.

723-41 THRU 723-44 (VACANT)

723-45 PRECAST REINFORCED CONCRETE FOUNDATIONS AND PULLBOXES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for precast concrete foundations and pullboxes.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The Material Requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

DRAWINGS. The Drawing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

FABRICATION. The Fabrication requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

SAMPLING AND TESTING. The Sampling and Testing requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

MARKING. The Marking requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply except as noted herein. Markings shall be placed on the inside face of all pullboxes. Instead of marking the contract number on each unit they may be marked with “NYSDOT”.

273
FINAL PRODUCTION INSPECTION. The Final Production Inspection requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

SHIPPING. The Shipping requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The Basis of Acceptance requirements contained in §704-03 shall apply.

723-46 THRU 723-49 (VACANT)

723-50 PHOTOELECTRIC CONTROL

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for Photoelectric Controls.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS. Photoelectric controls shall function to energize artificial lighting when natural lighting falls to a preset value, and to de-energize when natural lighting rises to a preset value. The photoelectric control shall be factory calibrated to energize the luminaire at approximately 3 foot-candles and de-energize at approximately 3 foot-candles. The photoelectric controls shall be adjustable by means of an outside adjustment system. The adjustment mechanism shall be easily accessible and provide a precise foolproof light level adjustment. Photoelectric controls which cannot be adjusted while the unit is in service or have to be disconnected while making adjustments will not be acceptable.

Photoelectric controls shall be suitable for mounting in all three-pronged locking type receptacles that conform to Electrical Engineering Institute (EEI) or National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) Standard Specifications.

In the event of failure of any component of the control system, the artificial lighting shall be energized.

The housing for the photoelectric control shall be weather resistant and shall be unaffected by ultraviolet rays. A neoprene sponge gasket shall be cemented to the bottom of the base to seal out weather, dust and insects, and shall conform to EEI-NEMA Standards.

The photocell shall be hermetically sealed to prevent electrolysis from moisture. The manufacturer shall certify that each cell has had 24 hours of light preconditioning before assembly.

The photoelectric control shall be solid state and shall be capable of being faced in any direction except south. Generally, it is recommended that the photo sensitive device face north, as this affords maximum spectrum response.

The photoelectric controls shall have an operating voltage range of 105-285 volts, 50/60 cycle and shall be suitable for operation on nominal distribution voltages of 120, 208, 240, and 277 volts.

The controls shall be temperature compensated, and shall be suitable for operation from -40°F to +160°F and shall be completely unaffected by humidity. The switch mechanism shall be snap acting of sufficient capacity to adequately handle loads of 1000 watts of incandescent lighting, or 1800 volt-amperes of ballasted lighting. The photoelectric control shall be able to withstand an inrush current of a maximum of 170 amperes.

Time delay devices shall be built into the photoelectric control to prevent switching of artificial lighting due to transient lighting changes.

The photoelectric controls shall also be equipped with a built-in expulsion-type surge and lightning protection arrester.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Photoelectric controls will be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification that they meet the requirements of this section.
723-51 THRU 723-59 (VACANT)

723-60 ANCHOR BOLTS
(Last Revised May, 2019)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for anchor bolts.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS. Anchor bolts shall meet the requirements of Class 8.8, or ASTM A449, or they may be manufactured from steel meeting the requirements of ASTM A576, Grades 1020 through 1050 inclusive, having a minimum yield strength of 50,000 psi. A hex nut, lock washer, and flat washer shall be supplied with each anchor bolt and their dimensions shall be shown on the plans. The hex nut and flat washer shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM A325M or A325 and the lock washer shall be manufactured in accordance with Table 730-22-1 Steel Fasteners. The nuts, washers and the top 12 inches of the anchor bolts shall be galvanized in accordance with the requirements for Type II or Type V galvanizing as stated in section 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods.

The anchor bolt dimensions shall be shown on the plans.

SHIPPING. Anchor bolts, hex nuts, and washers shall be shipped to the construction site at a time convenient to the masonry construction.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Anchor bolts will be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification that they meet the requirements of this section.

723-61 THRU 723-69 (VACANT)

723-70 SINGLE CONDUCTOR CABLE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for single conductor cable used in highway lighting.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Single conductor cable shall be copper, Type THW, RHW-2, or XHHW-2 (XLP) as designated by Underwriter's Laboratory Specifications. The single conductor cable shall have heat and moisture resistant insulation for a maximum operating temperature of 165°F, in wet and dry conditions.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Single conductor cable shall be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification that it meets the requirements of this specification as well as being Underwriter's Laboratory approved.

723-71 SINGLE CONDUCTOR DIRECT BURIAL CABLE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for direct burial 600V type USE cable for use in conduit or in trenches as shown on the plans and as directed by the Engineer.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Cable shall bear Underwriters Laboratories Label for type USE. It shall consist of copper conductor and insulation constructed to conform to ICEA (Insulated Cable Engineers Association) Pub. S-95-658 and NEMA Pub. No. 7C-70 (Nonshielded 0-2kV Cables) or their equivalent.

Cable shall consist of 7 copper strands up to and including #2 AWG and shall be constructed of 19 copper strands for sizes larger than #2 AWG.

Insulation shall be chemically cross-linked (vulcanized) polyethylene insulating compound.
Cable shall be mechanically spliced and insulated using the highest quality poured splices available for underground 600V cables. Cable shall be factory or shop twisted in a duplex or a triplex configuration in accordance with the publications listed above or as shown in the contract documents.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Single Conductor Direct Burial Cable will be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification that it meets the requirements of this specification as well as being Underwriter's Laboratory approved.

**723-72 THRU 723-74 (VACANT)**

**723-75 GROUND WIRE**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for ground wire used in highway lighting.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Ground wire shall be #6, soft-drawn bare copper wire, 7 strand single conductor.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Ground wire shall be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification that it meets the requirements of this specification.

**723-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**SECTION 724 - TRAFFIC SIGNALS**

(Last Revised May, 2019)

**724-01 SIGNAL CABLE**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for signal cable for use with traffic signal systems and for installation in underground ducts or as an aerial cable supported by a messenger.

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS.** The cable shall conform to the requirements of the International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA) Specification 20-1. The gauge and number of conductors shall be as specified in the plans. The conductors shall be stranded copper wire.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of material will be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

**724-02 SPAN WIRE**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for span wires used in the suspension of traffic signal heads. Span wires may be used as a single span wire or a dual span wire including a tether wire. The same wire may be used as messenger wires or guy wires.

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS.** Span wire shall meet the requirements of ASTM B228, Grade 30 EHS.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of span wire will be based on the manufacturer's certificate of compliance with these specification requirements, together with supplementary sampling and testing at the discretion of the Materials Bureau.
724-03 TRAFFIC SIGNAL POLES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and fabrication details for poles used for traffic signals. Traffic signal poles are classified according to the following applications:

A. Span Wire. Span wire poles are used for supporting a steel cable or cables to which are attached traffic signals and overhead signs.

B. Mast Arm. Mast arm poles consist of a vertical shaft and an approximately horizontal arm to which are attached traffic signals and overhead signs. These poles may also be equipped with more than one mast arm.

C. Post Top Mount Post top mount poles are used for mounting traffic signals directly on the top of the pole.

D. Bracket Mount Bracket mount poles are used to support traffic signals and other items bracketed from or attached to the side of the pole.

Traffic Signal Poles with Lighting Arms - Lighting arms may also be attached to all pole types except post top mount.

DESIGN CRITERIA. The poles shall be designed in accordance with the AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals (1994), except as modified by this specification. The following elements of a pole shall be designed for the most critical orientation of the loads, applied to a traffic signal pole:

- Any tubular segments of the structure.
- Hand hole reinforcement and other hole reinforcement.
- Device used to connect cable to pole.
- Base plate.
- Mast arm to pole connections.
- Anchor bolts.

The design shall be approved, stamped and signed by a professional engineer licensed in the State of New York.

All necessary holes in the pole below the load attachment point and greater than 11/16 inch in diameter shall be made by the manufacturer and reinforced according to the fabrication details and contract documents. Hand holes shall be located ninety (90°) degrees clockwise, top view, from the direction of the cable load, unless otherwise specified.

For those poles on which a traffic signal cabinet will be mounted the pole manufacturer will be required to weld a cabinet wiring access coupling into the pole as part of the pole manufacturing process. This coupling shall be centered 12 inches from the bottom of the base plate and 90° clockwise (top view) from the axis of the hand hole. The coupling shall be designed to accept a standard chase nipple on the inside of the pole, and to accept 1 1/2 inches of a standard 4 inch diam. galvanized pipe from the outside of the pole, and shall protrude no more than 1/2 inch on the outside of the pole. An insulated chase nipple shall be installed in the coupling on the inside of the pole. The coupling shall be designed to reinforce the hole in which it is installed.

Wind Loads. Poles and attachments thereto covered by this specification shall be designed for the following wind speeds in accordance with the AASHTO standard in DESIGN CRITERIA above.
• 80 mph - Counties of Allegany, Bronx, Cattaraugus, Chautauqua, Erie, Genesee, Kings, Livingston, Monroe, Nassau, New York, Niagara, Orleans, Ontario, Queens, Richmond, Rockland, Suffolk, Wayne, Westchester and Wyoming.
• 70 mph - All other counties.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The following materials, or approved alternates, as determined by the Deputy Chief Engineer, Office of Design, shall be used for fabrication. Span Wire, Mast Arm and Bracket poles shall be galvanized steel. Post top poles may be either galvanized steel or aluminum. Acceptable aluminum materials are those contained in the AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals (1994).

The following are the acceptable steel materials for the signal pole components.

**Poles and Arms.** The finished pole shall be galvanized in accordance with subsection 719-01 Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type 1, and be made of one of the following:

- ASTM A500, Grade B or ASTM A501.
- ASTM A53, Grade B pipe.
- ASTM A53, Grade B pipe, with a minimum yield of 48,000 psi guaranteed by the manufacturer and documented by the submission of certified copies of physical tests performed on the lots of material from which the poles were manufactured.
- ASTM A252, Grade 2 or Grade 3.
- ASTM A252, Grade 2, with a minimum yield of 48,000 psi guaranteed by the manufacturer and documented by the submission of certified copies of physical tests performed on the lots of material from which the poles were manufactured.
- ASTM A572, Grades 40, 50, 60 or 65.
- ASTM A595, Grade A.
- ASTM A618, Grade I, II or III.
- ASTM A588.
- ASTM A513, with a minimum yield strength of 36,000 psi guaranteed by the manufacturer, and documented by the submission of certified copies of physical tests performed on the lots of material from which the poles were manufactured.
- ASTM A1008/A1008M Grade 60 Class 2.
- ASTM A1011/A1011M Grade 60 Class 2.

**Bases.** The base shall be galvanized under the same specification as the pole, and made of one of the following:

- ASTM A27M, Grade 65-35, mild to medium strength carbon steel castings.
- ASTM A36.
- ASTM A588.
- ASTM A572, Grade 40, 50, 60 or 65.
- ASTM A633M (Any Grade).

**Anchor Bolts, Nuts and Washers**

Bolts and nuts shall meet the requirements of one of the following specifications:

- Class 4.6 (Bolts and Nuts)
- Class 8.8 (Bolts)
• ASTM A576 (bolts) Grades 1021 and 1025 with a minimum elongation of 18 percent in 2 inches tested in accordance with ASTM A370. The guaranteed minimum yield strength shall be stated by the manufacturer.
• ASTM A675M Grades 485 through 620 (Bolts).
• ASTM A563M Grades A, B, C, D, or DH (Nuts).
• ASTM F1554 Grades 36, 55 or 105 (Bolts).
• ASTM A36 (Bolts) modified to a minimum yield of 55,000 psi, minimum tensile of 65,000 psi and minimum elongation of 18 percent in 2 inches, tested in accordance with ASTM A370.
• ASTM A194, Grade 2H (Nuts)

The type and grade of steel for nuts shall be compatible and of comparable strength to the steel used for the bolts. Washers shall be plain hardened washers.

Nuts, washers and a minimum of the top 12 inches of anchor bolts shall be hot-dipped galvanized, in accordance with the requirements of subsection 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type II.

**Connection Devices**

• ASTM A36.
• ASTM A588.
• ASTM A325.

**Pole Caps and Anchor Bolt Covers.** Pole caps shall be galvanized steel, galvanized cast iron, aluminum or zinc alloy AG40A. Anchor bolt covers shall be galvanized steel, galvanized cast iron, or aluminum. Galvanizing shall be done in accordance with the requirements of ’719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, Type II.

**FABRICATION**

**Bases and Hardware.** The base plate shall be welded to the pole by an acceptable weld in accordance with the New York State Steel Construction Manual.

All anchor bolts, nuts and washers required for each pole shall be supplied by the pole manufacturer. Anchor bolts are to be anchored using double nuts and plates or threaded plates and shall be designed by the fabricator. Anchor bolts shall be long enough to embed at least 30 bolt diameters into the concrete foundation. “L” bends will not be allowed. The number of anchor bolts and the bolt circle diameter shall be determined by the fabricator unless specified in the contract documents. Each anchor bolt shall be equipped with 2 nuts and one or more washers for attaching the pole plus those necessary to provide end anchorage to the anchor bolt.

Washers will not be required when the holes on the base plate are within the following tolerances:

• Hole diameter not more than 1/8 inch greater than the bolt, bolt diameters less than 1 inch.
• Hole diameter not more than 1/4 inch greater than the bolt, bolt diameters equal to or greater than 1 inch.
• Hole diameter not more than 3/8 inch greater than the bolt, bolt diameters equal to or greater than 2 inches.

Anchor bolt covers shall be furnished. These shall be affixed to the base or shaft with stainless steel cap screws.

Shafts and arms shall be equipped with end caps secured with stainless steel set screws.

**Shafts.** Shafts shall be round or multi-sided shapes.
Shafts shall be equipped with hand holes except for poles intended for transformer base mounting. Hand holes shall be centered approximately 2 feet above the base end of the pole. The maximum hand hole size shall not exceed 4 x 6 1/2 inches. Poles shall be equipped with a grounding terminal accessible through the hand hole. Grounding terminals are not necessary if there is no hand hole.

Holes for wiring fittings shall consist of a pipe coupling of the specified diameter and where feasible shall be shop installed. Hand holes and holes for wiring fittings located near the base of the pole shall be reinforced with metal at least equal to the area removed.

Shafts may be fabricated in any of the following shapes and styles:

A. Round Continuously Tapered. Shafts shall be fabricated with not more than one longitudinal seam which shall be continuously welded and ground or rolled flush. Shafts shall have a uniform wall thickness and shall taper uniformly, starting at the butt end, decreasing in diameter at the rate of not more than 1/2 inch, but not less than 1/4 inch per yard of length.

B. Round Step Tapered Construction. Shafts shall be fabricated from round pipe sections with not more than one longitudinal seam, joined by a hot-swaged shrink fit, continuously seal welded to prevent entrance of water. Stepped, round shafts shall achieve a tapered effect equal to a maximum rate of 1/2 inch and a minimum of 1/4 inch per yard of length by use of decreasing diameter round pipe sections.

C. Multi-sided Continuously Tapered Construction. The multi-sided pole shall conform to the requirements as set forth above under round continuously tapered construction, except that it shall have no more than 2 longitudinal seams which shall be continuously welded and ground or rolled flush. Square or hexagonal shafts will not be allowed.

D. Round Untapered. Poles 26 feet or less in length may be round untapered with not more than one longitudinal seam.

Welding. All welding shall be performed in accordance with the New York State Steel Construction Manual.

Poles with Lighting Arms. Poles with lighting arms shall be constructed in accordance with the configuration in the contract documents and this specification.

Except for bracket-mount traffic signal poles, lighting arms may be of either the single member type or of the truss type if type is not specified. When specified for bracket-mount traffic signal poles, lighting arms shall be of truss-type design with upper and lower members joined near the luminaire end of the arm. Lighting arms of the truss-type design with upper and lower members joined near the luminaire end of the arm shall be braced with one or two vertical struts depending on the length of the arm. Arms may be either galvanized steel or aluminum.

Span Wire Poles

A. Design Load. The design load for span wire poles shall be the Group II or III load per AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals (1994) Section 1.2.6, given in the contract documents and applied at a point 1 foot 6 inches below the top of the pole. Allowable unit stresses shall be as specified in the above AASHTO specification.

B. Physical and Mechanical Properties. Span Wire poles shall conform to the following requirements.

- Minimum Wall Thickness - 0.1196 inch
• Maximum Deflection - To be computed at a point 18 inches from the top of the pole, shall be a maximum of 0.6 inch per foot of pole length and a maximum deflection rate of 0.6 inch per 100 pounds.
• Maximum Pole Diameter at the Base - 0.7 inch per foot of pole length.

C. Pole Marking. The following information shall be stamped on the base plate or ground sleeve in 1/2 inch letters to such a depth as to be clearly visible through subsequent galvanizing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Desired Information</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pole Length in whole foot</td>
<td>28 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load in 1000 lb Increments</td>
<td>8000 lbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturers Name or Logo</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Month and Year of Manufacture</td>
<td>1104</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. Span Wire Connecting Hardware. The manufacturer shall supply the necessary device for connecting each span wire to the pole. For polygonal poles this device may be either a galvanized thimble eyebolt or a circumferential pole clamp. For round poles, only thimble eyebolts shall be used. The design strength shall be 70% of yield strength of the connecting device. The yield strength shall be determined using a cable load aligned 85 degrees to the vertical axis of the pole.

Mast Arm Traffic Signal Poles

A. Design Loads. Each part of the structure shall be proportioned for the combination of loads producing the maximum effect, using unit stresses increased for the material and group loads as described in section 1.2.6 of the AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals (1994). The wind speed, locations, dimensions, weights, and projected areas of the signals, signs, and supports shall be as specified in the contract documents.

B. Mast Arm Shapes. Arms shall be round or multi-sided shapes and have the same cross-sectional shape as the shaft.

C. Arm Construction. Mast arms of any length may be constructed by any of the methods indicated under Material Requirements Shafts. They may be of two piece construction with a telescoping joint secured by thru-bolt and locknut.

D. Mast Arm to Shaft Connection. The mast arm shall be secured to the shaft by a minimum of four bolts. The mast arm shall be equipped with a flange plate welded to the butt end of the mast arm. A flange plate shall be attached to the shaft using vertical and horizontal gusset plates both top and bottom and at each side. Flange plates on shaft and mast arms shall have a hole with a smooth cable guide for wiring.

E. Physical and Mechanical Properties. Mast arms and shafts shall conform to the following requirements:

- Minimum Wall Thickness - 0.1196 inch.
- Maximum Deflection at Design Load.
- Shaft - 1/2 inch per foot of length.
- Arm - 1/2 inch per foot of length.
- Maximum Diameter at base of shaft or arm.
• Shaft - 0.7 inch per foot of length.
• Arm - 0.7 inch per foot of length.

F. Poles with Multiple Arms. Poles with multiple arms shall be constructed in accordance with the arm configuration in the contract documents.

G. Pole Marking. The following information shall be stamped on the top of the base plate or ground sleeve in 1/2 inch letters to such a depth as to be clearly visible through subsequent galvanizing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Desired Information</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wall Thickness</td>
<td>0.312 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Yield Strength</td>
<td>55 ksi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturers Name or Logo</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Month and Year of Manufacture</td>
<td>1004</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Post Top Mount and Bracket Mount Traffic Signal Poles. These poles shall be proportioned for the combination of loads producing the maximum effect, using unit stresses increased as indicated for the material and group loads as described in section 1.2.6 of AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals (1994). The wind speed, location, weights, dimensions and projected areas shall be as given in the contract documents.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance for poles and mast arms covered by this specification will be based on the following, as appropriate:

All Poles and Arms

• Submission of fabrication details for each pole intended for a worst case configuration of the load as specified in the contract documents approved, stamped and signed by a Professional Engineer licensed and registered to practice in New York State.
• Submission of the manufacturer's certificate of compliance with these specification requirements and the approved fabrication details.

Span Wire Poles

• The acceptance requirements for All Poles and Arms, given above, shall apply.
• Submission of mill certifications for all structural materials.
• Appearance of the manufacturer's name on the Department's list of approved manufacturers.

724-04 TRAFFIC SIGNAL HEADS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for vehicular and pedestrian traffic signal heads, including flashing signals and flashing beacons.

STANDARD SIGNAL HEADS

Material Requirements. Only virgin metal shall be used in making either sand castings or die castings, and where specified, the manufacturer shall furnish standard test bars, poured of the metal of which the castings are made, and a certified chemical analysis of the ingot from which the castings are made.

A. Housing. Unless otherwise specified, all traffic signal head housings shall be made of Aluminum alloy of one of the following compositions:
1. **Aluminum Sand Castings.** All aluminum sand castings shall be made of ingot, in accordance with ASTM B26, Alloy B443.0 or AC72A.

2. **Aluminum Die Castings.** All aluminum die castings shall be made of ingot, in accordance with ASTM B85, Alloys SC84A, SC84B, SG100A, SG100B, or S12B.

**B. Suspension Components.** All suspension components, brackets, clamps, trunnions, arms, elbows, crosses, etc., shall be made of one of the following materials:

1. **Malleable iron.** Malleable iron material shall be made in accordance with ASTM A47/A47M.

2. **Steel pipe.** Steel pipe shall be made in accordance with ASTM A53.

3. **Aluminum Sand Castings.** Aluminum sand castings shall be made in accordance with ASTM B26, Alloy 356-T6.

4. **Aluminum Die Castings.** Aluminum die castings shall be made in accordance with ASTM B85, Alloy SC84B.

5. **Aluminum pipe.** All aluminum pipe shall be made in accordance with ASTM B429.

**C. Fasteners.** The following items shall be made of non-magnetic stainless steel, Type 303 or 304, in accordance with ASTM A296 (latest revision).

- All set screws.
- The U/J-bolts, rivet and their related nuts, washers and cotter pin in the span wire lamp.
- The eye-bolt, rivet, tightening bolt and their related nuts, washers, and cotter pin in the balance adjuster.

**D. Pipe Arms.** Pipe arms shall be made of steel pipe in accordance with ASTM A120 (latest rev.)

**Wind Load.** Signal heads, mounting brackets, attachments and fittings shall be designed for a wind load pressure for at least a 90 mph wind in accordance with AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals (1994).

**Painting.** All aluminum traffic signal heads, bracket arms, and mounting attachments shall be painted by first applying a chromate conversion coating and then electrostatically applying a polyester powder coating.

Threads and threaded parts shall not be coated and shall be protected from the coating process at the time of application.

The chromate conversion coating shall be applied and conform to the requirements of ASTM B449, Standard Practice for Chromate Treatments on Aluminum, Class 2 coating. The conversion coating shall be allowed to dry thoroughly and shall be free of entrapped air and contaminants. After drying the chromated surface shall be coated with a polyester powder coating.

The polyester powder shall be electrostatically applied and cured in accordance with the coating manufacturers recommendations. If preheating of the aluminum substrate is required, care shall be taken to prevent damage to the chromate coated surface by not exceeding a preheat temperature of 160°F. The polyester coating shall be applied at a uniform thickness between 2 and 4 mils. The polyester powder used shall have the following properties:
Property | ASTM Test Method | Test Value
--- | --- | ---
Specific Gravity | D3451 | 1.2 Minimum
Impact Resistance | D2794 | 16 NCm Minimum
Pencil Hardness | B3363 | H - 2H

The color of the finished polyester coating shall be such that a properly prepared color chip shall be a reasonable visual match to Federal Color Standard No. 595A, Color 14056. Viewing shall be done under North Standard Daylight.

**Signal Indications.** Signal indications shall be as indicated in the proposal or as shown on the plans.

**Wiring.** All wiring shall consist of No. 18 AWG stranded copper wire with thermoplastic insulation and a 600 volt rating.

**Electrical Characteristics.** All equipment shall be designed for operation on 115 volts ±30 volts, 60 Hertz, single phase A.C. power unless otherwise indicated.

**Mounting.** Signal heads shall be arranged for mounting on span wires, mast arms, post tops or vertical pole bracket mounts as specified in the contract documents. For a span wire mounting the signal head shall be provided with a span wire clamp, balance adjuster and wire outlet fitting. The span wire clamp shall consist of a shoe, lockbar, two “U” or “J” bolts, and a rivet, with cotter pin, nuts, washers, etc., as necessary. The balance adjuster shall consist of a body with threaded eye-bolt, a tightening bolt and a rivet, with cotter pin, nuts washers, etc., as necessary. The wire outlet fitting shall have a continuous opening of a minimum nominal diameter of 1 1/2 inches for insertion of signal head wiring. The upper opening shall have a weatherproof insulating composition cover that provides for the insertion of the wiring. The cover shall be securely mounted to the fitting. The bottom opening shall be threaded, and provided with two square or hex drive set screws, located at 180 degrees to each other. The bottom of the fitting shall have integral cast serrations, or shall be notched and provided with a serrated locking ring, or shall be provided with a slotted check nut and serrated locking ring. A 12 or 18 circuit disconnect hanger shall be supplied if specified in the contract documents. The head shall be assembled so that it hangs plumb.

**A. One-way Signal Head.** Mounting hardware for a one-way signal head shall also include a 1 1/2 inch galvanized nipple with cast head, gasket, and steel washer for the connection between the wire outlet fitting and the top of the signal head. A metal weather-resistant cap/plug shall be provided for the unused hole in the bottom of the head. The cap/plug shall be of a threaded or flanged design.

**B. Multi-way Signal Head.** Mounting hardware for multi-way (2, 3 and 4-way) signal heads shall also include a center junction hub and pipe arms with tee or cross end connectors. Tee and cross connectors shall be notched for, and supplied with a serrated locking ring. No pipe/nipple shall be provided for the connection between the center junction hub and the wire outlet fitting. A 1 1/2 inch galvanized nipple with cast head, gasket and steel washer shall be supplied for the connection between the tee or cross connector and the top of the signal head. Tees and crosses will not be accepted in place of the center junction hub.

Center junction hubs shall have a threaded openings on the top and sides. The bottom of the hub shall be essentially fully open, except for the necessary thickness of the housing, and shall be securely covered by a flat plate of weather-resistant design. The plate shall be held in place by a minimum of two screws. Center junction hubs shall be provided with a square or hex drive set screw on all threaded openings, except that the top opening shall be provided with two set screws, located at 90 degrees to each other.
Center junction hubs shall have a minimum nominal opening of 3 1/2 inches in diameter for round openings, or a minimum nominal side length of 3 1/2 inches for rectangular openings.

Tees or crosses shall have threaded openings to accept the necessary pipe arm/signal head connections, plus at least one additional threaded opening to facilitate wiring. The extra opening shall be closed with a threaded metal pipe cap. All threaded openings on the tees and crosses shall be provided with a square or hex drive set screw.

Threaded openings on pipe arms shall be tapered. Threaded openings on other pipe fittings shall be pipe straight threads.

Flat arms or spiders shall be provided for the bottoms of multi-way signal heads, except that bottom hardware shall be omitted for multi-way one section head assemblies. Connections between the bottoms of the signal heads and the arm/spider shall be flanged or threaded to provide a locking, weather-resistant connection.

Signal heads for mast arm mounting shall be furnished with a mount consisting of upper and lower horizontal arms attaching to the top and bottom of the signal head housing. The horizontal arms shall attach to a vertical member which in turn clamps to the mast arm. The mast arm mount shall have provision for adjusting the vertical, angular and rotational positioning of the head in relation to the mast arm so that it is plumb, in line with other signal heads and properly oriented in relation to traffic. Wiring shall be concealed within the mount.

Post top signal heads shall be furnished with a post top type sliliflter mounting. Vertical pole bracket mount signal heads shall be equipped with upper and lower horizontal brackets equipped with pole plates for attachment to the pole with stainless steel bands.

**Housing.** The housing for each face shall be of unitized sectional construction and shall consist of as many sections as necessary to provide the indications shown on the plan. All sections shall be rigidly and securely fastened together into one weather-tight signal face. An adjustable traffic signal head shall consist of two or more signal faces fastened to and supported by a pipe assembly and suitable entrance fitting.

Each housing shall be arranged with openings in the top and bottom so that it may be rotated about a vertical axis between waterproof supporting brackets or trunnions and shall be capable of being securely fastened at increments of not more than 7 degrees of rotation. The top and bottom of each housing shall have integrally cast locking rings or other provisions to provide positive interlocking and indexing.

The top and bottom of each housing shall be provided with tees or crosses equipped with pipe-plug knobs or caps which can be removed to assist in wiring.

Flat arms or spiders will be accepted as an alternative for use on the bottom of adjustable signals. One-section adjustable beacons may be supplied without bottom bracket arms.

Each housing shall be so designed that additional sections may be added. The construction shall permit the assembly of 12 inch signal sections with 8 inch sections of the same manufacturer. The assembly shall permit the joining of 8 inch sections either above or below the 12 inch sections.

**Doors.** The door shall be of cast aluminum alloy and shall be provided with four visor mounting holes located equidistant about the lens opening to allow the mounting of the visor in either a vertical or horizontal position. The holes shall be drilled and tapped, and provided with stainless steel mounting screws. Neoprene gasketing shall be provided between the body of the housing and the doors. The doors shall be suitably hinged and shall be forced tightly against the gasket and the housing by simple stainless steel locking devices. All other exterior hardware such as hinge pins, lens clips, etc. shall be of stainless steel. The locking device shall be capable of being operated without the use of tools. Hinges shall be arranged to allow convenient relamping. On the outside of the door, there shall be a rim encircling the lens opening to prevent any light leakage between optical systems.

**Visors.** The visors shall be separate and removable from the doors, held in place by stainless steel fastenings attached to the door in such a manner as to prevent the possibility of any light leakage between
the door and hood which might be discernible from the side. Visors shall be of sheet aluminum, not less than 0.050 inches, and shall mount to the signal head through the use of four slotted mounting tabs which intermate with the mounting screws on the signal housing door. Unless otherwise specified in the contract documents all signal heads shall be provided with cap-type visors. The insides of visors and the entire surface of louvers or fins used in front of signal lenses shall be painted a flat black to minimize light reflection to the sides of the signals. Visors shall tilt down from the horizontal a minimum of $3.5^\circ$ and shall be a minimum of 9 1/2 inches in length for 12 inch diameter lenses and 7 inches in length for 8 inch diameter lenses.

**Connection Blocks.** Each signal face shall be equipped with a 5-point heat resistant terminal block. It shall have five terminals with connectors for receptacle leads and screw terminals for field wires.

The individual connection blocks in the separate faces of a signal head shall be interconnected. In one face of each multi-face head, there shall be an additional nine terminal block to which all field wires are connected. All socket leads of all signal faces shall terminate at this nine terminal block.

**Dust-Tight Optical System.** The optical system shall be properly gasketed to exclude dust and dirt from the reflecting surface of the reflector and the inner surface of the lens. Gaskets shall be placed between the reflector and supporting member, and between the reflector holder and the inner surface of the lens.

**Reflectors.** Reflectors shall conform to the requirements of “Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads” published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE) in ST-017B (Equipment and Material Standards).

Reflectors shall be made of a material that will not distort when subjected to the heat of the specified lamp. Reflectors may be either silvered glass or specular aluminum with anodic coating. Metalized plastic reflectors will not be accepted. The reflecting surface before coating shall be free of flaws. The reflective coating and the reflector shape shall be such that the light distribution and candle power intensity of the combined lamp lens reflector assembly shall meet the specification requirements in “Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads.”

**Reflector Rings.** No plastic material will be accepted for the reflector bracket or reflector ring. The reflector ring and complete reflector and socket assembly shall be pivoted between two (2) stainless steel pins in such a manner that it can be swung open for ease in servicing the signal without the use of any tools.

**Lenses.** Each traffic signal head shall be supplied with traffic signal lens. Lenses shall be red, yellow, or green. Lens shall be made of glass and shall conform to the requirements of “Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads” published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers. Except for multilane use control signals and pedestrian signals, all lenses shall be circular in shape with nominal diameters of either 8 or 12 inches. Each 12 inch lens shall be standard wide angle and clearly marked as such.

**Lamp Receptacles.** Lamp Receptacles shall conform to the requirements of “Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads” published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers.

**Lamps.** The lamp for the illumination of an 8 inch lens shall be a clear traffic signal lamp which produces a minimum of 595 lumens with an average minimum initial lumen rating of 550 lumens at a working voltage of 120-125 volts AC, has a rated life of at least 8,000 hours and is rated at no more than 60 watts.

The lamp for the illumination of a 12 inch lens shall be a clear traffic signal lamp which produces a minimum of 1750 lumens with an average minimum initial lumen rating of 1650 lumens at a working voltage of 120-125 volts AC, has a rated life of at least 7000 hours and is rated at no more than 135 watts.
Lamps and the intensity and distribution of light from each illuminated signal lens shall conform to the requirements of “Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads”, and “Standards for Traffic Signal Lamps.” Both publications are available from the Institute of Transportation Engineers.

**OPTICALLY PROGRAMMED SIGNAL HEADS.** The following additional requirements apply to Optically Programmed Signal Heads.

**General.** The optically programmed signal head shall permit the visibility zone of the indication to be determined optically and require no hoods or louvers. The projected indication may be selectively visible or veiled anywhere within 15° of the optical axis. No indication shall result from external illumination nor shall one light unit illuminate a second.

**Optical System.** The optical system shall accommodate projection of diverse, selected indicia to separate portions of the roadway such that only one indication will be simultaneously apparent to any viewer. The projected indication shall conform to ITE transmittance and chromaticity standards.

The following components shall comprise the optical system:

**A. Lamp and Lamp Collar.** The lamp shall be nominal 150 watt, 120 volt AC, three prong, sealed beam having an integral reflector with stippled cover and an average rated life of at least 6000 hours. An equivalent 75 watt lamp shall be used with pedestrian indications. The lamp shall be coupled to the diffusing element with a collar including a specular inner surface.

**B. Optical limiter-diffuser.** The diffusing element may be discrete or integral with the convex surface of the optical limiter. The optical limiter shall provide an accessible imaging surface at focus on the optical axis for objects 900 to 1200 feet distant, and permit an effective veiling mask to be variously applied as determined by the desired visibility zone. The optical limiter shall be provided with positive indexing means and composed of heat resistant glass.

**C. Objective lens.** The objective lens shall be a high resolution, planar incremental lens hermetically sealed within a flat laminant of weather-resistant acrylic or approved equal. The lens shall be symmetrical in outline and may be rotated to any 90° orientation about the optical axis without displacing the primary image.

**Construction.** Signal case and lens holder shall be predrilled for backplates and visors. Hinge and latch pins shall be stainless steel. All access openings shall be sealed with weather-resistant rubber gaskets.

**Mounting.** The signal shall mount to standard 1 1/2 inch fittings as a single section, as a multiple section face, or in combination with other signals. The signal section shall be provided with an adjustable connection that permits incremental tilting from 0 to 10 degrees above or below the horizontal while maintaining a common vertical axis through couplers and mounting. Terminal connection shall permit external adjustment about the mounting axis in 5 degree increments. The signal shall be constructed such that it can be installed with ordinary tools and serviced with no tools.

Attachments such as visors, backplates or adapters shall conform and readily fasten to existing mounting surfaces without affecting water and light integrity of the signal.

The programmed signal head shall be arranged for rigid mounting to either a mast arm or a dual span wire assembly. It is important for proper operation of the signal that it be mounted as rigidly as practical to maintain its optical orientation with the roadway. In those cases where span wires are used it should be securely tethered to the lower span wire.

**Electrical.** Lamp fixture shall comprise a separately accessible housing and integral lamp support, indexed ceramic socket and self-aligning, quick-release lamp retainer. Electrical connection between case
and lamp housing shall be accomplished with an interlock assembly which disconnects lamp housing when opened.

Each signal section shall include a covered terminal block for clip or screw attachment of field wires. Concealed No. 18 AWG, stranded and coded wires shall interconnect all sections to permit field connection within any section.

**Photo Controls.** Each signal section shall include integral means for regulating its intensity between limits as a function of individual background illumination. Lamp intensity shall not be less than 97% of uncontrolled intensity at 1000 fc and shall reduce to 1.4 fc ±2% of maximum at less than 1 fc over the applied voltage and ambient temperature range. Response shall be proportional and essentially instantaneous to any detectable increase from darkness to 1000 fc and damped for any decrease from 1000 fc.

The intensity controller shall comprise an integrated, directional light sensing and regulating device interposed between lamp and field wires. The device shall be responsive over an applied voltage of 95 to 130V, 60 Hz. temperature range of -40°F to 165°F and may provide phase controlled output voltage but shall have a nominal open circuit terminal impedance of 1500 ohms. The Photo Control shall not produce sufficient electrical noise or interference to adversely affect the operation of solid state electronic equipment used on traffic signal controllers and associated auxiliary equipment and shall not cause false tripping of conflict monitors.

**STANDARD PEDESTRIAN SIGNAL HEADS.** In addition to applicable items in STANDARD SIGNAL HEADS the following requirements apply to Standard Pedestrian Signal Heads

**General.** Pedestrian signal indications are traffic indications intended for the exclusive purpose of controlling pedestrian traffic. These indications consist of the illuminated words WALK and DON’T WALK.

When specified, these messages can be replaced with the “MAN” and “HAND” display. The indications shall be single faced and rectangular in shape with letters made visible by internal illumination and with the legend DON’T WALK above or integral with the legend WALK.

When illuminated, the WALK indication shall be lunar white. When illuminated, the DON’T WALK indication shall be portland orange. All except the letters shall be obscured by an opaque material.

When not illuminated, the WALK and DON’T WALK indications shall not be distinguishable by pedestrians at the far end of the controller crossing.

Pedestrian signal construction and indications shall conform to the requirements of “Pedestrian Traffic Control Signal Indications” published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers, with the following modifications:

- Unless otherwise specified, the head shall be a two section unit. Lettering shall be a minimum of 4 1/2 inches.
- Lamps for the illumination of each section shall be a clear traffic signal lamp with an average initial rating of 1280 lumens at a working voltage of 120-125 volts with a rated life of at least 8000 hours. Lamp fixtures shall not be wired in series.
- Signal head shall be supplied with an 18 AWG, color coded wiring harness, and a four position, barrier type terminal block.
- Lenses shall be made of plastic.

**FIBEROPTIC PEDESTRIAN SIGNAL HEADS.** In addition to applicable items in STANDARD SIGNAL HEADS and STANDARD PEDESTRIAN SIGNAL HEADS the following requirements apply to Fiberoptic Pedestrian Signal Heads.
General. The unit shall consist of a matrix of fiberoptic bundles forming two displayed messages on a rectangular background facing the same direction. One message shall indicate WALK and the other shall indicate DON’T WALK. Both messages shall have a minimum letter height of 4 1/2 inches using a series B width. If the “MAN” and “HAND” display are specified both messages shall have a minimum symbol height of 10 1/2 inches and 6 1/2 inches width.

The messages shall be clearly legible and shall attract the attention of pedestrians and be readable, under any lighting conditions varying from total darkness to bright sunlight or where high intensity background lighting is present, at distances from 9 feet to the width of the area to be crossed. A visor or hood shall not be required for legibility, but shall be provided with the housing.

The messages shall be visible at full intensity anywhere within a 90 degree cone centered about the optical axis and perpendicular to the surface of the matrix display. When not energized, the signal shall be blanked out (unreadable) with no phantom images, regardless of solar intensity or direction.

The messages shall be bright in color against a flat black background.

The displays shall be made from a single row of fiberoptic bundles with a nominal 1/2 inch spacing between centers.

The light source shall be designed and constructed so that in case of an electrical or mechanical failure of the word DON’T the word WALK in the DON’T WALK message will remain dark.

Each message shall be displayed separately and never concurrently.

Material Requirements. One 42 watt, 10.8 volt lamp type EPT or equivalent with a rated average life expectancy of 10,000 hours shall be as the light source for each display. The lamp shall be a multi-mirror reflector quartz halogen bulb operating at an approximate color temperature of 2900°K.

Optical System. The optical system shall consist of the following:

- Weatherproof housing, door, gaskets, and visor
- Fiberoptic module with individual output attached
- Color filters for desired message colors
- Light sources
- Transformers
- Protective back cover for the module
- Electrical system including wiring

Optical Requirements. The optics shall have a glass-on-glass fiber with an 83% core to 17% cladding ratio. Bundled fiber strands shall be kept free from the contamination of water and polishing agents. Maximum fiber breakage per fiber bundle shall not exceed 3%. A minimum of five spare fiberoptic output bundles shall be provided for each lamp and built into the unit. Damaged output bundles shall be replaceable using these spares. Individual fiberoptic bundles shall not be jacketed or encased.

Color filters shall be optical quality glass. The filters shall be color fast and in accordance with the I.T.E. Signal Color Specification for Chromaticity.

The prismatic polycarbonate lens shall be mounted at a pre-focused distance in the door, away from the fiberoptic panel.

All optical fiber utilized in the production of the fiberoptic unit shall be tested for:

- Core to clad fusion
- Size
- Roundness of fiber
- Optical transmission
- Brittleness
Results of these tests shall be available upon request.

**Construction.** The front panel shall be flat black aluminum alloy, minimum 1/8 inch thick, and shall have a maintenance-free black anodized, acid tested finish or an equivalent weather resistant polycarbonate.

A heavy plastic mylar water shield shall be used to prevent possible water leaks from dropping onto the lamps.

All fiberoptic transformers and lamps shall be mounted on the door of the unit. All screws, washers, nuts and bolts shall be corrosion resistant. All components shall be readily accessible when the door is opened. The only tool required for maintenance or replacement of components shall be a standard screwdriver.

No moving parts are permitted in the optical system.

**Electrical.** Electrical connection shall be provided by a barrier-type terminal strip for connecting field wires.

Transformers shall be used to reduce the incoming 120 volts AC to 10.8 volts AC.

Transformers shall be rated at 48.5 volt-amps and shall have Class A insulation impregnated with a double coating of epoxy resin so as to preclude intrusion of moisture.

A separate transformer and bulb shall be used for each color, to allow connection with existing controller wiring and conflict monitors.

The transformer bracket shall be an extruded aluminum member and shall provide adequate heat sinking of transformers.

**Environmental Conditions.** The unit shall be capable of continuous operation over a temperature range of -34°F to 167°F.

**FIBEROPTIC DUAL INDICATION ARROW.** In addition to applicable items in STANDARD SIGNAL HEADS, the following additional requirements apply to Fiberoptic Dual Indication 12 inch Turn Arrow.

**General.** The unit shall display alternate indications, consisting of either a green or yellow directional arrow. The indication shall be clearly legible and shall attract the attention of motorists and be visible, under any lighting conditions varying from total darkness to bright sunlight or where high intensity background lighting is present, at a distance of at least 1475 feet under normal atmospheric conditions. A visor or hood shall not be required for legibility.

The indication shall be visible at full intensity anywhere within a 60-degree cone centered about the optical axis and perpendicular to the surface of the display.

When not energized, the signal shall be blanked out (unreadable) with no phantom images, regardless of solar intensity or direction.

The indication shall be bright in color against a flat black background.

Each indication shall be displayed separately and never concurrently.

The borderline arrow indications shall be comprised of a dual row of fiber bundles. The indication shall be in total conformance with I.T.E. standards for Vehicle Control Signal Heads.

**Material Requirements.** One 42 watt, 10.8 volt lamp type EPT or equivalent with a rated average life expectancy of 10 000 hours shall be used as the light source for each indication. The lamp shall be a multi-mirror reflector quartz halogen bulb operating at an approximate color temperature of 2900°K.

**Optical System.** The optical system shall consist of the following:

- Weatherproof housing, door, gaskets, and visor
• Fiber optic module with individual output attached
• Color filters for desired message colors
• Light sources
• Transformers
• Protective back cover for the module
• Electrical system including wiring

**Optical Requirements.** The optics shall have a glass-on-glass fiber with a 83% core to 17% cladding ratio.

Bundled fiber strands shall be kept free from the contamination of water and polishing agents. Maximum fiber breakage per fiber bundle shall not exceed 3%. At least two (2) spare fiberoptic output bundles shall be provided for and built into each unit. Damaged output bundles shall be replaceable using these spares. A minimum of 56 bundles shall be provided. All optical fiber shall be fully bias randomized by individual fiber with approximately 50% fiber allocated to the green arrow indication and 50% to the amber arrow indication for balanced and corrected color output. Individual fiberoptic bundles shall not be jacketed or encased.

Color filters shall be optical quality glass. The filters shall be color fast and in accordance with I.T.E. Signal Color Specification for Chromaticity. Any combination of colors shall be available by changing color filters installed in the unit.

All optical fiber utilized in the production of the fiberoptic units shall be tested for:

• Core to clad fusion
• Size
• Roundness of fiber
• Optical transmission
• Britteness

Results of these tests shall be available upon request.

**Construction.** Complete unit shall be supplied mounted in standard 12 inch vehicle signal section.

The front panel shall be either flat black aluminum alloy, minimum 1/8 inch thick having a maintenance-free black anodized, acid tested finish or an equivalent weather resistant polycarbonate.

Output bundles shall be mounted on the front panel at 90 degrees to the surface. Mounting shall be consistent in manufacture and shall be watertight. A heavy plastic mylar (or equivalent) water shield shall be used to prevent possible water leaks from dripping onto the lamps.

All fiberoptic transformers and lamps shall be mounted on the door of the unit. All screws, washers, nuts and bolts shall be corrosion resistant. All components shall be readily accessible when the door is opened. The only tool required for maintenance or replacement of components shall be a standard screwdriver.

No moving parts are permitted in the optical system.

Front panel, with fiberoptic indication shall be rotatable to form a right, left, or vertical arrow.

**Electrical.** Electrical connection shall be provided by a barrier type terminal strip for connecting field wires.

Transformers shall be used to reduce the incoming 120 volts AC to 10.8 volts AC.

Transformers shall be rated at 48.5 volt-amps and shall have a Class A insulation impregnated with a double coating of epoxy resin so as to preclude intrusion of moisture.

A separate transformer and bulb shall be used for each color, to allow connection with existing controller wiring and conflict monitors.
**Environmental Conditions.** The unit shall be capable of continuous operation over a temperature range of -34°F to 167°F.

**STROBING SIGNAL INDICATION.** In addition to applicable items in STANDARD TRAFFIC HEADS the following additional requirements apply to Strobing Signal Indications.

**General.** The unit shall consist of a standard red signal indication with the addition of a white bar strobe presented horizontally across the red face. The strobe shall flash at a rate of approximately once per second. The indication shall be single faced and the strobe bulb, control circuitry, and all necessary appurtenances shall be enclosed in and be an integral part of a standard 12 inch aluminum signal housing. The bar strobe shall attract the attention of motorists and be visible, under any lighting conditions varying from total darkness to bright sunlight or where high intensity background lighting is present, at a distance of at least 1/2 mile under normal atmospheric conditions.

When the bar strobe is not energized, the indication shall operate and appear as a standard red indication.

**Optical System.** The optical system shall consist of the following:

- Weatherproof housing, door, gaskets, and visor.
- Alzak parabolic reflector or equivalent. No plastic material will be accepted for the reflector or reflector bracket.
- One bar strobe bulb with a minimum 5000 hours duty life enclosed in a dustproof, shockproof and watertight enclosure.
- 12 inch glass red lens.
- Power supply.
- Electrical system including wiring and control circuitry.
- The strobe bulb shall be a minimum of 9 1/2 inches in length to effectively span the width of the lens.

**Construction.** The unit shall consist of a standard 12 inch red vehicle signal section with a bar strobe light interposed in front of the red lens.

All power supplies and control circuitry for the strobe shall be mounted to the visor assembly and contained within a watertight enclosure(s) which shall not interfere with mounting additional signal sections to form a multiple section signal head.

The strobe bulb shall be enclosed in a dustproof, shockproof and watertight housing securely mounted in front of the red lens. The strobe housing shall contain only the strobe bulb, terminal strips and necessary connecting wires, and shall not interfere with the general visibility of the red lens, nor the ability to change the red lens in the normal manner.

All screws, washers, nuts and bolts shall be stainless steel.

All components shall be readily accessible. The only tool required for maintenance or replacement of all components shall be a standard screwdriver.

**Electrical.** Electrical connection shall be provided by a barrier type terminal strip for connecting field wires. The power supply shall be of a capacitive discharge type sufficient to fire the bar strobe bulb at a rate of approximately once per second. The power supply shall be encased in a temperature stable epoxy so as to preclude intrusion of moisture. A door switch shall be provided so that when the housing door is opened the switch shall disconnect AC power to the strobe power supply and circuitry and shall also completely discharge the high voltage DC capacitive charge within 10 seconds.
The high voltage power supply shall be fused using a time delay fuse. The current rating of the fuse shall be no more than 50% above the maximum current expected at 135 V AC. The fuse shall be mounted in the housing and located before the door switch in the strobe circuitry.

The barrier type terminal strip shall be equipped with male quick connect spade terminals. Insulated female spade receiver terminals shall be required for the connection of the strobe circuitry to the terminal strip.

Labeling. A CAUTION or WARNING label should be affixed to the visor assembly near the housing door opening, notifying maintenance or repair personnel of the presence of a high voltage capacitive charge within the visor assembly and that the quick disconnect should be disconnected and a check for AC or DC voltage across the strobe bulb should be performed before servicing the strobe bulb or circuitry.

STANDARD POLYCARBONATE TRAFFIC SIGNAL HEADS

General. In addition to applicable material requirements for STANDARD SIGNAL HEADS and STANDARD PEDESTRIAN SIGNAL HEADS, the following additional requirements apply to Polycarbonate Traffic Signal Heads.

Material Requirements. The traffic signal housing, visor and door shall be made of injection molded polycarbonate resin which shall be capable of withstanding a 70 ft-lb impact without fracture or permanent deformation.

Material used in the construction of the signal housing door, visor and lens shall be resistant to heat generated by the signal bulb. No deformation or discoloration shall be evidenced when 116 watts bulbs are used in 8 inch signal sections and 150 watt bulbs are used in 12 inch signal sections. The plastics shall be ultra-violet and heat stabilized and flame retardant.

The signal housing, door and visor shall be dark green and the color shall be fully impregnated into the polycarbonate resin.

Visor shall be made of one piece with a minimum thickness of 1/16 inch. The rear edge of the visor shall be provided with four mounting lugs for attaching the visor to the door using screws. The inside of the visor shall be dull black in color. Unless otherwise specified all signal heads shall be provided with cap-type visors.

Construction. The housing shall have a minimum thickness of 1/16 inch. The housing shall be of one piece construction and the door shall be of one piece construction. Both the 8 inch & 12 inch housings are to be designed in the same manner so when used in combination heads the design will match each other.

The top and bottom opening of each housing shall have integral serrated bosses that will provide positive positioning of the signal head to eliminate undesirable rotation or misalignment of the signal head between sections. Each opening accommodates standard 1 1/2 in. diam. pipe fittings and brackets.

Doors shall be hinged by two lugs and mounted to the housing using stainless steel pins. The door of each signal section shall be one-piece with a minimum thickness of 1/16 inch.

A neoprene gasket shall be provided between the body of the housing and the door. The doors shall be forced tightly against the gasket and housing by simple stainless steel locking devices. A slotted air cored neoprene lens gasket shall provide a positive seal between the lens and the signal door and between the lens and the reflector holder.

The gasket shall be an unbroken circular gasket with a "U" shaped cross section. The gasket and lens shall be held tightly into the door by four stainless steel clips and screws that shall allow easy removal of the lens and gasket from the door without removal of the door in the field.

The reflector shall be Alzak aluminum. Reflector rings shall be manufactured from die cast aluminum, hinged from one side to allow the reflector assembly to open without use of tools. The lamp receptacle
shall be permanently focused to the reflector and held in place by a corrosion-resistant wire spring bail so that it can be removed without the use of tools. The center section shall contain a terminal barrier block having quick-disconnect terminals for the lamp receptacle leads and screw terminals for field wires.

**LED TRAFFIC SIGNAL MODULES.** In addition to applicable material requirements for STANDARD SIGNAL HEADS, and STANDARD PEDESTRIAN SIGNAL HEADS, the following additional requirements apply to Ball, Arrow, and Pedestrian LED Traffic Signal modules.

**General.** This specification refers to definitions and practices described in the Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE) publication ST-017B "Vehicle Traffic Control Signal Heads" (referred to in this document as "VTCSH"), and "Pedestrian Traffic Control Signal Indications" (referred to in this document as "PTCSI"). LED traffic signal modules designed as retrofit replacements for existing signal lamps shall not require special tools for installation. They shall be a single, self-contained device, not requiring on-site assembly for installation into an existing traffic signal housing. The module shall be sealed to provide a weather tight enclosure and an insulating covering for all electrical connections and electronic components and shall fit securely in the housing. A one piece “U-shaped” cross section rubber gasket shall be provided with each module. This gasket shall fit around the perimeter of the module to ensure a weather tight fit between the door and the housing of the module. The module shall connect directly to existing electrical wiring by means of 1/4 inch female quick connect push on type terminals.

**Material Requirements.** Materials used for the lens and signal module construction shall conform to ASTM specifications for those materials.

- Each LED signal module shall be identified on the back side with the manufacturer's trade mark, serial number, voltage rating, Volt-Ampere rating, power consumption (watts and volt amperes) and, if applicable, a vertical indexing indicator (i.e., "up arrow", or the word "UP" or "TOP"). Each LED signal module shall also be identified on the back side with the part number as shown in the NYSDOT LED Traffic Signal Module QPL and the date of manufacture (month and year minimum). Single units shall have identification markings as to the type and color of the module. Bi-Modals shall be marked with model type.

  - Each LED signal module shall have a permanent sticker stating compliance to FCC Title 47, Subpart B, Section 15 regulations. The sticker will be located on the rear exterior of the unit.

**A. Ball and Arrow Modules (Single and Bi-Modal) Only.** Retrofit replacement LED signal modules shall fit into existing traffic signal housings built to the VTCSH Standard without modification to the housing. Installation of the retrofit replacement LED signal module into an existing signal housing shall only require the removal of the existing lamp components (i.e., lens, lamp module, gaskets, and reflector).

  - Red LED signal module lenses shall be tinted with the appropriate color to enhance on/off contrast. The material used to tint the lens shall not affect the luminous intensity or chromaticity and shall be uniform across the face of the lens. The Yellow and Green units shall be supplied with a clear lens. If a polymeric lens is used, a surface coating or chemical surface treatment shall be used to provide front surface abrasion resistance. The module lens shall be replaceable without the need for replacing the complete module unit.

  - The Arrow LED signal modules shall produce a pattern that conforms to the VTCSH standard for color, size and shape. The Arrow LED signal modules shall not require a specific orientation or have a variance in light output, pattern or visibility for any mounting orientation.

  - The lens of the LED signal module shall be capable of withstanding ultraviolet light (direct sunlight) exposure for a minimum time period of five years without exhibiting evidence of deterioration.

  - Each Ball LED shall have a sticker attached stating compliance to the ITE Standard for Color and Luminous Intensity and each Arrow LED shall have a sticker attached stating compliance to the ITE Standard for Color as specified in the VTCSH.
B. Pedestrian Modules (Single & Bi-Modal) Only.

Pedestrian LED traffic signal modules shall be designed as a retrofit replacement for the message bearing surface of a 12 inch by 12 inch or approximately 16 inch by 18 inch (with a 2 3/8 inch corner radius), pedestrian traffic signal housing built to the PTCSI Standard. The Single Pedestrian module shall be designed to display either a “HAND” or “WALKING MAN” symbol that complies with PTCSI standard for this symbol for the size specified. The Bi-Modal Pedestrian module shall be designed to display both “HAND” and “WALKING MAN” symbols that comply with the PTCSI standard for these symbols for the size specified.

The “HAND” and “MAN” symbols for both the Single and Bi-Modal Pedestrian shall be designed so that the entire area comprising the symbol appears illuminated. Outlined shapes will not be accepted.

The LED signal module shall fit into existing Pedestrian signal housings without the need to modify the housing. Installation of the retrofit replacement Pedestrian LED signal module into pedestrian signal housing shall only require the removal of the existing message bearing surface, existing lamp components (i.e., lens, lamp module, gaskets, and reflector), and insertion of the retrofit replacement into the area once occupied by the removed assembly.

Each pedestrian module shall have a sticker attached stating compliance to the ITE standard for chromaticity as defined in the PTCSI.

Optical

A. Ball and Arrow Modules (Single & Bi-modal) Only. The measured chromaticity coordinates of Ball and Arrow LED signal modules shall conform to the chromaticity requirements of Section 8.04, Limits of Chromaticity Coordinates and the associated Figure 1 of the VTCSH standard.

The light output distribution for Ball LED traffic signal modules shall be as defined in Section 11.04 and Table 1 of the VTCSH standard. The minimum luminous intensity values for Ball LED traffic signal modules shall be, at a line voltage of 120 ± 3 volts rms, as listed in Table 1 of the VTCHS standard. Variations in operating line voltage of between 80 and 135 volts rms shall have minimal effect (less than ±10%) on luminous output of the signal module. Minimum Initial Luminous Intensities of units supplied shall equal or exceed, at 36°F, 117.5% of the values defined in Table 1-Maintained Minimum Luminous Intensity Table-of the VTCSH standard for LED signal modules.

Ball LED signal modules, except for yellow modules, shall be designed so that when operated over the specified operating ambient temperature and voltage ranges during the luminous intensity warranty period, the luminous intensity of the unit shall exceed or equal the values shown in Table 1, “Maintained Minimum Luminous Intensity Table” of the VTCSH standard for LED signal modules.

Yellow modules shall be designed so that when operated at 77°F over the specified voltage range during the luminous intensity warranty period, the luminous intensity of the unit shall equal or exceed the values shown for the color Green.

Arrow LED signal modules shall be designed so that when operated over the specified ambient temperature and voltage ranges, the signal is clearly visible and attracts attention for a distance of at least 1/4 mile under normal atmospheric conditions.

B. Pedestrian Modules (Single & Bi-Modal) Only. The measured chromaticity coordinates of Pedestrian LED signal modules shall conform to the chromaticity requirements of Section 5.3, Color and the associated Figure C of the PTCSI standard.

Pedestrian LED signal modules shall be designed so that when operated over the specified ambient temperature and voltage ranges, the signal shall attract the attention of, and be readable to, a viewer (at both day and night) at all distances from 9 feet to the full distance to be crossed.

Performance Tests
A. All LED Modules. Prior to shipment, the vendor shall energize (burn in) each LED signal module for a minimum of 24 hours, at rated voltage, and at a 100 percent on-time duty cycle. This test shall be conducted at the rated voltage in an ambient temperature of 140°F. Any failure within an LED signal module occurring during burn-in shall be cause for rejection.

After burn-in procedure is completed, the following additional tests shall be performed. These tests shall be performed at rated operating voltage and at 77°F unless otherwise specified.

All units shall be powered off for a period of 1 second and then powered back on. Any unit failing to turn on after power restoration shall be rejected. This test shall be performed a minimum of 10 times.

A sample of 10% of units of each configuration, Balls or Arrows or Pedestrian signal modules, on the order shall be randomly selected and tested by the vendor in a flashing mode of operation, at 50 percent duty cycle with a 0.5 sec on time, and for a 24 hour period at 140°F. Any unit failing to function properly shall result in failure of the entire lot from which the sample was selected. Should this occur, the entire quantity ordered shall be tested as described above, and units not functioning properly shall be rejected.

Each LED signal module shall be visually inspected for any exterior physical damage or assembly anomalies. Careful attention shall be paid to the surface of the lens to ensure there are no scratches (abrasions), cracks, chips, discoloration, or other defects.

Each LED signal module shall be tested to ensure light output at 80 and 135 volts without adverse operational effects. Each LED signal under test shall be operated at each voltage level for a time period of five minutes. Signal modules illuminating with any adverse operational effects shall be rejected.

Contractors shall provide, with each shipment, a Manufacturer’s Certification of compliance. The certification shall certify that the LED signal modules comply with the requirements of these specifications. In addition to the certification, the modules shall be supplied with a list of the serial numbers of the units, copies of all applicable test reports on the LED signal modules, and signature of the person responsible for certifying the tests.

B. Ball Modules only. Each Ball LED signal module shall be tested for rated initial intensity. A single point measurement (at -2.5 V, 2.5 R or L) with a correlation to the minimum intensity requirements specified herein may be used. This test shall be performed after the burn-in procedure is completed, at rated operating voltage and at 77°F unless otherwise specified.

Electrical

A. All LED modules. All wiring and terminal blocks shall meet the requirements of Section 13.02 Wiring of the VTCSH standard. Each wire shall be approximately 3 feet long. Units shall be supplied with color coded wires as defined below:

- Red Balls & Red Arrows-Red & White
- Yellow Balls & Yellow Arrows-Yellow & White
- Green Balls & Green Arrows-Brown & White
- Bi-Modal Arrows- Brown (Green Arrow), Yellow & White (Common)
- Bi-Modal Pedestrians- Red (Hand), Brown (Man) & White (Common)
- Single Pedestrians (Hand)- Red & White
- Single Pedestrians (Walk Man)- Brown & White

The LED signal module shall operate with AC line voltage ranging from 80 volts to 135 volts rms 60 ± 3 Hz. The circuitry shall prevent flicker over this voltage range. Rated voltage for all optical and power measurements shall be 120 ± 3 volts rms.

The signal module on-board circuitry shall include voltage surge protection to withstand high-repetition noise transients and low-repetition high energy transients as stated in Section 2.1.6, NEMA Standard TS-2.
Each LED signal module shall be designed so that there is no noticeable light output when connected to rated voltage through an impedance of 15 kohm (either resistive or capacitive).

The signal module shall be designed so that, under normal operation, an AC voltage of no greater than 10 volts rms shall be developed across the unit when it is connected in series with any value of impedance greater than 15 kohm and for any applied AC voltage between 80 and 135 volts rms that is connected across this series combination. In addition, the signal module shall be designed so that the voltage across the module shall reduce in value to less than 10 volts rms within 100 msec when the module is switched off by any solid state switch or switchpack having an impedance of 15 kohm or greater.

The individual LED light sources shall be wired so that a catastrophic failure of one LED light source will not result in the loss of illumination of more than four LED light sources.

The LED signal module and associated on board circuitry shall meet Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Title 47, Subpart B, Section 15 regulations concerning the emission of electronic noise. All modules shall contain filtering dedicated to prevent inducing electronic noise into the AC power lines.

Modules shall be fused using a time-delay fuse. The fuse shall be located so that it can be easily changed without the need to disassemble the module. If in-line fuses are added into module wire leads, they will be installed in the colored wires of the units. Each individual circuit in the Bi-Modal models shall be fused separately.

All printed circuit boards used in the module shall be coated with a conformal coating containing an ultraviolet tracer.

All unit types shall be operationally compatible with the traffic signal equipment that each type is designed and intended to interface with. This equipment includes all controllers, conflict monitors, current monitors, switchpack and flashers currently in use by the Department.

**B. NYSDOT Standard & Type A LED Module Definitions.** NYSDOT Standard Units shall be designed so that a normally functioning signal module will generate the needed current to prevent a Model 215 Current Monitor from detecting a loss of current over the voltage range of between 95 and 135 volts rms. The minimum current required to prevent the Model 215 monitor from detecting a loss of current is a 500 milliamp peak AC or pulsed current with a minimum pulse width of 3 msec. Signal modules designed to specifically generate current pulses to prevent the monitor from tripping shall, as a minimum, generate 6 pulses per second. Generated current pulses shall be evenly spaced, with the first pulse generated within 100 msec after the application of AC power. (Additional information regarding the operation of the Model 215 Current Monitor can be obtained in the latest "New York State Transportation Management Equipment Specifications").

NYSDOT Standard Units shall incorporate circuitry to reliably detect the total loss of LED current due to failures such as, but not limited to, open circuits and power supply problems. Upon detection of this failure, this circuit will disable any current generating circuitry within 400 msec to allow detection of this failure by a Model 215 current monitor.

Type “A” units shall be supplied without the necessary circuitry to function with a Model 215 current monitor. Total harmonic distortion (current and voltage) induced into an AC power line for Type A units operating at rated voltage shall not exceed 20 percent for units consuming greater than 15 watts at 77°F and 40 percent for units consuming less than 15 watts at 77°F.

All Ball and Single Arrow LED modules may be procured using this specification as either NYSDOT Standard or Type A units. Single Pedestrian, Bi-Modal Pedestrian, and Bi-Modal Arrows will be procured as Type A only.

The maximum power consumption shall not exceed the following wattages at 77 degrees F:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12 inch Balls</th>
<th>8 inch Balls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red-14</td>
<td>Red-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow-24</td>
<td>Yellow-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green-18</td>
<td>Green-13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12 inch Arrows          Red-10  Yellow-10  Green-10
Bi-Modal Arrows          Yellow-10  Green-10
12 inch by 12 inch Signal Pedestrian Hand-9  Man-9
12 inch by 12 inch Bi-Modal Pedestrian Hand-9  Man-9
16 inch by 18 inch Bi-Modal Pedestrian Hand-12  Man-12

NYS DOT standard units supplied will meet the same low distortion standards without the current generating circuitry included in the measurement.

LED signal modules supplied in conformance with this specification shall have power factors of 0.90 or greater without the current generating circuitry included in the calculations for power factors for NYS DOT Standard units.

C. Pedestrian Modules (Single & Bi-Modal) Only. The maximum power consumed by a pedestrian LED unit shall not exceed 15 volt-amps (VA) at 120 ± 3 volts rms.

Environmental. All LED signal modules shall be rated for use in the ambient temperature range of -40°F to 165°F. LED signal modules shall be sealed against dust and moisture intrusion per the requirements of NEMA Standard 250-1991 for Type 4 enclosures to protect all internal LED and electrical components. LED signal modules shall be capable of operating at rated voltage in an environment of 165°F/85% RH for 1000 hours without the formation of internal condensing moisture.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of signal heads, sections, and/or LED signal modules will be based on manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements, a list of serial numbers of the units being supplied, copies of all applicable test reports on the signal modules, and signature of the person responsible for certifying the tests. In addition, LED module model number and manufacturer's name must be listed on the NYS Signal Qualified Products List (QPL). The QPL can be obtained from the NYSDOT website.

724-05 THRU 724-07 (VACANT)

724-08 SHIELDED COMMUNICATION CABLE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and fabrication details of shielded communication cable for use with traffic signal systems.

MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION. The cable shall conform to the requirements of the International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA) specification 20-2 for polyethylene insulated, polyethylene jacketed communication cable with electrical shielding. The gauge and number of conductors shall be as specified in the plans. The conductors shall be stranded copper wire.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of material will be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

724-09 SIGNAL CABLE WITH INTEGRAL MESSENGER

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for signal cable with integral messenger for use with traffic signal systems and for aerial installations.

MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION. The cable shall conform to the requirements of the International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA) Specification 20-3. The gauge and number of conductors shall be as specified in the plans. The conductors shall be stranded copper wire.
**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of material will be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

**724-10 SHIELDED COMMUNICATION CABLE WITH INTEGRAL MESSENGER**

** SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for shielded communication cable with integral messenger for use with traffic signal systems and for aerial installations.

**MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION.** The cable shall conform to the requirements of the International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA) Specification 20-4. The gauge and number of conductors shall be as specified in the plans. The conductors shall be stranded copper wire.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of material will be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

**724-11 THRU 724-14 (VACANT)**

**724-15 FIRE PRE-EMPTION TELL-TALE LIGHT**

** SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for fire pre-emption tell-tale light.

**MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION.** The fire pre-emption tell-tale light shall consist of a Xenon flash tube rated at 10.76 Mlx and 2000 hours life. The flash rate shall be 60 to 80 flashes per minute. The tell-tale light shall be capable of normal operation between outside temperature from -46°C to +60°C. The tell-tale light shall be contained in a vandal resistant weatherproof housing and mounting with a blue heat resistant and shatterproof globe. It shall be visible through 360° horizontally. The fire pre-emption tell-tale light shall operate from a 115 volt 60 Hz. single phase power source.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of the fire pre-emption tell-tale light shall be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

**724-16 THRU 724-19 (VACANT)**

**724-20 INDUCTANCE LOOP WIRE**

** SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for wire used in inductance loop vehicle detectors.

**MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION.** Loop wire shall be one conductor No. 14 AWG wire loosely encased in a tube in conformance to the requirements of the International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA) Specification 51-5.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance of material will be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

**724-21 SHIELDED LEAD-IN CABLE**

** SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for shielded lead-in cable used with inductance loop vehicle detectors.
MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION. The cable shall consist of No. 14 AWG conductors in conformance to the requirements of the International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA) Specification 50-2.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of material will be based on the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

724-22 ROADWAY LOOP EMBEDDING SEALER

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for Roadway Loop Embedding Sealer used when installing inductance loops.

MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION. Roadway Loop Embedding Sealer shall be used to encapsulate Traffic Signal Loop Wires embedded in highway materials. The sealer shall be cold applied and may be a one or two component system, the viscosity of which shall be sufficient to allow the material to be either poured or placed under pressure and fully encapsulate the loop wires. The sealer shall be curable at temperatures of 40°F and above.

When the sealer is bonded to common paving materials, it shall have sufficient strength and resiliency to withstand stresses due to vibrations and differences in expansion and contraction as a result of temperature changes or traffic conditions. The sealer shall be compatible with the sheathing or covering of loop inductance wires.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 724-22-1 ROADWAY LOOP EMBEDDING SEALER PROPERTIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardness, Shore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pot Life @70°F, minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curing Time (tack free surface) @ 70°F, hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Strength, psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elongation, percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Absorption, percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhesion to Asphalt Concrete, lbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhesion to Concrete, lbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extension, inches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accelerated Weathering (Flexible requires additional bend test)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chemical Resistance. Cured sealer shall be resistant to most chemicals and solvents, including salts, acids, hydrocarbons, etc.

Packaged stability of each component in original unopened containers, stored in temperatures between 32°F and 100°F shall be a minimum of six months.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The material shall meet the requirements of either the Flexible or Hard designation in Table 724-22-1. Materials designated Flexible require a 180° mandrel bend test @ 80°F with no breaking as part of the accelerated weathering testing.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Applications for approval of Roadway Loop Embedding Sealer shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer accompanied by a 1 gallon sample of the product.
and all pertinent sealer information including, but not limited to, manufacturer's sealant test results, sealant application procedures and safety precautions. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the name of the product will be placed on an “approved list” of Roadway Loop Embedding Sealers for use on asphalt and/or concrete pavements based on the compatibility of the sealer with the pavement material. The product may then be accepted on the basis of the name brand labeled on the container.

724-23 PEDESTRIAN PUSH BUTTON AND SIGN

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for pedestrian push button and sign.

MATERIAL AND CONSTRUCTION. The push button unit shall be a direct push type having a cast aluminum housing. The unit shall be strongly constructed, rugged, abuse and tamper proof and suitable for operation under all weather conditions. It shall be provided with one normally-opened contact with ample contact area. The contacts shall be a material which will provide low contact resistance throughout the life of the device. The housing shall be of a design or be provided with adaptors to facilitate mounting on poles of different diameters. The unit shall have a convenient means of wiring.

The sign may be either reflectorized or non-reflectorized, with legend as specified on the plans and in accordance with Chapter 2B of the MUTCD.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Pedestrian push button and sign shall be accepted upon the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

724-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

SECTION 725 - MISCELLANEOUS METALS AND PLASTICS

725-01 COPPER FLASHING

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for copper flashing.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Sheet copper for flashing shall be rolled from copper fulfilling the requirements of ASTM B5. This sheet metal shall be cold rolled soft copper.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material will be based on the manufacturer's certification that the material meets the specification requirements.

725-02 STEPS FOR MANHOLES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for steps used in manholes.

GENERAL. The minimum design live load, for steps, appurtenances and fastenings, shall be a single concentrated load of 800 pounds. The live loads imposed by persons occupying the steps shall be considered to be concentrated at such points as will cause the maximum stress in the structural member being considered.

Steps shall be designed so a worker's foot cannot slide off the end. The minimum length of the rungs shall be 10 inches.

Whenever a combination of dissimilar types of metals are used in the manufacture of steps, appurtenances and fastenings, the materials shall be treated to prevent deleterious effects.

MATERIALS. Manhole steps shall be fabricated from one of the following:
Ferrous Metal. Steps shall conform to one of the following requirements:

- Iron Castings: Class 25A, 715-05
- Malleable Iron Castings: Grade 35018, 715-09
- Steel: ASTM A575, Grade M 1020 galvanized in accordance with '719-01, Type 1.

The steps shall have a minimum cross sectional dimension of 1 inch exclusive of any coatings placed on them.

Non-Ferrous Metal. Steps shall conform to the following requirements:

- Aluminum Castings: Alloy 356-T6, 715-03.
- Wrought Aluminum: 6061-T6, 6005-T5, or 6351-T6, 715-04

When aluminum steps are used, the portion of the step which will be in direct contact with cement concrete or concrete mortar, shall be coated with a zinc chromate primer or bituminous material approved by the Materials Bureau.

Reinforced Plastic. Steps shall consist of polypropylene or other plastic material completely covering a steel core. The plastic may be extruded, cast, or molded into the standard size and shape manhole steps, and provide corrosion protection.

The plastic material shall have the following characteristics:

A. Resistance to Salt and Caustic Solutions. Resistance to the following solutions when submerged for 30 days:

- 10% Sodium Chloride
- 10% Hydrochloric Acid
- 10% Sodium Hydroxide
- 10% Sulfuric Acid

B. Flow Point. A flow point of 320°F or greater.

C. Flexibility. It shall remain flexible over a temperature range of -22°F to +248°F upon long aging.

D. Fire Resistance. It shall be non-burning, self-extinguishing, or very slow burning.

The steel core shall be not less than 1/2 inch diameter and shall have the following physical characteristics:

- Tensile Yield, Minimum 40,000 psi
- Tensile Strength, Minimum 70,000 psi

The plastic step, when cast into a concrete block the proper depth, shall withstand a minimum load of 800 pounds applied on 1 square inch area in the center of the step without cracking or breaking the plastic coating, loosening the step in the concrete or permanently deforming the step.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Manhole steps shall be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's certification of compliance with this specification. However, the Department reserves the right to take random samples at any time for testing for compliance with the requirements of this specification.
SECTION 726 - DETECTABLE WARNING UNITS

726-01 SURFACE-APPLIED DETECTABLE WARNING UNITS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for surface-applied detectable warning units.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Surface-applied detectable warning units shall conform to the dimensions shown on the current standard sheet for detectable warnings.

Units shall be composed of cementitious materials, steel, iron, plastics, polymeric materials, resins, pigments, or as approved by the Director, Materials Bureau. The units shall be an approximate visual match to the color specified in the Contract Documents. Units shall provide the required contrast (light-on-dark or dark-on-light) with the adjacent curb ramp or other applicable walkway. The units shall be uniform in color and texture, be free of cracks or other defects, and have clean-cut and well-defined edges.

Units shall adhere to hot mix asphalt (HMA) or Portland cement concrete (PCC) surfaces at a minimum air temperature of 60°F, and a minimum surface substrate temperature of 70°F. They shall be weather resistant and durable to normal pedestrian wear and maintenance activities, and show no appreciable fading, lifting, or shrinkage. The units shall be capable of molding or fitting itself to the contours, breaks, and faults of HMA or PCC surfaces, and show no significant tearing, rollback, lifting, or other signs of poor adhesion. The units shall have friction characteristics similar to a broomed PCC surface.

The detectable warning units shall meet the following physical properties:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ASTM C501</td>
<td>Wear Resistance</td>
<td>Wear Index: &gt;15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTM C1028</td>
<td>Slip Resistance</td>
<td>Dry Coefficient of friction 0.8 minimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTM E96</td>
<td>Water Vapor Transmission</td>
<td>10 grams/square foot/24 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Various</td>
<td>Adhesion/Bonding Strength</td>
<td>See Note*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Due to the various types of materials available, the Manufacturer shall certify, through independent laboratory testing, that the type of material used for detectable warnings will bond to a prepared surface.

PACKAGING AND SHIPMENT. Preformed, surface-applied, detectable warning units shall be shipped and packaged in accordance with commercially accepted standards. The following information shall be marked on each package or on the shipping invoice: the name of the product, the name and address of the manufacturer, and the quantity of material.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material for placement on the Approved List will be based on the manufacturer’s certification of compliance with these requirements and in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. Contract acceptance will be based on the manufacturer’s name appearing on the Department’s Approved List.

726-02 EMBEDDED DETECTABLE WARNING UNITS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for embedded detectable warning units.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Embedded detectable warning units shall conform to the dimensions shown on the current standard sheet for detectable warnings.

Units shall be composed of cementitious materials, steel, iron, clay, shale, plastics, polymeric materials, resins, pigments, or as approved by the Director, Materials Bureau. The units shall be an approximate visual match to the color specified in the Contract Documents. Units shall provide the required contrast (light-on-dark or dark-on-light) with the adjacent curb ramp or other applicable walkway. The units shall be uniform in color and texture, be free of cracks or other defects, and have clean-cut and well-defined edges.

Where applicable, the units shall adhere to hot mix asphalt (HMA) or Portland cement concrete (PCC) surfaces at a minimum air temperature of 60°F, and a minimum surface substrate temperature of 70°F. They shall be weather resistant and durable to normal pedestrian wear and maintenance activities, and show no appreciable fading, lifting, or shrinkage. The units shall have friction characteristics similar to a broomed PCC surface.

The detectable warning units shall meet the following physical properties:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compressive Strength, Min., 28 days</td>
<td>8000 psi Minimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freeze-thaw Loss (25 Cycles, one per day, 10% NaCl solution)</td>
<td>1.0 % Maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in accordance with NY Test Method 502-3P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PACKAGING AND SHIPMENT. Embedded detectable warning units shall be shipped and packaged in accordance with commercially accepted standards. The following information shall be marked on each package or on the shipping invoice: the name of the product, the name and address of the manufacturer, and the quantity of material.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Acceptance of this material for placement on the Approved List will be based on the manufacturer’s certification of compliance with these requirements and in accordance with procedural directives of the Materials Bureau. Contract acceptance will be based on the manufacturer’s name appearing on the Department’s Approved List.

SECTION 727 - PAVEMENT MARKING MATERIALS
(Last Revised September, 2016)

727-01 EXTRUDED THERMOPLASTIC

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for thermoplastic that is extruded, in a molten state, onto a pavement surface. Following a surface application of reflective beads the resultant marking is a reflectorized stripe.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Unless otherwise noted, all samples are to be prepared and tested at an ambient temperature of 73°F +/- 3°F.

General.

- Formulated for application at temperatures greater than 400°F.
- Show no significant breakdown or deterioration at 475°F.
- Pigment, beads and filler uniformly dispersed in the binder resin.
- Be free from all skins, dirt and foreign objects.
Comply with the following requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 727-01-1 THERMOPLASTIC PROPERTIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titanium Dioxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflective Beads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium Carbonate &amp; Inert Fillers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow Pigments</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Amount and type of yellow pigment, calcium carbonate and inert fillers at the option of the manufacturer, providing the other composition requirements are met and the yellow pigment is lead chromate free.

Physical Properties.

**A. Color.** (ASTM D1535) When viewed under North Standard Daylight:
White: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation N 9.5/0.
Yellow: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation 10YR8/14.

**B. Yellowness Index.** (ASTM D1925 at 2º Observer angle and C Illuminate)
White thermoplastic: 0.12 maximum

**C. Softening Point.** (ASTM E28) Softening point: 194°F minimum.

**D. Specific Gravity.** Between 1.8 and 2.2 as determined by a water displacement method at 77°F.

**E. Field Drying Time.** At 70°F, and thickness between 1/8 inch and 3/16 inch: Completely solid and showing no damaging effect from traffic after 10 minutes.

Thermoplastic Primer.

- Specifically designed to enhance the bond of thermoplastic pavement markings to HMA and/or PCC pavements.
- Be either a one-component or two-component, cold- or hot-applied material of the type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Conform to current Federal, State and Local air pollution regulations, including those for the control (emission) of volatile organic compounds (VOC) as established by the U.S. EPA, and the NYSDEC.

PACKAGING AND SHIPPING. Shipped to the job site in strong, substantial containers, clearly marked with the following and including:

- Manufacturer's Name
- Name of Product
- Material Specification Number
- Lot/Batch Number
- Manufacture Date
- Expiration Date
- Quantity
- Two-component primer containers clearly identified as "Part A" and "Part B"
- Primers accompanied with written instructions for use

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer, accompanied by samples of each color (white and yellow) of the product and applicable glass beads in accordance with §727-05 Glass Beads For Pavement Markings, independent lab test results in accordance to this specification or in conjunction with the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP), and a certification that the product conforms to this specification.

Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Extruded Thermoplastic will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

### 727-02 REMOVABLE RAISED PAVEMENT MARKERS

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for removable raised pavement markers for use as interim and temporary pavement markings.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

**General.** Removable raised pavement markers shall be:
- Designed as single units consisting of an acrylic plastic or another type of durable casing, containing one or two reflective faces.
- Approximately square in shape.
- Capable of providing daytime delineation.
- Adhere to HMA or PCC surfaces using adhesives and/or methods recommended by the manufacturer.
- Removable from HMA and PCC pavements, intact or in substantially large pieces, without the use of heat, solvents, grinding or blasting.
- Free from dirt or any other contaminants.

**Physical Properties.**

**A. Color.** (ASTM D1535) When viewed under North Standard Daylight:
- White: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation N 9.5/0
- Yellow: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation 10YR8/14

**B. Size.**
2. Reflective Lens. Minimum area of the reflective lens: 0.38 square inches.

**C. Reflectance.** Initial average reflectance values, when measured with incident light parallel to the base of the marker, at an observation angle of 0.2°.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 727-02-1 REFLECTIVE MARKER LENSES REFLECTANCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entrance Angle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific Intensity (cd/ft²)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTES:
1. Observation Angle: The angle at the reflector between the observer's line of sight and the direction of light incident on the reflector.
2. Entrance Angle: The angle in the horizontal plane between the direction of incident light and the normal to the leading edge of reflective marker.
3. Specific Intensity: The luminous intensity (candels) of returned light at the chosen observation and entrance angles for each footcandle of illumination at the reflector on a plane perpendicular to the incident light.
4. Photometric Test Procedure: The reflective marker to be tested shall be located with the center of the reflective lens at a distance of 5 feet from a uniformly bright light source, having an effective diameter of 0.2 in. The return of light shall be measured using an annular ring photocell (3/8 inch I.D. x 1/2 inch O.D.). The photocell shall be shielded to eliminate stray light. The distance from the light source center to the photocell center shall be 0.21 inches. If a test distance of other than 5 feet is used, the source and receiver shall be modified in the same proportion as the test distance.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer, accompanied by samples of each color (white and yellow) of the product, independent lab test results in accordance with this specification or in conjunction with the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP), and certification that the product conforms to this specification. Additional field tests will be carried out in accordance with Materials Bureau Directives.

Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Removable Raised Pavement Markers for Interim Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

Removable Raised Pavement Markers used for Temporary Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

727-03 EPOXY PAINT

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for epoxy pavement marking paint that is applied onto pavement, followed by a surface application of retroreflective beads for use as interim and permanent pavement markings.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

General. Epoxy paint shall be:

- Formulated for use as a pavement marking material and for hot-spray application at elevated temperatures.
- Two-component (Part A and Part B), 100% solids type system formulated and designed to provide a simple volumetric mixing ratio (e.g., two volumes of Part A to one volume of Part B).
- VOC compliant and lead chromate free.
- Use organic yellow pigments, Color Index Pigment Yellow 65 (C.I. 11740) and/or 74 (C.I. 11741).
- Have a consistent target value of epoxy in Part A, based on ASTM D1652. Tested on a pigment free basis and calculated as the weight per epoxy equivalent (WPE).
- Have a consistent total amine value of Part B based on ASTM D2074, or an alternate test method for determining the amine value specified by the manufacturer subject to the approval of the Director, Materials Bureau.
- Display no bleeding on the surface upon which the paint is applied.
- Conform to current Federal, State and Local air pollution regulations, including those for the control (emission) of volatile organic compounds (VOC) as established by the U.S. EPA and the NYSDEC.

Physical Properties.

A. % Pigment - Part A. (ASTM D2371)  
- Yellow: 23% minimum  
- White: 18% minimum  
% TiO2 (100% Purity) (NYS Test Method 727-20C) White: 16.5% minimum

B. % Resin – Part A. (ASTM D2371)  
- Yellow: 70% - 77%  
- White: 75% - 82%

C. Color. (ASTM D1535) When viewed under North Standard Daylight, at a 15 ± 1 mil wet film thickness with no glass beads applied:
- White: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation N 9.5/0
- Yellow: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation 10YR8/14 and within the following chromaticity coordinate limits when tested under ASTM E1347.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coordinate</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>0.485</td>
<td>0.526</td>
<td>0.504</td>
<td>0.468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>0.426</td>
<td>0.472</td>
<td>0.481</td>
<td>0.450</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. Directional Reflectance. (ASTM E1347)  
- White: 84% minimum  
- Yellow: 54% minimum

E. Yellowness Index. (ASTM D1925 at 2° Observer angle and C Illuminate)  
- White Epoxy Paint: 0.12 maximum

F. Drying Time – Laboratory. (ASTM D711)  
Dry to no-pick-up time in 30 minutes maximum at an application rate of 15 ± 1 mils wet-film thickness and glass-sphere application rate of 20 lb/gal.

G. Hardness. (ASTM D2240)  
- Samples cured for 72 to 96 hours prior to testing.  
- Shore D Hardness: 75 - 100.

H. Infrared Spectrophotometer Analysis. (ASTM D2621)  
The spectrum of each component will be analyzed and maintained as a base record. Any subsequent samples taken from a Department contract must be a reasonable match to the original formulation spectrum accepted by the Materials Bureau for the Approved List.

Placement Properties. The material shall be capable of being placed using standard epoxy pavement marking equipment and have a maximum field no track time of 30 minutes when installed at 77°F.
PACKAGING AND SHIPPING. Shipped to the job site in strong, substantial containers, clearly marked with the following information:

- Manufacturer's Name
- Name of Product
- Material Specification Number
- Lot/Batch Number
- Date of Manufacture
- Expiration Date
- The Statement (as appropriate):
  “Part A Contains Pigment and Epoxy Resin,” or “Part B Contains Catalyst”
- Quantity

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer, accompanied by two 1/2 pint samples of each color (white and yellow) of Part A and one 1/2 pint of Part B for each color, independent lab test results in accordance with this specification or in conjunction with the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP), and certification that the product conforms to this specification. Additional field tests will be carried out in accordance with Materials Bureau Directives.

Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Epoxy Paint for Permanent and/or Interim Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

Epoxy Paint used for Temporary Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

727-04 PERMANENT PAVEMENT TAPE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for preformed pavement marking tape that is applied to the pavement for use as permanent pavement markings.

GENERAL. Permanent pavement tape shall be:

- Designed to provide immediate and continuous retroreflection.
- Meet all the requirements of ASTM D4505.
- Composed of a mixture of plastics or polymeric materials, resins, pigments, and reflective beads that are uniformly distributed throughout the thickness of the material.
- Have a layer of reflective beads bonded to, or embedded in the top surface.
- Pre-coated, on its bottom side, with a pressure-sensitive adhesive for adherence to HMA or PCC surfaces.
- Of the specified dimension and shape with clean-cut, well-defined edges, of good appearance, and free of cracks or other defects.
- Weather resistant and through normal traffic wear shall show no appreciable fading, lifting or shrinkage.
- Capable of molding itself to the contours, breaks and faults of HMA or PCC surfaces.
- Show no significant tearing, rollback, lifting or other signs of poor adhesion.
- Free from dirt and any other contaminants.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Unless otherwise noted, all samples are to be prepared and tested at an ambient temperature of 73° ± 3°F.

**A. Color.** (ASTM D1535) When viewed under North Standard Daylight:
White: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation N 9.5/0
Yellow: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation 10YR8/14

**B. Thickness.** Preformed pavement marking tape shall be:
- Uniform Cross Section: 60 mils minimum thickness.
- Patterned (Variable Cross Section): 20 mils minimum thickness at the thinnest portions and 60 mils minimum thickness at the thickest portions.
- The patterned top surface shall have approximately 50% of the surface area raised, and its design shall provide immediate and continuing retroreflection.

**C. Tensile Strength.** (ASTM D638) 40 psi minimum
Test specimens shall be Type II prepared by die cutting with Die C as specified in ASTM D412 Test Method A. The testing machine shall operate at a speed of 0.2 inches per minute. For calculating the tensile strength of patterned type material, the thickness measurements shall be taken in the thinnest portions of the cross sectional area.

**D. Elongation.** (ASTM D638) When tested in accordance with the conditions as specified for Tensile Strength: 15% minimum elongation

**Primer.** Primer shall be recommended by the manufacturer of the permanent tape and be compatible with the marking and surface the marking is being applied to.
- Specifically designed to enhance the bond of the permanent tape to HMA and/or PCC pavements. Conform to current Federal, State and Local air pollution regulations, including those for the control (emission) of volatile organic compounds (VOC) as established by the U.S. EPA and the NYSDEC.

PACKAGING AND SHIPPING. Shipped to the job site in strong, substantial containers, clearly marked with the following and including:
- Manufacturer's Name
- Name of Product
- Material Specification Number
- Lot/Batch Number
- Manufacture Date
- Quantity
- Primers accompanied with written instructions for use
- Expiration Date

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer, accompanied by samples of each color (white and yellow) of the product, independent lab test results in accordance with this specification or in conjunction with the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP), and certification that the product conforms to this specification. Additional laboratory analysis and field tests will be carried out in accordance with Materials Bureau Directives.
- Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.
**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Permanent Pavement Tape and primer will be accepted on the basis of the products appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

Permanent Pavement Tape and primer used for Temporary Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the products appearing on the Approved List. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

**727-05 GLASS BEADS FOR PAVEMENT MARKINGS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for retroreflective beads applied on top of thermoplastic, epoxy or traffic paint for use as pavement markings.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Glass beads for pavement markings shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M247 and shall be:

- Composed of glass that is highly resistant to traffic wear and to the effects of weathering.
- Colorless, clean, transparent, free from milkiness or excessive air bubbles, and essentially free from surface scarring or scratching.
- Silica content (ASTM C169): 60% minimum.
- Refractive index: 1.50 when tested by the liquid immersion method at 77°F.
- Show no tendency to absorb moisture in storage and shall remain free of clusters and hard lumps.
- Flow freely from the dispensing equipment at any time when surface and atmospheric conditions are satisfactory for painting.

*A. Sphericity.* (ASTM D1155 Procedure A) Spherical in shape - 70% minimum, true spheres. Wet/Night Visibility Beads will be tested for roundness according to the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

*B. Gradation.* (ASTM D1214).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 727-05-1 GLASS SPHERE GRADATION (Standard Bead)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Percent Passing by Weight</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Marking Type</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epoxy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic Paint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermoplastic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 727-05-2 GLASS SPHERE GRADATION (Wet/Night Visibility Bead)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Percent Passing by Weight</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Marking Type</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epoxy Wet/Night Reflective</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*C. Coating.*
**TABLE 727-05-3 GLASS SPHERE COATINGS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marking Type</th>
<th>Coating Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Epoxy Wet/Night Reflective</td>
<td>Silane Type adherence coating designed to interact with and adhere to epoxy pavement markings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epoxy (Standard Bead)</td>
<td>Moisture-resistant coating or a dual purpose type coating (moisture-resistant and adherence).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic Paint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermoplastic (Drop on)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**D. Moisture Resistance.** AASHTO M 247 Section 5.3.2

**PACKAGING AND SHIPPING.** Shipped to the job site in waterproof plastic lined burlap or plastic lined paper bags with the following information clearly marked on the packages:

- Manufacturer's Name
- Name of Product
- Size/Type/Coating
- Material Specification Number
- Lot/Batch Number
- Manufacture Date
- Quantity/Weight of Material

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer, accompanied by one 50 lb bag sample of the product, independent lab test results in accordance with this specification and certification that the product conforms to this specification.

Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Glass Beads for Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

Glass Beads for Pavement Markings used for Temporary Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

**727-06 REMOVABLE PAVEMENT TAPE**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for removable pavement marking tape and masking tape for use as interim and temporary pavement markings.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**

**General.** Removable pavement tape shall be:

- Composed of a mixture of plastics or polymeric materials, resins, pigments.
- Have on its bottom side, a pre-applied, pressure-sensitive adhesive for adherence to HMA or PCC surfaces.
- Of the specified dimension and shape with clean-cut, well defined-edges, of good appearance, and free of cracks or other defects.
- Weather resistant and through normal traffic wear shall show no appreciable fading, lifting or shrinkage.
- Capable of molding itself to the contours, breaks and faults of HMA or PCC surfaces.
- Show no significant tearing, rollback, lifting or other signs of poor adhesion.
- Removable from HMA and PCC pavements, intact or in substantially large pieces, without the use of heat, solvents, grinding or blasting, and leaving minimal permanent marks, scars or damage to the pavement surface after removal.
- Be free from dirt and any other contaminants.

**Retroreflective Tape.**

- Designed to provide immediate and continuous retroreflection.
- Composed of a mixture of plastics or polymeric materials, resins, pigments, and reflective beads that are uniformly distributed throughout the thickness of the material.
- Have a layer of reflective beads bonded to, or embedded in the top surface.

Meet the following requirements:

**A. Color:** (ASTM D1535) When viewed under North Standard Daylight:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>N 9.5/0, 10YR 8/14 and be within the following chromaticity coordinate limits when tested under ASTM E1347.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 727-06-1 CHROMATICITY COORDINATES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coordinate</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>0.485</td>
<td>0.526</td>
<td>0.504</td>
<td>0.468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>0.426</td>
<td>0.472</td>
<td>0.481</td>
<td>0.450</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B. Reflectance:**

**TABLE 727-06-2 PREFORMED TAPE REFLECTANCE REQUIREMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>White</th>
<th>Yellow</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Observation Angle</td>
<td>0.2°</td>
<td>0.5°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific Luminance (mcd/ft²/fc)</td>
<td>1770</td>
<td>1270</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Masking Tape.** Masking tape shall be:

- Specifically designed for use to temporarily cover existing pavement markings.
- Consist of durable, nonreflective, pliant polymer tape on a reinforced, conformable backing, pre-coated with a pressure-sensitive adhesive.
- Capable of adhering to existing pavement markings, asphalt pavement and Portland cement concrete pavement without the use of heat, solvents, additional adhesives or other means.
- Be substantially similar in color to the pavement surface with a flat matte finish and textured, skid resistant surface.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer, accompanied by samples of each color (white, yellow, black/grey) of the product, independent lab test results in accordance with this specification or in conjunction with the National
Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP), and certification that the product conforms to this specification. Additional laboratory analysis and field tests will be carried out in accordance with Materials Bureau Directives.

Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Removable Pavement Tape used for Interim Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

Removable Pavement Tape used for Temporary Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing material on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

**727-07 REMOVABLE WET-NIGHT REFLECTIVE TAPE**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for removable wet-night reflective tape for use as interim and temporary pavement markings.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**

**General.** Removable Wet-Night reflective tape shall be:

- Designed to provide immediate and continuous retroreflection in day and night as well as dry and wet conditions.
- Composed of a mixture of durable plastics or polymeric materials, resins, pigments, and reflective beads that are uniformly distributed throughout the thickness of the material.
- Pre-coated, on its bottom side, with a pressure-sensitive adhesive.
- Capable of adhering to existing pavement markings, asphalt pavement and Portland cement concrete pavement without the use of heat, solvents, additional adhesives or other means.
- Of the specified dimension and shape with clean-cut, well-defined edges, of good appearance, and free of cracks or other defects.
- Weather resistant and through normal traffic wear shall show no appreciable fading, lifting or shrinkage.
- Capable of molding itself to the contours, breaks and faults of HMA or PCC surfaces.
- Show no significant tearing, rollback, lifting or other signs of poor adhesion.
- Removable from HMA and PCC pavements, intact or in substantially large pieces, without the use of heat, solvents, grinding or blasting, and leaving minimal permanent marks, scars or damage to the pavement surface after removal.
- Have a layer of reflective beads bonded to, or embedded in the top surface.
- Free from dirt and any other contaminants.

Meet the following requirements:

**Physical Properties.**

**A. Color:** (ASTM D1535) When viewed under North Standard Daylight:

White: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation N 9.5/0 and be within the following daytime chromaticity coordinates (dry) when tested under ASTM E1347.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coordinate</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TABLE 727-07-1 WHITE CHROMATICITY COORDINATES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Yellow: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation 10YR 8/14 and be within the following daytime chromaticity coordinates (dry) when tested under ASTM E1347.

### TABLE 727-07-2 YELLOW CHROMATICITY COORDINATES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coordinate</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>0.560</td>
<td>0.460</td>
<td>0.420</td>
<td>0.490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>0.440</td>
<td>0.400</td>
<td>0.440</td>
<td>0.510</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B. Retroreflectivity.**

Wet: ASTM E2176 and ASTM E2177
Dry: ASTM E1710

### TABLE 727-07-3 MINIMUM INITIAL RETROREFLECTIVITY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entrance Angle: 88.76° Observation Angle: 1.05°</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retroreflectivity [mcd/ft²/fc]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer, accompanied by samples of each color (white and yellow) of the product, independent lab test results in accordance with this specification or in conjunction with the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP), and certification that the product conforms to this specification. Additional laboratory analysis and field tests will be carried out in accordance with Materials Bureau Directives.

Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Removable Wet-Night Reflective Tape used for Interim Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

Removable Wet-Night Reflective Tape used for Temporary Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

### 727-08 PERMANENT WET-NIGHT REFLECTIVE TAPE

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for permanent wet-night pavement marking tape for use as permanent pavement markings.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Unless otherwise noted, all samples are to be prepared and tested at an ambient temperature of 73° ± 3°F.

**General.** Permanent wet-night reflective tape shall be:
- Designed to provide immediate and continuous retroreflection in day and night as well as dry and wet conditions.
- Composed of a mixture of plastics or polymeric materials, resins, pigments, and reflective beads that are uniformly distributed throughout the thickness of the material.
- Have a layer of reflective beads bonded to, or embedded in the top surface.
- Pre-coated, on its bottom side, with a pressure-sensitive adhesive for adherence to HMA or PCC surfaces.
- Of the specified dimension and shape with clean-cut, well-defined edges, of good appearance, and free of cracks or other defects.
- Weather resistant and through normal traffic wear shall show no appreciable fading, lifting or shrinkage.
- Capable of molding itself to the contours, breaks and faults of HMA or PCC surfaces.
- Show no significant tearing, rollback, lifting or other signs of poor adhesion.
- Free from dirt and any other contaminants.

**Physical Properties.**

**A. Color:** (ASTM D1535) When viewed under North Standard Daylight:

White: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation N 9.5/0 and be within the following daytime chromaticity coordinates (dry) when tested under ASTM E1347.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 727-08-1 WHITE CHROMATICITY COORDINATES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coordinate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yellow: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation 10YR 8/14 and be within the following daytime chromaticity coordinates (dry) when tested under ASTM E1347.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 727-08-2 YELLOW CHROMATICITY COORDINATES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coordinate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B. Retroreflectivity.**

Wet: ASTM E2176 and ASTM E2177
Dry: ASTM E1710

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 727-08-3 MINIMUM INITIAL RETROREFLECTIVITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Entrance Angle: 88.76° Observation Angle: 1.05°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retroreflectivity (mcd/ft²/cd)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**C. Thickness.**

- Uniform Cross Section: 60 mils minimum thickness
- Patterned (Variable Cross Section): 20 mils minimum thickness at the thinnest portions and 60 mils minimum thickness at the thickest portions.
- The patterned top surface shall have approximately 50% of the surface area raised, and its design shall provide immediate and continuing retroreflection.
**D. Friction Resistance.** (ASTM E303) Friction resistance: 45 BPN minimum.

**E. Tensile Strength.** (ASTM D638) Tensile strength: 40 psi minimum
Test specimens shall be Type MII prepared by die cutting with Die C as specified in ASTM D412, Test Method A. The testing machine shall operate at a speed of 0.2 inches per minute. For calculating the tensile strength of patterned type material, the thickness measurements shall be taken in the thinnest portions of the cross sectional area.

**F. Elongation.** (ASTM D638) 15% minimum elongation when tested in accordance with the conditions as specified for Tensile Strength.

**Primer.** Primer shall be:

- Be recommended by the manufacturer of the preformed pavement marking and be compatible with the marking and surface the marking is being applied to.
- Specifically designed to enhance the bond of the preformed pavement markings to HMA and/or PCC pavements.
- Conform to current Federal, State and Local air pollution regulations, including those for the control (emission) of volatile organic compounds (VOC) as established by the U.S. EPA and the NYSDEC.

**PACKAGING AND SHIPPING.** Shipped to the job site in strong, substantial containers, clearly marked with the following and including:

- Manufacturer's Name
- Name of Product
- Material Specification Number
- Lot/Batch Number
- Manufacture Date
- Quantity
- Primers accompanied with written instructions for use
- Expiration Date

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer, accompanied by samples of each color (white and yellow) of the product, independent lab test results in accordance with this specification or in conjunction with the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP), and certification that the product conforms to this specification. Additional laboratory analysis and field tests will be carried out in accordance with Materials Bureau Directives.

Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Permanent Wet Night Reflective Tape and primer will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

Permanent Wet-Night Reflective Tape and primer used for Temporary Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.
727-09 TRAFFIC PAINT

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for waterborne and solventborne paints that are applied onto pavement, followed by a surface application of retroreflective beads for use as temporary, interim and permanent pavement markings.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

General. Traffic paint shall be:

- Formulated for use as a pavement marking material.
- Be VOC compliant and lead chromate free.
- Yellow paints must use organic yellow pigments Color Index Pigment Yellow 65 (C.I. 11740) and/or 74 (C.I. 11741).
- Display no bleeding on the surface upon which the paint is applied.
- Conform to current Federal, State and Local air pollution regulations, including those for the control (emission) of volatile organic compounds (VOC) as established by the U.S. EPA, and the NYSDEC.

Physical Properties.
Traffic paint for permanent and Interim Pavement Markings shall conform to the requirements of paragraphs A through L below. Traffic paint for Temporary Pavement Markings shall conform to the following paragraphs: B. Color; C. Directional Reflectance; D. Yellowness Index; E. Drying Time; F. Viscosity; and G. Dry Opacity.

A. Composition.
% Pigment. (ASTM D3723) 58.0% – 62.0%
% Total Solids. (ASTM D3723) 76.0 % minimum
% Vehicle Non-Volatile. (ASTM D3723) 43.0 % minimum

The manufacturers certified organic yellow pigment content shall be used to determine the final laboratory test results for: total pigment (%), and for nonvolatile vehicle (%). The Department reserves the right to validate the manufacturers "certified" organic yellow pigment content through outside, independent laboratory testing.

B. Color. (ASTM D1535) When viewed under North Standard Daylight at a 15 ± 1 mils wet film thickness with no glass beads applied:
White: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation N 9.5/0.
Yellow: Approximate visual color match to Munsell Book Notation 10YR 8/14 and within the following chromaticity coordinate limits when tested under ASTM E1347.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 727-09-1 CHROMATICITY COORDINATES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coordinate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C. Directional Reflectance (ASTM E1347) White: 84% minimum
Yellow: 54% minimum

D. Yellowness Index. (ASTM D1925 at 2°Observer angle and C Illuminate)
White Traffic Paint: 0.12 maximum.
E. Viscosity. (ASTM D562 Procedures B) 75 – 95 Kreb Units at 77°F

F. Dry Opacity. (ASTM D2805) 0.95 minimum contrast ratio
Application at 3 1/2 inches wide, wet-film thickness of 5 mils to white and black contrast panels matching Lenta Form 5C or equivalent. Dry time of 1 hour minimum.

G. Abrasion Resistance. (ASTM D4060) Four plate samples for each lot will be prepared for testing on the Taber Abaser. The paint will be sprayed onto steel plates, or applied by other suitable means so as to ensure a nominal 15 mil wet film thickness on each plate. Plates will be cured at standard laboratory temperature and humidity for 2 to 24 hours. The paint abrasion plates will be cleaned, dressed, and baked at 221°F for 18 hours. After baking, the plates will be allowed to cool in a desiccator for one hour and then weighed. The plates will be abraded for 1000 cycles on the Taber Abraser. The Taber Abraser will be operated with 1.10 lb weights and CS 10 wheels on the machine.
After abrading, the samples will be cleaned with a soft brush, placed in a desiccator for one hour and weighed again. The average weight loss for the four plates shall not exceed 0.00176 oz.

H. Flexibility. (Federal Specification TT-P-1952B Section 4.5.4) No cracking or flaking visible. Determine flexibility in accordance with Method B of ASTM D522.

I. Freeze-Thaw Stability. (Federal Specification TT-P-1952B, Section 4.5.7) No coagulation or change in consistency (ASTM D562) greater than 15 Kreb Units.

J. Heat Stability. (Federal Specification TT-P-1952B, Section 4.5.8) Waterborne only. No coagulation, discoloration or change in consistency (ASTM D562) greater than 15 Kreb Units when tested in an oven at 120° ± 2°F.

K. Infrared Spectrophotometer Analysis.
Waterborne: (ASTM D3168)  Solventborne: (ASTM D2621)
The spectrum of the paint will be analyzed and maintained as a base record. Any subsequent samples taken from a Department contract must be a reasonable match to the original formulation spectrum accepted by the Materials Bureau for the Approved List.

Placement Properties.
The material shall be placed using standard traffic paint application equipment and have a maximum field no track time of 3 minutes when installed at 77°F.

PACKAGING AND SHIPPING. Shipped to the job site in strong, substantial containers. Individual containers plainly marked with the following information:

- Manufacturer's Name
- Name of Product
- Material Specification Number
- Lot/Batch Number
- Test Number
- Manufacture Date
- Expiration Date
- Quantity

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Application for approval shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau by the manufacturer, accompanied by eight 1 pint samples of each color (white and yellow) of the product,
independent lab test results in accordance with this specification or in conjunction with the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP), and certification that the product conforms to this specification. Addition field tests will be carried out in accordance with Materials Bureau Directives.

Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the product will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Traffic Paint for permanent and Interim Pavement Markings will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification. Traffic Paint used for Temporary Pavement Markings need not appear on the Approved List. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

727-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

**SECTION 728 - COMPRESSIVE LOAD TRANSMITTING DEVICES**

**728-01 RUBBER IMPREGNATED WOVEN COTTON-POLYESTER FABRIC**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements, tests and basis of acceptance for rubber impregnated, woven, cotton-polyester fabric.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Rubber impregnated woven cotton-polyester fabric shall be composed of multiple layers of prestressed cotton-polyester duck with a minimum mass of 8 oz/sy, impregnated and bound with high quality rubber compound, containing rot and mildew inhibitors and anti-oxidants. The duck warp count shall be 50±1 threads per inch and the filling count shall be 40±2 threads per inch. Each thread shall contain 2 yarns. The material shall contain 64 plies per inch. The number of piles in the furnished material shall be such as to produce the specified thickness.

**TEST.** This material shall exhibit a maximum load deflection of 10% at 1000 psi when tested in accordance with MIL-C-882.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** This material will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specification requirements.

**728-02 RUBBER IMPREGNATED RANDOM FIBER PAD**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements, tests and basis of acceptance for rubber impregnated random fiber pads.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Rubber impregnated random fiber pad shall be composed of a high quality elastomer with a random distribution of non-asbestos fibers.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Rubber impregnated random fiber pad shall be accepted under an Approved List.

**728-03 PLAIN RUBBER PAD**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements, tests and basis of acceptance for plain rubber pads.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Plain rubber vertical load transmitting devices shall contain only polychloroprene as the raw elastomer polymer. The physical properties of the cured material shall comply with ASTM D2000 Line Call Out M2BC514A14B34. The rubber pads shall be cast in a mold under pressure and heat, or may be furnished to Department projects if they have been carefully cut from a larger piece of fully molded material. Shape factors of each device, i.e., net load area divided by the area free to bulge, must exceed twelve (12).

TEST. One plain rubber pad sample per size shall be submitted by the Engineer to the Materials Bureau for destructive test.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The presence of the appropriate form, validated by the Materials Bureau, shall constitute evidence of acceptability at the job site for plain rubber pads.

728-04 SHEET LEAD

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and basis of acceptance for sheet lead.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Sheet lead shall be lead plate of nominal 1/8 inch thickness, meeting the standard specification for Pig Lead, ASTM B29.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. This material shall be accepted on the basis of a manufacturer's certification of compliance with this specification.

728-05 (VACANT)

728-06 SHEET GASKET (TREATED BOTH SIDES)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for sheet gasket, treated both sides with a parting agent to prevent adhesion to working surfaces. This material is used as a bond breaker and sliding surface in bridge construction.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The sheet gasket shall have a nominal 1/16 inch thickness and shall be treated on both sides with a parting agent. The material shall meet the following requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Test Method</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Water absorption, %</td>
<td>Prepare 3 samples (2x2 inches, 1/16±1/32 inch thick). Record initial weight of the specimen. Immerse the samples in a distilled water tank for 24 hrs at room temperature. Take out the samples and dry it with a dry cloth, then record final weight. Use the difference in weight to calculate the water absorption %.</td>
<td>25.0 Maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient of static friction</td>
<td>ASTM D1894</td>
<td>0.36 Maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient of kinetic friction</td>
<td>ASTM D1894</td>
<td>0.24 Maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile strength, psi in the weakest direction</td>
<td>ASTM F152, Type 2</td>
<td>1200 Minimum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Sheet Gaskets will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Department's Approved List.

**728-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**SECTION 729 - TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES**  
(Last Revised September, 2019)

**729-01 DRUMS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material, fabrication, and performance requirements for traffic drums. Drums are defined by FHWA as a Category I device.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Drums shall meet the requirements of the MUTCD, shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved and shall be orange plastic, one-piece or two-piece construction, with a closed top. Drums shall be a minimum of 18 inches in diameter (visible from all directions), a minimum of 36 inches in height. Drums shall have a maximum weight of 75 lbs., including ballast. Two-piece drums shall consist of a base no more than 4 inches in height and an upper section. The base and upper section of two-piece drums shall be designed as a unit. One-piece drums shall include a base ring or elongation designed to hold ballast. The base and/or any nonflexible portion of the drum shall not extend more than 2 inches above the pavement surface.

Drums shall have 4 horizontal circumferential stripes of retroreflective sheeting a minimum of 6 inches wide, of alternating fluorescent orange and white, starting with fluorescent orange on the top. The top edge of the upper band shall be a maximum of 2 inches from the top edge of the drum. The space between stripes shall not exceed 2 inches.

**Retroreflective sheeting.** Retroreflective sheeting shall be:
  - Firmly bonded to the drum with an adhesive; mechanical fasteners will not be allowed.
  - Re-boundable and able to resist multiple impacts.

Retroreflective sheeting shall conform to the following sections of AASHTO M268 for White and Fluorescent Orange:

  - Daytime Luminance Factor: Table 1 - Daytime Luminance Factor (%Y) for Types A, B, C, and D.
  - Color: Table 2 - Color Specification Limits (Daytime) For Types A, B, C, and D
  - Table 3 - Color Specification Limits (Nighttime) For Types A, B, C, and D

Initial Retroreflectivity: Table 5 - Minimum Coefficient of Retroreflection (RA) for Type B Sheeting

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

**729-02 CONES**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material, fabrication, and performance requirements for traffic cones. Cones are defined by FHWA as a Category I device.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Cones shall meet the requirements of the MUTCD, shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved and shall be orange rubber or plastic. Cones shall have a maximum weight of 20 lbs, including ballast.
Standard cones shall be approximately 28 inches in height with a minimum conical bottom width of 10 inches. Standard cones shall have two horizontal circumferential stripes of white retroreflective sheeting, the upper a minimum of 6 inches wide, with the upper edge 3 to 4 inches from the top of the cone, and the lower a minimum of 4 inches wide with the upper edge approximately 2 inches below the upper stripe.

Tall cones shall be approximately 36 inches in height with a minimum conical bottom width of 10 inches. Tall cones shall have two horizontal circumferential stripes of white retroreflective sheeting, the upper a minimum of 6 inches wide, with the upper edge 3 to 4 inches from the top of the cone, and the lower a minimum of 4 inches wide with the upper edge approximately 2 inches below the upper stripe.

Extra tall cones shall be a minimum of 42 inches in height with a minimum conical bottom width of 7 inches. Extra tall cones shall have a minimum of four horizontal circumferential stripes of retroreflective sheeting from 4 to 6 inches wide, of alternating orange and white starting with orange on the top. The upper edge of the sheeting shall be 4 inches from the top of the cone. Nonreflective spaces between the stripes shall not exceed 3 inches wide.

**Retroreflective sheeting.** Retroreflective sheeting shall be:

- Firmly bonded to the cone with an adhesive; mechanical fasteners will not be allowed.
- Re-boundable and able to resist multiple impacts.

Retroreflective sheeting shall conform to the following sections of AASHTO M268 for White:

- **Daytime Luminance Factor:** Table 1 – Daytime Luminance Factor (%Y) for Types A, B, C, and D.
- **Color:** Table 2 - Color Specification Limits (Daytime) For Types A, B, C, and D
  Table 3 - Color Specification Limits (Nighttime) For Types A, B, C, and D

Initial Retroreflectivity: Table 5 - Minimum Coefficient of Retroreflection (RA) for Type B Sheeting

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

729-03 TEMPORARY TUBULAR MARKERS

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material, fabrication, and performance requirements for tubular markers. Tubular markers are defined by FHWA as a Category I device.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Tubular markers shall meet the requirements of the MUTCD, shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved and shall be orange, with a minimum height of 36 inches and a minimum outside diameter of 2 inches. Tubular markers shall be circular or elliptical in cross section. Tubular markers shall have a maximum weight of 12 lbs, not including a mounting base.

The markers shall have two horizontal circumferential stripes of white retroreflective sheeting, a minimum of 3 inches wide each. The top edge of the upper band shall be a maximum of 2 inches from the top of the marker. The space between the stripes shall not exceed 6 inches.

For free-standing tubular markers, the base and/or any nonflexible portion of the marker shall not be more than 2 inches in height.

For tubular markers fastened to pavement, the bonding system shall be a fast-setting chemical compound, mastic-type material, or mechanical fastener capable of fixing the tubular marker to either concrete or asphalt pavement. The bonding system shall not present a hazard to traffic if the tubular marker or base unit becomes unfixed from the pavement.

**Retroreflective sheeting.** Retroreflective sheeting shall be:

- Firmly bonded to the post with an adhesive; mechanical fasteners will not be allowed.
• Re-boundable and able to resist multiple impacts.

Retroreflective sheeting shall conform to the following sections of AASHTO M268 for White:

Daytime Luminance Factor: Table 1 – Daytime Luminance Factor (%Y) for Types A, B, C, and D.

Color: Table 2 - Color Specification Limits (Daytime) For Types A, B, C, and D

Table 3 - Color Specification Limits (Nighttime) For Types A, B, C, and D

Initial Retroreflectivity: Table 5 - Minimum Coefficient of Retroreflection (RA) for Type B Sheeting.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

729-04 VERTICAL PANELS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material, fabrication, and performance requirements for vertical panels. Vertical panels are defined by FHWA as a Category II device.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Vertical panels shall conform to the requirements of the MUTCD, shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved and shall be constructed of plastic, aluminum, or other lightweight materials. Vertical panels shall be supported by a base capable of maintaining the panel in an upright position and in the proper position and orientation.

Vertical panels shall have 4 to 6 inch wide diagonal stripes of alternating orange and white reflective sheeting, sloping downward at an angle of 45° toward the side on which traffic is to pass. Vertical panels which are 36 inches and larger shall have 6 inch wide diagonal stripes.

Standard vertical panels shall be a minimum of 24 inches in height and a minimum of 8 inches in width. The top of the panel shall be mounted a maximum of 36 inches high. Support posts for standard vertical panels shall not be located on the traffic face of the panel.

Oversized vertical panels shall be a minimum of 36 inches in height and have a minimum reflective area of 2.0 square feet.

Reflective sheeting shall conform to 730-05 Reflective Sheeting ASTM Type I (Class A), ASTM Type III (Class B) or higher.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

729-05 STOP/SLOW PADDLES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for stop/slow paddles.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Stop/slow paddles shall conform to the requirements of the MUTCD and shall be constructed of plastic, aluminum, or other lightweight materials. Stop/slow paddles shall be a minimum of 24 inches wide and shall be mounted on a support staff with a minimum height of 6 feet to the bottom of the panel. Reflective sheeting shall conform to 730-05 Reflective Sheeting ASTM Type IX (Class E).

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.
729-06 TYPE I CONSTRUCTION BARRICADES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material, fabrication, and performance requirements for Type I construction barricades. Type I construction barricades are defined by FHWA as a Category II device.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Type I construction barricades shall meet the requirements of the MUTCD and shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved. Type I construction barricades shall be constructed of an A frame with a single rail panel 8 to 12 inches wide and a minimum of 24 inches long. Rails on barricades used on expressways and other high-speed roadways shall have an area of at least 2.0 square feet. The top of the upper panel shall be mounted at a minimum height of 36 inches. Barricade frames shall be designed to maintain the proper orientation and location of the device during windy conditions. Non-rigid ballast may be placed on the frame, close to the ground, to hold the barricade in position, and shall not obscure the view of the rail panels to approaching traffic.

Barricade rail panels shall have 4 inch wide, retroreflective diagonal stripes sloping at an angle of 45°, alternating orange and white colors.

Retroreflective sheeting. Retroreflective sheeting shall be:
- Firmly bonded to the barricades with an adhesive; mechanical fasteners will not be allowed.
- Re-boundable and able to resist multiple impacts.

Retroreflective sheeting shall conform to the following sections of AASHTO M268 for White and Orange:

Daytime Luminance Factor: Table 1 – Daytime Luminance Factor (%Y) for Types A, B, C, and D.

Color: Table 2 - Color Specification Limits (Daytime) For Types A, B, C, and D
Table 3 - Color Specification Limits (Nighttime) For Types A, B, C, and D

Initial Retroreflectivity: Table 5 - Minimum Coefficient of Retroreflection (RA) for Type B Sheetin

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

729-07 TYPE II CONSTRUCTION BARRICADES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material, fabrication, and performance requirements for Type II construction barricades. Type II construction barricades are defined by FHWA as a Category II device.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Type II construction barricades shall meet the requirements of the MUTCD and shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved. Type II construction barricades shall be constructed of a frame with two rail panels 8 to 12 inches wide and a minimum of 24 inches long. Rails on barricades used on expressways and other high-speed roadways shall have an area of at least 2.0 square feet. The top of the upper panel shall be mounted at a minimum height of 36 inches. Barricade frames shall be designed to maintain the proper orientation and location of the device during windy conditions. Non-rigid ballast may be placed on the frame, close to the ground, to hold the barricade in position, and shall not obscure the view of the rail panels to approaching traffic.

Barricade rail panels shall have 4 to 6 inch wide, retroreflective diagonal stripes sloping at an angle of 45°, alternating orange and white colors. Barricade rail panels 36 inches and longer shall have 6 inch wide stripes.

Retroreflective sheeting. Retroreflective sheeting shall be:
• Firmly bonded to the barricades with an adhesive; mechanical fasteners will not be allowed.
• Re-boundable and able to resist multiple impacts.

Retroreflective sheeting shall conform to the following sections of AASHTO M268 for White and Orange:

Daytime Luminance Factor: Table 1 – Daytime Luminance Factor (%Y) for Types A, B, C, and D.

Color:
Table 2 - Color Specification Limits (Daytime) For Types A, B, C, and D
Table 3 - Color Specification Limits (Nighttime) For Types A, B, C, and D

Initial Retroreflectivity: Table 5 - Minimum Coefficient of Retroreflection (RA) for Type B Sheeting

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

729-08 TYPE III CONSTRUCTION BARRICADES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material, fabrication, and performance requirements for Type III construction barricades. Type III construction barricades are defined by FHWA as a Category II device.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Type III construction barricades shall meet the requirements of the MUTCD and shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved. Type III construction barricades shall be constructed of a frame with three rail panels 8 to 12 inches wide and a minimum of 48 inches long. The top of the upper panel shall be mounted at a minimum height of 60 inches. Barricade frames shall be designed to maintain the proper orientation and location of the device during windy conditions. Nonrigid ballast may be placed on the frame, close to the ground, to hold the barricade in position, and shall not obscure the view of the rail panels to approaching traffic.

Barricade rail panels shall have 6 inch wide retroreflective diagonal stripes, sloping at an angle of 45°, alternating orange and white colors.

Retroreflective sheeting. Retroreflective sheeting shall be:
• Firmly bonded to the barricades with an adhesive; mechanical fasteners will not be allowed.
• Re-boundable and able to resist multiple impacts.

Retroreflective sheeting shall conform to the following sections of AASHTO M268 for White and Orange:

Daytime Luminance Factor: Table 1 – Daytime Luminance Factor (%Y) for Types A, B, C, and D.

Color:
Table 2 - Color Specification Limits (Daytime) For Types A, B, C, and D
Table 3 - Color Specification Limits (Nighttime) For Types A, B, C, and D

Initial Retroreflectivity: Table 5 - Minimum Coefficient of Retroreflection (RA) for Type B Sheeting

Warning Lights. Warning lights, when used, shall be securely mounted directly to the barricade frame, above the top rail, using a bolt, nut, and washer of sufficient strength to ensure that the light does not detach if impacted by a vehicle, and no part of the light or wiring shall cover the face of the rail. Batteries shall be placed at ground level, except that integral batteries weighing a maximum of 7 lbs may be mounted on the barricade frame. Warning lights shall not be attached to the barricade rail.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

729-09 TEMPORARY SIGN SUPPORTS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material, fabrication, and performance requirements for temporary sign supports. Temporary sign supports are defined by FHWA as a Category II device.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Temporary sign supports shall conform to the requirements of the MUTCD and shall be constructed in accordance with the Standard Sheets or shall be commercially manufactured, temporary sign supports that are NCHRP 350 or MASH approved.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

729-10 TEMPORARY IMPACT ATTENUATORS - REDIRECTIVE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for temporary impact attenuators. Temporary impact attenuators are defined by FHWA as a Category III device.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS. Temporary impact attenuators shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved as a redirective, non-gating device. Temporary impact attenuators that use liquid or other materials as a filler or to provide ballast will be evaluated for potential environmental impacts and/or seasonal limitations. Temporary impact attenuators meeting the requirements of NCHRP 350 or MASH Test Level 2 are acceptable only as Test Level 2 devices. A Temporary impact attenuator accepted as a Test Level 3 device is also acceptable as Test Level 2 device. Temporary impact attenuators will be approved for use in shielding an object of a maximum width as specified in the Approved List, and specific configurations may be approved for maximum speeds. Approach ends of Temporary impact attenuators shall have impact attenuator markings in accordance with the MUTCD.

Concrete Grouting Material  
Anchoring Materials - Chemically Curing

If a temporary foundation slab is required, concrete shall be Class A concrete conforming to Section 501 Portland Cement Concrete - General; reinforcing steel shall conform to §709-01 Bar Reinforcement, Grade 420.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have Test Level 2 or Test Level 3 temporary impact attenuators approved shall prepare and submit copies of drawings, specifications, test reports, and Federal acceptance letters to the Director of the Materials Bureau. The review process requires a minimum of 30 calendar days. Upon approval, the name of the manufacturer and the product will be placed on the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Test Level 2 or Test Level 3 temporary impact attenuators will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

729-11 TEMPORARY IMPACT ATTENUATORS - GATING

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for temporary impact attenuators. Temporary impact attenuators are defined by FHWA as a Category III device.
MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS. Temporary impact attenuators shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved as a gating device. Temporary impact attenuators that use liquid or other materials as a filler or to provide ballast will be evaluated for potential environmental impacts and/or seasonal limitations. Temporary impact attenuators meeting the requirements of NCHRP 350 or MASH Test Level 2 are acceptable only as Test Level 2 devices. A Temporary impact attenuator accepted as a Test Level 3 device is also acceptable as Test Level 2 device. Temporary impact attenuators will be approved for use in shielding an object of a maximum width as specified in the Approved List, and specific configurations may be approved for maximum speeds. Approach ends of Temporary impact attenuators shall have impact attenuator markings in accordance with the MUTCD.

Concrete Grouting Material 701-05
Anchoring Materials - Chemically Curing 701-07

If a temporary foundation slab is required, concrete shall be Class A concrete conforming to Section 501 Portland Cement Concrete - General; reinforcing steel shall conform to §709-01 Bar Reinforcement, Grade 420.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have Test Level 2 or Test Level 3 temporary impact attenuators approved shall prepare and submit copies of drawings, specifications, test reports, and Federal acceptance letters to the Director of the Materials Bureau. The review process requires a minimum of 30 calendar days. Upon approval, the name of the manufacturer and the product will be placed on the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Test Level 2 or Test Level 3 temporary impact attenuators will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

729-12 TRUCK-MOUNTED AND TRAILER MOUNTED IMPACT ATTENUATORS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for truck mounted impact attenuators or trailer mounted impact attenuators (TMIAs) mounted on the rear of work vehicles and barrier trailers. Impact attenuators are defined by FHWA as a Category III device.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS. TMIAs shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved. TMIAs meeting the requirements of NCHRP 350 or MASH Test Level 3 are also acceptable as a Test Level 2 device. TMIAs meeting the requirements of NCHRP 350 or MASH Test Level 2 are acceptable only as Test Level 2 devices. Approach ends of TMIAs shall have impact attenuator markings in accordance with the MUTCD.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have products considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall prepare and submit copies of drawings, specifications, test reports, and Federal Acceptance Letters to the Director of the Materials Bureau. The review process requires a minimum of 30 calendar days. Upon approval, the name of the manufacturer and the product will be placed on the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Test Level 2 or Test Level 3 TMIAs will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.
729-13 TEMPORARY SAND BARRELS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for sand barrels. Sand barrels are defined by FHWA as a Category III device.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Sand barrels of each size module shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved. Sand barrels shall be yellow, durable, waterproof, ultraviolet-stable plastic. The first barrel in the array shall have impact attenuator markings in accordance with the MUTCD.

Sand barrels shall resist deformation from dynamic loadings due to vibration in the placement area and long-term stresses induced by thermal expansion/contraction and fill settlement. Sand barrels shall be free draining with respect to residual moisture in the fill sand. Lids shall divert precipitation and prevent moisture from entering the module. Lids shall be fastened or otherwise secured to provide a closed, reasonably vandal-resistant barrel.

The fill sand shall conform to the requirements of either 703-06 Cushion Sand or 703-07 Concrete Sand. Sodium chloride, as dry rock salt, equal to 3-5 % by weight of the sand, shall be thoroughly mixed into the sand. Sodium chloride shall meet the requirements of 712-03 Sodium Chloride.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have products considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall prepare and submit copies of drawings, specifications, test reports, and Federal Acceptance Letters to the Director of the Materials Bureau. The review process requires a minimum of 30 calendar days. Upon approval, the name of the manufacturer and the product will be placed on the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Sand barrels will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

729-14 VEHICLE-ARRESTING SYSTEMS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for vehicle-arresting systems. Vehicle-arresting systems are defined by FHWA as a Category III device.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Vehicle-arresting systems shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have products considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall prepare and submit copies of drawings, specifications, test reports, and Federal Acceptance Letters to the Director of the Materials Bureau. The review process requires a minimum of 30 calendar days.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Vehicle-arresting systems will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

729-15 ARROW PANELS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for arrow panels. Arrow panels are defined by FHWA as a Category IV device.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Arrow panels shall be signs with a matrix of illuminated elements capable of either flashing or sequential arrow displays that meets the requirements of the MUTCD. Arrow
panels shall be equipped with a sign control console, mounted in a lockable, weather-resistant compartment.

Arrow panels shall not bear any advertising message or any other message that is not related to traffic control. A nonretroreflective logo or name and telephone number of the contractor or supplier may be located on the back of the arrow panel or on the arrow panel trailer. The logo shall not exceed 1 ft². The name and telephone number shall not exceed 2 inches in height. The rear face of the arrow panel shall contain one or more clear lamp(s) to indicate that the arrow board is operating properly.

**Truck-Mounted Series B.** Arrow panels consist of a 60 x 30 inch rectangular panel mounted at a minimum of 5 feet above the roadway. The arrow display shall be legible at a minimum distance of 3/4 mile on a bright, sunny day or a clear night when the sight line is unobstructed.

**Trailer-Mounted or Truck-Mounted Series C.** Arrow panels consist of a 96 x 48 inch rectangular panel mounted at a minimum of 7 feet above the roadway for trailer mounted arrow panels and 5 feet above the roadway for truck mounted arrow panels. Arrow panels shall be powered by self-contained engine-driven generator systems, capable of energizing the arrow displays for 72 hours unattended and shall be capable of being powered by 110V AC supply; solar-powered, capable of energizing the arrow displays continuously for 21 days unattended; or powered by a truck. Arrow panel operation controls shall be mounted in a lockable enclosure. The arrow display shall be legible at a minimum distance of 1 mile on a bright, sunny day or a clear night when the sight line is unobstructed.

**TESTING.** Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have Truck-Mounted Series B arrow panels considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall submit a material certification that the arrow panel conforms to this specification and the requirements of the MUTCD, and provide an arrow panel to the Director, Materials Bureau in Albany for initial field testing. Field testing will include evaluation of arrow panel operation during various light conditions for brightness, legibility, and angularity. The review process requires a minimum of 30 calendar days.

Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have Trailer-Mounted or Truck-Mounted Series C arrow panels considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall submit test results from the AASHTO National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP), a material certification that the arrow panel conforms to this specification and the requirements of the MUTCD, and provide an arrow panel to the Director of the Materials Bureau in Albany for initial field testing. Field testing will include evaluation of arrow panel operation during various light conditions for brightness, legibility, and angularity. The review process requires a minimum of 30 calendar days.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Truck-Mounted Series B arrow panels meeting the requirements of this specification and having satisfactory initial field test results will be placed on the Approved List.

Trailer-Mounted or Truck-Mounted Series C arrow panels meeting the requirements of this specification and satisfactory initial field test results, as well as satisfactory NTPEP test results will be placed on the Approved List. Trailer-Mounted or Truck-Mounted Series C arrow panels for which NTPEP test results have not been submitted may be provisionally placed on the Approved List for a maximum of one year. After one year of provisional approval, the manufacturer may request an extension for one additional year based on a pending application filed with NTPEP for testing. No extensions of provisional approvals past two years will be granted. If satisfactory test results are not provided by the expiration date of the provisional approval, all units provided or in use shall be removed and replaced by the Contractor with approved units at no additional cost to the State. Arrow panels on the Approved List that have repeated poor evaluations will be removed from the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Arrow panels will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product meets this specification and is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List.
SCOPE. This specification covers the physical and performance requirements for Portable Variable-Message Signs (PVMS).

GENERAL. PVMS shall be trailer mounted and equipped for use on public highways in accordance with NYS Vehicle and Traffic Law. The trailer shall have 4 leveling jacks capable of leveling the trailer on slopes up to 1 on 6 and capable of stabilizing the trailer in winds up to 75 mph.

PVMS shall operate primarily from a solar powered electrical system that consists of a battery bank, solar array panels, and on-board auxiliary charging system to enable the batteries to be recharged via a 110V AC connection. The solar array panels and battery bank shall supply power sufficient to operate the complete unit, including integrated accessories for a minimum of 21 days without auxiliary charge.

PVMS shall not bear any advertising message or any other message that is not related to traffic control. A nonretroreflective logo or name and telephone number of the contractor or supplier may be located on the back of the PVMS or on the PVMS trailer. The logo shall not exceed 1 square foot. The name and telephone number shall not exceed 2 inches in height.

All electrical systems in the PVMS shall be FCC Part 15 compliant and sufficiently shielded to prevent interference with the two-way radio system equipment used by the Department.

PVMS shall be equipped with a sign control console mounted in a lockable, weather-resistant compartment. The sign controller shall have programmable memory capable of storing messages pertinent to planned construction activities, including emergency messages. The controller shall be equipped with 14 day calendar programming capability, providing the ability to start and stop the display of a minimum of 3 different messages on a repeating schedule without an operator present. The controller shall be capable of producing an accurate log of all messages and the times they were displayed. The controller shall have programmable messages, display rate, and display interval settings. The controller shall blank the sign if the output voltage drops below the manufacturer’s recommended output level.

PVMS shall be equipped with control software compatible with the Department’s current Microsoft Windows operating system. Upon request, the Contractor shall supply the Engineer with two copies of operating instructions for the PVMS and the control software. Electronic copies of software instructions are acceptable.

DISPLAY. The color of light emitted shall be amber. PVMS shall be capable of displaying 3 lines of alphanumeric characters, and 3 separate messages in a cyclical sequence. On/Off time for each message in a sequence shall be user adjustable within a range of 0 to 5 seconds, in a minimum of 0.5-second increments.

The PVMS shall be visible at a distance of 1/2 mile during the day and at night. For highways with a posted pre-construction speed limit of 55 MPH or greater, PVMS messages shall be legible from a minimum distance of 800 feet during the day and 600 feet at night. For highways with a posted pre-construction speed limit of 50 MPH or less, PVMS messages shall be legible from a minimum distance of 650 feet. The viewing angle of the PVMS shall be a minimum of 15 degrees to the left and to the right of the signs midpoint.

PVMS characters shall be at least 7 pixels high, with a minimum width to height character ratio of 70% (ex. 5x7 pixels per character, assuming nearly equal horizontal and vertical pixel pitch). Each pixel shall be formed by clusters of equality spaced Light Emitting Diodes (LED’s). The number of LED’s per pixel (typically 3 or 4) shall be determined by the manufacturer in order to produce the required illumination and legibility. The PVMS characters shall comply with the minimum number of characters per line and minimum character heights.

Small size. - Full Matrix PVMS shall be capable of displaying:

- Eight characters per line
- At least 12” high characters per line, when three lines are displayed.
Standard size. - Line /Character or Full Matrix PVMS shall be capable of displaying:
- Eight characters per line
- Up to 18” high characters per line, when three lines are displayed.

Large size. - Full Matrix PVMS shall be capable of displaying:
- A minimum of 10 characters per line
- At least 18” high characters per line, when three lines are displayed.

PVMS messages shall comply with NYSDOT’s Variable Message Sign Guidelines. PVMS messages shall not display any advertising message or any other message that is not related to traffic control or highway safety.

OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

A. Radar. PVMS equipped with radar shall have the ability to determine the speed of an approaching vehicle and interrupt the programmed sequence with a customized default message displaying the vehicle’s speed.

B. CCTV Camera. PVMS equipped with a CCTV camera shall be able to monitor traffic and/or weather conditions by recording live streaming video, and capable of taking still images of the vicinity. The camera shall have pan, tilt, and zoom functions. The camera shall have a parapet mounting bracket to allow an elevated mounting height. The camera shall be able to transmit data to a modem on the PVMS via a cellular connection.

CELLULAR COMMUNICATION. PVMS shall have provisions for mounting of communication equipment, including cellular antennas and external line cables in accordance with industry standards.

PVMS with cellular communications shall be equipped with a static Internet Protocol (IP) Address in accordance with the NYS Office of Information Technology Service (NYS OITS) requirements and a cellular modem and a cellular service plan capable of remotely operating the control software. This may require coordination and configuration with the Department in order to ensure connectivity between the PVMS and the Regional Transportation Management Center using the sign control software.

NTCIP COMPLIANT. NTCIP Compliant PVMS shall be equipped with communication and control systems that are National Transportation Communication for ITS Protocol (NTCIP) compliant.

PVMS shall be equipped with control software compatible with the Department’s current operating system. The Contractor shall supply the Engineer with two copies of operating instructions for the PVMS and the control software. Electronic copies of software instructions are acceptable.

TRAINING. Upon request, training for Regional Transportation Management Center personnel in the remote operation of the PVMS shall be provided by a qualified Technician or Manufacturer Representative.

TESTING. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have PVMS considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall follow the NYSDOT PVMS Certification Requirements guidance and submit all necessary documentation to the Director, Materials Bureau in Albany. The Certification Requirements are available on the Materials & Equipment Approved List page of the Department’s website: https://www.dot.ny.gov/divisions/engineering/technical-services/materials-bureau/materials-and-equipment.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. PVMS meeting the requirements of this specification and the NYSDOT PVMS Certification Requirements will be placed on the Approved List.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The PVMS will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product meets this specification and is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List. NTCIP compliant PVMS communication functionality will be verified by the Engineer within a maximum 20 work day period from the date of delivery to the work site.

729-17 TEMPORARY GLARE SCREENS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for temporary glare screens. Glare screens are not defined separately by FHWA, but rather are considered a system component.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Temporary glare screens shall consist of a opaque screen on a horizontal base which is, in turn, mounted on a concrete barrier. The system shall be modular to allow flexible use and ease of maintenance.

The screen shall be constructed of durable, lightweight, flexible, weather-resistant and impact-resistant materials of a single, uniform dark color. The minimum height of the screen shall be approximately 24 inches. The screen shall be reflectorized at a uniform maximum spacing of 40 feet. If barrier delineation is blocked, the screen shall be reflectorized on both sides with a 3 inch wide by 6 inch high (minimum) piece of reflective sheeting, ASTM Type I (Class A), ASTM Type III (Class B), or higher. Yellow reflective sheeting shall be used facing traffic which is to pass to the right of the glare screen. White reflective sheeting shall be used facing traffic which is to pass to the left of the glare screen.

Individual temporary glare screen modules shall not span a joint between concrete barrier sections, and bases shall not overhang the face of the barrier. Temporary glare screens shall not have any horizontal rigid members that could potentially spear an impacting vehicle, or shall be NCHRP 350 or MASH approved if the system has horizontal rigid members.

The base shall have sufficient rigidity to facilitate ease of handling and proper screen support and position. The connection of the base to the vertical components shall prevent unintentional screen rotation or dislocation. The base shall be properly secured to prevent it from being dislodged upon impact.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

729-18 WARNING LIGHTS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for warning lights. Warning lights are not defined separately by FHWA, but rather are considered a system component.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Warning lights shall be mounted on signs or channelizing devices in a manner that, if hit by an errant vehicle, they will not be likely to penetrate the windshield. Warning lights shall be Type A (low-intensity flashing), Type B (high-intensity flashing), or Type C (steady-burning). Warning lights shall meet the requirements of the MUTCD Section 6F.83 and the ITE Purchase Specification for Flashing and Steady Burn Warning Lights. Warning lights shall have a minimum nominal diameter of 7 inches and shall emit yellow light. Flashing warning lights shall flash between 55 and 75 times per minute. Flashing warning lights required to operate 24 hours per day shall be Type B. Steady-burning warning lights shall operate from one-half hour after sunset to one-half hour before sunrise. Warning lights shall have a minimum mounting height of 30 inches to the bottom of the lens. Warning lights shall be powered by batteries, line power, or solar cells adequate to maintain the required luminance during all periods of required operation.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

729-19 AUTOMATED FLAGGER ASSISTANCE DEVICES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for automated flagger assistance devices (AFAD) designed to control road users through work zones to be remotely operated by a flagger. AFADs are defined by FHWA as a Category IV device.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. AFADs shall meet the requirements of the MUTCD. Each AFAD shall consist of a remotely controlled self-contained trailer or movable cart consisting of STOP/SLOW signs or RED/YELLOW lenses.

Stop/Slow Sign AFAD shall consist of:

- A STOP/SLOW sign (R1-1/W20-8) having an octagonal shape of at least 36 x 36 inch with letters at least 12 inches high.
  - One red stop beacon, 12 inch diameter red Light Emitting Diode (LED), mounted above the STOP sign.
  - At least one amber beacon, 12 inch diameter amber Light Emitting Diode (LED) or Type B high-intensity flashing warning light mounted above, below or to the side(s) of the SLOW sign.
- A gate arm capable of extending up to 8.5 feet.
- WAIT ON STOP (R1-7) and GO ON SLOW (R1-8) signs mounted under the STOP/SLOW sign.
  - WAIT ON STOP sign shall be a 24 x 30 inches with black legend and black border on a white background with letters at least 2 inches high.
  - GO ON SLOW sign shall be a 24 x 30 inches with black legend and black border on a white background with letters at least 2 inches high.
- All sign sheeting shall conform to §730-05 Reflective Sheeting ASTM Type IX (Class E).

RED/Yellow Lens AFAD shall consist of:

- Circular red and circular yellow 12 inch diameter Light Emitting Diode (LED) displays.
- A gate arm capable to extend up to 8.5 feet.
- STOP HERE ON RED sign (R10-6) 24 x 30 inches.
- All sign sheeting shall conform to §730-05 Reflective Sheeting ASTM Type IX (Class E).

The AFADs shall be controlled by a single flagger with a remote control, which shall allow safe operation of two AFADs remotely, employ bi-directional communications to verify each command sent from the handheld was successfully received, be equipped with conflict monitoring to prevent displaying a SLOW message simultaneously in both directions, permit an override feature to allow a simultaneous slow display, and show the current status of each AFAD. The control console and power supply shall be housed in a locked compartment. Each trailer/cart shall be equipped with a remote control warning horn alerting workers of intruding vehicles.

Trailers/carts shall display a minimum of 2 inch wide band of reflective sheeting on all four sides of the trailer. Reflective sheeting shall conform to §730-05 Reflective Sheeting ASTM Type III (Class B), ASTM Type VII (Class C) or ASTM Type IX (Class E). The sheeting need not be continuous, but the sum of the length of the segments shall be at least one-half the length of the trailer. AFADs shall not bear an advertising message(s) or any other message that is not related to traffic control. A nonretroreflective logo or name and telephone number of the contractor or supplier not to exceed 1.0 square feet may be located on the trailer or cart. The name and telephone number shall not exceed 2 inches in height.
BASIS OF APPROVAL. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have AFADs be considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall submit a material certification that the AFADs meet this specification and the requirements of the MUTCD, as well as provide one AFAD for initial field testing to the Director of the Materials Bureau in Albany for review. Initial field testing will include evaluating the AFADs for operation, sign visibility/legibility, retractable arm functionality/visibility and beacon/warning light brightness and angularity. The review process requires a minimum of 30 calendar days.

AFADs having acceptable certifications and satisfactory initial field test results will be placed on the Approved List. AFADs that consistently have repeated poor evaluations will be removed from the approved list.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. AFADs will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

729-20 PORTABLE TRAFFIC SIGNALS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for portable traffic signals. Portable traffic signals are defined by FHWA as a Category IV device.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Portable traffic signals shall meet the requirements of the MUTCD. Portable traffic signals shall consist of two self-contained, trailer-mounted traffic signals, each with a vertical signal mast, horizontal mast arm and two - 3 section traffic signal heads. Each traffic signal head shall have 12 inch diameter circular red, yellow and green Light Emitting Diode (LED) modules.

The portable traffic signal system shall be able to function continuously and independent of utility power sources. The signal control console and power supply shall be housed in a locked compartment. The traffic signal controller shall be password protected, capable of providing traffic-actuated control with microwave detector sensors, have a built-in conflict monitor to prevent the display of conflicting indications, shall be hard-wired or radio-controlled to keep the signal indications synchronized, and have adequate phasing to serve expected traffic movements.

Trailers shall display a minimum of 2 inch wide band of reflective sheeting on all four sides of the trailer. Reflective sheeting shall conform to §730-05 Reflective Sheeting ASTM Type III (Class B), ASTM Type VII (Class D) or ASTM Type IX (Class E). The sheeting need not be continuous, but the sum of the length of the segments shall be at least one-half the length of the trailer. Portable traffic signals shall not bear an advertising message(s) or any other message that is not related to traffic control. A nonretroreflective logo or name and telephone number of the contractor or supplier may be located on the portable traffic signal trailer. The logo shall not exceed 1.0 square feet. The name and telephone number shall not exceed 2 inches in height.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have Portable Traffic Signals considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall submit a material certification that the Portable Traffic Signal meets this specification and the requirements of the MUTCD, as well as one portable traffic signal for initial field testing to the Director of the Materials Bureau in Albany for review. Initial field testing will include evaluating the traffic signal system for phasing, clearances, detector operation and layout of the signal faces for brightness and angularity. The review process requires a minimum of 30 calendar days. Portable traffic signals having acceptable certifications and satisfactory initial field test results will be placed on the Approved List.

Portable traffic signals on the Approved List that consistently have poor evaluations will be removed from the Approved List.
BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Portable traffic signals will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List and that it conforms to this specification.

729-21 TEMPORARY OVERLAY MARKERS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and performance requirements for temporary overlay markers.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Temporary overlay markers are flexible polymer “L” shaped road reflectors with an adhesive on its base to adhere to the pavement surface. Temporary overlay markers are approximately 4 inches wide by 2 inches high with at least a 1 inch base. Yellow temporary overlay markers have a yellow reflective sheeting strip a minimum of ¼ inch in height at the top of the vertical section on both sides. White temporary overlay markers have a white reflective strip a minimum of ¼ inch in height at the top of the vertical section on one side only. Reflective sheeting shall conform to §730-05 Reflective Sheeting ASTM Type III (Class B), ASTM Type V (Class C), ASTM Type VII (Class D) or ASTM Type IX (Class E).

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

729-22 TRUCK MOUNTED VARIABLE-MESSAGE SIGNS (TMVMS)

SCOPE. This specification covers the physical and performance requirements for Truck Mounted Variable Message Signs (TMVMS).

GENERAL. TMVMS shall meet the requirements of the MUTCD and the requirements stated herein. All electrical systems in the TMVMS shall be FCC Part 15 compliant and sufficiently shielded to prevent interference with two-way radio system equipment used by the Department.

• Power System. - TMVMS shall be powered by a power source in or on the host vehicle.
• Interior Controller. - The TMVMS controller shall be mounted inside the cab of the vehicle/truck.

DISPLAY. The color of light emitted shall be amber. The message display area shall be a minimum of 60 inches wide and 36 inches high. TMVMS shall be capable of displaying a minimum of two lines of alphanumeric characters.

The TMVMS shall be capable of displaying:
• 8 characters per line
• At least 10” high characters per line, when displaying two lines.

The TMVMS shall be capable of displaying 2 separate panel messages in a cyclical sequence. The display shall be capable of showing a full screen view of standard highway symbols, arrows, chevrons, and 4 corner warning lights.

The TMVMS display of a flashing arrow shall conform to the legibility requirement for Type B Arrow Panels.

TESTING. Manufacturers or material suppliers desiring to have TMVMS considered for inclusion on the Approved List shall follow the NYS DOT Truck Mounted VMS Certification Requirements and submit all necessary documentation to the Director, Materials Bureau in Albany. The Certification Requirements are available on the Materials & Equipment Approved List page of the Department’s website:

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** TMVMS meeting the requirements of this specification and the NYSDOT Truck Mounted VMS Certification Requirements will be placed on the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The TMVMS will be accepted on the basis of the product appearing on the Approved List and a material certification that the product meets this specification and is the same as the one appearing on the Approved List.

**SECTION 730 - SIGNS AND DELINEATORS**
(Last Revised May, 2017)

**730-01 ALUMINUM SIGN PANELS**

**SCOPE.** These specifications cover aluminum sign panels used as the prepared surface backing in the application of reflective sheeting for location markers, delineators and traffic signs.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The panel material shall be either Aluminum Alloy 6061-T6, 5154-H38, 5052-H38 or 3004-H38 and shall conform to the requirements of material specification 715-04, Wrought Aluminum.

**FABRICATION**

**Preparation of Panel Surface for Reflective Sheetin**g. The surface preparation of panels for the application of Reflective Sheetin, 730-05, shall be performed by Method I or Method II, in strict accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer of the reflective sheeting.

**A. Method I**

1. **Cleaning (Vapor or Alkaline cleaning)**
   a. **Vapor Cleaning.** By total immersion of the sheeting or sign panel in a saturated vapor of trichloroethylene or perchloroethylene. Trademark printing shall be removed with lacquer thinner. Follow with a thorough rinse.

   b. **Alkaline Cleaning.** Sheetin shall be immersed in a tank containing alkaline solutions, controlled and titrated to the solution manufacturer's specifications. Immersion time shall depend upon the amount of soil present and the gage of the metal. Follow with a thorough rinse.

   **NOTE:** After cleaning and rinsing and prior to etching, the aluminum sheeting shall be checked with a “Water Break Test” as follows: If the metal is clean, water will completely cover the surface with no breaks. Whenever water breaks, oil is present and the plate shall be re-cleaned until all traces of oil disappear. The surface near the edges shall be examined with extreme care for presence of oil.

2. **Etching (Use Acid or Alkaline Etch)**
   a. **Acid Etch.** Etch in a 6% to 8% phosphoric acid solution at 100°F. Rinse thoroughly with running cold water followed by hot water tank rinse.

   b. **Alkaline Etch.** Etch the pre-cleaned aluminum surface in alkaline etching material that is controlled by titration, use time, temperature and concentration specified by the solution manufacturer. Rinse thoroughly, remove smut with an acidic chromium compound type solution as specified by the solution manufacturer and then thoroughly rinse.
B. Method II

Cleaning and Etching. Use a chemical conversion treatment in accordance with the requirements of Military Specification MIL-C-5541A, Chemical Films and Chemical Film Materials for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloys, or later addenda. Following the etching and rinsing, panels shall be dried by a forced hot air dryer or by immersion for one minute, in circulating hot water at 180°F and allowed to air dry.

Application of Reflective Sheeting. The metal shall not be handled between all cleaning operations and applications of the reflective sheeting except by device or clean canvas gloves.

Immediately prior to the application of the reflective sheeting, the aluminum panel shall be prepared as specified in Method I or Method II. The reflective sheeting shall be adhered to the aluminum panel by the vacuum applicator process or mechanical process in strict accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer of the reflective sheeting.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Aluminum panels may be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer’s certification that his/her product conforms to all of the above specifications. However, the Department reserves the right to conduct tests, upon aluminum panels supplied. When tests are to be made, all test samples without reflective sheeting applied shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau. The number of samples shall comprise approximately one percent of the number of panels. Each sample shall contain a minimum area of 1 square foot for each thickness of panel used. Failure of the samples to meet all the requirements of the above specifications shall be cause for rejection of the aluminum panels represented by such samples.

730-02 TEMPORARY PLYWOOD SIGN PANELS

SCOPE. These specifications cover plywood sign panels used for temporary signs in work zones.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Temporary plywood sign panels shall be fabricated from exterior type plywood with a medium density overlay. Plywood shall be a minimum of 1/2 inch thick. The backs and edges of temporary plywood sign panels shall be painted white.

The surface of temporary plywood sign panels to be overlaid with reflective sheeting shall be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer’s requirements.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

730-03 TEMPORARY RIGID LIGHTWEIGHT SIGN PANELS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for rigid lightweight sign panels used in the fabrication of temporary construction signs no larger than 4 x 4 feet.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Temporary rigid lightweight plastic sign panels shall consist of at least two parallel surfaces of plastic, aluminum or composite separated by plastic foam, filler or stiffeners/spacers; a single piece of plastic extrusion simulating this construction; or other lightweight composites to be overlaid with reflective sheeting. External stiffeners may be used to provide strength or to attach the panel to posts. Sign panels shall not deflect from the flat surface plane more than 1/4 inch at any point. Sign panels shall not warp and flex in a manner that reduces the required sign legibility and/or conspicuity.
If through bolting is used to attach the panel to the stiffeners, or to attach the panel directly to the posts, the bolt heads shall be provided with clear washers to minimize obscuring the legend. The backs of temporary rigid lightweight plastic sign panels shall be a uniform light color or shall be painted white. The surface of temporary rigid lightweight sign panels to be overlaid with reflective sheeting shall be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer’s requirements.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

### 730-04 (VACANT)

### 730-05 REFLECTIVE SHEETING
*(Last Revised May, 2017)*

**SCOPE.** These specifications cover reflective sheeting for use in the fabrication of highway and construction signs, delineators and other traffic control devices.

**GENERAL.** The reflective sheeting supplied shall be colored, flexible, weather resistant, and shall have a smooth outer surface. If the reflective sheeting contains spherical lens elements, the lens elements shall be embedded within a transparent plastic, so as to produce a smooth, flat outer surface. All sheeting shall be of good appearance, free from ragged edges, cracks, scales, blisters, or other defects.

The back of the reflective sheeting shall be protected by a removable liner and shall include a precoated pressure-sensitive or a heat-activated adhesive, either of which may be applied without the necessity of additional adhesive tack coats on the reflective sheeting or application surface.

Reflective sheeting shall be one of the following ASTM D4956 types:

#### 730-05.01 - ASTM Type I (Class A)
A medium-intensity reflective sheeting often referred to as engineer grade. It is recommended for highway signs, except where high reflectivity is required, and for construction barricades, panels, and other work zone devices.

#### 730-05.02 - ASTM Type III (Class B)
A high-intensity reflective sheeting often referred to as high intensity. It is recommended for highway signs, construction signs, delineators, and other work zone devices.

#### 730-05.03 - ASTM Type V (Class C)
A super-high-intensity reflective sheeting recommended for delineators, construction barricades, and vertical panels. This material is not recommended for highway or construction zone sign faces.

#### 730-05.04 - Fluorescent Orange (Class D)
A fluorescent orange-colored sheeting with reflective properties similar to Class B high intensity. This sheeting is only recommended for use on orange-colored construction signs, and for the orange portions of construction barricades, vertical panels, and other work zone devices with rigid substrates, when a high level of conspicuity or visibility is needed.

#### 730-05.05 - ASTM Type IX (Class E)
A very-high-intensity retroreflective sheeting having highest retroreflective characteristics at short road distances. Recommended for permanent signs, delineators, construction zone devices, and vertical panels, when a high level of conspicuity or visibility is needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 730-05-1 FLUORESCENT SHEETING REQUIREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fluorescent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

339
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Reflective sheeting shall meet the requirements of ASTM D4956 and the following:

1. **Fluorescent Colors.** Shall conform to the requirements of Table 730-05-1.

2. **Fluorescent Orange Class D - 730-05.04.** Class D fluorescent orange reflective sheeting:

   A. **Coefficient of Retroreflection (Rₐ).** The coefficient of retroreflection shall meet or exceed the reflectivity requirements indicated in Table 730-05-2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Factor (Y%) Min.</th>
<th>Spectral Radiance Factor (%)</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Y₁ , Yᵣ</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orange</td>
<td>25 15</td>
<td>110.0</td>
<td>0.583</td>
<td>0.416</td>
<td>0.535</td>
<td>0.400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>45 20</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>0.479</td>
<td>0.520</td>
<td>0.446</td>
<td>0.483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow Green</td>
<td>60 20</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>0.387</td>
<td>0.610</td>
<td>0.369</td>
<td>0.546</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: Four pairs of chromaticity coordinates determine acceptable color in terms of the CIE, 1931 Standard Colorimetric System measured with Standard Illuminant D₆₅.

B. **Daytime Color.** The color shall conform to the requirements for luminance factor, maximum spectral radiance factor (peak reflectance), and color specification limits indicated in Table 730-05-1. Color measurements shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E991, using instrumentation which has circumferential viewing (illumination). Calculations shall be performed in accordance with ASTM E308 for the CIE 1931 2° standard observer.

C. **Artificial Weathering.** After 1500 hours of artificial weathering performed in accordance with ASTM G 26, Method A, using a Type B weatherometer, the following requirements shall be met:
   - The minimum coefficient of retroreflection shall be 55.0 cd/fc/ft² at 0.2 degree observation angle; - 4 degree entrance angle.
   - The luminance factor (Y Percent) shall be from 20.0 to 45.0.
   - The maximum spectral radiance factor (peak reflectance) shall not be less than 60.0 percent.
   - The color specification limits shall conform to the requirements shown above in Class D, B. Daytime Color.

3. **Type IX (Class E) - 730-05.05.** All colors shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D4956, except fluorescent colors. Fluorescent colors shall conform to the requirements of Table 730-05-1 and Table 730-05-3 of this specification.
FLUORESCENT ORANGE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entrance Angle (°)</th>
<th>0.1</th>
<th>0.2</th>
<th>0.5</th>
<th>1.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fluorescent Orange</td>
<td>- 4</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+ 30</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorescent Yellow</td>
<td>- 4</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+ 30</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorescent Yellow-Green</td>
<td>- 4</td>
<td>540</td>
<td>325</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+ 30</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FABRICATION. The reflective sheeting shall be so fabricated as to allow easy cutting to specified sizes and shapes.

The sheeting surface shall be solvent resistant and shall permit solvent cleaning. All solvents used for cleaning operations shall be as recommended by the sheeting manufacturer and shall comply with all Federal, State, and Local air quality regulations.

To ensure uniform appearance and brilliance under both nighttime and daytime conditions, the reflective sheeting shall be cut, matched and positioned on the prepared sign panel or other substrate in strict accordance with the recommendations of the sheeting manufacturer. Backgrounds, characters, delineators, etc., shall be coated and/or edge sealed in accordance with the recommendations of the sheeting manufacturer. When performed, coating operations shall be done in a workmanlike manner so as to create an even, clear, uniform coat which shall be free of streaks, drops or other defects which might affect reflectivity.

Reflective sheeting shall be furnished in both rolls and sheets. Rolls shall be packed individually and contain not more than four splices per 150 feet linear measurement. Cut sheets shall be packaged flat and in such a manner as to minimize any damage or defacement that may occur to the sheeting during shipment or storage. The sheeting surface shall be capable of being readily processed and be compatible with recommended transparent and opaque process inks. The finished sheeting surface shall show no loss of the color with normal handling, cutting and application.

TESTING. Outdoor test specimen panels shall include both unprocessed reflective sheeting and reflective sheeting processed with the manufacturer’s recommended transparent and opaque inks. Type I (Class A), Type III (Class B), and Type IX (Class E), except Type IX fluorescent orange, reflective sheetings shall be exposed outdoors on a test deck for a minimum 3-year continuous time period. Class D and Type IX (Class E) fluorescent orange sheeting shall be exposed outdoors on a test deck for a minimum 1 year continuous time period. Outdoor exposure testing will not be required for Type V (Class C) reflective sheeting.

Outdoor testing shall consist of exposing reflective sheeting test specimen panels, facing south, and inclined at an angle of 45° from a horizontal position. The test deck facility shall be located in a climate similar to that in which the material is intended to be used, or at a site approved by the Materials Bureau. Testing shall be performed by an independent testing agency or in conjunction with the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP).

Following the specified outdoor exposure time period, all weathered test panels of reflective sheeting shall meet the following performance requirements. The sheeting on the test panels shall show no appreciable adhesion loss, cracking, blistering, crazing, dimensional change, or color change. The minimum percent retained coefficient of retroreflection ($R_a$) shall be as specified below when compared to a control unexposed specimen counterpart. The control specimen reflectivity values ($R_a$) shall be measured at the start of outdoor exposure testing. Measurements shall be taken at 0.2 degree observation angle; - 4 degree entrance angle.

| Type I (Class A) Materials Designation 730-05.01 | 50% |
| Type III (Class B) Materials Designation 730-05.02 | 80% |
Class D (Materials Designation 730-05.04) | 50%
---|---
Type IX (Class E) Materials Designation 730-05.05 | 60%

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Approvals will be based upon independent laboratory analysis and outdoor exposure testing conducted in accordance with this specification. If the reflective sheeting passes the requirements for laboratory and outdoor exposure testing, the product will then be placed on the Department’s “Approved List” of materials. Detailed requirements and procedures for approval are available from the Materials Bureau.

Contract acceptance of Type I (Class A), Type III (Class B), Type IX (Class E), and Class D reflective sheetings will be based on the inclusion of the sheeting material on the Department’s “Approved List” of reflective sheeting materials and the manufacturer’s certification of compliance with this specification.

Contract acceptance of Type V (Class C) reflective sheeting will be based on the manufacturer’s certification of compliance with this specification.

**730-06 THRU 730-08 (VACANT)**

**730-09 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**730-10 ACRYLIC PLASTIC REFLEX REFLECTORS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers acrylic plastic prismatic reflectors for delineators.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

**Delineator Reflector Lens.** Delineator reflectors shall consist of a clear and transparent acrylic plastic face, herein referred to as the lens, with a heat plastic or plastic coated foil back fused to the lens under heat and pressure around the entire perimeter of the lens, and the central mounting hole, to form a unit permanently sealed against dust, water, and water vapor. The lens shall consist of a smooth front surface, free from projections or indentation, other than a central mounting hole and identification, with a rear surface bearing a prismatic configuration such that it will effect total internal reflection of light. The manufacturer's trademark shall be molded legibly into the reflector.

**Definitions and Optical Requirements**

**A. Entrance Angle.** Shall mean the angle at the reflector between the direction of light incident on it and the direction of reflector axis.

**B. Observation Angle.** Shall mean the angle at the reflector between observers line of sight and direction of light incident on the reflector.

**C. Specific Intensity.** Shall mean luminous intensity (candelas) returned at the chosen observation angle by a reflector for each footcandle of illumination at the reflector.

**Optical Test Procedure.** The reflex reflector to be tested shall be located at a distance of 100 feet from a single uniformly bright light source having an effective diameter of 2 inches the light source shall be operated at approximately normal efficiency. The return light from the reflector shall be measured by means of a photo-electric photometer having a minimum sensitivity of 1 x 10^-7 footcandles per scale division.
The photometer shall have a receiver aperture 1/2 inch diameter shielded to eliminate stray light. The distance from light source center to aperture center shall be 2 inches for 1/10 degree observation angle, and 7 inches for a degree observation angle.

If a test distance other than 100 feet is used, the source and aperture dimensions and the distance between source and aperture shall be modified accordingly.

**Seal Test.** Submerge 50 samples in water bath at room temperature. Subject the submerged samples to a vacuum of 5 inch gage for five minutes. Restore atmospheric pressure and leave sample submerged for five minutes, then examine the samples for water intake. Evidence of moisture or water intake on more than two (2) samples shall be cause for rejection of the lot represented by the samples.

**Heat Resistance.** Three reflectors shall be tested for four hours in a circulating air oven at 175 ± 5°F. The test specimens shall be placed in a horizontal position on a grid or perforated shell permitting free air circulation. At the conclusion of the test the samples shall be removed from the oven and permitted to cool to room temperature. The samples after exposure to heat shall show no significant change in shape and general appearance when compared with unexposed control standards. No failures will be permitted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Observation Angle Degrees</th>
<th>Entrance Angle Degrees</th>
<th>Specific Intensity, Candela/footcandle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Crystal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/10</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/10</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** Failure of reflectors to equal or exceed the minimum specific intensity value shall constitute failure of the reflector being tested; failure of more than 2 reflectors out of 50 begin subjected to test shall constitute failure to the lot represented by the samples. The specific intensity of delineator reflectors shall meet the above noted values, regardless of reflector orientation.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acrylic plastic reflex reflectors will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's certification that their product conforms to all of the above detailed specifications. However, when the Department requires that tests be made, samples shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau. Fifty-three (53) samples will be selected at random from each shipment received from the reflector manufacturer. Each shipment may contain more than one lot. These samples shall be tested as specified above. Failure of the samples to meet all the requirements of the above specifications shall be cause for rejection of delineators represented by such samples.

**730-11 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**730-12 REFLECTORIZED SHEETING SIGN CHARACTERS (TYPE IV)**

**SCOPE.** These specifications cover the material requirements for Type IV reflectorized sheeting sign characters.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Type IV characters shall consist of cutout reflective sheeting material meeting the requirements of 730-05 Reflective Sheeting, Materials Designation 730-05.02 (Class B).

Characters or borders shall be applied directly to clean, dust-free reflective sheeting background panels. Characters or borders shall be applied mechanically with equipment and in a manner specified by the sheeting manufacturer. Borders shall be cut neatly and butt-joined at corners and panel joints.
TESTING. The Department reserves the right to conduct tests on samples taken by a representative of the Department as follows: 2% or a minimum of five (5) characters (whichever is the greater) for each size character used; and 2% or a minimum of 2 ft of border (whichever is greater) for each width of border used.

When performed, tests will be conducted in accordance with §730-05 Reflective Sheeting.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Type IV characters will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

730-13 REFLECTORIZED SHEETING SIGN CHARACTERS (TYPE V)

SCOPE. These specifications cover the material requirements for Type V reflectorized sheeting sign characters.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Type V characters shall consist of a painted, screened, or reverse-screened application of paint, paste, or transparent color of a type and in a manner recommended by the manufacturer of the reflective material.

Reflective material used for reverse-screened signs shall meet the requirements of §730-05 Reflective Sheeting, Materials Designation 730-05.02 (Class B).

TESTING. The Department reserves the right to conduct tests on samples taken by a representative of the Department as follows: 2% or a minimum of five (5) characters (whichever is the greater) for each size character used; and 2% or a minimum of 2 ft of border (whichever is greater) for each width of border used.

When performed, tests will be conducted in accordance with §730-05 Reflective Sheeting.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Type V characters will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

730-14 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

730-15 THRU 730-18 (VACANT)

730-19 TEMPORARY WOODEN SIGN POSTS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for temporary wooden sign posts.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Wooden sign posts shall be untreated surface dried redwood, red cedar, cypress or black locust; or pressure treated spruce, pine, fir, oak, birch, maple or beech. Posts shall be pressure treated in accordance with 708-31 Wood Preservative - Water Borne.

All 4 x 6 inch posts shall have two 1 1/2 inch diameter breakaway holes drilled through the center of the post parallel to the sign face 4 inches and 18 inches above grade and filled with flexible caulk. All 6 x 8 inch posts shall have two 3 inch diameter breakaway holes drilled through the center of the post parallel to the sign face 4 inches and 18 inches above grade and filled with flexible caulk.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

730-20 DELINEATOR, REFERENCE MARKER AND SNOWPLOWING MARKER POSTS
**SCOPE.** These specifications cover the material requirements for steel posts used to support delineators, reference markers, and snowplowing markers.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**

Posts shall be fabricated of steel meeting the requirements of §715-01 Structural Steel or any of the following steel types:

- ASTM A1
- ASTM A36
- ASTM A499 (Grade 60, Grade 70, Grade 80SP)
- ASTM A500 (Grade B)
- ASTM A570 (Grade 60)
- ASTM A653 (Grade 55)
- ASTM A1011

After fabrication (punching, drilling, etc.) all steel posts shall be galvanized, and all damage to the galvanized surfaces due to handling, shipment, erection, etc., shall be repaired, in accordance with the applicable requirements of §719-01 Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Posts will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

**730-21 FLEXIBLE DELINEATOR POSTS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material, fabrication, and performance requirements for flexible delineator posts.

**MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS.** Flexible delineator posts shall be supplied with reflective sheeting of a size and color as required by the contract documents. The color of the posts shall match the color of the reflective sheeting unless otherwise specified in the contract documents. Where double unit reflectors are specified, elongated reflective sheeting may be substituted as in accordance with the MUTCD.

Reflective sheeting shall be fabricated of a material conforming to the requirements of §730-05 Reflective Sheeting, Class B, Class C, or Class E. Sheeting shall be applied in accordance with the sheeting manufacturer’s written instructions.

**TESTING.** Flexible delineator posts shall meet the requirements in the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Application for approval of flexible delineator posts shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau. The procedural directives outlining detailed requirements and procedures for approval are available from the Materials Bureau. Upon approval the name of the flexible delineator post will be placed on an Approved List.

Project acceptance will be based on the manufacturer's name and type of flexible delineator post appearing on the Department's Approved List titled Flexible Delineator Posts.

**730-22 STIFFENERS, OVERHEAD BRACKETS AND MISCELLANEOUS HARDWARE**

*Last Revised May, 2019*

**SCOPE.** These specifications cover the material requirements for stiffeners, overhead brackets and miscellaneous hardware used for signs.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**
**Aluminum Components.** Horizontal sign panel stiffeners (Z bars) and overhead panel brackets shall be fabricated of aluminum alloy 6061-T6.

Other miscellaneous hardware including vertical stiffeners, bolts, nuts, washers, screws, rivets, pull-type lockbolts and serrated or knob stem blind rivets shall be fabricated of the materials and in the manner shown on the plans or standard sheets and shall meet the requirements of 715-04, Wrought Aluminum.

Components designated as Alloy 2024-T4 shall be given a Type 205 coating in accordance with 719-02, Aluminum Anodic Coatings.

Certification, Sampling, Testing and Inspection of aluminum components shall be handled as noted in 715-04.

**Steel Components.** Steel bolts, nuts and washers referenced to this specification shall conform to the requirements of Table 730-22-1 unless otherwise specified.

Bolts, nuts and washers to be used in contact with aluminum shall be coated with cadmium or cadmium/tin combination.

All cadmium and cadmium/tin coatings shall be given a chromate treatment in or with an aqueous solution of salts, acids or both to produce a protective chromate coating. The chromate coating shall be distinctly colored iridescent yellow to bronze for cadmium. Cadmium/tin coatings, when given this iridescent chromate treatment, may remain silver colored. Usual chromic and nitric acid bright dips are not chromate treatments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 730-22-1 STEEL FASTENERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bolt ()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A325 or A449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A354 Grade BD or A490 Type 1 or 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTES:**
1. Class of nut (5,9,10 and 12):
   - H1 ANSI B18.2.4.1M hex nut, style 1
   - H2 ANSI B18.2.4.2M hex nut, style 2
   - HH ANSI B18.2.4.6M heavy hex nut
2. P > 7/16”:
   - ASTM B695, class 50, type 1
   - ASTM B695, class 40, type 1, cadmium coating
     - ASTM B696, class 8, type 2
     - ASTM B766, class 12, type 2, cadmium/tin coating
     - ASTM B635, class 8, type 2
   - Z > 7/16”:
     - ASTM A153, class C
     - ASTM A153, class D
3. ANSI B18.16.1M

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance will be based on the manufacturer’s certification that its product conforms to these specifications.
730-23 FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC SIGN PANELS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for fiberglass reinforced plastic for use as a sign panel substrate.

GENERAL. The fiberglass reinforced plastic sign panel shall be fiberglass reinforced thermoset polyester laminate. The panel shall be acrylic modified and UV stabilized for outdoor weatherability. The panel shall be stabilized so as not to release migrating constituents (i.e., solvents, monomers, etc.) over time, and shall contain no residual release agents on the surface of the laminate that will interfere with any subsequent bonding operations. The panel shall not contain visible cracks, pinholes, foreign inclusions, or surface wrinkles that would affect implied performance, alter the specific dimensions of the panel or otherwise affect its serviceability.

MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS

Physical Requirements. The fiberglass reinforced plastic sign panel materials shall conform to the physical requirements in Table 730-23-1:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>ASTM Test Method</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Strength</td>
<td>D638</td>
<td>10.0x10^3 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Modulus</td>
<td>D638</td>
<td>1.2x10^6 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexural Strength</td>
<td>D790</td>
<td>20.0x10^3 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexural Modulus</td>
<td>D790</td>
<td>1.2x10^6 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression Strength</td>
<td>D695</td>
<td>32.0x10^3 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression Modulus</td>
<td>D695</td>
<td>1.4x10^6 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punch Shear</td>
<td>D732</td>
<td>13.0x10^3 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weatherability C Grade II</td>
<td>D3841</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact Resistance</td>
<td>D3841</td>
<td>60 ft</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Panel Flatness Test. Panel flatness shall be determined by supporting a 30 x 30 inch panel at two opposite corners, the maximum deflection measured diagonally, parallel and perpendicular to the panel by lines drawn through the center of the panel, shall not exceed 1/2 inch. The panel shall then be supported in a like manner in an oven for 48 hours at 180°F. The maximum deflection shall again be measured as previously noted, and shall not exceed 1/2 inch. All measurements shall be made when the panels are at ambient temperature.

The fiberglass reinforced plastic panel shall have a maximum Coefficient of Thermal Expansion of 1.8x10^-5 in/in°F and maintain its strength and impact resistance qualities over a temperature range of -65°F to 212°F.

Application of Reflective Sheeting. The reflective sheeting shall be adhered to the fiberglass reinforced plastic panel in strict accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer of the reflective sheeting.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Application for approval of fiberglass reinforced plastic sign panel by the producer shall be submitted to the Materials Bureau accompanied by a 80 square feet sample of the product. Upon approval by the Materials Bureau, the name of the product will be placed on the Department's Approved List entitled AFiberglass Reinforced Plastic Sign Panels 730-23.
730-24 TYPE A SIGN SUPPORTS

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for breakaway supports used for roadside signs.

**MATERIAL, FABRICATION AND PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS.** Post material, fabrication and performance requirements shall be in accordance with the standard sheets, the appropriate Materials Details and the procedural directives of the Materials Bureau.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Type A Sign Supports shown on the standard sheets shall be accepted based on the manufacturer's certification that its product conforms to these specifications and the appropriate standard sheets.

All other Type A Sign Supports will be accepted on the basis of their listing on the Department's Approved List of Type A Sign Supports. In addition, the manufacturer or supplier shall provide two copies of the approved Materials Details through the Contractor to the Engineer as part of the evidence of acceptability for the material at least ten days prior to the use of the product.

730-25 TYPE B SIGN POSTS

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for Type B Sign Posts and Rustic Type B Sign Posts. These sign posts shall be equipped with breakaway bases and hinge assemblies per 730-26, Breakaway Bases and Hinge Assemblies, if installed at a location subject to vehicle impact.

**MATERIALS AND FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS**

**Steel Sign Posts.** Steel for sign posts and attachments to or components of sign posts shall be ASTM A36, A242, A572 Grade 50 and A588 and shall conform to 715-01 Structural Steel. Rustic Type B Sign Posts shall be ungalvanized weathering steel, ASTM A588 or A242, meeting the requirements of 715-01 Structural Steel.

Sign posts, except Rustic Type B Sign Posts, shall be galvanized after fabrication (punching, drilling, welding, cutting, etc.) in accordance with 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods. Damage to galvanized surfaces of steel posts due to handling, shipment, erection, etc. shall be repaired as described in Repair of 719-01, when directed by the Engineer.

Sign posts with breakaway bases shall be of weldable quality, and all welding shall be in accordance with the provisions of the section on 'Fabrication' of the New York State Steel Construction Manual.

**FABRICATION.** Sign posts shall be fabricated as indicated on the standard sheets. Breakaway bases shall conform to the requirements of 730-26, Breakaway Bases and Hinge Assemblies.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Acceptance shall be based on the manufacturer's certification that the product conforms to these specifications.

730-26 BREAKAWAY BASES AND HINGE ASSEMBLIES

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for bi-directional and omni-directional breakaway bases and hinge assemblies for use on Type B Sign Posts and for use on Rustic Type B Sign Posts.

Bi-Directional Breakaway Bases and Hinge Assemblies are intended for use when the expected impact angle is within 30 degrees of the axis of the base from the front and rear.

Omni-Directional Breakaway Bases and Hinge Assemblies are intended for use whenever the expected impact angle may be greater than 30 degrees, measured as described above.
MATERIAL AND FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS. Breakaway bases and hinge assemblies shown on standard sheets shall satisfy the following requirements:

Steel for breakaway bases and hinge assemblies shall be A-36, A242, A572 Grade 50, A588 and shall meet the requirements of 715-01, Structural Steel. Steel shall be of weldable quality. Fasteners shall be of the size and shape shown on the Standard Sheets and meet the requirements of 730-22, Stiffeners, Overhead Brackets and Miscellaneous Hardware. Breakaway bases and hinge assemblies shall be galvanized in accordance with 719-01, Galvanized Coatings and Repair Methods, after the base is welded to the post. Welding shall be in accordance with the provisions of the section on 'Fabrication' of the 'New York State Steel Construction Manual.' Fabrication details shall be in accordance with the standard sheets.

Breakaway bases and hinge assemblies for use in conjunction with rustic sign posts shall meet the above requirements with the following exceptions:

- The upper slip base plate and attached post shall be ungalvanized weathering steel, ASTM A588 or A242, meeting the requirements of 715-01, Structural Steel. The lower slip base plate, and the attached stub portion of the post, shall be galvanized steel. The remainder of the slip base shall be as shown on the contract drawings.
- When used on one-way, divided roadways, the back flange hinge plate shall be ungalvanized A588 or A242 steel installed as shown on the contract drawings. When used on two-way, undivided roadways, the back flange hinge plate shall meet the requirements, below, of the front flange hinge plate.
- The front flange hinge plate shall be galvanized steel, except that an additional galvanized steel flat washer meeting the requirements of ASTM F436 shall be installed on all four bolts between the post and the hinge plate to assure proper slippage.

All exposed galvanized surfaces, except in the vicinity of the slots in the hinge plates, shall be painted in accordance with §657 Painting Galvanized and Aluminum Surfaces.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Breakaway bases and hinge assemblies fabricated as shown on the standard sheets shall be accepted based on the manufacturer's certification that the complete assembly conforms to these specifications.

730-27 PERMANENT VARIABLE MESSAGE SIGNS

SCOPE. This specification gives minimum material, fabrication, fatigue and strength requirements of variable message signs for permanent installation. Other requirements are in the Contract Documents.

Within this specification, "overhead" shall mean to be mounted over the traveled way, or what the plans indicate will become the traveled way.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Housing. The enclosure housing shall be constructed of aluminum alloy 3003-H14, 6061-T6, 5154-H38 or as specified on approved shop drawings. The minimum thickness shall be 1/8 inch. Seams shall be continuously welded by an inert gas process only in the shop.

The housing shall be completely sealed to prevent the entry of water, insects, dust, dirt and corrosion. Neoprene gaskets shall be utilized as necessary.

Readily-available, changeable filtration devices shall be provided at drain holes and at all points where forced air enters the enclosure.
All hinged access panels and windows shall be equipped with hold-open devices which shall not release accidentally or by the action of wind. The hold-open devices shall not interfere with the operation of the display, nor with the repair or replacement of user serviceable components.

**Stiffeners, Hardware and Mounting Brackets.** Hardware, framing members and mounting brackets shall meet the requirements of 730-22, unless indicated otherwise on the manufacturer's shop drawings approved by the Engineer. Framing structural members shall be made of aluminum alloy 6061-T6 or an approved equivalent. All hardware shall be corrosion-resistant steel or protected from corrosion by suitable plating. Fasteners for securing access panels shall be captive.

**MANUFACTURING**

**General.** Fabrication shall be such that performance will not be impaired after the equipment has been subjected to shock and vibration caused by normal installation, transportation and maintenance handling. Particular attention shall be given to neatness and thoroughness of soldering, wiring, welding, plating, riveting, finishes and machine operations. All parts shall be free from burrs and sharp edges or any other defect that could make the part or equipment unsatisfactory for the operation or function intended in this specification.

Modules shall be designed such that major portions may easily be replaced. Modules of unlike functions shall be mechanically keyed to prevent insertion into the wrong socket or connector. All modules and assemblies shall be clearly identified with name, model number, serial number and any other pertinent information required to facilitate equipment maintenance. They shall be readily accessible for inspection and maintenance, using simple hand-held tools and standard meters.

**Housing.** The sign enclosure including doors and access panels shall be designed and constructed so as to present a clean, neat appearance; be smooth with exterior corners rounded; be weatherproof and vandal-resistant; and be free of burrs, blemishes and unspecified holes.

Drainage holes shall be drilled near each corner of the base of the enclosure.

The enclosure shall have internal lighting sufficient for all maintenance activity requirements of the VMS and 120 volt power receptacles every 10 feet mounted on the rear interior panels.

If the variable message sign is designated as "walk-in," then its access door shall be a minimum of 24 inches wide x 60 inches high.

**Environmental**

**A. Temperature.** Internal temperature shall be continuously monitored whenever electric power is applied to the sign. The internal temperature of the enclosure shall be reported to the local and central controller upon request. Ventilation shall be automatically turned on and off at internal temperatures specified in the Proposal. Exhaust and intake ports shall be protected by filter screens against moisture, dust and insect intrusion. The ventilation system shall be sufficient to circulate three times the volume of air inside the enclosure per minute. Multiple fans or blowers shall be used to provide the specified venting and shall be located within the enclosure to minimize heat stratification.

**B. Adverse Conditions.** The equipment shall meet all of its specified functions during and after subjection to any combination of the following conditions:

1. **Ambient Temperature.** Range of -22°F to +145°F.

2. **Temperature Shock.** 60°F per hour, during which the relative humidity shall not exceed 95%.
3. **Relative Humidity Range.** 0 to 95% over the temperature range of 40°F to 110°F.

4. **Moisture Condensation.** On all surfaces.

**C. Ambient Light.** The variable message sign shall be equipped with light sensors so that the display shall be able to automatically adapt its level of light output to maintain readability under varying ambient light conditions. There shall be a minimum of eight (8) levels of dimming, linearly spaced from nighttime to daylight brightness. The sign's automatic dimming control shall be overridable by central control. The dimming circuitry shall automatically compensate for variations in the AC line voltage to maintain the light output constant for the selected brightness level.

The levels of lighting shall produce luminance measured on the optic axis, as follows:

1. **Daylight.** A minimum of 14 candela per pixule for typical daylight environment.

2. **Nighttime.** Between 1.5 and 2 candela per pixule for nighttime environment.

**Electrical Protection.** The equipment shall contain readily-accessible, normally resettable or replaceable circuit protection devices (such as circuit breakers or fuses) for equipment and power source protection.

**Electronic Components.** All components shall be UL listed. All printed circuit boards shall be FR4 or G10 fiberglass epoxy material, with 2 oz. copper, double-sided with plated through-holes.

All etched connector fingers are to be plated with a minimum thickness of 100 micro-inches of gold over nickel.

Board connectors that are not an integral part of the printed circuit are to be plated with a minimum thickness of 15 micro-inches of gold over nickel.

**Sign Face.** In order to increase contrast, the pixules shall be arranged on a black, non-glossy background. All electronic components visible from outside the sign shall be of black color or coated with black, non-glossy paint.

The front of the sign shall be enclosed by a protective, weathertight face, 1/4 inch thick.

Variable spacing between letters shall approximate the recommended spacing for 18 inch Series E sign text found in the Federal Highway Administration Standard Alphabets for Highway Signs.

**DESIGN CRITERIA.** Design loads used in the design of the connection and mounting elements of the sign enclosure shall be as specified in the most current AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals.

**SUBMITTALS.** When details of the connection of the Permanent Variable Message Sign to the sign structure are not included in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall submit shop drawings to the DCES for approval, detailing how to mount and connect the variable message sign enclosure to the structure. Shop Drawings shall be submitted in accordance with the SCM. Shop Drawings may be submitted electronically to dces.metals@dot.ny.gov. If the shop drawings are approved by the Department, the contractor will be notified by electronic mail.

**DELIVERY AND INSTALLATION**

The contractor shall deliver, store, handle, and install all materials and equipment in such a manner as not to degrade quality, serviceability or appearance. Material to be stored shall be stored in a clean and dry location free from construction dust, precipitation, and condensing moisture. Any part of the equipment damaged during transportation, handling, or installation shall be repaired, or if determined by the Engineer as unfit for use in the finished work, shall be removed from the site and replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost.
All materials shall be delivered and stored in the manufacturer's original unopened protective packages and protected against soiling, physical damage, or wetting, before and during installation. Unloading and unpacking of all materials shall be done in a manner to prevent misalignment or damage.

The installation shall be performed by factory certified personnel. Installation shall be complete in all respects, including all framing and all related fastenings and anchors required for a complete installation. Equipment shall be placed in accordance with the general arrangement as shown on the Drawings. The general arrangement may be modified only as required to suit specific equipment. Modifications shall not affect the design of components. Layout dimensions as shown on the Drawings may be modified to improve operating efficiency.

**MARKING.** The contract number, pay-item number, and month and year of installation shall be marked using permanent ink, paint, or stampping into the wall. Characters shall be 1 to 1 3/4 inches high, horizontal when the variable message sign is in its final position, and be located in the following locations:

- The end panel of the vms, so as to be visible from the shoulder closest to the variable message sign.
- On the inside of a "walk-in" variable message sign, near the middle of the panel opposite the door.

Also, the manufacturer's name, product name, model number, serial number, and city and state or province of manufacture shall be permanently marked on the outside and an easily accessible location inside the variable message sign.

These markings shall not be visible when viewing the front of the variable message sign straight-on.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Permanent Variable Message Signs will be accepted on the following basis:

- Submission and approval of shop drawings for each different variable message sign supplied.
- Submission and approval of shop drawings, including mounting details of Permanent Variable Message Sign to sign structure.
- Manufacturer’s certificate of compliance to these specifications including compliance to the most current AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals.
- If required by the contract documents, submission of mill certifications for structural elements.
- Passing all performance tests as specified in the contract documents.

Final inspection and acceptance of equipment shall be made after installation at the locations specified in the contract documents.

**730-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE**

**SECTION 731 - SUBSURFACE TENSILE ELEMENTS**

**731-01 SOIL NAIL TENDON ASSEMBLY**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for the components for assembling a soil nail tendon generally used in a Soil Nail Wall System (SNWS) to internally stabilize a cut and/or underpin a structure.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**
A. SNWS Temporary. Provide materials meeting the following requirements:

1. **SNWS Nail Tendons.** Provide clean, straight, rust-free tendons meeting the following:

   a. **Solid Bar Soil Nail (SBSN).** Provide solid bar tendons meeting AASHTO M31 of Grade 60 or 75, ASTM A722 for Grade 150. The deformed bar, continuous without splices or welds, undamaged, bare or epoxy coated or encapsulated (as shown on the approved Working Drawings), shall be threaded a minimum of 6 in. on the wall anchorage end to allow proper attachment of bearing plate and nut. Threading may be continuous spiral, deformed ribbing provided by the bar deformations (continuous threadbars) or may be cut into a reinforcing bar. If threads are cut into a reinforcing bar, the bar shall be sized based on the net throat of the threads. Hollow bars are not allowed.

2. **SNWS Centralizers.** Provide centralizers manufactured from Schedule 80 PVC pipe or tube, steel, or any material not detrimental to the nail steel, except that wood shall not be used, and approved by the Engineer.

3. **SNWS Bar Couplers.** Provide bar couplers capable of developing 100% of the Guaranteed Ultimate Tensile Strength (GUTS) of the bar as certified by the manufacturer.

B. SNWS Permanent. Provide materials meeting the requirements §731-01 A. SNWS Temporary with the following additions and exceptions

1. **SNWS Nail Tendon Double Corrosion Protection.** In addition to covering the bar with grout, provide an additional level of corrosion protection consisting of:

   a. **Epoxy Coating.** Provide epoxy coating conforming to the requirements of §709-04 Epoxy-Coated Bar Reinforcement. The Bend Test requirements are waived, or

   b. **Encapsulation.** Provide a minimum 40 mil thick corrugated HDPE tube conforming to AASHTO M252 or corrugated PVC tube conforming to ASTM D1784, Class 13464-B. Encapsulation shall provide at least 3/16 in. of grout cover over the nail bar and be resistant to ultraviolet light degradation, normal handling stresses, and grouting pressures. Factory fabrication of the encapsulation is preferred. Upon the Engineer’s approval, the encapsulation may be field fabricated if done in strict accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Soil Nail Tendons will be approved based on the evaluation of the design submittal detailing the requirements of the assembly.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Soil nail centralizers, epoxy coating or encapsulation will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that the product conforms to this specification. Solid bar nail tendons and bar couplers (if allowed) will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that the product conforms to this specification and certified mill test results from each heat specifying the ultimate strength, yield strength, elongation, and composition indicating conformance to the design submittal and specification.
731-02 GROUTED TIEBACK ASSEMBLY

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for the components for assembling a grouted tieback generally used in a Grouted Tieback System (GTS) to internally stabilize and supplement the resisting force of an external support system retaining a cut and/or underpinning a structure.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. GTS Temporary. Provide materials meeting the following requirements:

1. GTS Tendons. Provide clean, straight, rust-free tendons meeting the following:

   a. Wire Tendons. "Uncoated Seven-Wire Stress Relieved Strand for Prestressed Concrete" - ASTM A416, or "Uncoated Seven-Wire Compacted Stress Relieved Strand for Prestressed Concrete" - ASTM A779, or

   b. Solid Bar. Continuously threaded "Uncoated High-Strength Steel Bar for Prestressing Concrete" - ASTM A722. Hollow bars are not allowed.

The GTS tendons shall be of such size that the design load does not exceed 53% of the Guaranteed Ultimate Tensile Strength (GUTS) of the tendons.

2. GTS Couplers. Provide couplers for tendons capable of developing 100% of the GUTS.

3. GTS Sheath. Provide a sheath for corrosion protection encasing the entire stressing length of the tendon. Acceptable sheaths for the stressing length shall be one of the following:

   a. A polyethylene (PE) tube applied over a corrosion inhibiting grease coated strand. The polyethylene shall be Type II, III or IV as defined by ASTM D1248. The tubing shall have a minimum wall thickness of 60 mils.

   b. A hot-melt extruded polypropylene tube applied over a corrosion inhibiting grease coated strand. The polypropylene shall PP 210 B55542-11 as defined in ASTM D4101. The tubing shall have a minimum wall thickness of 60 mils.

   c. A corrugated PVC tube applied over a corrosion inhibiting grease coated strand. The PVC tube shall conform to ASTM D1784 Class 13464-B. The tubing shall have a minimum wall thickness of 60 mils.

   d. A heat shrinkable tube coated with an elastic adhesive applied over bar tendons. Prior to shrinking the tube shall have a nominal wall thickness of at least 24 mils and the elastic adhesive inside the tube shall have a nominal thickness of 20 mils. A smooth bond breaker shall be placed around the heat shrinkable tube in the free length.

4. GTS Grease. Provide a grease compound for corrosion inhibiting and lubricating properties to completely cover the steel in the stressing length. Provide grease for the stressing length meeting the requirements shown in Table 731-02-1 Grease Properties:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Test Method</th>
<th>Acceptance Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dropping Point</td>
<td>ASTM D566</td>
<td>Minimum 300° F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil Separation @ 160° F</td>
<td>FTMS 791B Method 321.2</td>
<td>0.5% Maximum by mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Content</td>
<td>ASTM D95</td>
<td>0.1% Maximum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. **GTS Centralizers and Spacers**. Provide centralizers and spacers consisting of plastic, steel or any material not detrimental to the tendon. Wood shall not be used. Centralizers and spacers shall permit free flow of grout. Combination centralizer/spacers will be permitted.

6. **GTS Trumpet**. Provide a trumpet integral with the bearing plate. The trumpet shall consist of an epoxy coated steel pipe or tube conforming to the requirements of ASTM A53 for pipe or ASTM A500 for tubing. The trumpet shall have an inside diameter equal to or larger than the hole in the bearing plate, and shall be long enough to accommodate movements of the structure during loading and testing. For encapsulated strand tendons, the trumpet shall be long enough to enable the tendon to make a transition from the diameter of the tendon in the stressing length to the diameter of the tendon at the anchor head without damaging the encapsulation. A seal to retain grease or grout within the trumpet shall be provided between the trumpet and the stressing length corrosion protection. If grout is used to fill the trumpet, then the seal shall be a deformable seal. If grease is used to fill the trumpet, a description of the seal shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval.

**B. GTS Permanent**. Provide materials meeting the requirements §731-02 A. **GTS Temporary** with the following additions and exceptions

1. **GTS Encapsulation**. Provide an additional level of corrosion protection for the GTS Tendon consisting of:
   
   a. **Encapsulation**. Provide encapsulation consisting of a tube of corrugated PVC, high density polyethylene or steel. The encapsulation shall have sufficient thickness to resist damage due to shipping, handling and installation.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL**. Grouted Tiebacks will be approved based on the evaluation of the design submittal detailing the requirements of the assembly.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE**. Grouted Tieback Assembly will be accepted on the basis of a Material Certification for the grouted tieback centralizers and spacers, encapsulation, sheath, trumpet, and grease compound.

Grouted tieback tendons and couplers (if allowed) will be accepted on the basis of a material certification and certified mill test results from each heat specifying the ultimate strength, yield strength, elongation, and composition indicating conformance to the design submittal and this specification.
731-03 ROCK BOLT ASSEMBLY
(Last Revised May 2019)

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for the components for assembling a rock bolt generally used in reinforcing a rock slope or as part of a rock catchment system. The following materials are evaluated in this specification:

731.0301 – Resin Rock Bolt Assembly, 1 in. Diameter Steel Bar
731.0302 – Resin Rock Bolt Assembly, 1 ¼ in. Diameter Steel Bar
731.0303 – Resin
731.0304 – Cement Grouted Rock Bolt Assembly, 1 ¼ in. Diameter Steel Bar

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. Bolts. Provide bolts of at least Grade 150 (ASTM A722) prestressing steel of the diameter shown in the contract documents. Bolts must have rolled thread-like deformations over the entire length.

B. Appurtenances. Provide appurtenances as recommended by the bolt manufacturer for the size and grade bolt supplied, consisting of a steel bearing plate, a hardened washer, if required, and a convex bottom anchor nut. Two beveled or wedge washers per bolt may be required. The upper, or bearing washer, shall be countersunk on the side opposite the bevel to match the bottom of the anchor nut. For cement grouted rock bolts, furnish trumpets (for single stage grouting), schedule 40 PVC sleeve, grease/wax gel corrosion protection, centralizers, grout tubes, grout sealers, and anchor head protection as recommended by the bolt manufacturer.

C. Resin. Provide resin of the two-component type, and of two different setting times, specifically manufactured for rock bolting. Use only resin that is within the unexpired shelf life designated on the package by the manufacturer.

  Provide cartridges of the appropriate diameter as recommended by the manufacturer for the bolt/drill hole/cartridge diameter combination used. Furnish sufficient fast setting resin to fill 3 ft. of annular space in the bottom of the hole. Greater amounts of fast setting resin will be necessary in some rock types to meet the pull test requirements. Furnish slower setting resin with a setting time of no less than fifteen minutes. Install enough slow setting resin in the remainder of the hole to fully encapsulate the bolt.

D. Grout. Provide grout consisting of concrete grouting material conforming to the requirements of §701-05 Concrete Grouting and Anchoring Material.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Rock bolts and appurtenances will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that the product conforms to this specification and certified mill test results from each heat specifying the ultimate strength, yield strength, elongation, and composition indicating conformance to the specification. Larger diameter bolts are acceptable if supplied at no additional cost to the State.

Rock bolt resin will be accepted on the basis of a material certification that the product conforms to this specification.

Rock bolt cement grout will be accepted in accordance with the requirements of §701-05 Concrete Grouting and Anchoring Material.

731-15 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

SECTION 732 - DRILLING
732-01 DRILL RIGS

SCOPE. This specification covers the equipment and performance requirements for drill rigs.

GENERAL. Drill rigs shall be specifically designed and manufactured for drilling, coring and sampling soil and rock.

EQUIPMENT. Drill rigs shall have adequate capacity and power to accomplish the required work. Each rig shall be supplemented with the necessary auxiliaries, appurtenances, tools and other equipment required for proper operation.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The rigs and all necessary auxiliaries, appurtenances, tools, barges, platforms, support vessels and equipment shall be acceptable to the Engineer. Drill rigs that are not adequate, as determined by the Engineer, will not be permitted for use. Drill rigs required under the items for furnishing equipment including drive hammers, all necessary auxiliaries, appurtenances, tools, barges, platforms, support vessels and other equipment must be on site, inspected and approved by the Engineer in conjunction with a representative of the Geotechnical Engineering Bureau before any work is done by that rig. Each rig shall be complete and sharing of equipment between rigs will not be permitted.

732-02 DRIVE PIPE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for drive pipe used in subsurface explorations.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Drive pipe shall be extra strong steel pipe, 2 1/2 inch or 4 inch nominal diameter as specified, with threaded ends in random 5 foot lengths and shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A120, Schedule 80.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Drive pipe shall be subject to inspection and approval of the Engineer in conjunction with a representative of the Geotechnical Engineering Bureau.

732-03 CASING

SCOPE. This specification covers the material and quality requirements for casing used in subsurface explorations.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The casing shall be diamond drill flush-joint or flush coupled type, fabricated from high quality seamless steel tubing conforming to the requirements of the Diamond Core Drill Manufacturer's Association (DCDMA) Standards. The design shall permit any size casing to telescope into the next larger size.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Casing shall be subject to inspection and approval of the Engineer in conjunction with a representative of the Geotechnical Engineering Bureau.

732-04 SAMPLERS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for split barrel samplers.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Samplers shall be equipped with a ball check in the head section and have a minimum inside length of 20 inches. Samplers shall conform to the following sizes:
### 732-05 THIN WALL SAMPLE TUBES

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and quality requirements for thin wall sample tubes.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Thin walled sample tubes shall be fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel tubing meeting the requirements of ASTM A276 as specified for a nominal 3 1/2 inch O.D. seamless or welded tubing with nominal 0.065 inch wall thickness. Specific dimensions and fabrication details shall comply with the current Geotechnical Engineering Bureau Drawing entitled “Stainless Tube for 3 1/2 inch Undisturbed Soil Samples.” Liners for 3 1/2 inch samplers shall have an outside diameter of 3 inches and shall be 18 inches long. Liners shall be fabricated of brass or stainless steel only.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Sample tubes shall be subject to the inspection and approval of the Engineer in conjunction with a representative of the Geotechnical Engineering Bureau.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sampler Diameter (Inches)</th>
<th>Outside Diameter (Inches)</th>
<th>Cutting Shoe Opening (Inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2 5/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1/2</td>
<td>3 1/2</td>
<td>2 5/8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for sample jars used for containing soil samples.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Sample jars shall be glass, or plastic, wide-mouthed jars of one-quart capacity with air-tight screw covers fitted with rubber compo-lined caps.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Sample jars shall be subject to inspection and approval of the Engineer.

**732-09 JAR CARTONS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for jar cartons used to contain soil sample jars.

**MATERIAL AND FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS.** Jar cartons shall consist of corrugated Kraft paper cardboard fabricated into a box with overall nominal dimensions of 12 inches wide, 16 inches long and 7 inches deep. The box shall be partitioned and have sufficient strength to safely support twelve (12) sample jars conforming to 732-08 in a 3 x 4 array.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Jar cartons shall be subject to inspection and approval of the Engineer.

**732-10 BOULDER AND ROCK CORE BOXES**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material and fabrication requirements for boxes used to contain core samples of boulders and rock.

**MATERIAL AND FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS.** Boxes shall be fabricated of white pine, Grade No. 2 common or better, 1 inch stock (finished ¾ inch) thickness or an approved equal material and conform to the overall box dimensions given below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core Box Size</th>
<th>Length (Inches)</th>
<th>Width (Inches)</th>
<th>Height (Inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“AX”</td>
<td>61½</td>
<td>9¾</td>
<td>2¾</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“BX”</td>
<td>61½</td>
<td>10¼</td>
<td>3¼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“NX”</td>
<td>61½</td>
<td>10¾</td>
<td>3¼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“HX”</td>
<td>61½</td>
<td>11¾</td>
<td>4¾</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Core rows shall be separated by wooden or tempered hardboard, ⅛ inch thick strips recessed to ⅜ inch depth and glued with waterproof glue at the bottom and ends of the box. Box covers shall be hinged with two, 2 inch steel butt hinges recessed and fastened with flat head wood screws. Box covers shall be secured in a closed position by two 1 1/2 inch hook and eye fasteners. All boxes shall be coated with weatherproof wood preservative. Details are specified on the current Geotechnical Engineering Bureau Drawing entitled “Core Box AX, BX, NX and HX Sizes.”

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Core boxes shall be subject to inspection and approval of the Engineer in conjunction with a representative of the Geotechnical Engineering Bureau.

**732-11 OPEN WELL PIEZOMETER**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements for open well piezometers.
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Monitoring pipe-riser pipe shall be 1 inch (nominal diameter) threaded PVC schedule 40 pipe. Slotted screen pipe shall be 5 feet long and be 1 inch (nominal diameter) threaded PVC schedule 40 pipe. Caps shall be 1 inch (nominal diameter) PVC schedule 40 threaded male cap for the top, and 1 inch (nominal diameter) PVC schedule 40 threaded female cap for the bottom.

Sand. Provide well rounded, uniformly graded silica sand, which is correctly sized to the slotted screen. Ottawa sand is acceptable.

Bentonite pellets. Provide 1/4 inch (nominal diameter) bentonite pellets.

Manhole. Provide a 8 inch (inside diameter) steel flush mount manhole with a 8 inch skirt.

Cement. The material shall meet the requirements of '701-01 Portland Cement Type 1 or 2.

Water. The water for the mix shall conform to the requirements of '712-01 Water.

Bentonite Powder. There are no material requirements for the bentonite, except it shall be supplied in powder form from a reputable manufacturer and pass a No. 200 sieve.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Materials used for the installation of open well piezometers shall be subject to inspection and approval of the Engineer.

732-12 GROUT

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements for the grouting of bore holes.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

Cement. The material shall meet the requirements of §701-01 Portland Cement Type 1 or 2.

Water. The water for the mix shall conform to the requirements of §712-01 Water.

Bentonite Powder. There are no material requirements for the bentonite, except it shall be supplied in powder form from a reputable manufacturer and pass a No. 200 sieve.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. The grout shall be subject to inspection and approval of the Engineer.

732-13 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

732-99 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

SECTION 733 - EARTHWORK MATERIALS
(Last Revised May 2019)

733-01 FLOWABLE FILL

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing flowable fill. The following flowable fill types are evaluated in this specification:

733-0101 – Controlled Low Strength Material (CLSM)
733-0102 – Controlled Low Strength Material (CLSM) (No Fly Ash)
733-0103 – Lightweight Concrete Fill (Type A)
733-0104 – Lightweight Concrete Fill (Type B)

GENERAL.

A. Controlled Low Strength Material. Provide CLSM with certified test results supplied by a qualified independent testing laboratory for the mix design verifying the unconfined compressive strength meets the requirements of the specification. Design the CLSM mix so that it sets within the time stated in the contract documents. If no set time is required, design the set time to meet Contractor’s operational requirements.

B. Lightweight Concrete Fill. Provide Lightweight Concrete Fill with certified test results supplied by a qualified independent testing laboratory for the mix design verifying the wet cast density and unconfined compressive strength meet the requirements of the specification for the type(s) identified in the contract documents. Design the Lightweight Concrete Fill utilizing a foaming agent appearing on the Departments Approved List.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. Controlled Low Strength Material.

1. Material. Provide CLSM containing cement and water. At the Contractor’s option, it may also contain fly ash (unless the No Fly Ash item is specified), aggregate, or chemical admixtures in any proportions such that the final product meets the strength and flow consistency requirements included in this specification.

Provide materials meeting the requirements of Table 733-01A CLSM Material Requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Subsection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portland Cement, Type 1 or Type 2</td>
<td>§701-01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>§712-01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If used, provide materials meeting Table 733-01B Requirements for Optional CLSM Material:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Subsection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aggregate Gradation</td>
<td>§703-07 Concrete Sand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recycled Material</td>
<td>Recycled material approved for use in accordance with §733-19 Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material and as identified in the Approved List.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical Admixtures</td>
<td>Provide admixtures that comply with §711-08 Admixtures. The mix may include high air generators manufactured for CLSM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Unconfined Compressive Strength. Provide CLSM with a mix design generating an unconfined compressive strength in Table 733-01C CLSM Unconfined Compressive Strength:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test Age</th>
<th>Unconfined Compressive Strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
TABLE 733-01C CLSM UNCONFINED COMPRRESSIVE STRENGTH

| 28 days | 40 psi ≤ $q_u$ ≤ 150 psi |


i. Spread Diameter. Provide CLSM that has, at the time of placement, a minimum diameter spread of 8 in. as determined by a Department Representative in accordance with ASTM D6103 Standard Test Method for Flow Consistency of Controlled Low Strength Material (CLSM).

ii. Cylinder Cast. A Department Representative will cast three specimens (cylinders) for each batch of CLSM for QA testing. A batch is defined as the amount of material that can be mixed at one time.

B. Lightweight Concrete Fill.

1. Material. Provide materials meeting the requirements of Table 733-01D Lightweight Concrete Fill Material Requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 733-01D LIGHTWEIGHT CONCRETE FILL MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portland Cement, Type 1, 2 of 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admixtures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foaming Agent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Foaming Agent shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C 869. Foaming Agents which are on the Approved List shall be accepted at the site on the basis of the brand name labeled on the Foaming Agent container and certified documentation provided by the supplier.

A Foaming Agent not on the Approved List will be evaluated based on submitted information and sample testing by the Materials Bureau (minimum of six months). For each class of material submitted for evaluation, specimens will be required for testing of compressive strength, air-dry density, freeze-thaw and water absorption characteristics, and other testing as deemed appropriate. For detailed information contact the Materials Bureau.

2. Concrete Fill Types. Provide lightweight concrete fill conforming to the type(s) specified in the contract documents and meeting the requirements identified in Table 733-01E Lightweight Concrete Fill Density and Compressive Strength Requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 733-01E LIGHTWEIGHT CONCRETE FILL DENSITY AND UNCONFINED COMPRRESSIVE STRENGTH REQUIREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Contractor shall be responsible for designing the mix so that each type of lightweight concrete fill meets the corresponding criteria listed above. The lightweight concrete fill shall be mixed in accordance with the recommendations of a representative of the supplier of the foaming agent.


   i. Density. A Department Representative will sample and test the wet cast density. After the initial test and approval to proceed, the density will be monitored at 30 minute intervals during placement for QA purposes.

   ii. Cylinder Cast. A Department Representative will cast four specimens (cylinders) at the point of placement for each day's pour or each 100 yd$^3$ of material placed, whichever is more frequent, for QA purposes.

BASIS OF APPROVAL.

A. Controlled Low Strength Material. Mix designs will be approved based on certified test results supplied by a qualified independent testing laboratory for the unconfined compressive strength in accordance with the specification. The methods of installation will be approved based on an evaluation of the equipment’s appropriateness with respect to the site conditions.

B. Lightweight Concrete Fill. Mix designs will be approved based on (1) certified test results supplied by a qualified independent testing laboratory for the maximum wet cast density and minimum unconfined compressive strength in accordance with the specification, and (2) the brand name labeled on the foaming agent appearing on the Approved List. The methods of installation will be approved based on an evaluation of the equipment’s appropriateness with respect to the site conditions.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.

A. Controlled Low Strength Material. CLSM material will be accepted on the jobsite upon submission of certified test results of the mix design to the Engineer. CLSM material will be accepted after employment of the approved method of installation and upon acceptable test results for spread diameter and unconfined compressive strength.

B. Lightweight Concrete Fill. Lightweight Concrete Fill material will be accepted on the jobsite upon submission of a certified mix design to the Engineer and confirmation that the brand name labeled on the foaming agent appears on the Approved List. Lightweight Concrete Fill material will be accepted after employment of the approved method of installation and upon acceptable test results for density and unconfined compressive strength.

733-02 MECHANICALLY STABILIZED EARTH SYSTEM BACKFILL MATERIAL

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing backfill material generally used for the construction of a MSES.

SAMPLING. Perform material tests and assurance methods pertaining to the backfill requirements in conformance with the procedures contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

363
GENERAL. Provide backfill material for any MSES from a single source unless prior approval for use of designated multiple sources is obtained from the Director, GEB.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. STOCKPILE. Stockpile the backfill material in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

B. GRADATION. Provide backfill material of one of the following types:

1. Type A. Material consisting of any mineral (inorganic) soil, blasted or broken rock, or similar materials of natural origin, including mixtures thereof, and having a gradation in accordance with TABLE 733-02A Backfill Gradation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size Designation</th>
<th>Percentage Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4 in.</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¼ in.</td>
<td>30-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 40</td>
<td>0-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
<td>0-15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Type B. Material consisting of crushed stone conforming to §703-02 Coarse Aggregate. Size Designation 2 with the percent passing the No. 200 sieve requirement in Table 703-4 adjusted to 0 – 2%. Type B material shall be covered with a geotextile separator to deter the migration of fines. A geotextile separator conforming to the requirements of §737-01 (B) Geotextile Separation is required on the top and all sides (with the exception of the wall interface) of the Type B material. No separate measurement for payment of the geotextile shall be made.

C. PLASTICITY INDEX. Provide material having a Plasticity Index not exceeding 5.

D. DURABILITY. Provide material having a Magnesium Sulfate Soundness loss less than 30% after four (4) cycles tested in accordance with the Geotechnical Test Method (GTM-21) “Test Method for Magnesium Sulfate Soundness of Granular Materials”.

E. CORROSION POTENTIAL (METAL REINFORCING AND/OR CONNECTORS ONLY). The Department will test for the corrosion potential of any system with exposed metal in the backfill. Stockpiled materials will be tested for resistivity and pH, and may be tested for sulfides at the Department's discretion. Material failing to meet the following requirements of Table 733-02B Resistivity, Soluble Salts and pH Requirements, will be rejected except as specified below:

Material failing to meet the resistivity criterion may be tested for sulfate and chlorides. Material meeting the criteria for both sulfates and chlorides and having a resistivity greater than 10 ohm-m will be acceptable. Chemical testing (i.e. resistivity, sulfate ion content, sulfide ion content, and chloride ion content) is not required for Type B backfill.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Test Method</th>
<th>Acceptance Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resistivity</td>
<td>AASHTO T288</td>
<td>$\rho \geq 30$ ohm-m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 733-02A BACKFILL GRADATION

TABLE 733-02B RESISTIVITY, SOLUBLE SALTS AND pH REQUIREMENTS
### TABLE 733-02B RESISTIVITY, SOLUBLE SALTS AND pH REQUIREMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chlorides</th>
<th>AASHTO T291 Method A</th>
<th>$Cl^- \leq 100$ mg/kg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sulfates</td>
<td>AASHTO T290 Method A, gravimetric</td>
<td>$SO_4^{2-} \leq 200$ mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AASHTO T290 Method B, turbidmetric</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfides</td>
<td>NYSDOT Test Method 711-12C</td>
<td>$S^{2-} \leq 300$ mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$pH$</td>
<td>Type A</td>
<td>NYSDOT GTM-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Type B</td>
<td>NYSDOT GTM-24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Stockpiles of MSES backfill material will be approved by the GEB in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials” and the procedural directives of the GEB.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Backfill material from approved off-site stockpiles will be accepted on the contract site by delivery ticket. Each delivery ticket shall identify the Supplier’s name, Supplier’s granular source number (GSN), date, NYSDOT contract number, stockpile number, and item number.

Backfill material from approved stockpiles will be accepted as part of the MSES upon confirmation that the material gradation type provided by the Contractor, outlined in §733-02B Gradation, conforms to the MSES submittal provided by the wall system designer-supplier and upon successful completion of the Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. In addition to the requirements of Section 106 Control of Material, the Department will sample and test backfill taken from behind the newly-constructed wall to assure quality. The number of samples and their locations (plan and elevation) will be determined based on the quantity of material to be used in each MSES structure in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-20) “Procedure for Taking Random Samples of Backfill Material for Mechanically Stabilized Earth Systems”. Results from chemical testing (i.e. resistivity, sulfate ion content, sulfide ion content, and chloride ion content) can take several weeks to obtain.

### 733-03 GEOSYNTHETICALLY REINFORCED SOIL SYSTEM SLOPE BACKFILL MATERIAL

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing backfill material generally used for the construction of over steepened slopes utilizing Geosynthetically Reinforced Soil System (GRSS).

**SAMPLING.** Obtain a representative sample of the source for the performance of a gradation analysis in accordance with the procedures contained in the Geotechnical Test Method (GTM-20) “Test Method for the Grain-Size Analysis of Granular Soil Materials”.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**

**A. COMPOSITION.** Any mineral (inorganic) soil, blasted or broken rock, or similar materials of natural origin, including mixtures thereof, are suitable materials.

**B. GRADATION.** Provide backfill material conforming to the following:
1. Gradation Spread. Provide backfill material having a gradation in accordance with TABLE 733-03A Backfill Gradation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 733-03A BACKFILL GRADATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sieve Size Designation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Gradation Ratio. Provide backfill material having a gradation ratio in accordance with the following formula:

\[
\frac{\text{Percent Pass. No.200 sieve}}{\text{Percent Pass. No.40 sieve}} \times 100 \leq 70
\]

The gradation is evaluated at the contract level.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Material will be approved upon successful completion of the gradation tests indicating that the material conforms to the specification.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Backfill material will be accepted based upon successful completion of the gradation tests indicating that the material conforms to the specification.

733-04 SUBBASE COURSE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing subbase material generally used in the construction of a pavement structure. The following subbase types are evaluated in this specification:

- 733-0401 – Subbase Course, Type 1
- 733-0402 – Subbase Course, Type 2
- 733-0403 – Subbase Course, Type 3
- 733-0404 – Subbase Course, Type 4

Subbase course types are based on the gradation of the material as outlined in Table 733-04A Subbase Gradation.

SAMPLING. Perform material tests and assurance methods pertaining to subbase requirements in conformance with the procedures contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

GENERAL. Provide suitable material conforming to the requirements of Section 203 Excavation and Embankment and to the requirements contained herein.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. COMPOSITION. For Types 1, 3 and 4 furnish materials consisting of Stone, Sand, Gravel, and/or recycled material approved for use in accordance with §733-19 Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material (and as identified in the Approved List), or blends of these materials.
For Type 2, furnish materials consisting of Stone, or recycled material approved for use in accordance with §733-19 *Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material* (and as identified in the Approved List), which is the product of crushing or blasting ledge rock, or a blend of approved recycled material and Stone.

**B. STOCKPILE.** Stockpile subbase material in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials” except as noted herein.

1. **Type 3.** Material furnished under Type 3 will not be required to be stockpiled unless it contains recycled material approved for use in accordance with §733-19 *Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material* and as identified in the Approved List.

2. **Recycled Materials.** Stockpiling of the Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement (RAP) for subbase course is not required.

**C. GRADATION.** Provide subbase material having a gradation in accordance with TABLE 733-04A Subbase Gradation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size Designation</th>
<th>Type 1</th>
<th>Type 2</th>
<th>Type 3</th>
<th>Type 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4 in.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 in.</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 in.</td>
<td>90-100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¼ in.</td>
<td>30-65</td>
<td>25-60</td>
<td>30-75</td>
<td>30-65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 40</td>
<td>5-40</td>
<td>5-40</td>
<td>5-40</td>
<td>5-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
<td>0-10</td>
<td>0-10</td>
<td>0-10</td>
<td>0-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**D. PLASTICITY INDEX.** Provide material having a Plasticity Index based on the material passing the No. 40 mesh sieve equal to or less than 5.0.

**E. DURABILITY.**

1. **Types 1, 2 and 4.** Provide material for Types 1, 2 and 4 having a Magnesium Sulfate Soundness loss less than 20% after four (4) cycles tested in accordance with the Geotechnical Test Method (GTM-21) “Test Method for Magnesium Sulfate Soundness of Granular Materials”, unless material meeting the requirements of Recycled Materials is used.

2. **Type 3.** Provide material for Type 3 having a Magnesium Sulfate Soundness loss less than 30% after four (4) cycles tested in accordance with the Geotechnical Test Method (GTM-21) “Test Method for Magnesium Sulfate Soundness of Granular Materials”.

**F. ELONGATED PARTICLES.** A flat or elongated particle is defined herein as one which has its greatest dimension more than three (3) times its least dimension. Provide material consisting of particles where not more than 30%, by weight, of the particles retained on a ½ in. sieve is flat or elongated. When the State elects to test for this requirement, material with a percentage greater than 30 will be rejected. Acceptance for this requirement will normally be based on a visual inspection by the Regional Geotechnical Engineer.
G. MATERIAL FOR TEMPORARY WORK. Material used as a subbase for the construction of temporary work may be approved by a Departmental Geotechnical Engineer by visual inspection in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”. Do not permanently incorporate material so approved into the work without following the appropriate acceptance procedure.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Stockpiles of subbase material will be approved in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Subbase material from approved off-site stockpiles will be accepted on the contract site by delivery ticket. Each delivery ticket shall identify the Supplier’s name, Supplier’s granular source number (GSN), date, NYSDOT contract number, stockpile number, and item number.

Subbase material from approved stockpiles will be accepted upon successful completion of the Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, subbase material will be accepted upon the basis of the stockpile approval.

733-05 GLASS BACKFILL

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of assessing glass backfill material generally used as fill material.

SAMPLING. Perform material tests and assurance methods pertaining to the glass backfill requirements in conformance with the procedures for stockpiled granular materials contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. STOCKPILE. Stockpile glass backfill material in accordance with the procedures for stockpiled granular materials contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

B. COMPOSITION. Waste glass cullet ground up to be used as aggregate.

C. GRADATION. Provide glass crushed to a maximum particle size of 3/8 in. The material shall be subject to visual inspection by the Regional Geotechnical Engineer.

D. CHARACTERISTICS. Glass may contain up to a maximum of 5% by volume of china, ceramics, plate glass products, paper, plastics or other deleterious materials.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Glass backfill will be approved in accordance with the procedures for stockpiled granular materials contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

The material shall be subject to visual inspection by the Regional Geotechnical Engineer.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Glass backfill from approved off-site stockpiles will be accepted on the contract site by delivery ticket. Each delivery ticket shall identify the Supplier’s name, Supplier’s granular source number (GSN), date, NYSDOT contract number, stockpile number, and item number.
Approved glass backfill material will be accepted upon successful completion of the Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, glass backfill material will be accepted upon the basis of the stockpile approval.

733-06 RECLAIMED ASPHALT PAVEMENT FOR EARTHWORK AND SUBBASE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of assessing Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement (RAP) generally used as fill material.

SAMPLING. Perform material tests and assurance methods pertaining to the RAP requirements in conformance with the procedures contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. SOURCE. Provide written documentation that the reclaimed bituminous material originated on a Department project. Include an identifier, such as State Highway number, construction contract number or Department Project Identification Number (PIN).

B. COMPOSITION. Millings of asphalt cement concrete.

C. GRADATION.

1. Gradation Spread. Provide RAP having a maximum top size of 2 in. at the time of placement.

2. Elongated Particles. A flat or elongated particle is defined herein as one which has its greatest dimension more than three (3) times its least dimension. Provide material consisting of particles where not more than 30%, by weight, of the particles retained on a ½ in. sieve are flat or elongated. When the State elects to test for this requirement, material with a percentage greater than 30 will be rejected. Acceptance for this requirement will normally be based on a visual inspection by the Regional Geotechnical Engineer.

D. CHARACTERISTICS. Bituminous material that is well-graded from coarse to fine and free from organic or other deleterious material, including tar. This material is at least 95%, by weight, reclaimed bituminous material. No soundness or Plasticity Index testing will be required.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. RAP will be approved based upon a visual inspection by the Regional Geotechnical Engineer.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Approved RAP will be accepted upon successful completion of the Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, RAP will be accepted upon the basis of the visual inspection by the Regional Geotechnical Engineer.

733-07 RECYCLED PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE AGGREGATE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing Recycled Portland Cement Concrete Aggregate (RCA) generally used as fill material. The following RCA types are evaluated in this specification:
733-0701 – Recycled Portland Cement Concrete Aggregate
733-0702 – Recycled Portland Cement Concrete Aggregate Mixture

**SAMPLING.** Perform material tests and assurance methods pertaining to the RCA requirements in conformance with the procedures contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**

**A. STOCKPILE.** Stockpile RCA in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

**B. COMPOSITION.** Crushed portland cement concrete.

If RCA comes from other than a Department project, provide documentation showing that the material obtained is from a NYSDEC registered or permitted construction and demolition (C&D) debris processing facility as specified in Section 360-16.1 of 6NYCRR Part 360, “Solid Waste Management Facilities”.

**C. GRADATION.**

1. **Gradation Spread.** Provide RCA meeting the gradation requirements for the appropriate item of use.

2. **Elongated Particles.** A flat or elongated particle is defined herein as one which has its greatest dimension more than three (3) times its least dimension. Provide material consisting of particles where not more than 30%, by weight, of the particles retained on a ½ in. sieve are flat or elongated. When the State elects to test for this requirement, material with a percentage greater than 30 will be rejected. Acceptance for this requirement will normally be based on a visual inspection by the Regional Geotechnical Engineer.

**D. CHARACTERISTICS.**

1. **Alternate A.** At least 95%, by weight, of Recycled Portland Cement Concrete Aggregate (RCA), and free from organic and other deleterious material. This material may contain up to 5% by weight asphalt and/or brick.

2. **Alternate B.** A mixture of Recycled Portland Cement Concrete Aggregate (RCA) conforming to Alternate A above mixed with stone, sand, gravel or blast furnace slag. This material may contain up to 5% by weight asphalt and/or brick.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Stockpiles of RCA will be approved in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** RCA from approved off-site stockpiles will be accepted on the contract site by delivery ticket. Each delivery ticket shall identify the Suppliers name, Suppliers granular source number (GSN), date, NYSDOT contract number, stockpile number, and item number.

RCA from approved stockpiles will be accepted upon successful completion of the Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, RCA will be accepted upon the basis of the stockpile approval.
733-08 EMBANKMENT IN PLACE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of assessing material generally used for embankment construction and for general fill applications independent of a roadway embankment.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. COMPOSITION. In general, any mineral (inorganic) soil, blasted or broken rock and similar materials of natural or man made (i.e. recycled) origin, including mixtures thereof, are considered suitable materials. Recycled materials are approved for use in accordance with §733-19 Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material and are identified in the Approved List.

B. GRADATION. Provide suitable embankment material having no particles with a dimension in excess of two-thirds of the loose lift thickness controlled by the compaction equipment supplied by the Contractor. When material is placed independent of a roadway embankment, the material shall have a gradation and material properties acceptable to the Engineer.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Embankment material will be accepted upon visual inspection by the Engineer.

733-09 SELECT BORROW

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing select borrow material generally used for backfilling in areas beneath the watertable.

SAMPLING. Perform material tests and quality assurance methods pertaining to the backfill requirements in conformance with the procedures for non-stockpiled materials contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. SOURCE. Provide backfill material from a source evaluated in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

B. COMPOSITION. Provide suitable, well graded material consisting of rock, stone, cobbles, or gravel, or recycled material approved for use in accordance with §733-19 Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material (and as identified in the Approved List).

C. GRADATION. Provide select borrow material having no particles greater than 3 ft. in maximum dimension. Of the portion passing the 4 in. square sieve, the material shall have a gradation in accordance with TABLE 733-09A Select Borrow Gradation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 733-09A SELECT BORROW GRADATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sieve Size Designation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The gradation is evaluated at the project level.

**D. DURABILITY.** Provide material having a Magnesium Sulfate Soundness loss less than 35% after four (4) cycles tested in accordance with the Geotechnical Test Method (GTM-21) “Test Method for Magnesium Sulfate Soundness of Granular Materials”.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Material will be approved in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

A preceding source evaluation will be valid for the time identified in the manual. For sources without a current evaluation, samples shall be obtained under the direction of the Departmental Geotechnical Engineer and will be tested and evaluated by the Geotechnical Engineering Bureau.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Approved select borrow backfill material from evaluated sources will be accepted upon successful completion of the gradation tests and Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, approved select borrow material will be accepted upon successful completion of the gradation tests.

**733-10 SELECT FILL**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing select fill material generally used for backfilling in areas beneath the watertable or within water bodies.

**SAMPLING.** The sampling procedure contained in §733-09 Select Borrow shall apply.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The material requirements contained in §733-09 Select Borrow shall apply.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** The basis of approval contained in §733-09 Select Borrow shall apply.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The basis of acceptance contained in §733-09 Select Borrow shall apply.

**733-11 SELECT GRANULAR FILL**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing select granular fill material generally used for backfilling around pipes. The following materials are evaluated in this specification:

- 733-1101 – Select Granular Fill (Typical)
- 733-1102 – Select Granular Fill for Corrugated Aluminum Pipe

**SAMPLING.** Perform material tests and quality assurance methods pertaining to the backfill requirements in conformance with the procedures for non-stockpiled materials contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**
A. SOURCE. Provide backfill material from a source evaluated in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

B. COMPOSITION. Provide suitable, well graded material consisting of rock, stone, cobbles, or gravel, or recycled material approved for use in accordance with §733-19 Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material (and as identified in the Approved List) with the exception of when select granular fill is used as backfill for aluminum pipe. For aluminum pipe applications, the select granular fill shall be free of portland cement or portland cement concrete.

C. GRADATION. Provide select granular fill material conforming to the following requirements:

1. Typical. Except when used as backfill material for aluminum pipe with Type IR corrugations (Spiral Rib Pipe), the material shall have a gradation in accordance with TABLE 733-11A Select Granular Fill Gradation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size Designation</th>
<th>Percentage Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4 in.</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 40</td>
<td>0-70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
<td>0-15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Exception. When used as backfill for Corrugated Aluminum Pipe, Type 1R (Spiral Rib Pipe) 100% of the material shall also pass the 2 in. sieve.

The gradation is evaluated at the project level.

D. DURABILITY. Provide material having a Magnesium Sulfate Soundness loss less than 30% after four (4) cycles tested in accordance with the Geotechnical Test Method (GTM-21) “Test Method for Magnesium Sulfate Soundness of Granular Materials”.

E. pH. Where the State elects to test for this requirement, the material shall have a pH in accordance with TABLE 733-11B Select Granular Fill pH Requirement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Test Method</th>
<th>Acceptance Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pH</td>
<td>NYSDOT GTM-24</td>
<td>$5 \leq pH \leq 10$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When RCA is used as backfill in a non-aluminum pipe application, the pH requirements are waived.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Material will be approved in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

A preceding source evaluation will be valid for the time identified in the manual. For sources without a current evaluation, samples shall be obtained under the direction of the Departmental Geotechnical Engineer and will be tested and evaluated by the Geotechnical Engineering Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Approved select granular fill backfill material from evaluated sources will be accepted upon successful completion of the gradation tests and Quality Assurance (QA) program.
indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, approved select granular fill backfill material will be accepted upon successful completion of the gradation tests.

**733-12 SELECT GRANULAR FILL SLOPE PROTECTION**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing select granular fill slope protection material generally used for stabilizing sloughing slopes. The following materials are evaluated in this specification:

733-1201 – Select Granular Fill Slope Protection (Blasted Rock)
733-1202 – Select Granular Fill Slope Protection (Typical)

**SAMPLING.** Perform material tests and quality assurance methods pertaining to the backfill requirements in conformance with the procedures for non-stockpiled materials contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**

**A. SOURCE.** Provide backfill material from a source evaluated in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

**B. COMPOSITION.** Provide material consisting of rock, stone, cobbles, or gravel, or recycled material approved for use in accordance with §733-19 Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material (and as identified in the Approved List).

**C. GRADATION.** Provide select granular slope protection material conforming to the following requirements:

1. Broken or blasted unweathered rock used for this item shall be well graded, having no particles greater than 24 in. in maximum dimension, and be substantially free from particles greater than 12 in. in maximum dimension, containing little or no material passing the No. 10 mesh sieve.

2. All materials, other than broken or blasted unweathered rock, shall have a gradation in accordance with TABLE 733-12A Select Granular Fill Slope Protection Gradation.

<p>| TABLE 733-12A SELECT GRANULAR FILL SLOPE PROTECTION GRADATION |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------|</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size Designation</th>
<th>Percentage Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24 in. maximum dimension</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 in. maximum dimension</td>
<td>90-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 in. square sieve</td>
<td>0-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¼ in. sieve</td>
<td>0-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The gradation is evaluated at the project level.

**D. DURABILITY.** Provide material having a Magnesium Sulfate Soundness loss less than 35% after four (4) cycles tested in accordance with Geotechnical Test Method (GTM-21) “Test Method for Magnesium Sulfate Soundness of Granular Materials”.
BASIS OF APPROVAL. Material will be approved in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

A preceding source evaluation will be valid for the time identified in the manual. For sources without a current evaluation, samples shall be obtained under the direction of the Departmental Geotechnical Engineer and will be tested and evaluated by the Geotechnical Engineering Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Approved select granular fill slope protection backfill material from evaluated sources will be accepted upon successful completion of the gradation tests and Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, approved select granular fill slope protection backfill material will be accepted upon successful completion of the gradation tests.

733-13 SELECT GRANULAR SUBGRADE

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing select granular subgrade material generally used for backfilling undercuts. The following materials are evaluated in this specification:

733-1301 – Select Granular Subgrade (Blasted Rock)
733-1302 – Select Granular Subgrade (Typical)
733-1303 – Select Granular Subgrade (RCA)
733-1304 – Select Granular Subgrade (RCA Mixture)
733-1305 – Select Granular Subgrade (RAP)

SAMPLING. Perform material tests and quality assurance methods pertaining to the backfill requirements in conformance with the procedures for non-stockpiled materials contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. SOURCE. Provide backfill material from a source evaluated in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

B. COMPOSITION. Provide material consisting of rock, stone, cobbles, or gravel, or recycled material approved for use in accordance with §733-19 Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material (and as identified in the Approved List).

C. GRADATION. Provide select granular subgrade material conforming to the following requirements:

1. Well graded rock may be used for this item. Particles shall not exceed 12 in. in greatest dimension nor ⅔ of the loose lift thickness, whichever is less.

2. All materials, other than well graded rock, furnished under this item shall have no particles greater than 6 in. in maximum dimension. Of the portion passing the 4 in. square sieve, the material shall have a gradation in accordance with TABLE 733-13A Select Granular Subgrade Gradation.
TABLE 733-13A SELECT GRANULAR SUBGRADE GRADATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size Designation</th>
<th>Percentage Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>¼ in.</td>
<td>30-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 40</td>
<td>0-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
<td>0-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The gradation is evaluated at the project level.

**D. DURABILITY.** Provide material having a Magnesium Sulfate Soundness loss less than 35% after four (4) cycles tested in accordance with Geotechnical Test Method (GTM-21) “Test Method for Magnesium Sulfate Soundness of Granular Materials”.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Material will be approved in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

A preceding source evaluation will be valid for the time identified in the manual. For sources without a current evaluation, samples shall be obtained under the direction of the Departmental Geotechnical Engineer and will be tested and evaluated by the Geotechnical Engineering Bureau.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Approved select granular subgrade backfill material from evaluated sources will be accepted upon successful completion of the gradation tests and Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, approved select granular subgrade backfill material will be accepted upon successful completion of the gradation tests.

### 733-14 SELECT STRUCTURE FILL

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing select granular fill material generally used for backfilling behind structures.

**SAMPLING.** The sampling procedure contained in §733-11 Select Granular Fill shall apply.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The material requirements contained in §733-11 Select Granular Fill shall apply.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** The basis of approval contained in §733-11 Select Granular Fill shall apply.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The basis of acceptance contained in §733-11 Select Granular Fill shall apply.

### 733-15 SAND BACKFILL

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing sand backfill generally used for backfilling around utilities.

**SAMPLING.** Perform material tests and quality assurance methods pertaining to the backfill requirements in conformance with the procedures for non-stockpiled materials contained in the
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. SOURCE. Provide backfill material from a source evaluated in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

B. COMPOSITION. Provide material consisting of sand.

C. GRADATION. Provide sand backfill material having a gradation in accordance with TABLE 733-15A Sand Backfill Gradation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 733-15A SAND BACKFILL GRADATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sieve Size Designation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>½ in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¼ in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The gradation is evaluated at the project level.

D. pH. Where the State elects to test for this requirement, the material shall have a pH in accordance with TABLE 733-15B Sand Backfill pH Requirement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 733-15B SAND BACKFILL pH REQUIREMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Sources will be evaluated in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

A preceding source evaluation will be valid for the time identified in the manual. For sources without a current evaluation, samples shall be obtained under the direction of the Departmental Geotechnical Engineer and will be tested and evaluated by the Geotechnical Engineering Bureau.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Approved sand backfill material from approved sources will be accepted upon successful completion of the gradation tests and Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, approved sand backfill material will be accepted upon successful completion of the gradation tests.

733-16 WINTER EARTHWORK

SCOPE. This specification addresses the material requirements and methods of assessing earthwork materials placed during construction operations between November 1st and April 1st. The following materials are evaluated in this specification:

733-1601 – Winter Earthwork Material for Embankment In Place
733-1602 – Winter Earthwork Material for Select Borrow
733-1603 – Winter Earthwork Material for Select Fill
733-160401 – Winter Earthwork Material for Select Granular Fill (Typical)
733-160402 – Winter Earthwork Material for Select Granular Fill for Corrugated Aluminum Pipe
733-160501 – Winter Earthwork Material for Select Granular Subgrade (Blasted Rock)
733-160502 – Winter Earthwork Material for Select Granular Subgrade (Typical)
733-160503 – Winter Earthwork Material for Select Granular Subgrade (RCA)
733-160504 – Winter Earthwork Material for Select Granular Subgrade (RCA Mixture)
733-1606 – Winter Earthwork Material for Select Structural Fill
733-1607 – Winter Earthwork Material for GRSS Slope Backfill
733-1608 – Winter Earthwork Material for MSES Backfill

SAMPLING. Perform material tests and quality assurance methods pertaining to the backfill requirements in conformance with the procedures contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. STOCKPILE. Stockpile all winter earthwork material in accordance with the procedures for stockpiled granular materials contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

B. COMPOSITION. Provide material consisting of crushed stone, crushed gravel, or screened gravel.

C. GRADATION.

1. Winter Earthwork Material for Embankment In Place. Provide winter earthwork material conforming to the requirements of §703-02 Coarse Aggregate, with the percent passing the No. 200 sieve requirement in Table 703-4 adjusted to 0 – 2%. The Contractor shall specify the Size Designation as part of the Winter Earthwork submittal in accordance with §203-3.01 A. Winter Earthwork Submittal.

Alternate Source. Blasted rock from on-site rock excavation may be used provided it is detailed in, and approved as part of, the Winter Earthwork submittal in accordance with §203-3.01 A. Winter Earthwork Submittal.

2. Winter Earthwork Material for Select Borrow, Winter Earthwork Material for Select Fill, Winter Earthwork Material for Select Granular Fill, Winter Earthwork Material for Select Granular Subgrade, Winter Earthwork Material for Select Structure Fill, Winter Earthwork Material for GRSS Slope Backfill. Provide winter earthwork material conforming to the requirements of §703-02 Coarse Aggregate, with the percent passing the No. 200 sieve requirement in Table 703-4 adjusted to 0 – 2%. The Contractor shall specify the Size Designation as part of the Winter Earthwork submittal in accordance with §203-3.01 A. Winter Earthwork Submittal.

3. Winter Earthwork Material for MSES Backfill. Provide winter earthwork material conforming to the requirements of §733-02 Type B.

C. CHARACTERISTICS.

1. No frozen material is to be incorporated into or be allowed to remain in any of the work.
2. In locations where winter earthwork material has been placed to completely, or partially, fill the delineated backfill area and the situation allows the Contractor to revert back to standard backfill material, the winter earthwork material shall be covered with a geotextile separator to deter the migration of fines. A geotextile separator conforming to the requirements of §737-01 (B) Geotextile Separation is required on the top and all sides of the winter earthwork material. No separate measurement for payment of the geotextile shall be made.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Stockpiles of winter earthwork material will be evaluated in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Winter Earthwork material from approved off-site stockpiles will be accepted on the contract site by delivery ticket. Each delivery ticket shall identify the Supplier’s name, Supplier’s granular source number (GSN), date, NYSDOT contract number, stockpile number, and item number.

Winter Earthwork material from approved stockpiles will be accepted upon successful completion of the Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, Winter Earthwork material will be accepted upon the basis of the stockpile approval.

Winter Earthwork Material for MSES Backfill from approved stockpiles will be accepted as part of the MSES upon confirmation that the material gradation type provided by the Contractor, outlined in §733-02B Gradation, conforms to the MSES submittal provided by the wall system designer-supplier and upon successful completion of the Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. In addition to the requirements of Section 106 Control of Material, the Department will sample and test backfill taken from behind the newly-constructed wall to assure quality. The number of samples and their locations (plan and elevation) will be determined by the quantity of material to be used in each MSES structure. Results from chemical testing (i.e. resistivity, sulfate ion content, sulfide ion content, and chloride ion content) can take several weeks to obtain.

**733-17 SURFACE SETTLEMENT GAUGE**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of installation of the embankment construction control device surface settlement gauge generally used for monitoring embankment construction. The following materials are evaluated in this specification:

733-1701 – Surface Settlement Gauge (Pipe Gauge)
733-1702 – Surface Settlement Gauge (Manometer Gauge)

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Provide material in conformance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-15) “Settlement Gauges and Settlement Rods” including:

**A. PIPE GAUGE.**

1. Pipe. Provide a minimum 2 ½ in. diameter metal pipe with steel flange meeting the requirements of §732-02 Drive Pipe. Provide a sufficient amount of pipe extensions to meet the rise requirements identified in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-15) “Settlement Gauges and Settlement Rods”.
2. **Base.** Provide either of the following:

   a. **Steel.** Provide a minimum ¼ in. thick steel plate meeting the requirements of §715-01 Structural Steel.

   b. **Wood.** Provide wood to the sizes shown in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-15) “Settlement Gauges and Settlement Rods” conforming to the requirements of §712-14 Stress Graded Timber and Lumber. Treat wood in accordance with §708-31 Wood Preservative - Waterborne and applied in conformance with American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA) Use Category Designation UC4B.

B. **MANOMETER GAUGE.** Provide materials specified for A. **Pipe Gauge** with the exception of the pipe extensions. To obtain readings from the buried device, provide the following connection:

1. **Interconnection.**

   a. **Tubing.** Provide ½ in. O.D. polyethylene tubing indicated in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-15) “Settlement Gauges and Settlement Rods”.

   b. **Sand.** Provide sand conforming to the requirement of §703-07 Concrete Sand.

   c. **Fluid.** Provide a 50-50 mixture of ethylene glycol and water.

2. **Readout Box.** Provide wood to the sizes shown in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-15) “Settlement Gauges and Settlement Rods” conforming to the requirements of §712-14 Stress Graded Timber and Lumber. Treat wood in accordance with §708-31 Wood Preservative - Waterborne and applied in conformance with American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA) Use Category Designation UC4B.

3. **Base.** Provide wood to the sizes shown in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-15) “Settlement Gauges and Settlement Rods” conforming to the requirements of §712-14 Stress Graded Timber and Lumber. Treat wood in accordance with §708-31 Wood Preservative - Waterborne and applied in conformance with American Wood Preservers Association (AWPA) Use Category Designation UC4B.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** The material shall be approved on the basis of manufacturer’s certification that the material conforms to the specification.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Approved material will be accepted upon successful assemblage and installation in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-15) “Settlement Gauges and Settlement Rods”.

**733-18 SETTLEMENT ROD**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of installation of the embankment construction control device settlement rod generally used for monitoring embankment construction.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Provide material in conformance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-15) “Settlement Gauges and Settlement Rods” including:
A. ROD. Provide a minimum ½ in. diameter steel rod meeting the requirements of §709-01 Bar Reinforcement, Grade 60.

B. PIPE. Provide a minimum 3 in. diameter metal pipe and cap meeting the requirements of §732-02 Drive Pipe.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. The material shall be approved on the basis of manufacturer’s certification that the material conforms to the specification.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Approved material will be accepted upon successful assemblage and installation in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-15) “Settlement Gauges and Settlement Rods”.

733-19 RECYCLED MATERIALS APPROVED FOR USE AS EARTHWORK MATERIAL

SCOPE. This specification covers the methods of assessing recycled materials for use as substitutions to, or blends with, earthwork material.

SAMPLING. Perform material tests and assurance methods pertaining to recycled material requirements in conformance with the procedures for stockpiled granular materials contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.

A. STOCKPILE. Stockpile recycled material in accordance with the procedures for stockpiled granular materials contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

1. Recycled Materials. Stockpiling of the Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement (RAP) is not required. RAP will be approved based upon a visual inspection of the storage pile by the Regional Geotechnical Engineer.

B. GRADATION. Provide recycled material meeting the gradation requirements for the appropriate item of use.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. To be considered suitable for highway use, a recycled material must consistently satisfy specification requirements. The approval criterion for recycled material includes:

1. Material must meet applicable FHWA, EPA and NYSDEC regulations. A Beneficial Use Determination (BUD) from NYSDEC is required.
2. Material shall be sound engineering materials such that when used alone, or in conjunction with other materials, shall provide durable, predictable performance results.
3. The use of the recycled material shall be uncontaminated and shall not pose any hazards. (i.e. potential hazard or danger to workers and/or equipment during construction). Safety procedures will be reviewed.
4. Evaluation of each use of recycled materials will be based on existing quality and performance standards.
5. Life-cycle costs shall be equivalent, or less than, those from the use of standard construction materials.

Recycled materials approved for use as Earthwork Materials will be added to the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Recycled material will be accepted on the basis of:
1. The recycled material name appearing on the Approved List for the intended application,
2. The recycled material from approved off-site stockpiles will be accepted on the contract site by delivery ticket. Each delivery ticket shall identify the Supplier’s name, Supplier’s granular source number (GSN), date, NYSDOT contract number, stockpile number, and item number.
3. Approved recycled material will be accepted upon successful completion of the Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, recycled material will be accepted upon the basis of the stockpile approval.

**733-20 UNDERDRAIN FILTER MATERIAL**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing underdrain filter material generally used in drainage systems. The following underdrain filter types are evaluated in this specification:

733-2001 – Underdrain Filter, Type 1  
733-2002 – Underdrain Filter, Type 2

Underdrain filter types are based on the gradation of the material as outlined in Table 733-20A Underdrain Filter Material Gradation.

**SAMPLING.** Perform material tests and assurance methods pertaining to underdrain filter material requirements in conformance with the procedures contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**

**A. STOCKPILE.** Stockpile underdrain filter material in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials” except as noted herein.

**B. COMPOSITION.** Provide material consisting of crushed stone, sand, gravel, or screened gravel or recycled material approved for use in accordance with §733-19 Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material (and as identified in the Approved List).

**C. GRADATION.** Provide underdrain filter material having a gradation in accordance with TABLE 733-20A Underdrain Filter Material Gradation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size Designation</th>
<th>Percentage Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Type 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 in.</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>½ in.</td>
<td>30-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¼ in.</td>
<td>0-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 10</td>
<td>0-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 20</td>
<td>0-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**D. DURABILITY.** Provide material meeting the soundness requirements of §703-02 Coarse Aggregates or §703-10 Lightweight Aggregates. When electing to use material from sources not approved under §703-02 or §703-10, provide material having a Magnesium Sulfate Soundness loss.
less than 20% in conformance with the procedures contained in the Geotechnical Test Method (GTM-21) “Test Method for Magnesium Sulfate Soundness of Granular Materials”.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Stockpiles of underdrain filter material will be evaluated in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-17) “Procedure for the Control and Quality Assurance of Granular Materials”.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Underdrain filter material from approved off-site stockpiles will be accepted on the contract site by delivery ticket. Each delivery ticket shall identify the Supplier’s name, Supplier’s granular source number (GSN), date, NYSDOT contract number, stockpile number, and item number.

Underdrain filter material from approved stockpiles will be accepted upon successful completion of the Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, underdrain filter material will be accepted upon the basis of the stockpile approval.

**733-21 STONE FILLING**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing stone filling generally used in stream bank channel protection. The following stone filling types are evaluated in this specification:

- 733-2101 – Stone Filling, Fine
- 733-2102 – Stone Filling, Light
- 733-2103 – Stone Filling, Medium
- 733-2104 – Stone Filling, Heavy
- 733-2108 – Stone Filling, Check Dam

Stone filling types are based on the gradation of the material as outlined in Table 733-21A Stone Filling Gradation and Table 733-21B Stone Filling Approximate Shape.

**SAMPLING.** Perform material tests and assurance methods pertaining to stone filling requirements in conformance with the procedures contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-14) “Procedure for the Control of Stone Filling and Rip-Rap Items”.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**

**A. STOCKPILE.** Stockpile stone filling in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-14) “Procedure for the Control of Stone Filling and Rip-Rap Items” except as noted herein.

**B. COMPOSITION.** Provide material consisting blasted or broken unweathered rock or recycled material approved for use in accordance with §733-19 Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material (and as identified in the Approved List).

**C. GRADATION.** Provide stone fill material having a gradation in accordance with TABLE 733-21A Stone Filling Gradation and Table 733-21B Stone Filling Approximate Shape.
TABLE 733-21A STONE FILLING GRADATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stone Filling Item</th>
<th>See Notes</th>
<th>Stone Size</th>
<th>Percent of Total by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fine</td>
<td>2, 3, 4</td>
<td>Smaller than 8 in.</td>
<td>90-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Larger than 3 in.</td>
<td>50-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Smaller than No. 10 sieve</td>
<td>0-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light</td>
<td>2, 3, 4</td>
<td>Lighter than 100 lbs.</td>
<td>90-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Larger than 6 in.</td>
<td>50-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Smaller than ½ in.</td>
<td>0-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>2, 4</td>
<td>Heavier than 100 lbs.</td>
<td>50-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Smaller than 4 in.</td>
<td>0-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy</td>
<td>2, 4, 5</td>
<td>Heavier than 600 lbs.</td>
<td>50-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Smaller than 6 in.</td>
<td>0-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 733-21B STONE FILLING APPROXIMATE SHAPE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specified Weights and Sizes</th>
<th>600 lbs.</th>
<th>300 lbs.</th>
<th>150 lbs.</th>
<th>100 lbs.</th>
<th>d = 8 in.</th>
<th>d = 6 in.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d=18 in.</td>
<td>d=15 in.</td>
<td>d=12 in.</td>
<td>d=10 in.</td>
<td>50 lbs.</td>
<td>20 lbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d=23 in.</td>
<td>d=18 in.</td>
<td>d=15 in.</td>
<td>d=13 in.</td>
<td>25 lbs.</td>
<td>10 lbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>d=12 in.</td>
<td>d=9 in.</td>
<td>d=8 in.</td>
<td>100 lbs.</td>
<td>40 lbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>d=15 in.</td>
<td>d=13 in.</td>
<td>25 lbs.</td>
<td>10 lbs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>d=15 in.</td>
<td>16 lbs.</td>
<td>7 lbs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Stone sizes, other than weights, refer to the average of the maximum and minimum dimensions of a stone particle as estimated by the Engineer.
2. Materials shall contain less than 20% of stones with a ratio of maximum to minimum dimension greater than three.
3. Recycled material, cobbles or gravel having at least one fractured face per particle are acceptable substitutes for stone under these items, provided that the soundness and gradation requirements are met.
4. Materials shall contain a sufficient amount of stones smaller than the average stone size to fill in the spaces between the larger stones.
5. Heavier gradings of this item may be required on some projects, in which case the requirements will be stated in the contract documents.

D. DURABILITY. The soundness of all material used for stone filling shall be approved on the basis of a geologic evaluation in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-14) “Procedure for the Control of Stone Filling and Rip-Rap Items”.

Where the State elects to conduct soundness tests, stone filling shall have a Magnesium Sulfate Soundness loss less than 10%, by weight, after 10 cycles.
For Stone Filling, Check Dam material, the soundness evaluation by a Departmental Engineering Geologist is waived.

**Basis of Approval.** Stockpiles of stone filling will be evaluated in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-14) “Procedure for the Control of Stone Filling and Rip-Rap Items”.

**Basis of Acceptance.** Stone filling from approved off-site stockpiles will be accepted on the contract site by delivery ticket. Each delivery ticket shall identify the Supplier’s name, Supplier’s granular source number (GSN), date, NYSDOT contract number, stockpile number, and item number.

Stone filling from approved stockpiles will be accepted upon successful completion of the Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, stone filling will be accepted upon the basis of the stockpile approval.

**733-22 Rip-Rap**

**Scope.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing rip-rap generally used in stream bank channel protection. The following rip-rap types are evaluated in this specification:

- 733-2201 – Dry Rip-Rap
- 733-2202 – Grouted Rip-Rap

**Sampling.** Perform material tests and assurance methods pertaining to rip-rap requirements in conformance with the procedures contained in the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-14) “Procedure for the Control of Stone Filling and Rip-Rap Items”.

**Material Requirements.**

**A. Stockpile.** Stockpile rip-rap in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-14) “Procedure for the Control of Stone Filling and Rip-Rap Items” except as noted herein.

**B. Composition.** Provide material consisting of blasted or broken unweathered rock.

**C. Gradation.** Provide rip-rap material consisting of stones shaped as nearly as practicable in the form of right rectangular prisms having a gradation in accordance with TABLE 733-22A Rip-Rap Gradation. One dimension of each of the stones furnished shall be at least equal to the thickness of the rip-rap shown in the contract documents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stone Weight</th>
<th>Gradation Spread</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heavier than 300 lbs.</td>
<td>50-100 percent of total by weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 lbs. ≤ γ ≤ 300 lbs.</td>
<td>Remainder of stones</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**D. Durability.** The soundness of all material used for rip-rap shall be approved on the basis of a geologic evaluation in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-14) “Procedure for the Control of Stone Filling and Rip-Rap Items”.

Where the State elects to conduct soundness tests, rip-rap shall have a Magnesium Sulfate Soundness loss less than 10%, by weight, after 10 cycles.
E. GROUT. Provide grout manufacture materials conforming to Table 733-22B Grouted Rip-Rap Grout Requirements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Grout Mix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portland Cement Type 2</td>
<td>§701-01</td>
<td>1 part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete Sand</td>
<td>§703-07</td>
<td>3 parts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Stockpiles of rip-rap will be evaluated in accordance with the Geotechnical Control Procedure (GCP-14) “Procedure for the Control of Stone Filling and Rip-Rap Items”.

The material shall be subject to visual inspection by the Regional Geotechnical Engineer.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Rip-rap from approved off-site stockpiles will be accepted on the contract site by delivery ticket. Each delivery ticket shall identify the Suppliers name, Suppliers granular source number (GSN), date, NYSDOT contract number, stockpile number, and item number.

Rip-rap from approved stockpiles will be accepted upon successful completion of the Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, rip-rap will be accepted upon the basis of the stockpile approval.

### 733-23 BEDDING MATERIAL

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing bedding material generally used as a foundation material prior to placing stone filling or rip-rap. The following bedding material types are evaluated in this specification:

- 733-2301 – Bedding Material, Type 1
- 733-2302 – Bedding Material, Type 2

**SAMPLING.** Sampling of coarse aggregates shall be in accordance with §703-02 Coarse Aggregate.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.**

A. **SOURCE.** Provide bedding material from a source evaluated in accordance with the Materials Bureau procedure outlined in §703-02 Coarse Aggregate.

B. **COMPOSITION.** Provide material consisting of crushed stone or gravel (free of soft, non-durable particles, organic material, and thin or elongated particles) or recycled material approved for use in accordance with §733-19 Recycled Materials Approved for Use as Earthwork Material (and as identified in the Approved List).

C. **GRADATION.** Provide bedding material having a gradation of the appropriate Type in accordance with TABLE 733-23A Bedding Material Type 1 Gradation or TABLE 733-23B Bedding Material Type 2 Gradation.
TABLE 733-23A BEDDING MATERIAL
TYPE 1 GRADATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size Designation</th>
<th>Percentage Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4 in.</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 in.</td>
<td>40-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>½ in.</td>
<td>0-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
<td>0-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 733-23B BEDDING MATERIAL
TYPE 2 GRADATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve Size Designation</th>
<th>Percentage Passing by Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 ½ in.</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 in.</td>
<td>90-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>½ in.</td>
<td>25-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¼ in.</td>
<td>0-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 200</td>
<td>0-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Sources will be approved in accordance with the Materials Bureau procedure outlined in §703-02 Coarse Aggregate. Type 1 Bedding Material will be approved based upon a visual inspection by the Regional Geotechnical Engineer.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Approved bedding material from approved sources will be accepted upon successful completion of the gradation tests and Quality Assurance (QA) program indicating that the material conforms to the specification. If the QA program is not introduced, approved bedding material will be accepted upon successful completion of the gradation tests.

SECTION 734 - CONCRETE SLAB OVERLAYS

734-01 THIN POLYMER (EPOXY) OVERLAY WEARING SURFACE FOR STRUCTURAL SLABS

SCOPE. This specification covers the Thin Polymer (Epoxy) Overlay System used as a wearing surface for Structural Slabs.

GENERAL. The thin polymer (epoxy) overlay system will restore friction and protect the structural slab from further deterioration. The aggregate source(s) used with these systems will be evaluated by Main Office Geology for friction classification and approval.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The manufacturer will provide Materials Details Sheet for acceptance to the Department.

The details will provide the following:

1. Product Information:
   • Identify Components
   • Storage and handling requirements
2. **Surface Preparation:**
   - Describe the method of cleaning
   - Identify the required level of cleanliness
   - Identify the bond strength
   - Moisture and temperature requirements (Limitation)
   - Address any structural repairs needed

3. **Application Procedures:**
   - Describe all procedures in mixing, preparation and application

4. **Curing:**
   - Describe curing procedure and anticipated cure times vs. temperature.

**PACKAGING.** All components shall be shipped in appropriate containers, bearing the manufacturer’s label specifying date of manufacture, batch number, brand name, quantity, and date of expiration or shelf life.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Each system supplier/manufacturer must undergo a two year field performance evaluation on two preapproved sites and provide Materials Details for approval.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Thin Polymer (Epoxy) Overlays systems will be accepted based on the product name appearing on the Departments Approved List for Thin Polymer (Epoxy) Overlays.

**SECTION 735 - CONCRETE CYLINDER CURING BOX**

**735-01 CONCRETE CYLINDER CURING BOX**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements, tests and basis of acceptance for a Concrete Cylinder Curing Box.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** The Concrete Cylinder Curing Box shall be constructed of noncorroding materials. A moisture proof seal shall be provided between the lid and body of the box. Provision for automatic control of water temperature to 72°F ± 5°F shall be made when the box is located in an uncontrolled environment. A bimetallic thermometer shall be installed with its sensing element in the storage water. The thermometer shall be capable of being read from the outside without opening the box. The thermometer shall have minimum gradations of 2°F and shall be protected from damage. Electric utility connections shall be made in a lockable switch box securely attached to the outside of the curing box.

A rustproof wire or metal rack shall be set above the bottom of the box to support cylinders in an upright position. This rack and all temperature control elements shall be positioned to allow free circulation of water around the cylinders. A combination hose connection and drain shall be provided at the lower front edge of the box so that it may be drained or water may be circulated. A drain shall also be provided on the box in such a position that when open will drain water to within 1 inch over the top of the cylinders. All areas of the box shall be easily drained and accessible for cleaning.

**Test.** The Concrete Cylinder Curing Box shall be capable of maintaining the required water temperature through an ambient air temperature range of -10°F to +100°F. The box shall be capable of holding a minimum of nineteen 6 x 12 inch cylinders. When filled with water, the box shall not leak.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** The Concrete Cylinder Curing Box shall be accepted upon approval of the Engineer.
SECTION 736 - PERMANENT CORRUGATED METAL FORMS FOR BRIDGE SLABS

736-01 PERMANENT CORRUGATED METAL FORMS FOR BRIDGE SLABS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements, method of manufacturer, tests and basis of acceptance for Permanent corrugated Metal Forms for Bridge Slabs for use as described under ’557 Superstructure Slabs, Sidewalks on Bridges, and Structural Approach Slabs.

MATERIALS. Forms and form supports shall conform to the latest specification for ASTM A653/A653M, Grades A thru E, Coating Designation G165. Fabrication shall be in conformance with ASTM A924/A924M.

Prior to fabrication of forms the Contractors shall submit to the Engineer certification for conformity of steel and galvanizing to ASTM A653/A653M.

DESIGN REQUIREMENTS. The following shall govern the design of permanent corrugated metal stay-in-place (S. I. P.) forms:

- Design Span shall be the clear span of form plus 2 inches measured parallel to the form flutes.
- Design Load shall be the sum of the weights of form, bar reinforcement, plastic concrete and 50 psf for construction loads.
- Unit Working Stress shall not exceed 0.725 of the specified minimum yield strength of the material. In no case shall the unit working stress exceed 36 ksi.
- Dead Load Deflection shall not exceed 1/180 of the form span or 1/2 inch, whichever is less.
- Physical Design Properties shall be computed with the requirements of the American Iron and Steel Institute Specifications for the Design of Cold Formed Steel Structural Members, latest published edition.

Certification. For acceptance, the Contractor shall submit Manufacturer certification to the Engineer that all forms meet all design requirements stated in this section and all detail requirements shown on the plans.

Test. No testing will be required.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. All forms delivered to the job site must be accompanied by the manufacturer's certification that the materials used conform to ASTM A653/A653M as required by this section. Any forms delivered to the job site without such certification shall be rejected by the Engineer.

SECTION 737 - GEOSYNTHETICS

QUALITY ASSURANCE PROGRAM. The Department maintains a Quality Assurance (QA) program for geosynthetics appearing on the Approved List. For monitoring purposes, the Geotechnical Engineering Bureau (GEB) will select and evaluate geosynthetic material delivered to project sites to compare its properties to those properties determined at the time of the product’s initial approval, which may indicate a change has occurred in the manufacturing process or Quality Control (QC) process.

If selected, a QA sample of the following sizes of geosynthetic material will be obtained by a Departmental Geotechnical Engineer and will be submitted for testing:
§737-01 Geotextiles: 3 yd² QA sample.
§737-02 Geomembranes: 4 yd² QA sample.
§737-03 Prefabricated Vertical Drains: 10 ft. long QA sample.
§737-04 Prefabricated Composite Structural Drain: 3 yd² QA sample.
§737-05 Prefabricated Composite Integral Abutment Drain: 3 yd² QA sample.
§737-06 Prefabricated Composite Edge Drain: 6 ft. long QA sample.

The following scenarios may develop as a result of the QA testing.
1. The properties are shown to be comparable to those originally determined, within the statistical validity of the test. No action will be taken.
2. The properties are shown to be significantly different than originally determined.
   a. If the results are within the acceptable minimum for approval, contact with the manufacturer will be made by the Geotechnical Engineering Bureau to determine what has changed.
   b. If the results are below the minimum acceptable for approval, the product’s status on the NYSDOT TECHNICAL SERVICES APPROVED LIST OF GEOSYNTHETICS FOR HIGHWAY CONSTRUCTION - GEOTEXTILES (Approved List) will be re-evaluated. The manufacturer will be notified of the review.

737-01 GEOTEXTILES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing geosynthetic materials used in highway construction. The following Geotextile Structure Types are evaluated in this specification:

737.0101 – Needle-Punched – Non-Woven (NP – NW)
737.0102 – Heatbonded – Non-Woven (HB – NW)
737.0103 – Monofilament – Woven (MF – W)
737.0104 – Multifilament – Woven (MuF – W)
737.0105 – Slit Film – Woven (SF – W)
737.0106 – Combination Monofilament/Fibrillated Yarn – Woven (C – W)
737.0107 – Recycled/ Reinforced Needle-Punched – Non-Woven (R/R NP – NW)
737.0108 – Circular – Woven (Cir – W)

GENERAL. The Department’s evaluation of geotextiles submitted will be based on one or more of the following tests:

1. Soil Retention - The test to evaluate this characteristic will be performed in accordance with the Apparent Opening Size Test, ASTM D4751.
2. Mass per Unit Area - Test to evaluate this characteristic will be performed in accordance with ASTM D5261.
3. Flow Capacity - The test to evaluate this characteristic will be performed in accordance with the Permittivity Test, ASTM Method D4491.
4. Tensile Strength - The tests to evaluate this characteristic will be performed in accordance with the following:
   a. Grab Test Method, ASTM D4632
   b. Trapezoid Tear Test Method, ASTM D4533
   c. Static Puncture Strength Using a 2 in. Probe, ASTM D6241

Applications. Based on the above tests and criteria that follow, the Geotextiles may be accepted for the following:
- Geotextile Bedding
- Geotextile Separation
- Geotextile Drainage
- Geotextile Slope Protection
- Geotextile Stabilization
- Turbidity Curtains
- Silt Fence

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Following is a table of the requirements by applications:

**A. Geotextile Bedding.** Geotextile bedding shall meet the requirements of Table 737-01A.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Geotextile Structure</th>
<th>Minimum Strength Class Requirements</th>
<th>Bedding Class Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Percent Elongation (%)</td>
<td>Grab Strength (lbf)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geotextile</td>
<td>C – W</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>&lt; 50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 50%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bedding</td>
<td>MF - W</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>&lt; 50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 50%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B. Geotextile Separation.** Geotextile separation shall meet the requirements of Table 737-01B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Geotextile Structure</th>
<th>Minimum Strength Class Requirements</th>
<th>Separation Class Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Percent Elongation (%)</td>
<td>Grab Strength (lbf)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geotextile</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>&lt; 50%</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Separation | Any type listed in §737-01 Scope | ≥ 50% | 157 | 56 | 309 | (X) |  

Table 737-01B Notes:  
1 For woven monofilament geotextiles the minimum average value is 56 lbf.

C. Geotextile Drainage. Geotextile drainage shall meet the requirements of Table 737-01C.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Geotextile Structure</th>
<th>Minimum Strength Class Requirements</th>
<th>Drainage Class Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Percent Elongation (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geotextile Drainage</td>
<td>Non-Woven</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>&lt; 50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. Geotextile Slope Protection. Geotextile slope protection shall meet the requirements of Table 737-01D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Geotextile Structure</th>
<th>Minimum Strength Class Requirements</th>
<th>Slope Protection Class Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Percent Elongation (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geotextile Slope Protection</td>
<td>NP - NW</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>&lt; 50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E. Geotextile Stabilization. Geotextile stabilization shall meet the requirements of Table 737-01E.
### TABLE 737-01E STABILIZATION GEOTEXTILE REQUIREMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Geotextile Structure</th>
<th>Minimum Strength Class Requirements</th>
<th>Stabilization Class Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Apparent Opening Size (maximum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Percent Elongation (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geotextile Stabilization</td>
<td>Any type listed in §737-01 Scope</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>&lt; 50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 50%</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F. Turbidity Curtain.** Turbidity curtains shall meet the requirements of Table 737-01F.

### TABLE 737-01F TURBIDITY CURTAIN REQUIREMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Geotextile Structure</th>
<th>Minimum Strength Class Requirements</th>
<th>Turbidity Curtain Class Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Apparent Opening Size (maximum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Percent Elongation (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turbidity Curtain</td>
<td>Any type listed in §737-01 Scope</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>&lt; 50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 50%</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 737-01F Notes:
1 For woven monofilament geotextiles the minimum average value is 56 lbf.

**G. Silt Fence.** Silt fences shall meet the requirements of Table 737-01G.

### TABLE 737-01G SILT FENCE REQUIREMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Minimum Strength Class Requirements</th>
<th>Silt Fence Class Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Apparent Opening Size (maximum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 737-01G Notes:
1 Silt fence support shall consist of 14 gage steel wire with a mesh spacing of 6 in. x 6 in. or prefabricated polymeric mesh with a minimum ultimate tensile strength of 200 lb/ft in both machine and cross machine directions measured in accordance with ASTM D6637.
2 As measured in accordance with ASTM D4632.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. All geotextiles, including those sold under a private label agreement, being submitted for testing and approval must be submitted through the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP). The program has a rolling submission cycle. Information regarding submittal is available at the address shown below:

AASHTO-NTPEP Coordinator
444 N. Capitol St., NW, Suite 249
Washington, DC 20001
www.ntpep.org

The approval criterion for geotextiles is based on AASHTO M-288 Specification for Geotextiles and material properties listed in NTPEP’s DataMine.

Approved geotextiles will be added to the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Geotextiles will be accepted based on the following:

A. For full width rolls:
   1. At the time of placement, the material brand name and style shall be listed, for the intended application, on NYSDOT’s Approved List for Geotextiles.
   2. The roll of material shall be properly identified by having NTPEP-compliant labels affixed by the product manufacturer to:
      a. both ends of the outside of the geotextile roll outer wrapping, and
      b. both ends of the inside of the geotextile roll core where they are easily visible for inspection.

      The labels shall be attached in a manner that would make them difficult to remove or replace.

      Note: As a minimum, the label shall contain the following information:
      i. the product name (if the manufacturer is supplying the product to a private label company,
the product name is the one that will be used by the private label company),

ii. The roll number,

iii. The production date,

iv. AASHTO M288 class(es) the product meets (or “NTPEP listed” if no class applies).

If the permanent marking described in Section 3 below contains all the information required for the labels, the labels on one end of the roll may be eliminated.

3. Permanent Marking: The roll of material shall be marked with a clearly legible print located on the roll selvedges at a frequency of once per 16.4 ft. and showing, as a minimum, the manufacturing plant (or manufacturing plant ID code numbers).

4. A material certification submitted with the geotextile stating that the material conforms to the specification and that it is the same one appearing on the Approved List.

B. For modified products (those that have been fabricated by a Converter by modifying full-width rolls by cutting, re-rolling, etc. (i.e. silt fence, turbidity curtains)):

1. After re-wrapping, the Converter must attach new NTPEP-compliant labels, as described in Section 3 above, on each roll/package of converted product. Compliant labels include:
   a. The original (prime) manufacturer’s manufacturing code and date of production.
   b. The converter’s manufacturing code, style number, roll number* and date of conversion. (*Converter roll number will be the manufacturer’s assigned roll number with a suffix designating the sequentially derived roll/package from the original roll, a.k.a. parent-child identification.)
   c. Four labels are required on each converted roll/package – one inside the core and one on the outside wrapping at each end.

737-02 GEOMEMBRANES

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing unreinforced geomembranes used in highway construction. The following geomembrane types are evaluated in this specification:

737.0201 – Geomembrane, Unreinforced

GENERAL. The Department’s evaluation of unreinforced geomembranes submitted will be based on the following tests:

1. Tensile Strength - Test in accordance with ASTM D4632, Grab Test Method.
2. Elongation - Test in accordance with ASTM D4632.
3. Trapezoidal Tear Resistance - Test in accordance with ASTM D4533, Trapezoid Tear Test Method.
4. Puncture - Test in accordance with ASTM D4833, Index Puncture Resistance.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Unreinforced geomembranes shall meet the following requirements:

1. Ultimate Tensile Strength – 180 lbf\(^{(1)}\)
2. Ultimate Elongation - 65\%\(^{(1)}\)
3. Trapezoid Tear Resistance - 60 lbf\(^{(1)}\)
4. Puncture - 90 lbf\(^{(2)}\)

\(^{(1)}\) Minimum value in weaker principal direction. The average of the test results in the weaker principal direction shall be equal to or greater than the stated values.

\(^{(2)}\) The average of the test results for puncture shall meet or exceed the stated value.
**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Producers of geomembranes shall demonstrate the quality of their products before being placed on the Department's Approved List. The producer shall provide:

1. A completed Form Number GE-335 *Product Evaluation Form (PEF) for Geosynthetics.*
2. A test data sheet identifying the geomembrane properties.
3. A 10 sq yd sample of geomembrane to allow for testing by the Department.

Approved geomembranes will be added to the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Unreinforced geomembranes will be accepted on the basis of:

1. The roll of material being properly identified either by a label on the geomembrane or the container. The container may be either the cover wrapping or the core around which the geomembrane is rolled,
2. The material brand name and style appearing on the Approved List for the intended application, and
3. The material certification submitted with the geomembrane stating that the material conforms to the specification and that it is the same one appearing on the Approved List.

---

**737-03 PREFABRICATED VERTICAL DRAINS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing prefabricated vertical drains used in highway construction.

**GENERAL.** The Department's evaluation of prefabricated vertical drains submitted will be based on the following tests:

1. Prefabricated Vertical Drain:
   a. Equivalent Sand Drain Diameter - Test in accordance with NYSDOT - GEB Large Diameter Consolidation Test.
2. Cover Geotextile Wrapping:
   a. The requirements listed in Geotextile Drainage (Table 737-01C).

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Prefabricated Vertical Drains shall meet the following requirements:

1. Prefabricated Vertical Drain:
   a. Equivalent Sand Drain Diameters – 1 ½ in. minimum.\(^{(1)}\)
2. Cover Geotextile Wrapping:
   a. The requirements listed in Geotextile Drainage (Table 737-01C). The geotextile shall be tightly wrapped around the core.

\(^{(1)}\) The average of the test results shall meet or exceed the stated values.

**BASIS OF APPROVAL.** Producers of prefabricated vertical drains shall demonstrate the quality of their products before being placed on the Department's Approved List. The producer shall provide:

1. A completed Form Number GE-335 *Product Evaluation Form (PEF) for Geosynthetics.*
2. A test data sheet identifying the cover geotextile and core and their properties.
3. A 30 ft. long sample of the prefabricated vertical drain to allow for testing by the Department.

Approved prefabricated vertical drains will be added to the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Prefabricated vertical drains will be accepted on the basis of:

1. The roll of material being properly identified either by a label on the prefabricated vertical drain or the container. The container may be either the cover wrapping or the core around which the prefabricated vertical drain is rolled,
2. The material brand name and style appearing on the Approved List for the intended application,
3. The material certification submitted with the prefabricated vertical drain stating that the material conforms to the specification and that it is the same one appearing on the Approved List, and
4. A letter identifying the Manufacturer and product name of the geotextile cover wrapping that states that the geotextile appears on the Approved List for Geotextile Drainage, and states that it is the same geotextile identified in the material certification for the prefabricated vertical drain.

737-04 PREFABRICATED COMPOSITE STRUCTURAL DRAINS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing prefabricated composite structural drains (PCSD’s)(1) used in highway construction.

GENERAL. The Department's evaluation of PCSD’s submitted will be based on the following tests:
1. PCSD: Flow Capacity Under Load - Test in accordance with ASTM D4716, Test Method for Determining the (In-plane) Flow Rate per Unit Width and Hydraulic Transmissivity of a Geosynthetic Using a Constant Head.
2. Cover Geotextile Wrapping: The requirements listed in Geotextile Drainage (Table 737-01C).

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. The PCSD shall meet the following requirements:
1. PCSD:
   a. Hydraulic Transmissivity
      i. For impermeable cores, where flow is allowed on both sides, the hydraulic transmissivity shall be 4.0 gal./min./ft. of width under 1500 psf and a hydraulic gradient of 0.1(2).
      ii. For permeable cores, or one sided flow impermeable cores, the hydraulic transmissivity shall be 2.0 gal./min./ft. of width under 1500 psf and a hydraulic gradient of 0.1(2).
2. Cover Geotextile Wrapping:
   a. The requirements listed in Geotextile Drainage (Table 737-01C) Class A. The geotextile shall be bonded to the core.

(1) This includes prefabricated composite structural drains used as integral abutment drains.
(2) The average of the test results shall meet or exceed the stated values.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Producers of PCSD’s shall demonstrate the quality of their products before being placed on the Department's Approved List. The producer shall provide:
1. A completed Form Number GE-335 Product Evaluation Form (PEF) for Geosynthetics.
2. A test data sheet identifying the properties of the protective geotextile and the core.
3. A 4 sq. yd. sample of the PCSD drain to allow for testing by the Department.

Approved PCSD’s will be added to the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. PCSD’s will be accepted on the basis of:
1. The roll of material being properly identified either by a label on the PCSD or the container. The container may be either the cover wrapping or the core around which the PCSD is rolled,
2. The material brand name and style appearing on the Approved List for the intended application,
3. The material certification submitted with the PCSD stating that the material conforms to the specification and that it is the same one appearing on the Approved List, and
4. A letter identifying the Manufacturer and product name of the geotextile cover wrapping that states that the geotextile appears on the Approved List for Geotextile Drainage, and states that it is the same geotextile identified in the material certification for the PCSD.
737-05 PREFABRICATED COMPOSITE INTEGRAL ABUTMENT DRAINS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing prefabricated composite integral abutment drains (PCIAD’s) used in highway construction.

GENERAL. PCIAD’s shall meet the requirements of PCSD except that the minimum thickness of the PCIAD shall be 0.4 in. as measured by ASTM D5199.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Producers of PCIAD’s shall demonstrate the quality of their products before being placed on the Department's Approved List. The approval procedure for PCIAD’s follows the approval procedure for PCSD’s.

Approved PCIAD’s will be added to the Approved List.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. PCIAD’s will be accepted on the basis of:
1. The roll of material being properly identified either by a label on the PCIAD or the container. The container may be either the cover wrapping or the core around which the PCIAD is rolled,
2. The material brand name and style appearing on the Approved List for the intended application,
3. The material certification submitted with the PCIAD stating that the material conforms to the specification and that it is the same one appearing on the Approved List, and
4. A letter identifying the Manufacturer and product name of the geotextile cover wrapping that states that the geotextile appears on the Approved List for Geotextile Drainage, and states that it is the same geotextile identified in the material certification for the PCIAD.

737-06 PREFABRICATED COMPOSITE EDGE DRAINS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing prefabricated composite edge drains (PCED’s) used in highway construction.

GENERAL. The Department's evaluation of PCED’s submitted will be based on the following tests:
1. PCED:
   a. Flow Capacity - Test in accordance with ASTM D4716, Test Method for Determining the (In-plane) Flow Rate per Unit Width and Hydraulic Transmissivity of a Geosynthetic Using a Constant Head.
2. Cover Geotextile Wrapping:
   a. The requirements listed in Geotextile Drainage (Table 737-01C). The geotextile shall be bonded to the core or tightly wrapped around the core.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. PCED’s shall meet the following requirements:
1. PCED:
   a. Flow Capacity – 15 gal./min./ft. of width when tested at a 10 psi load after 100 hours, at a hydraulic gradient of 0.1. If the flow channel is separated into two or more parts, only the flow rate of the section facing the pavement will be considered.
2. Cover Geotextile Wrapping:
   a. The requirements listed in Geotextile Drainage (Table 737-01C). The geotextile shall be bonded to the core or tightly wrapped around the core.

BASIS OF APPROVAL. Producers of PCED’s shall demonstrate the quality of their products before being placed on the Department's Approved List. The producer shall provide:
1. A completed Form Number GE-335 Product Evaluation Form (PEF) for Geosynthetics.
2. A test data sheet identifying the cover geotextile and core and their properties.
3. A 10 ft. long sample of the PCED to allow for testing by the Department.

Approved PCED’s will be added to the Approved List.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.**  PCED’s will be accepted on the basis of:
1. The roll of material being properly identified either by a label on the PCED or the container. The container may be either the cover wrapping or the core around which the PCED is rolled,
2. The material brand name and style appearing on the Approved List for the intended application,
3. The material certification submitted with the PCED stating that the material conforms to the specification and that it is the same one appearing on the Approved List, and
4. A letter identifying the Manufacturer and product name of the geotextile cover wrapping that states that the geotextile appears on the Approved List for Geotextile Drainage, and states that it is the same geotextile identified in the material certification for the PCED.

**737-07 GEOGRIDS**

**SCOPE.** This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing geogrids used in highway construction.

**GENERAL.** Submit the geogrid material certification with the material. Include in the certification the geogrid manufacturer’s name, the geogrid name, the test lot number, the minimum average roll value for Ultimate Tensile Strength, the long-term design tensile strength, and the reduction factors used to calculate the long-term design tensile strength. The following definitions apply:

A. \( T_D \). Long Term Design Tensile Strength = \( T_{ULT} / RF \).
B. \( T_{ULT} \). Ultimate Tensile Strength. Determined in the primary strength direction in accordance with ASTM D4595 or D6637, based on the Minimum Average Roll Value (MARV), per ASTM D4759, for the product.
C. \( RF \). Total Reduction Factor = \( RF_{CR} \times RF_{ID} \times RF_{DU} \).
D. \( RF_{CR} \). Reduction Factor for Creep Deformation for 100 Year Design Life. Calculated in accordance with Geosynthetic Research Institute Standard Practice GRI-GG4 using ASTM D5262 to determine long term strength, \( T_{LT} \), and ASTM D4595 to determine short term strength, \( T_{ST} \).
E. \( RF_{ID} \). Reduction Factor For Installation Damage Calculated in Accordance with Geosynthetic Research Institute Standard Practice GRI-GG4. The minimum tested \( RF_{ID} \) value permitted is 1.1.
F. \( RF_{DU} \). Reduction Factor for Durability. Determined in Accordance with EPA9090 and ASTM D4595. The minimum tested \( RF_{DU} \) value permitted is 1.1.

**MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS.** Geogrid reinforcing shall be tested and certified to meet the minimum requirements for geosynthetic products in accordance with AASHTO Specifications for Highway Bridges, Geosynthetic Reinforcement.

**BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE.** Geogrids will be accepted on the basis of:
1. A material certification identifying:
   a. The geogrid manufacturer’s name,
   b. The geogrid name,
   c. The test lot number,
   d. The minimum average roll value for Ultimate Tensile Strength,
   e. The long-term design tensile strength, and
   f. The reduction factors used to calculate the long-term design tensile strength.
2. An evaluation to verify that the long-term tensile design strength of the geogrid meets or exceeds the required design value stated in the contract documents, based on appropriate reduction factors.

737-08 GEOCELLS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing geocells used in highway construction.

GENERAL. Submit the geocell material certification with the material. Include in the certification the geocell manufacturer’s name, the geocell name, the test lot number, the minimum thickness, the cell seam peel strength, the ultraviolet stability, and the environmental stress crack resistance.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Geocells shall be made of High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) of the size(s) and dimensions shown in the contract documents. Geocells shall be tested and certified to meet the minimum requirements listed in Table 737-08 Geocell Requirements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 737-08 GEOCELL REQUIREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cell Seam Peel Strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultraviolet Stability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Stress Crack Resistance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Geocells will be perforated with the exception of the fascia, which will be solid and green in color.

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Geocells will be accepted on the basis of

1. A material certification identifying:
   a. The geocell manufacturer’s name,
   b. The geocell name,
   c. The test lot number,
   d. The minimum thickness,
   e. The cell seam peel strength,
   f. The ultraviolet stability, and
   g. The environmental stress crack resistance.

2. An evaluation that the information on the material certification meets the minimum requirements for the geogrids stated in Table 737-08 and the contract documents.

737-09 GEOSYNTHETIC FIBERS

SCOPE. This specification covers the material requirements and methods of testing geosynthetic fibers used in highway construction.
GENERAL. Submit the geosynthetic fiber material certification with the material. Include in the certification the geosynthetic fiber manufacturer’s name, the geosynthetic fiber name, the test lot number, the polypropylene percentage, fiber length, specific gravity, carbon black content, tensile strength, tensile elongation and Young’s modulus.

MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS. Geosynthetic fibers shall consist of fibrillated polypropylene strands and shall be tested and certified to meet the minimum requirements listed in Table 737-09 Geosynthetic Fiber Requirements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Test Method</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polypropylene</td>
<td>ASTM D4101</td>
<td>99.4 % minimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Group 1/ Class 1/ Grade 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber Length</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>1 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific Gravity</td>
<td>ASTM D792</td>
<td>0.033 lb/in³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon black Content</td>
<td>ASTM D1603</td>
<td>0.6 % minimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Strength</td>
<td>ASTM D2256</td>
<td>45 ksi minimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensile Elongation</td>
<td>ASTM D2256</td>
<td>15 % maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young’s Modulus</td>
<td>ASTM D2101</td>
<td>700 ksi minimum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BASIS OF ACCEPTANCE. Geosynthetic fibers will be accepted on the basis of

1. A material certification identifying:
   a. The geosynthetic fiber manufacturer’s name,
   b. The geosynthetic fiber name,
   c. The test lot number,
   d. The polypropylene percentage,
   e. The fiber length,
   f. The specific gravity,
   g. The carbon black content,
   h. The tensile strength,
   i. The tensile elongation, and
   j. Young’s modulus.

2. An evaluation that the information on the material certification meets the minimum requirements for the geosynthetic fiber stated in Table 737-09 Geosynthetic Fiber Requirements and the contract documents.

SECTIONS 738 THRU 739 (VACANT)

SECTION 740 – FOR SITE MANAGER USE
(New Section May, 2018)

740-01 THRU 740-04 FOR SITE MANAGER USE

SECTION 741 – FOR SITE MANAGER USE
(New Section May, 2018)

741-01 THRU 740-04 FOR SITE MANAGER USE